

DARLINGTON | LOW | ROOD

JACARANDA
HISTORY ALIVE 7

VICTORIAN CURRICULUM

learnon

www.jacplus.com.au

jacaranda

A Wiley Brand

JACARANDA
HISTORY ALIVE

7

VICTORIAN CURRICULUM

JACARANDA
HISTORY ALIVE

7

VICTORIAN CURRICULUM

Robert DARLINGTON

Anne LOW

Benjamin ROOD

First published 2017 by
John Wiley & Sons Australia, Ltd
42 McDougall Street, Milton, Qld 4064

Typeset in 11.25/12.5 Adobe Garamond Pro Regular

© John Wiley & Sons Australia, Ltd

The moral rights of the authors have been asserted.

National Library of Australia
Cataloguing-in-Publication entry

Creator:	Darlington, Robert, author.
Title:	Jacaranda history alive 7 for the Victorian curriculum/Robert Darlington, Benjamin Rood, Anne Low
ISBN:	978 0 7303 3227 5 (paperback)
Notes:	Includes index.
Target Audience:	For secondary school age.
Subjects:	History, Ancient—Textbooks.
Other Creators/ Contributors:	Rood, Ben, author. Low, Anne, author.
Dewey Number:	930

Reproduction and communication for educational purposes

The Australian *Copyright Act 1968* (the Act) allows a maximum of one chapter or 10% of the pages of this work, whichever is the greater, to be reproduced and/or communicated by any educational institution for its educational purposes provided that the educational institution (or the body that administers it) has given a remuneration notice to Copyright Agency Limited (CAL).

Reproduction and communication for other purposes

Except as permitted under the Act (for example, a fair dealing for the purposes of study, research, criticism or review), no part of this book may be reproduced, stored in a retrieval system, communicated or transmitted in any form or by any means without prior written permission. All inquiries should be made to the publisher.

Trademarks

Jacaranda, the JacPLUS logo, the learnON, assessON and studyON logos, Wiley and the Wiley logo, and any related trade dress are trademarks or registered trademarks of John Wiley & Sons Inc. and/or its affiliates in the United States, Australia and in other countries, and may not be used without written permission. All other trademarks are the property of their respective owners.

Front and back cover images: © Peter Giovannini/imageBROKER/
Alamy Australia Pty Ltd

Cartography by Spatial Vision

Illustrated by various artists, Aptara and Wiley Composition Services

Typeset in India by Aptara

Printed in China by
Printplus Ltd

10 9 8 7 6 5 4 3 2

All activities have been written with the safety of both teacher and student in mind. Some, however, may involve physical activity or the use of equipment or tools. All due care should be taken when performing such activities. Neither the publisher nor the authors can accept responsibility for any injury that may be sustained when completing activities described in this textbook.

This textbook contains images and names of Aboriginal and Torres Strait Islander people who are, or may be, deceased. The publisher appreciates that this inclusion may distress some Aboriginal and Torres Strait Islander communities. These images and names have been included so that the young multicultural audience for this book can better appreciate specific aspects of Aboriginal and Torres Strait Islander history and experience.

It is recommended that teachers should first preview resources on Aboriginal and Torres Strait Islander topics in relation to their suitability for the class level or situation. It is also suggested that Aboriginal and Torres Strait Islander parents or community members be invited to help assess the resources to be shown to Aboriginal and Torres Strait Islander children. At all times the guidelines prescribed by the relevant educational jurisdictions and curriculum bodies should be followed.

A road in the ruins of the Roman city of Pompeii, Italy. Pompeii was completely buried when the Mount Vesuvius erupted.



CONTENTS

How to use the Jacaranda History Alive resource suite viii
Acknowledgements x

ANCIENT WORLD AND EARLY CIVILISATIONS 60 000 BC (BCE)–C. 650 AD (CE)

TOPIC 1

Historical skills and concepts 2



1.1 Overview	2
1.2 Examining the evidence	4
1.3 Ages, time and chronology	6
1.4 Detective work	7
1.5 Evidence from archaeology	11
1.6 How old is it?	15
1.7 Perspectives and empathy	18
1.8 SkillBuilder: Sequencing events in chronological order	20
1.9 Review	21



ANCIENT WORLD AND EARLY CIVILISATIONS 60 000 BC (BCE)–C. 650 AD (CE)

TOPIC 2

The ancient world: c. 60 000 BCE to c. 650 CE 22



2.1 Overview	22
2.2 Examining the evidence	24
2.3 Out of Africa	26
2.4 A changing Paleolithic world	29
2.5 An amazing journey	33
2.6 The Mesolithic Age	35
2.7 The New Stone Age	37
2.8 Cities, laws, government	40
2.9 Society and culture	42
2.10 Civilisations and empires in North Africa, western Asia and Europe	44
2.11 Civilisations in South and East Asia	46
2.12 Ancient American civilisations	49
2.13 The ancient birth of modern religions and philosophies	51
2.14 SkillBuilder: Describing broad patterns of change	56
2.15 Review	57



ABORIGINAL AND TORRES STRAIT ISLANDER PEOPLES AND CULTURES

TOPIC 3

Ancient Australia 58



3.1 Overview	58
3.2 Examining the evidence	60
3.3 The first people of Australia and the Torres Strait Islands	62
3.4 Managing an ancient land	67
3.5 Language and ceremony in ancient Australia	71
3.6 The ancient Australian economy	74
3.7 Society, custom and culture	78
3.8 Conflict and death in ancient Australia	82
3.9 Conserving the past	86
3.10 SkillBuilder: Developing a hypothesis	93
3.11 Review	93



ANCIENT WORLD AND EARLY CIVILISATIONS 60 000 BC (BCE)–C. 650 AD (CE)

TOPIC 4

Ancient Egypt 94



4.1 Overview	94
4.2 Examining the evidence	96
4.3 The gift of the Nile	98
4.4 The people of Egypt	100
4.5 Pharaoh rules!	104
4.6 Gods and the afterlife	107
4.7 Mummies unwrapped	110
4.8 Write like an Egyptian	112
4.9 Pyramid builders	116
4.10 Tutankhamen, Akhenaten and Nefertiti	117
4.11 Expansion and fall	120
4.12 Rameses II — Egypt's greatest pharaoh?	123
4.13 Egypt's heritage	125
4.14 SkillBuilder: Analysing and corroborating sources	127
4.15 Review	127



ANCIENT WORLD AND EARLY CIVILISATIONS
60 000 BC (BCE)–C. 650 AD (CE)

TOPIC 5

Ancient Greece 128



5.1 Overview	128
5.2 Examining the evidence	130
5.3 The Minoans and Mycenaeans	132
5.4 The 'Dark Age' to the Archaic Period	136
5.5 Government in Athens and Sparta	139
5.6 Everyday life in Sparta	141
5.7 Everyday life in Athens	145
5.8 Laws, myths, gods and oracles	150
5.9 The Olympic Games	154
5.10 Greeks, Persians and Alexander the Great	156
5.11 The heritage of ancient Greece	161
5.12 SkillBuilder: Analysing and corroborating sources	164
5.13 Review	165



ANCIENT WORLD AND EARLY CIVILISATIONS
60 000 BC (BCE)–C. 650 AD (CE)

TOPIC 6

Ancient Rome 166



6.1 Overview	166
6.2 Examining the evidence	168
6.3 The rise of the Romans	170
6.4 The spreading empire	172
6.5 The Roman army	174
6.6 Citizens and rulers	176
6.7 Spartacus and Nero: two significant individuals	181
6.8 Living in the Roman Empire	184
6.9 Death and the Romans	188
6.10 Roman law and religion	190
6.11 Decline and fall	193
6.12 Heritage of Rome	196
6.13 SkillBuilder: Analysing and corroborating sources	198
6.14 Review	199



ANCIENT WORLD AND EARLY CIVILISATIONS
60 000 BC (BCE)–C. 650 AD (CE)

TOPIC 7

Ancient China 200



7.1 Overview	200
7.2 Examining the evidence	202
7.3 China's civilisation begins	204
7.4 The people of ancient China	206
7.5 Everyday life and death	209
7.6 Ancient China and the natural environment	211
7.7 Confucianism, religion and law	213
7.8 Qin Shihuang, the First Emperor of China	217
7.9 The rise and fall of the Han	221
7.10 The heritage of China	225
7.11 SkillBuilder: Analysing different perspectives	228
7.12 Review	229



ANCIENT WORLD AND EARLY CIVILISATIONS
60 000 BC (BCE)–C. 650 AD (CE)

TOPIC 8

Ancient India 230



8.1 Overview	230
8.2 Examining the evidence	232
8.3 The geography of India	234
8.4 Lost cities of the Indus Valley	236
8.5 Contacts and conflicts: India and the ancient world	244
8.6 The Mauryan Empire: India's first unified state	249
8.7 Ashoka the Great	252
8.8 The religions of Ancient India	255
8.9 SkillBuilder: Analysing different perspectives	264
8.10 Review	265



Glossary	266
Index	269

HOW TO USE THE CONTENTS

the Jacaranda History Alive resource suite

The *Jacaranda History Alive* series is now available on the learnON platform for an optimal learning experience. The features described here show how you can use *Jacaranda History Alive* most effectively.

Links with our times draw connections between today and the period under study.

Big questions are based on the Victorian Curriculum inquiry questions.

Starter questions prompt students to think about what they already know about the content of the topic.

Each topic's opening spread orientates students to provide a clear starting point for the topic.

An illustrated timeline shows the chronology and key events of the period under study.

An interactive version of the timeline is available on learnON.

Examining the evidence subtopics explore the evidence available for studying this period of history.

Sources are clearly identified in the activities.

Putting it all together asks students to closely examine the sources in line with the inquiry approach of the Victorian Curriculum. Questions are organised under the heading of the historical concept and skill they help to develop.

History Alive features stunning detailed artwork that is clearly labelled for easy use in class.

Activity headings are based on the historical concepts and skills identified in the Victorian Curriculum.

SkillBuilders are provided for every topic online. The skill is defined, its importance is clearly explained and a step-by-step approach is presented.

The *Review* is available online. It provides students with a range of different opportunities to consolidate what they have learned in each topic.

5.12 SkillBuilder: Analysing and corroborating sources

online only

How do we analyse and corroborate ancient Greek sources?

Ancient Greek sources include pottery, tombs, temples, fortifications, weapons, tools, coins, theatres, written records and artworks. Almost all of our knowledge of ancient Greece comes from such sources.



Go to your learnON course to access:

- An explanation of the skill (Tell me)
- A step-by-step process to develop the skill, with an example (Show me)
- An activity to allow you to practise the skill (Let me do it)
- Questions to test your application of the skill (Applying skills)

4.15 Review

online only

This final subtopic provides a range of opportunities for you to review and respond through:

- revising and checking your historical knowledge
- demonstrating your ability to apply historical concepts and skills.

Go to your learnON course to access:

- A key chronology of events relevant to the topic
- A summary of the key knowledge presented in the topic
- A 'Big Questions' activity
- A multiple choice topic test
- Short answer or extended writing responses



ON Resources

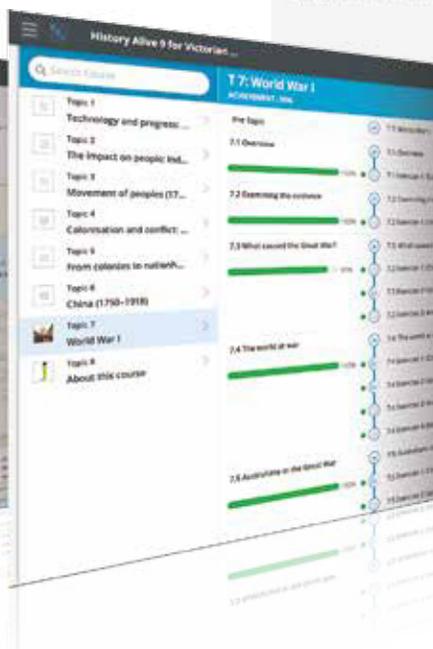
Interactivity
Ancient Egypt timeline
Create a visual timeline of key events in ancient Egypt.
Int-2936

learn on

Inside your Jacaranda History Alive learnON

Jacaranda History Alive learnON is an immersive digital learning platform that enables real-time learning through peer-to-peer connections, complete visibility and immediate feedback. It includes:

- a wide variety of embedded videos and interactivities
- the Capabilities of the Victorian Curriculum
- sample responses and immediate feedback for every question
- SkillBuilders
- collaborative activities
- and much more.



ACKNOWLEDGEMENTS

The authors and publisher would like to thank the following copyright holders, organisations and individuals for their assistance and for permission to reproduce copyright material in this book.

Images

• AAP Newswire: 2–3, 21/Newzulu/TIBERIU IONESCU/AAP Newswire; 94–5/AP Photo/Mohammed Abu Zaid; 257/AP Photo/Rajesh Kumar Singh/AAP Images • Alamy Australia Pty Ltd: 9 (top right)/The Natural History Museum/Alamy Stock Photo; 24/C M Dixon/Ancient Art & Architecture Collection Ltd/Alamy Stock Photo; 28 (left)/Ancient Art & Architecture Collection Ltd/Alamy Stock Photo; 45 (left top), 45 (left bottom)/www.BibleLandPictures.com/Alamy Stock Photo; 58–9/Will Steeley/Alamy Stock Photo; 58 (a)/© Robert Wyatt/Alamy Stock Photo; 58 (b)/© Travelscape Images/Alamy Stock Photo; 58 (c)/© Manfred Gottschalk/Alamy Stock Photo; 85/© Philip Game/Alamy Stock Photo; 87/© David Keith Jones/Alamy Stock Photo; 96 (right)/World History Archive/Alamy Stock Photo; 100, 108 (bottom)/The Art Archive/Alamy Stock Photo; 103/Dallet-Alba/Alamy Stock Photo; 106 (right)/robertharding/Alamy Stock Photo; 111 (bottom)/frans lemmens/Alamy Stock Photo; 140/Georgios Kollidas/Alamy Stock Photo; 159/gezmen/Alamy Stock Photo; 179/Hemis/Alamy Stock Photo; 207 (right)/Peter Horree/Alamy Stock Photo; 259/Zvonimir Atetić/Alam© Zvonimir Atetić/Alamy Stock Photo Australia Pty Ltd; 261/Louise Batalla Duran/Alamy Stock Photo; 263/© robertharding/Alamy Stock Photo • Art Archive, The: 210/The Art Archive/Genius of China Exhibition; 217/The Art Archive/Bibliothèque Nationale Paris • Bridgeman Images: 121 (bottom)/The Bridgeman Art Library • British Museum, The: 36, 41 (right), 121 (top), 127, 236 (right), 237 (top), 97, 250, 115, 146, 160, 145, 115, 146, 160/© The Trustees of the British Museum • Copyright Agency Limited: 60 • Creative Commons: 66/http://theconversation.com/a-shark-in-the-stars-astronomy-and-culture-in-the-torres-strait-15850; 200 (a), 230 (c), 233/© Creative Commons; 230 (d) • David Bossard: 232/© David Bossard • Dayton Art Institute: 223/Han Dynasty Cavalry, Jian Li ed., *Eternal China: Splendors from the first dynasties*, The Dayton Art Institute, Dayton, 1998, p. 104 • Getty Images Australia: 8 (f)/Universal History Archive/Getty Images; 31, 39, 101/Print Collector/Hulton Archive/Getty Images; 64/Auscapse/UIG/Getty Images Australia; 65/Grant Dixon/Getty Images Australia; 96 (left), 127/Getty Images/Upperhall Ltd/Robert Harding; 102 (left)/Universal History Archive/Getty Images Australia; 102 (right)/Werner Forman/Universal Images Group/Getty Images; 119 (top)/Cris Bouroncle/AFP/Getty Images; 126/Getty Images/Stephen Studd; 126/Getty Images/SuperStock; 128–9/Bob Thomas Sports Photography/Getty Images Australia; 208 (left)/O. Louis Mazzatenta/Getty Images; 225 (bottom left), 225 (bottom right)/SPL Creative/Getty Images; 226 (bottom)/SSPL/Getty Images; 227 (top)/China Tourism Press/Getty Images; 239/Ursula Gahwiler/robertharding; 248 (bottom)/Digital Light Source/Getty Images; 250, 252/DEA/G. NIMATALLAH/Getty Images; 255/AFP Photo/Rob Elliot/Getty Images • Giovanni Caselli: 93/Giovanni Caselli • Harappa: 240 (top left)/Copyright J.M. Kenoyer/Harappa.com, Courtesy Dept. of Archaeology and Museums, Govt. of Pakistan; 240 (top right), 240 (bottom)/© Copyright J.M. Kenoyer/Harappa.com, Courtesy Dept. of Archaeology and Museums, Govt. of Pakistan; 244/© Copyright Dinesh Shukla/Harappa.com, Courtesy Dept. of Archaeology and Museums, Govt. of Pakistan; 244/Dinesh Shukla/Harappa; 246/© Courtesy Dept. of Archaeology and Museums, Govt. of Pakistan • iStockphoto: 8 (b)/Cliff Wassmann/iStockphoto.com • Jim Bowler: 90/Jim Bowler • Karsten Petersen: 230–1/Karsten Petersen • MAPgraphics: 26–7, 49, 99, 132, 136–7, 160, 171, 172, 180, 194, 204–5, 206, 222, 237 (bottom)/MAPgraphics Pty Ltd, Brisbane; 62/Satellite image of South East Asia and Pacific Area Lambert Azimuthal Equal Area customised for John Wiley & Sons Australia by WorldSat. Map redrawn by MAPgraphics Pty Ltd, Brisbane; 71/Aboriginal Language Group Map based on map by Dr David R. Horton in association with Aboriginal Studies Press, AIATSIS, Auslig. Map by MAPgraphics Pty Ltd, Brisbane; 88/Map redrawn by MAPgraphics Pty Ltd, Brisbane • Michael Amendolia: 91 • NASA: 242/NASA GSFC/Jesse Allen/Earth Observatory • National Library of Australia: 81/James Neagle 1760?–1822, engraver • National Museum of Australia: 61; 80/David Malangi/National Museum of Australia • Oriental Institute Museum: 44/Courtesy of the Oriental Institute of the University of Chicago • Out of Copyright: 48; 68/© National Library of Australia; 82/© State Library of Victoria; 85/An Aboriginal funeral [picture] Lycett, Joseph, approximately 1775–1828; 252/Out of Copyright • Photodisc: 8 (a), 110/© PhotoDisc, Inc; 226 (top)/© Photodisc, Inc • Picture Media: 256/Picture Media/Reuters/Jitendra Prakash • Public Domain: 79, 247, 248 (top) • Robert Darlington: 4, 5 (top), 9 (top left), 9 (bottom), 10, 12 (bottom), 14 (top), 14 (bottom), 18, 22 (domes), 22 (pottery), 22–3, 45 (left middle), 45 (right), 52 (two images), 54 (two images), 55, 56, 57, 94 (a), 127, 128 (hunting scene), 128 (soldiers), 128 (archway), 130 (top right), 130 (bottom left), 131, 133, 135 (two images), 138 (two images), 151, 152, 155, 166 (a), 166–7, 170, 177, 181, 182, 183, 188, 189, 192, 196, 200–1, 215, 219 • Shutterstock: v/sarra22/Shutterstock.com; 8 (d)/John C. Hooten/Shutterstock.com; 8 (e)/mj007/Shutterstock.com; 8 (g)/Repina Valeriya/Shutterstock.com; 12 (top)/Chris Pole/Shutterstock.com; 20/WitR/Shutterstock; 32/Carleton Chinner/Shutterstock.com; 50/piotrwzk/Shutterstock.com; 94 (b), 124 (top)/BasPhoto/Shutterstock.com; 94 (d), 124 (bottom)/bart acke/Shutterstock.com; 113/Dario Lo Presti/Shutterstock.com; 119 (bottom)/Vladimir Wrangel/Shutterstock.com; 126/Maksym Gorpenyuk; 128 (Elgin marbles), 130 (top left)/mark higgins/Shutterstock.com; 130 (bottom right)/Valery Shanin/Shutterstock.com; 139/fafoutis/Shutterstock.com; 141/Ivan Montero Martinez/Shutterstock.com; 148/Andrey Starostin/Shutterstock.com; 168 (left)/balounm/Shutterstock.com; 200 (b),

211/LIUSHENGFILM/Shutterstock.com; 200 (c)/Tan Kian Khoon/Shutterstock.com; 203/TonyV3112/Shutterstock.com; 210/lapas77/Shutterstock.com; 212/atiger/Shutterstock.com; 213/Everett Historical/Shutterstock.com; 225 (top)/Andrea Paggiaro/Shutterstock.com; 230 (a)/mundoview/Shutterstock.com; 262 (a)/f9photos/Shutterstock.com • Spatial Vision: 36–7, 47, 157, 234–5, 253, 258/© Spatial Vision; 75 • State Library of Victoria: 69/Herman Melville/National Library of Australia • The Metropolitan Museum of Art: 245/Dodge Fund, 1949/www.metmuseum.org; 262 (b)/Image copyright © The Metropolitan Museum of Art. Image source: Art Resource, NY • Viscopy: 74/© Donkeyman Lee Tjupurrula/Licensed by Viscopy, 2016 • Wikimedia Commons: 8 (c), 16 (left), 28 (right), 108 (top), 123, 132, 134, 147, 168 (right), 195/Public Domain/Wikimedia Commons; 17/USDA Forest Service/Wikimedia Commons; 25/British Museum/Wikimedia Commons; 41 (left), 202, 207 (left), 208 (right)/Public Domain; 155/Metropolitan Museum of Art/Wikimedia Commons; 214/Nightscream/Creative Commons; 227 (top)/Gaynor/Creative Commons

Text

• The Victorian Curriculum F–10 content elements are © VCAA, reproduced by permission. Victorian Curriculum F–10 elements accurate at time of publication. The VCAA does not endorse or make any warranties regarding this resource. The Victorian Curriculum F–10 and related content can be accessed directly at the VCAA website.

Every effort has been made to trace the ownership of copyright material. Information that will enable the publisher to rectify any error or omission in subsequent reprints will be welcome. In such cases, please contact the Permissions Section of John Wiley & Sons Australia, Ltd.

1

Historical skills and concepts

1.1 Overview

1.1.1 LINKS WITH OUR TIMES

Around eighteen hundred years ago men fought in bloody battles in an ancient Roman arena. Crowds bigger than those at most football matches cheered them on as each fighter slashed the other with a short sword, hoping to maim or kill him while ducking and weaving to avoid his opponent's deadly blows.

At the end of this brutal contest the victor would turn to the emperor or the crowd and await their signal — to spare his opponent or kill him.

We do not know much about these individual fights but we do know these things happened, and we know why these warriors, who were called gladiators, killed and died. We know that other people at the time found it amusing to watch such horrors and that others thought it proper to provide such entertainment. We know these things because archaeologists and historians use clues like stone fragments and many other sources to bring the past to life. History uses evidence that includes all kinds of traces, from skeletons to old books, paintings and photographs. History involves using such evidence to try to find the truth about what happened in former times.

BIG QUESTIONS

As you work through this topic, look for information that will help you to answer these questions:

- 1 What methods do historians use to investigate the past?
- 2 How do we use primary sources?
- 3 How do archaeologists investigate the past?
- 4 How do we date archaeological evidence?

STARTER QUESTIONS

- 1 What do you think a skeleton could tell us about the past?
- 2 Imagine you are investigating gladiators in ancient Rome. What are three questions you would ask about them?
- 3 What are three questions you would ask about the re-enactment of the founding of Rome shown in the image?
- 4 'By understanding the past, we can better understand the present and prepare for the future.' What do you think this statement means? Do you agree with it? Why or why not?





1.2 Examining the evidence

learn on

To access videos, interactivities, discussion widgets, image galleries, weblinks and more, go to www.jacplus.com.au

1.2.1 How and why do we study history?

History is a journey of discovery through time. Often it will excite you, and sometimes it will shock and amaze you. Sometimes it will seem as though the people of past societies were from another planet. At other times their actions and ideas will be as familiar to you as those of your friends and neighbours.

What is a historian?

In our own times there are many links with the past. For example, many people in modern societies attend performances of plays. This art form originated in some city-states of ancient Greece, where it was an important aspect of their culture. Research into past civilisations, cultures and societies is the work of historians. They try to build up a picture of how people in other times lived and acted. Historians try to make sense of past ideas, customs and beliefs, the ways people were ruled and how they made their living. Historians inquire into the past by examining sources. Historians also try to understand and explain how people's lives were shaped by other people and events, what they thought about their times and how they brought about changes in their own world.

In this topic we will look at the following skills and concepts:

- Sequencing chronology — arranging events in order of time
- Using historical sources as evidence — analysing sources from the time we are studying to judge how reliable they are and exploring the different points of view, or perspectives, of people from the past. This also involves questioning later sources that are interpretations of that time.

In later topics you will develop further skills:

- Identifying continuity and change — identifying when and how changes occurred and what things remained unchanged
- Analysing cause and effect — determining how and why important things happened and how an event or idea or something else led to changes
- Determining historical significance — evaluating the importance of an event, idea, individual or group for the lives of people at the time and for later times.

SOURCE 1 Terracotta models of actors' masks used in plays performed in ancient Greece around 2200 years ago. The actual masks have not survived because they were made of materials such as wood, linen and leather.



DID YOU KNOW?

The ancient Greeks invented the dramatic genres of tragedy and comedy. The remains of their theatres can be seen today at several places such as Delphi, Athens and Epidaurus.

heritage everything that has come down to us from the past

1.2.2 The value of history

Some people question the need to understand the past. But there are many very good reasons for studying history. Knowledge of history helps us to understand our **heritage**. We start to understand where our ideas, languages, laws and many other aspects of our lives came from. We can also develop more open minds and learn to appreciate cultures that are different from our own. Conservation work similar to that shown in **SOURCE 2** is one of the key responsibilities of archaeologists.

History, the present and the future

Perhaps you already know that we can never understand the time we live in or what the future may hold if we do not understand the journey that brought us to this point. Human societies did not appear in the present as if from nowhere. They developed over many thousands of years. By understanding the past we might just be able to avoid repeating past mistakes and make our world a better place in the future.

History, work and leisure

The kinds of skills you will learn while studying history are also important in many careers. These skills will help you to:

- carry out research
- draw conclusions and make decisions based on evidence
- recognise the difference between fact and opinion
- understand that there is usually more than one way of thinking about any problem
- think critically
- communicate effectively.

A knowledge of history is important in our everyday lives too. And history gives many people great personal pleasure. How much more enjoyment do people experience from travel, books and movies when they know about the history that shaped the places they visit or the stories they read or watch on a screen!

History and democracy

In Australia we live in a democratic society. This means we have the right to choose our political representatives and leaders through voting. We cannot vote responsibly, however, unless we can make our own judgements about the ideas these leaders put forward. To do that, we need to know something about the past.

SOURCE 2 Conservation work on the Parthenon, in Athens, a temple built in ancient Greece in the fifth century BCE



1.2 PUTTING IT ALL TOGETHER

USING HISTORICAL SOURCES AS EVIDENCE

- 1 The masks in **SOURCE 1** are held in the National Archaeological Museum in Athens, Greece. Each year the museum attracts millions of visitors from around the world. What might you be able to understand about ancient Greece just by using this source as evidence?
- 2 Look closely at **SOURCE 2**. Each year, many countries donate money for conservation work to preserve the remains of this ancient Greek temple. Why do you think so much effort goes into conserving such traces of the past?

IDENTIFYING CONTINUITY AND CHANGE

- 3 Today we live in a world where people are sometimes killed over differences in religion. How might a knowledge of history help bring understanding between different religions?
- 4 Fill in the spaces in the following passage by choosing words from the box below.

civilisations beliefs cultures events research

Historians conduct _____ into past _____, _____ and societies. Historians try to build up a picture of the ideas and _____ of people in the past, how they lived and acted and how their lives were shaped by _____.

- 5 What can we gain from understanding our heritage?
- 6 Explain what you understand to be the difference between fact and opinion. Give an example from your own experience.

DETERMINING HISTORICAL SIGNIFICANCE

- 7 Suggest why any one of the following possible events might have historical significance in the future for a historian researching and writing about the age we are living in.
 - a There was an increase in the number of Australians who did not practice religion.
 - b Inequality (the gap between rich and poor) increased in Australia.
 - c The Australian Government took in more refugees.

1.3 Ages, time and chronology

1.3.1 Dividing the past

At Year 7 level we will be investigating **prehistory** and **ancient history**. Because prehistory covers many tens of thousands of years, we usually describe prehistoric changes over millennia (blocks of

1000 years). Historians studying later times sometimes concentrate on particular centuries (blocks of 100 years) or even decades (blocks of 10 years).

To make sense of the past we divide it into ages or periods that have something in common. Prehistory is the prehistoric period (the time before people invented writing as a means of recording activities and events). It ended at different times in different parts of the world. For example, in China it ended thousands of years ago, while in Australia it ended a little over 200 years ago. We also use the terms Stone Age, Bronze Age and Iron Age. These refer to materials that people had learned to shape into tools and weapons in prehistoric and ancient times. Ancient history covers the time from the earliest **civilisations** around 3000 BCE to around 650 CE.

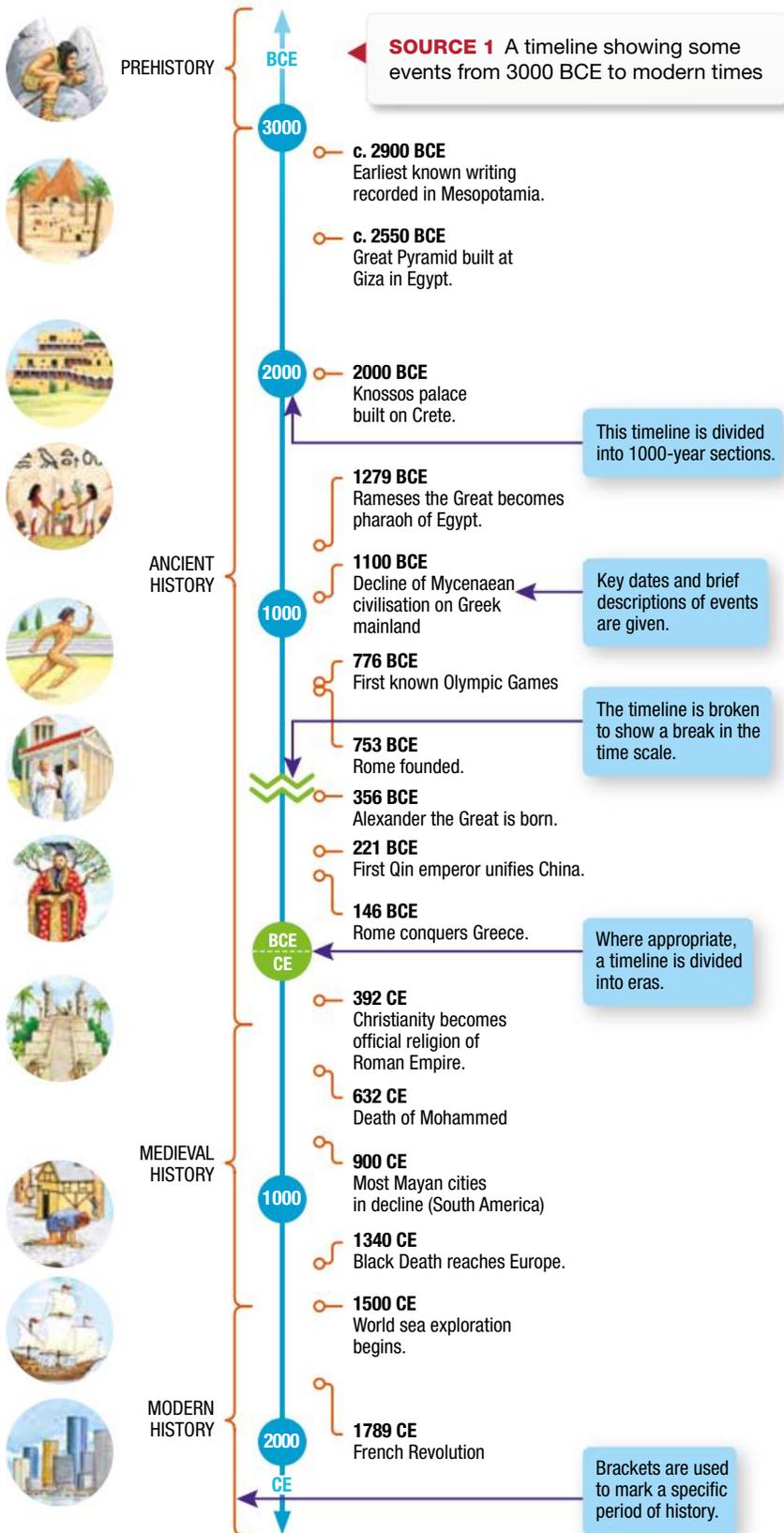
Counting time

In Australia, the system we have traditionally used to count years is one that was first used in Christian countries in AD 525. In this system, AD stands for **anno Domini** (Latin for 'in the year of our Lord'). The year AD 2012 means 2012 years since the birth of Christ. However, although this system is still commonly used throughout the world, many historians now use the term CE (Common Era) instead of AD. The dates are the same: 2012 CE is the same year as AD 2012. We count forward, so 50 years later the year would be AD 2062 (or 2062 CE).

BC means 'before Christ', and for these years we count backwards. Therefore, 500 BC would be 300 years earlier than 200 BC. Historians now commonly use the term BCE (Before Common Era) in place of BC.

BP and circa

In prehistory many dates are uncertain. It is common to use BP (Before the Present) to indicate about how long ago something happened. For dates BP, the year 1950 CE is agreed upon as 'the present'. When dates are uncertain we put 'c.' before them because it stands for *circa* (Latin for 'around').



To convert years BP to years BCE, it is close enough to simply subtract the current date and round it off. For example, in the year 2000 CE, a date of 8000 BP would be (8000 minus 2000) — that is, c. 6000 BCE.

Other ways of counting time

There are other ways to count time. For example, Islamic countries start counting from the time of the flight of the prophet Mohammed from Mecca. This occurred in the year Christian countries call 622 CE.

Chronological order and timelines

A story makes more sense if we start at the beginning and work towards the end. A timeline helps us to see how one event might have contributed to another. However, there is much more to history than putting events in order.

1.3.1 Activities

CHECK YOUR UNDERSTANDING

- 1 What is prehistory?
- 2 Explain how the prehistoric period differs from ancient times.

SEQUENCING CHRONOLOGY

- 3 The year 2016 is in the twenty-first century CE, so work out in which century each of the following years occurs: 705 CE, 1890 CE, 315 BCE.
- 4 Calculate the number of years between 195 BCE and 755 CE.
- 5 Write the meaning of the terms: millennia, centuries, decades, ages, BC, AD, BCE, CE and BP.

1.3 PUTTING IT ALL TOGETHER

SEQUENCING CHRONOLOGY

- 1 Look closely at **SOURCE 1**, the timeline. Use it to find dates for the earliest known writing and the first known Olympic Games.
- 2 Why do you think the date for the building of the Great Pyramid has 'c.' (for 'circa') before it?
- 3 Using **SOURCE 1** as a model, make a timeline of your life up to the present. On it, write the important events of your life. Use the terms AD or CE, century and decade. Then explain how your timeline helps you to present an overall picture of your life so far.

IDENTIFYING CONTINUITY AND CHANGE

- 4 We use the terms Stone Age, Bronze Age and Iron Age to refer to ages in which people used those materials as their most advanced materials. Work in small groups to suggest an appropriate name (based on materials) for the age in which we now live.

prehistory the period before writing was invented

ancient history the period from the beginning of civilisation to the fall of the Roman Empire

civilisation term used to describe societies that have towns and features such as complex forms of government and religion

anno Domini Latin for 'in the year of our Lord'

Latin the language of ancient Rome

DID YOU KNOW?

There is an easy way of getting it right with centuries. The first 100 years after the birth of Christ is called the first century CE. The first 100 years before the birth of Christ is called the first century BCE. To work out what century a date is in, you simply add one (1) to the number of hundreds in a date. So the year 2011 is in the twenty-first century CE. The year 705 BCE is in the eighth century BCE.

1.4 Detective work

1.4.1 Written sources and archaeological sources

All our evidence for the past comes from primary sources. These are sources that were created in the time we are investigating. Depending on the event and place, primary sources might include bones, stone tools, letters, newspapers, art, photographs or many other traces. For prehistory we have no written primary sources, but for most periods of history we can divide primary sources into written and archaeological sources.

Written primary sources can include such things as poems, songs, letters, myths and legends. They might have been written on paper, painted on stone walls or inscribed in stone, metal or clay in ancient languages.

Archaeological sources are objects that were made in the past. They include many kinds of **artefacts** such as tools, weapons, pottery, coins, games, toys and jewellery. Some artefacts have written sources inscribed on them. Archaeological sources also include works of art such as sculptures and paintings, and constructions such as tombs, temples and sometimes entire cities.

learn on

To access videos, interactivities, discussion widgets, image galleries, weblinks and more, go to www.jacplus.com.au

artefact an object made or changed by humans

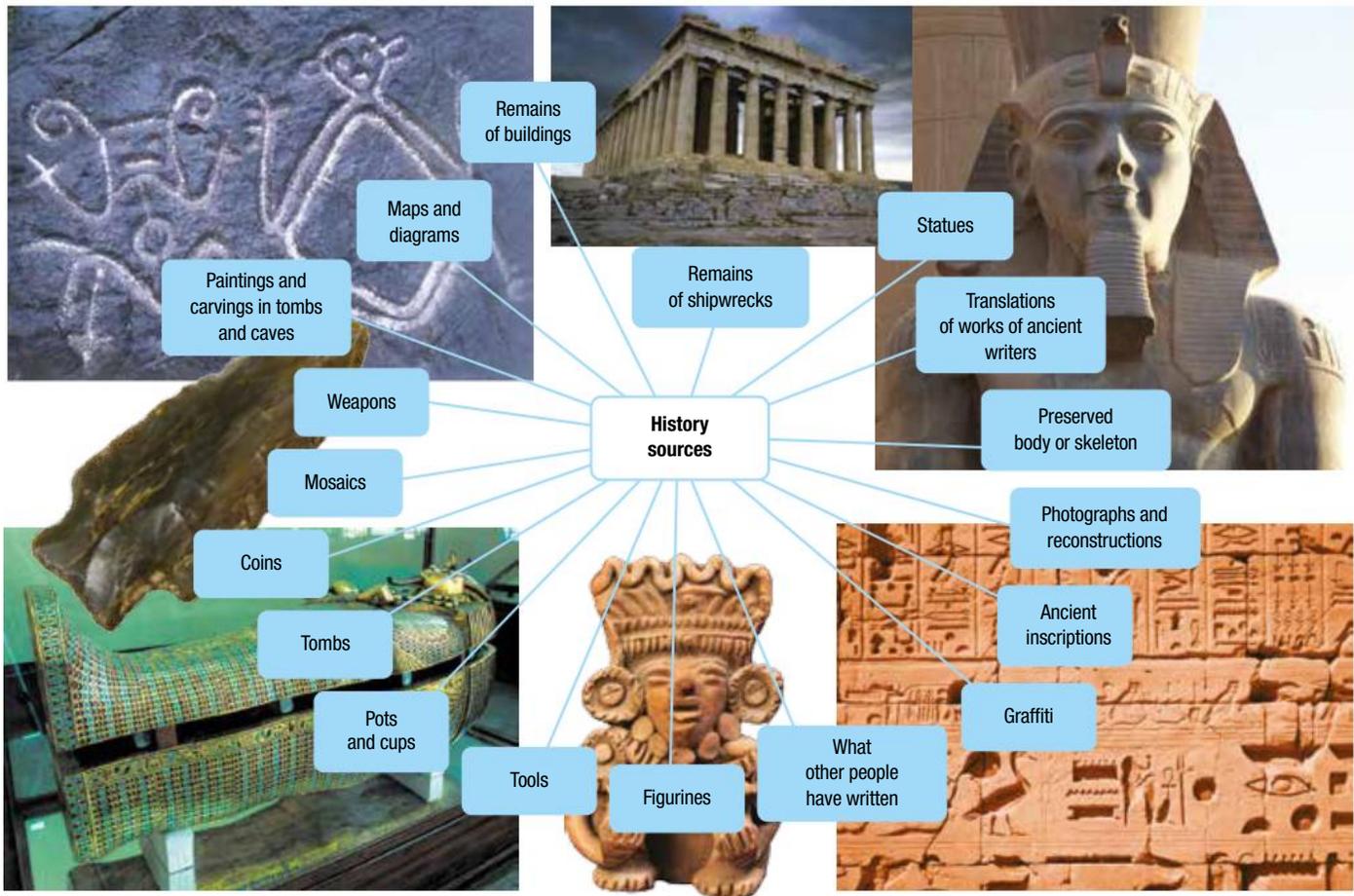
Can we trust our sources?

biased one-sided or prejudiced, seeing something from just one point of view

You may think that a written primary source should be reliable evidence because it was made at or around the time events occurred. But a source may be fact or someone's opinion — that is, it could be **biased**. One way to test sources for reliability is to compare them with other sources. If this evidence leads to the same conclusion, we call it supporting evidence. If it leads to different conclusions, we have contradictory evidence. When we use primary sources to try to find out about the past, we have to ask some questions. For example:

- Who created these sources and when were they created?
- What evidence do the sources provide?
- Can I trust my sources?

SOURCE 1 Some types of primary sources



1.4.1 Activities

CHECK YOUR UNDERSTANDING

- 1 What are primary sources?
- 2 Describe the difference between written primary sources and archaeological sources.

USING HISTORICAL SOURCES AS EVIDENCE

- 3 Explain what the term 'bias' means and why we might not be able to trust a primary source.
- 4 Describe a way to test primary sources for reliability.
- 5 Look at the mind map in **SOURCE 1** and describe each of the archaeological sources pictured around the mind map.
- 6 Suggest what we might learn about the past from old graffiti or one of the other types of primary sources listed in the mind map.

1.4.2 Interpreting the evidence

Forming a hypothesis

Using our primary source evidence, we form a **hypothesis** (a possible theory to explain what happened). To test the hypothesis we look for other evidence that supports it. We also look for evidence that contradicts it. We need to be careful. We have to ask: What other information do I need to support my theory?

Just as in the investigation of a modern crime, we look at what contributed to an event and how those things fit together. We ask questions that begin with who, what, where, when, how and why. In this way, history is like any other kind of investigation, but it is more difficult because there are often gaps in our evidence. We usually cannot find all the clues we need. It can be like trying to solve a jigsaw puzzle when many pieces have been lost.

hypothesis (plural: **hypotheses**) a theory or possible explanation

SOURCE 2 This ancient stone sculpture was made around 1000 BCE by people called Hittites in the Middle East. It depicts a storm god.



SOURCE 3 These prehistoric carvings on bone were found in France. They are about 11 000–18 000 years old.



Secondary sources

Secondary sources include books and articles. They can also include models, computer software and documentary films. Secondary sources are reconstructions of the past by people living at a later time. To create secondary sources, historians:

- locate information in primary sources
- interpret that information
- use it to explain what happened.

Archival research

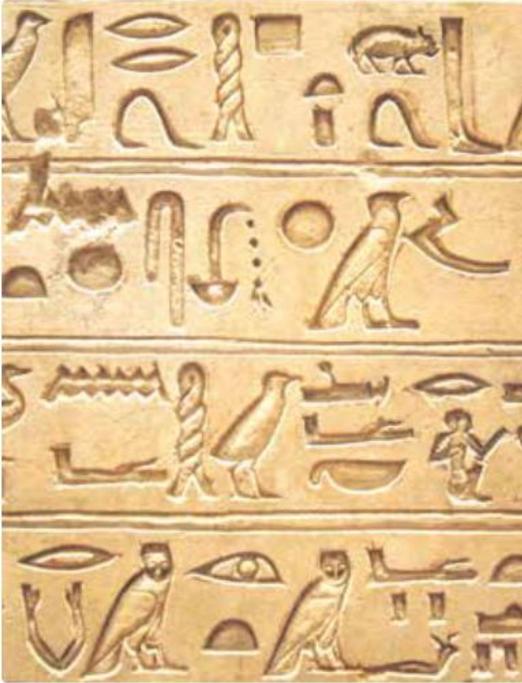
When historians research historical periods during which written records were kept, they often find many of their primary sources in archives. These are organised

megalithic made of large stones

SOURCE 4 Creevykeel **Megalithic** Tomb, a stone tomb built in County Sligo, Ireland, around 3000 BCE. The tomb has been excavated. The stone wall at the back is not part of the tomb.



SOURCE 5 Ancient Egyptian hieroglyphs in the Louvre Museum, Paris



contestability when particular interpretations of the past are open to debate

learn on

To access videos, interactivities, discussion widgets, image galleries, weblinks and more, go to www.jacplus.com.au

collections of records. For example, historians researching the history of Christianity in medieval times might carry out their research in the Vatican Archives. These records of the Roman Catholic Church are held at its headquarters in Rome.

Contestability

Wherever historians find their primary sources and whatever methods they use to test their hypotheses and interpret the past, there will always be differing interpretations that are debated and contested. The issue of **contestability** is a very important concept in the study of history. Historical debates are ongoing. They occur when, for example, there is a lack of evidence or when different perspectives (points of view) lead to different conclusions. There are ongoing debates on many things, including the causes of particular wars and the roles of particular individuals, groups and ideas in bringing about significant changes.

An example of contestability

There have been debates around how long Indigenous peoples have lived in Australia. Most historians believe that there is evidence that the human occupation of Australia began at least 40 000 years ago and possibly even as long as 60 000 years ago. However, when evidence was found suggesting a big increase in charcoal at Lake George, near Canberra, around 100 000 years ago, one scientist used it to argue that it must have been caused by Indigenous people burning the bush at that time. Other scientists and historians concluded that the charcoal was more likely to have been caused by fires started by lightning strikes. In later subtopics, as you find other examples of contestability, you will see that there is very often more than one way to interpret the evidence from the past.

1.4.2 Activities

CHECK YOUR UNDERSTANDING

- 1 What is a secondary source?
- 2 How do historians create secondary sources?
- 3 Complete the following sentences:
 - a Archives are organised _____ of _____ sources.
 - b A hypothesis is a _____ that has to be tested by looking for _____ that might support it and _____ that might contradict it.

USING HISTORICAL SOURCES AS EVIDENCE

- 4 Form a hypothesis that might explain why either **SOURCE 2** or **SOURCE 3** was made and suggest what other evidence you would need to test your hypothesis.
- 5 Why might it be wrong to use **SOURCE 5** as evidence for a hypothesis that most ancient Egyptians could read and write?
- 6 Look at the tomb in **SOURCE 4**. Working in small groups:
 - a Describe the main features of Creevykeel Megalithic Tomb.
 - b Make up five questions a historian could ask to guide an investigation of this tomb.

1.4 PUTTING IT ALL TOGETHER

USING HISTORICAL SOURCES AS EVIDENCE

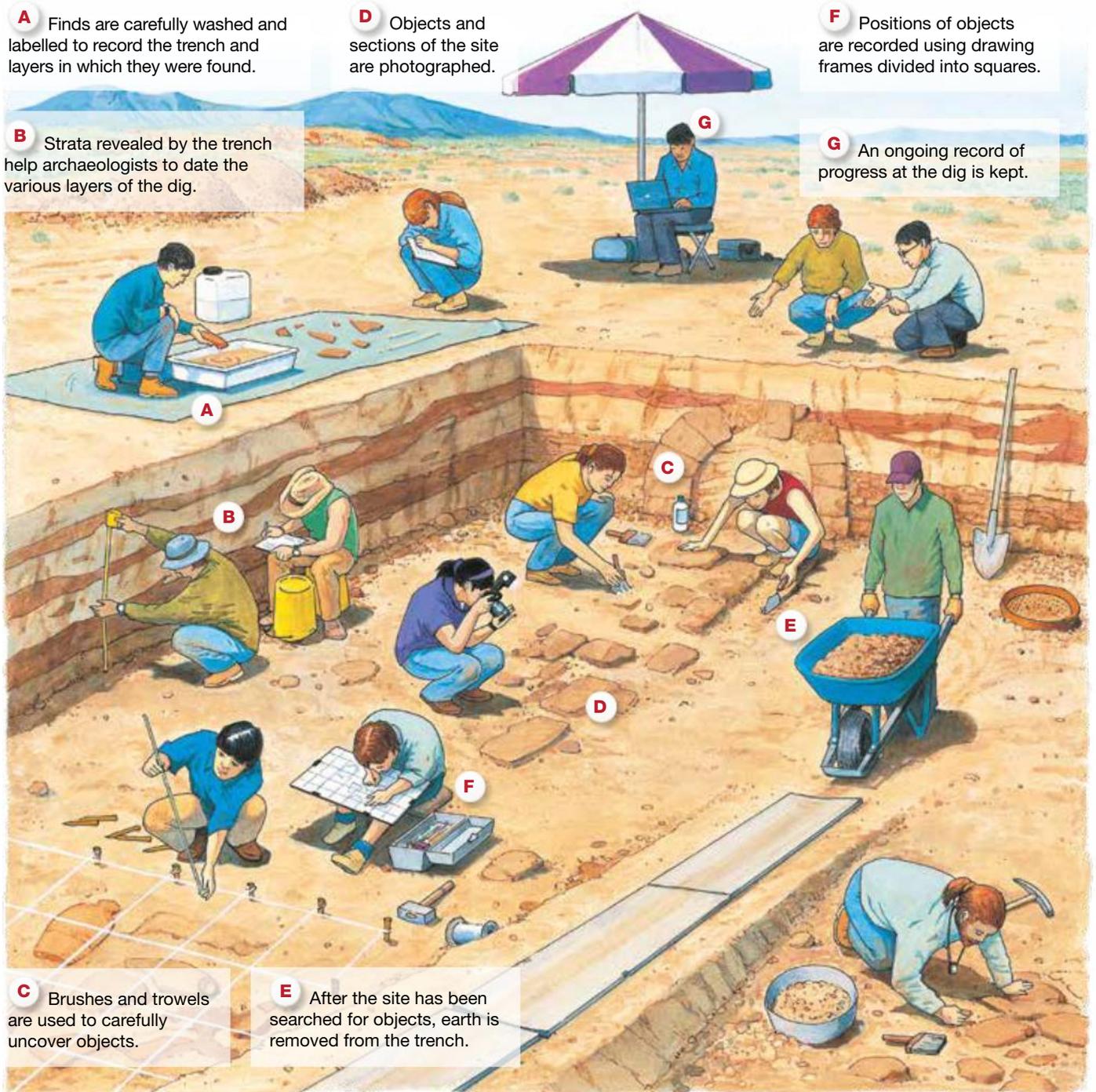
- 1 Why would it be wrong to think that primary sources are more reliable than secondary sources?
- 2 Make a list of some kinds of primary sources that could be used to create a history of your school (a secondary source). Beside each source in your list, write down what you think you could find out by using it as evidence.
- 3 Consider the issue of contestability.
 - a For about how long do most archaeologists and historians believe Indigenous peoples have lived in Australia?
 - b What evidence was used to support a theory that they had been in Australia much longer and why did other scientists and historians dismiss this interpretation?

1.5 Evidence from archaeology

1.5.1 Digging up the past

Historians often draw on the work of other experts. Archaeologists are most important among these experts. Archaeologists examine the physical remains of the past; they collect or record and interpret them. Sometimes we already know where to find such archaeological sources. Examples include sites such as the pyramids in Egypt and the Great Wall of China. Very often, however, archaeologists have to dig to find evidence of the past. Generally, the older the site, the deeper the dig has to be.

SOURCE 1 Activities at an archaeological dig



A Finds are carefully washed and labelled to record the trench and layers in which they were found.

D Objects and sections of the site are photographed.

F Positions of objects are recorded using drawing frames divided into squares.

B Strata revealed by the trench help archaeologists to date the various layers of the dig.

G An ongoing record of progress at the dig is kept.

C Brushes and trowels are used to carefully uncover objects.

E After the site has been searched for objects, earth is removed from the trench.

DID YOU KNOW?

For investigations of prehistoric and ancient times, historians and archaeologists also use important information from other scientists. Anthropologists study human behaviour, especially in tribal societies. Their findings help historians to understand past societies. Palaeontologists study fossils (traces of humans and animals from prehistoric times). Cryptographers specialise in breaking codes. Their skills have helped us to decipher and read some ancient languages.

Deciding where to dig

The first decision archaeologists have to make is where to dig for remains of past times. Many remains are buried over time by wind-blown sands, sediments from floods or volcanic ash. Some remains are hidden but there may be clues to their whereabouts in sources such as old documents. Caves are likely places in which to look, and so are mounds of earth or other features that suggest that humans have changed the landscape (see **SOURCE 2**). Sometimes ancient remains are found purely by accident.

Modern archaeologists also use a number of scientific techniques. Aerial and satellite photography can locate patches of earth that have different temperatures or different vegetation caused by buried settlements or tombs. Sonar equipment can be used to locate relics, including sunken boats, that lie beneath seas.

SOURCE 2 Mounds called barrows were made in England in prehistoric times. They were usually the burial place of a chief or king.



SOURCE 3 Remains of a ditch called a moat that was dug around a castle at Old Sarum in England in the eleventh century CE



DID YOU KNOW?

When archaeology began in the eighteenth century, some archaeologists were wealthy amateurs. They had no real training, and some of their expeditions destroyed more than they saved when they dug up ancient treasures. Among the greatest of all twentieth-century scientific archaeologists was an Australian, Vere Gordon Childe (1892–1957). He became a leader in the archaeology of prehistoric times.

learn on

To access videos, interactivities, discussion widgets, image galleries, weblinks and more, go to www.jacplus.com.au

Excavating remains

Once the site for an excavation, or dig, has been decided there are several steps to follow. Archaeologists have to obtain permission to dig from the government of the country in which the site is located. They then survey the site, marking it out in squares with pegs and strings. When digging commences the archaeologists must be careful not to damage remains. The remains might be close to the surface. But in sites that have been occupied for a long time there can be several layers of remains. These layers are called strata and the oldest remains will normally be in the deepest strata. As they remove earth, the archaeological team searches carefully for remains. They label each find to record the square and level in which it was found.

Help from other scientists

Other scientific experts and new technologies are frequently used to help archaeologists to interpret their finds. Such experts include forensic pathologists who examine human remains to find evidence of what people ate and what might have caused their deaths. Technologies include computer programs that can analyse remains of buildings to create 3D images suggesting how they once looked.

1.5.1 Activities

CHECK YOUR UNDERSTANDING

- 1 What three tasks describe the main work of archaeologists?
- 2 List the kinds of clues that help archaeologists to decide where to dig.
- 3 Name two technologies that help archaeologists to locate sites for digs.

USING HISTORICAL SOURCES AS EVIDENCE

- 4 Write descriptions of four activities that people are performing in **SOURCE 1**.
- 5 Examine **SOURCES 2** and **3**.
 - a Describe what you see in each photograph.
 - b Explain why it is obvious that humans did something to change the landscape shown in each photograph.
 - c What might an archaeologist expect to find on a dig at either of these sites?

1.5.2 Survival by chance

Only some archaeological traces of the distant past have survived. Many more have been destroyed by a range of causes. These include:

- demolition and rebuilding
- natural decay and erosion by wind, rain and floods
- theft. Almost all of the tombs of the Egyptian pharaohs were robbed of their treasures in ancient times.
- war. Many ancient towns and cities were smashed and burned in wars.

1.5.2 Activities

CHECK YOUR UNDERSTANDING

- 1 List two causes of destruction of archaeological traces.
- 2 What kinds of archaeological traces would be most likely to be lost through theft?

1.5.3 Clues from pottery

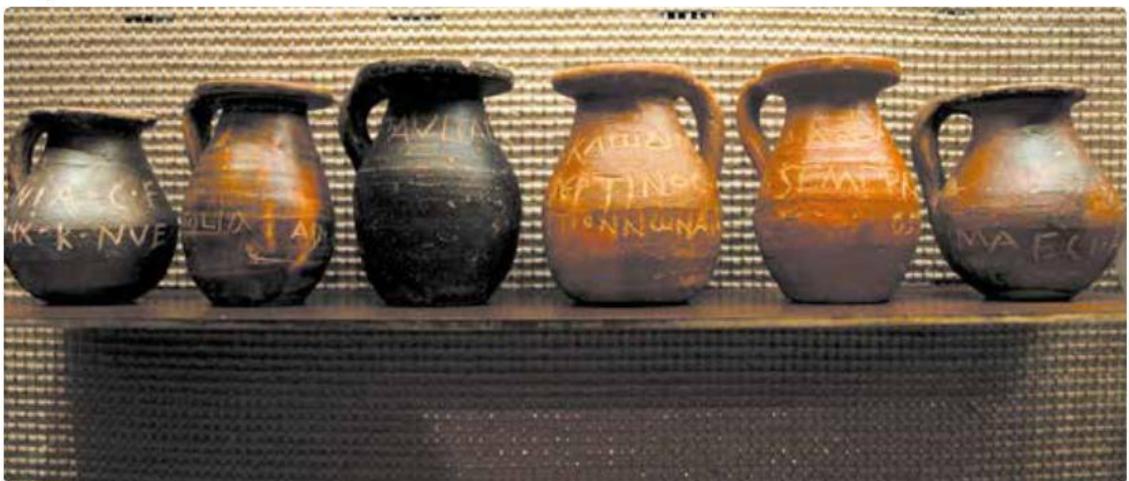
One of the most common and important sources of archaeological evidence is pottery. Pottery is made by shaping wet clay and then baking the clay so that it hardens and keeps the shape the potter has given it. Pottery has been made for about 10 000 years in much of East Asia, the Middle East and the Mediterranean region. It was used in much the same way that we use glass and plastic bottles and jars today — mainly for holding and storing food and drinks. There is a lot of evidence from pottery because people threw away their broken pots. The broken pieces are called sherds and even small pieces can help in building up a picture of the past. Archaeologists have named some prehistoric people after the style of pottery they made.

Particular pottery styles can be identified with different ages. For example, in one period a typical container made of pottery might have a long neck but no handles. In another age a typical style might have a short neck and a handle. Such differences help archaeologists to compare pottery from different sites to decide whether they are likely to belong to the same age or to a different time. Further clues are provided by decoration. Some vases, jugs, urns and bowls were engraved or painted with scenes showing the customs, work, stories and beliefs of the societies that produced them.

SOURCE 4 Painted pottery from ancient Greece, sixteenth or fifteenth century BCE



SOURCE 5 Small pottery vases found together in Rome. They are from the first century BCE. Each contains a small piece of bone from a dead person, and each has an inscription stating the person's name and date of death.



1.5.3 Activities

CHECK YOUR UNDERSTANDING

- 1 What did people do with broken pottery in ancient times?
- 2 Why is pottery such an important source of evidence for archaeologists?

USING HISTORICAL SOURCES AS EVIDENCE

- 3 Look closely at the details in **SOURCES 4** and **5**. Use these details and information in the captions to form a hypothesis about each of the civilisations that made these items.

1.5 PUTTING IT ALL TOGETHER

USING HISTORICAL SOURCES AS EVIDENCE

- 1 Imagine you are one of the people in **SOURCE 1** and that the site you are excavating is thought to be the remains of a city that was destroyed in an ancient war. Describe in a diary entry your feelings about your day's work, what you might hope to find and what you might actually have found.

IDENTIFYING CONTINUITY AND CHANGE

- 2 Working in small groups, list reasons why there would usually be more archaeological evidence from ancient times than from prehistoric times.

1.6 How old is it?

1.6.1 Dating techniques

Archaeologists are finding evidence of our past all the time. Before we can assess what the source of evidence tells us about past human activity, we need to know how old the source is. Being able to date evidence allows historians to place events and human behaviours in time order. It also helps to identify any links between past groups of people. Sometimes it allows experts to detect fakes.

Some dating methods will not reveal how old something is — just whether it is older or younger than something else. These methods are called **relative dating techniques**. Two of these are stratigraphy and fluorine dating.

Stratigraphy is the study of the different **strata** or layers revealed when a slice is cut down through the earth.

The longer that bones lie in the earth, the more fluorine they absorb from the soil. So the more fluorine it has, the older the bone. Fluorine testing was used to expose one of the most famous scientific frauds in history — the Piltdown Man. For 41 years the skull of this so-called creature had been accepted as firm evidence of the 'missing link' between ape and man. Fluorine testing conducted in 1953 found that the top section of the skull was much older than the jawbone and teeth. It was then revealed that the remains of a human skull had been carefully joined with those of a chimpanzee. It is still a mystery who set up this amazing fraud.

What's its age?

Absolute dating techniques are used to work out the actual age of something or someone. Archaeologists combine these with relative dating techniques. For example, if absolute dating techniques prove that an object is 1000 years old, and the object was found in a particular stratum (or layer), then archaeologists can generally assume that any objects found in strata below this will be more than 1000 years old.

There are many different absolute dating techniques.

Radiocarbon dating

All living things absorb C14, which is a radioactive form of carbon. This chemical process stops when the human, plant or animal dies. Then any C14 in the once-living tissue starts to decay. Scientists know the rate at which C14 breaks down. By working out how much of it still remains, they can work backwards to establish the likely date of death, and hence the approximate age.

learn on

To access videos, interactivities, discussion widgets, image galleries, weblinks and more, go to www.jacplus.com.au

relative dating techniques methods used to assess whether something is older than something else (e.g. stratigraphy, fluorine dating)

strata (singular: **stratum**) distinct layers of material beneath the ground, built up over time, that provide information for archaeologists and geologists

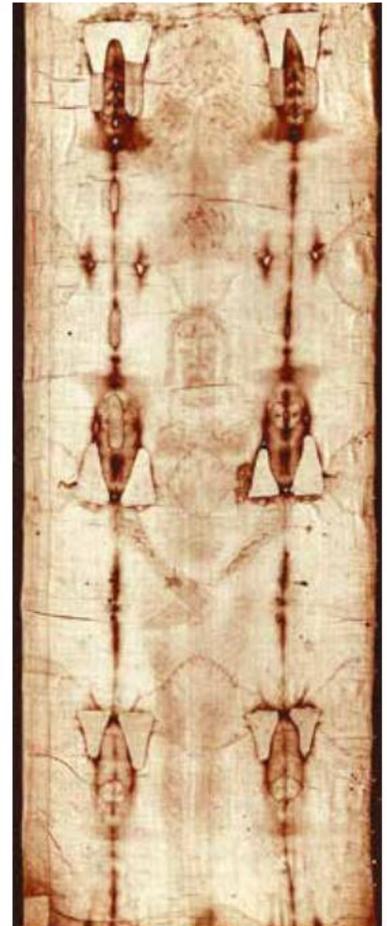
absolute dating techniques methods used to assess the age of something (e.g. radiocarbon dating, tree-ring dating)

SOURCE 1 Limitations of radiocarbon dating

This diagram indicates different types of objects that might be found during the excavation of a site that has been occupied over thousands of years. Radiocarbon dating gives approximate dates before the present. There is a 95 per cent chance that the true date falls within 200 years either side of any estimated radiocarbon-dated age. However, radiocarbon dating cannot date anything that died more than about 40 000 years ago. In such remains there will not be enough C14 left for radiocarbon dating to work. Artefacts such as stone tools cannot be dated this way because they were never alive. But if they were found alongside a layer of plant remains or charcoal, that material could be dated, and the age of the tools would probably be similar.



SOURCE 2 One famous object that has been radiocarbon dated is the Shroud of Turin — said by some to be the cloth in which Christ was wrapped after his crucifixion. These tests, carried out in the late 1980s, indicated the cloth was only around 700 years old. Then further tests were done. These proved that only the bacteria and mould on the cloth were around 700 years old. The mystery continues. Written records confirm the cloth did exist in 1357.



1.6.1 Activities

CHECK YOUR UNDERSTANDING

- 1 What are strata?
- 2 Will objects found in a lower stratum be older or newer than those found in a higher stratum?
- 3 What is radiocarbon dating, and how can knowing the rate at which C14 breaks down help in finding out the likely age of any once-living remains?

USING HISTORICAL SOURCES AS EVIDENCE

- 4 Look at the artefacts illustrated in **SOURCE 1**. Describe the kinds of changes that must have happened in ways people lived at this site over many ages.
- 5 Examine **SOURCE 2** and use the internet to find out why the Shroud of Turin is still regarded by many people as something of great historical significance.

1.6.2 Tree rings tell stories about the past

What might seem like one of the strangest of all dating methods involves using tree rings and so we call it tree-ring dating. The scientific name for this method is dendrochronology. All trees have tree rings and they can help with dating old objects. But the technique only works if the objects were made of wood. The age of a tree is worked out by counting the number of rings in the wood. A new ring is formed every year in a tree's life. The width and shape of each ring depend on environmental conditions such as rainfall and soil type. All trees of the same type growing in the same area will have the same environmental conditions, so the pattern of their growth rings will be very similar.

Sometimes the age of wooden items such as spear handles and roof beams can be worked out by matching the growth rings in the wood with those in a dated sample from trees in the same area — as long as they are of the same species.

SOURCE 3 Tree growth rings



1.6.2 Activities

CHECK YOUR UNDERSTANDING

- 1 What is another name for dendrochronology (see **SOURCE 3**)?
- 2 How might dendrochronology help in finding out the age of wooden objects?

1.6 PUTTING IT ALL TOGETHER

USING HISTORICAL SOURCES AS EVIDENCE

- 1 Design a mind map, like the one in 1.4.1, **SOURCE 1** to represent the technologies that help archaeologists to date the sources of evidence that they discover.

IDENTIFYING CONTINUITY AND CHANGE

- 2 Imagine you are an archaeologist investigating a recently discovered ancient site. You have found pottery, books, wooden furniture and bones. Identify and describe the dating techniques you could use to work out the ages of each item and which of them is older than others in order to discover what changed over the centuries during which the site was occupied.

DID YOU KNOW?

In recent years, DNA evidence has become another important scientific method for discovering information that can be used by archaeologists and historians. DNA samples can tell us who people's ancestors were. Using DNA analysis, scientists have found that the ancestors of all modern humans came from Africa (see topic 2 The ancient world: c. 60 000 BCE to c. 650 CE).

1.7 Perspectives and empathy

learn on

To access videos, interactivities, discussion widgets, image galleries, weblinks and more, go to www.jacplus.com.au

1.7.1 Understanding how they thought and felt

It is very important for historians to empathise with those they study. This means trying to understand how people thought and felt at different times in the past. At different points throughout this book you will be asked to put yourself in the situation of someone in the past. This is not a creative writing task, in which you can let your imagination run wild. Rather, you will be using historical imagination. This requires using your imagination, but basing your ideas on evidence.

We try to understand the perspectives of people in the past through exploring their points of view, attitudes and values. Often we can get a sense of the way people thought and felt through primary sources such as diaries or through visiting museums and historical sites. Using empathy, we work with all the evidence we have in order to imagine what the past was like for people who were there at the time. We need to consider such questions as:

- Who were these people?
- Where did they live?
- How did they live?
- What mattered to them?
- What did they believe in?
- What did they see, hear, taste, smell and feel?
- What did they fear and what did they hope for?
- Did they have feelings similar to or different from ours?
- Did they all think and feel the same as one another, or did they have differing **perspectives**?

perspective point of view or attitude

How should we judge people in the past?

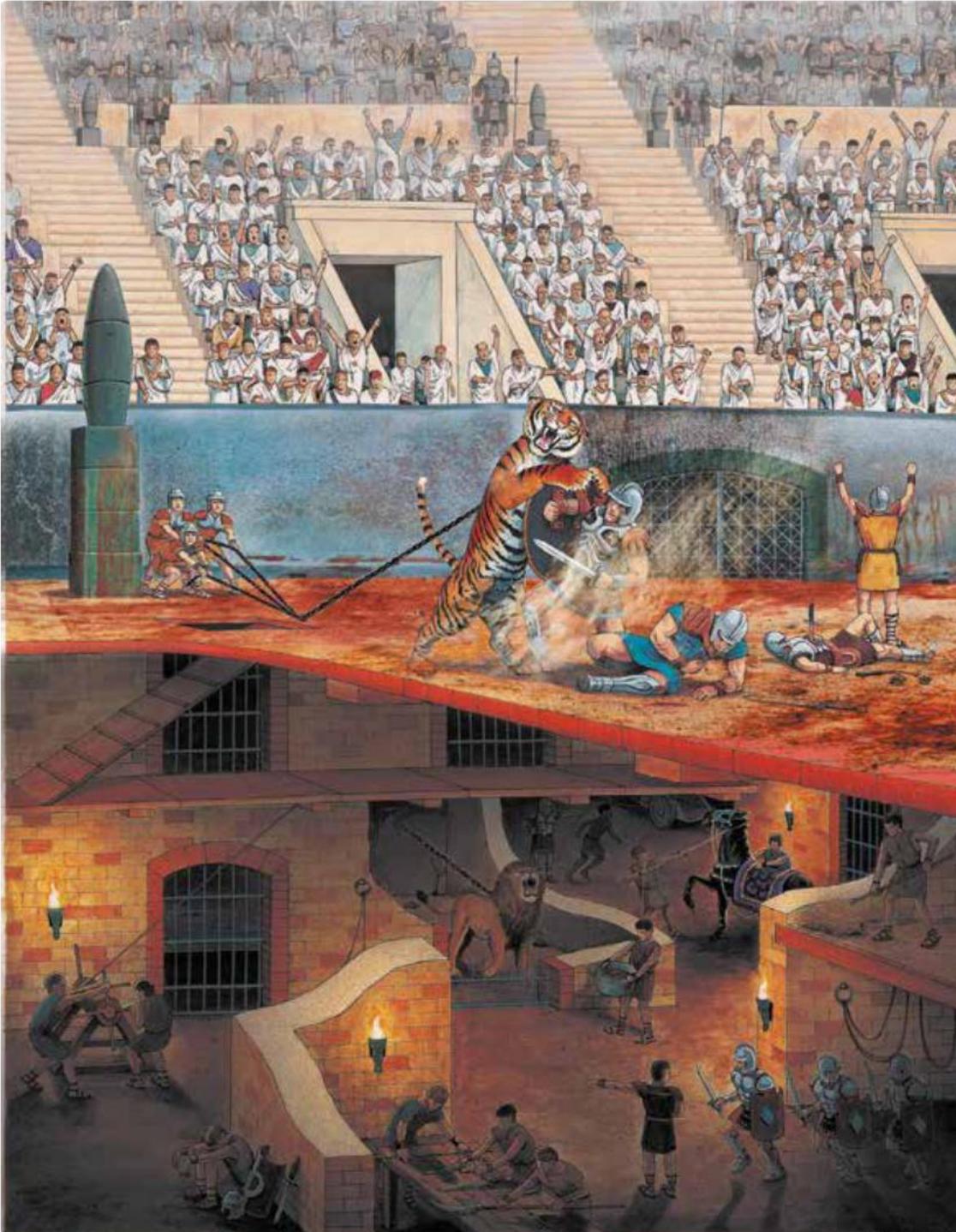
When we learn about some of the things people did in the past, it is natural that we make moral judgements. For example, we naturally see slavery and torture as cruel. What we should try to avoid is judging people in the past by beliefs or standards that did not exist in their time. It

SOURCE 1 The ruins of the Colosseum in Rome



would be wrong, for example, to judge a Roman army officer as being particularly cruel because he allowed his prisoners of war to be sold as slaves. At that time he would have been upholding the laws and attitudes of his society. However, some ancient Romans were cruel even by the standards of their own time. We should also remember that in the future, people may think that many kinds of behaviour we consider normal are, by their standards, wrong.

SOURCE 2 The Colosseum was a vast amphitheatre in ancient Rome. To entertain Roman crowds, slaves trained to be gladiators were forced to fight, often to the death, against other gladiators or against wild animals that had been tormented to make them ferocious. Most gladiators were men but at least a few were young women. This artwork shows what happened below the arena as well as what happened above ground.



1.7.1 Activities

CHECK YOUR UNDERSTANDING

- 1 What does it mean to empathise with people you study?
- 2 How is empathy different from sympathy?
- 3 How is historical imagination different to just letting your imagination run wild?
- 4 Why could it be wrong to judge people from past times by the standards of our times?

USING HISTORICAL SOURCES AS EVIDENCE

- 5 Examine **SOURCE 1**.
 - a Discuss whether the Colosseum's bloody past is what makes it such a big tourist attraction.
 - b How do you think modern visitors to the Colosseum feel about its cruel past?
 - c How would you explain such changes in attitudes over time?

1.7 PUTTING IT ALL TOGETHER

USING HISTORICAL SOURCES AS EVIDENCE

- 1 Imagine you are one of the gladiators shown in **SOURCE 2** and describe:
 - a what you can see, hear, taste and smell
 - b how you feel about what you are doing and your chances of survival
 - c how you feel about your opponent who, like yourself, is only doing what he is forced to do
 - d what you feel about the crowd that is cheering for you to kill or to be killed.
- 2 Imagine you are one of the soldiers guarding the arena or forcing gladiators up from the tunnels and cages below. Would you be likely to consider what you are doing immoral or would you accept it as 'the way things are'?

- 3 Not all ancient Romans liked watching gladiators fight, but many did. What do you think most of the crowd would be feeling?

IDENTIFYING CONTINUITY AND CHANGE

- 4 Working in small groups, think of something that happens in our own time that some people believe is wrong. An example could be the way some countries are wealthy while in others children die of starvation and preventable diseases. Do you think that at some time in the future people might consider ours to have been an unjust age? Report back to the class and give reasons for your answer.

1.8 SkillBuilder: Sequencing events in chronological order

online only

What is a timeline?

A timeline is a diagrammatic tool for placing events in chronological order (the order in which they happened).



Go to your learnON course to access:

- An explanation of the skill (Tell me)
- A step-by-step process to develop the skill, with an example (Show me)
- An activity to allow you to practise the skill (Let me do it)
- Questions to test your application of the skill (Applying skills)

1.9 Review

online only

This final subtopic provides a range of opportunities for you to review and respond through:

- i revising and checking your historical knowledge
- ii demonstrating your ability to apply historical concepts and skills.

Go to your learnON course to access:

- A key chronology of events relevant to the topic
- A summary of the key knowledge presented in the topic
- A 'Big Questions' activity
- A multiple choice topic test
- Short answer or extended writing responses



on Resources

Interactivity

Time out: Sources

Identify whether a series of artefacts are primary or secondary sources.

int-0782

Interactivity

World history timeline

Create a visual timeline of key events in the history of the world

int-2932

1.8 SkillBuilder: Sequencing events in chronological order

1.8.1 Tell me

What is a timeline?

A timeline is a diagrammatic tool for placing events in *chronological order* (the order in which they happened). A simple **chronology** would be one, for example, that showed in sequence, or time order, key events of a day in your life.

Why are timelines useful?

Timelines are useful because they can help us make sense of events in the past. Timelines are particularly useful in the study of history. Creating a history timeline will help to:

- understand the order in which events occurred
- describe the time distances between events
- identify what has changed over time
- identify what has stayed the same over time
- analyse how one event might relate to other events
- compare what might have been happening in different places at the same time
- assess if one event might have led to another event (cause and effect).

Generally, timelines are constructed using a sequence of dates with the addition of descriptive labels. The timeline may span thousands of years (see **SOURCE 2**) or cover a very short period (see **SOURCE 3**). In print, timelines may be as simple as a horizontal or vertical line, or highly visual with use of colour and images. Using digital technology, online timelines can be interactive, where users can click on a date and see a descriptive label, an image or even hear an audio narrative or sound effects.

SOURCES 2, 3, 4, 5 and **6** show some examples of highly visual timelines that could be presented in printed history text books.

chronology a record of past events in order of time, from Latin *chronos* meaning time and *logos*, meaning to work out

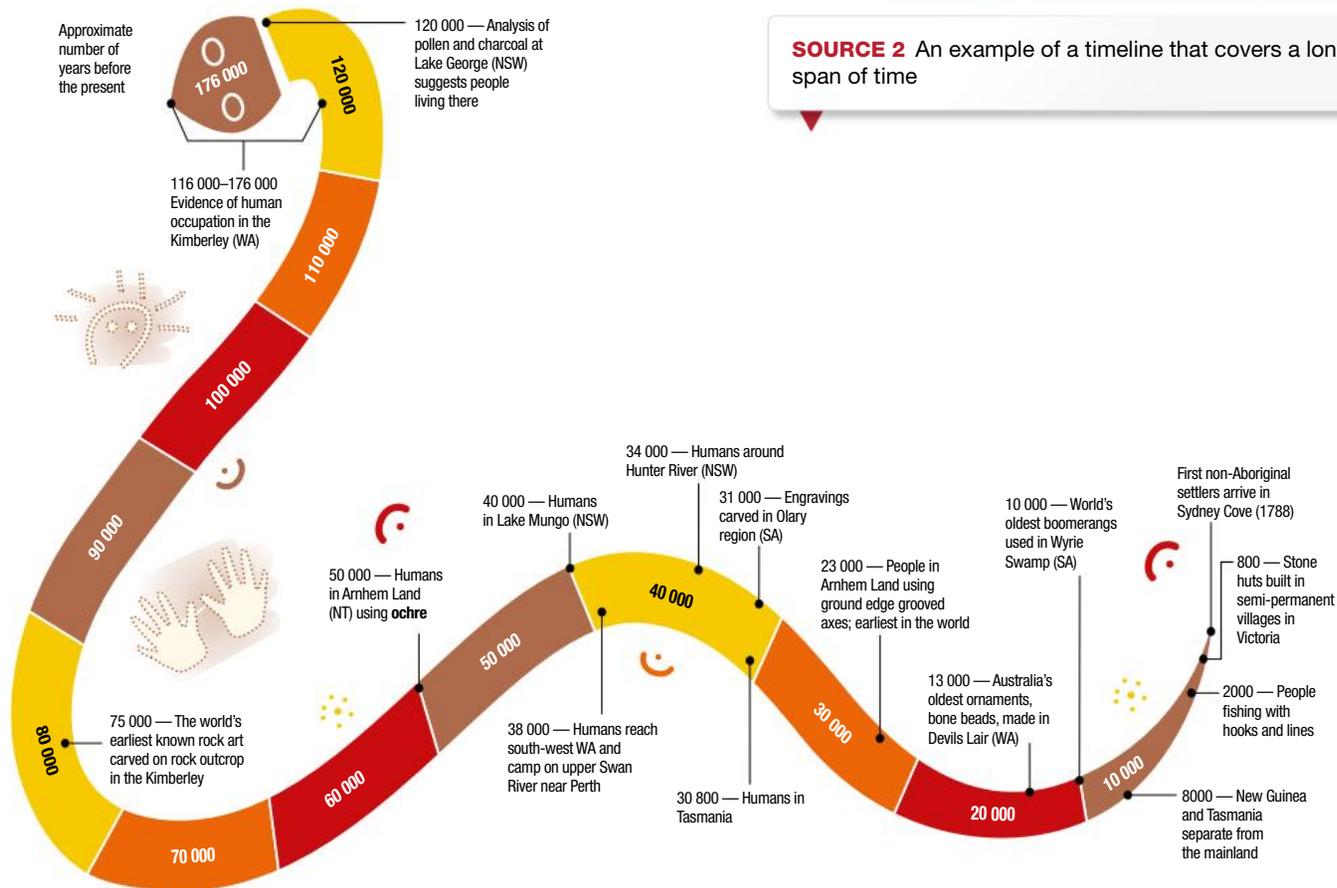
SOURCE 1 A simple chronology

DIARY AND WORK RECORD	
8	0800
9	0900
10	1000
11	1100
12	1200
1	1300
2	1400
3	1500
4	1600
5	1700
6	1800

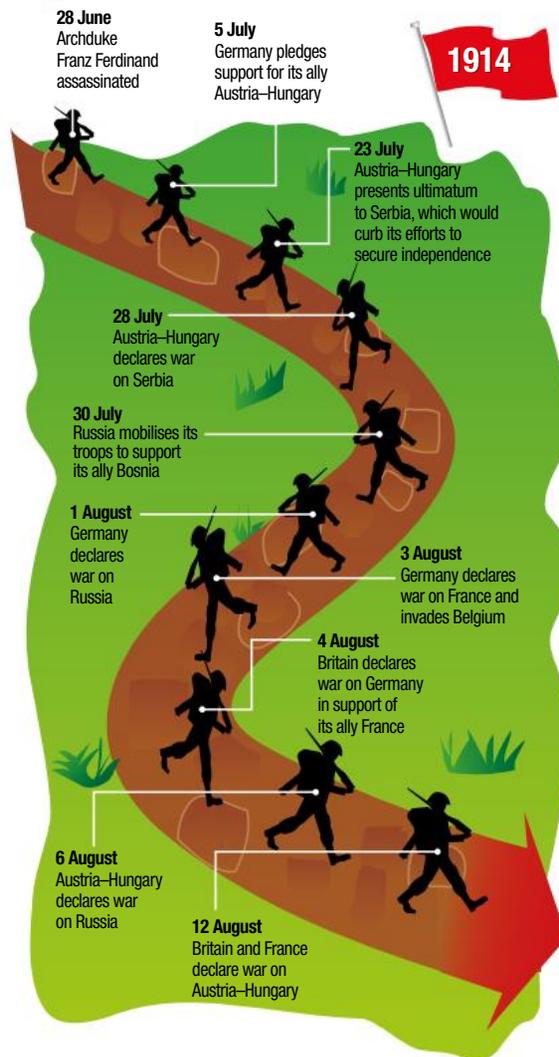
Handwritten entries in the table:

- 9: Tennis lessons
- 11: Haircut
- 1: Punch with Luke
- 4: Homework - Geography assignment

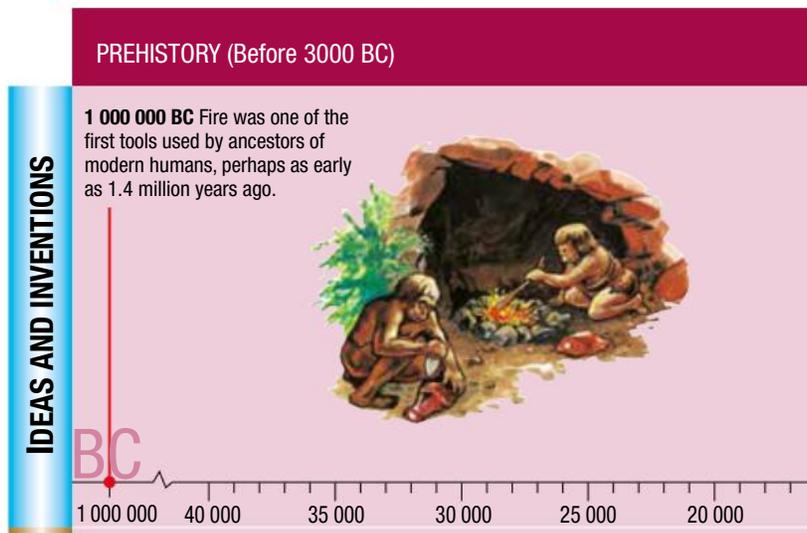
SOURCE 2 An example of a timeline that covers a long span of time



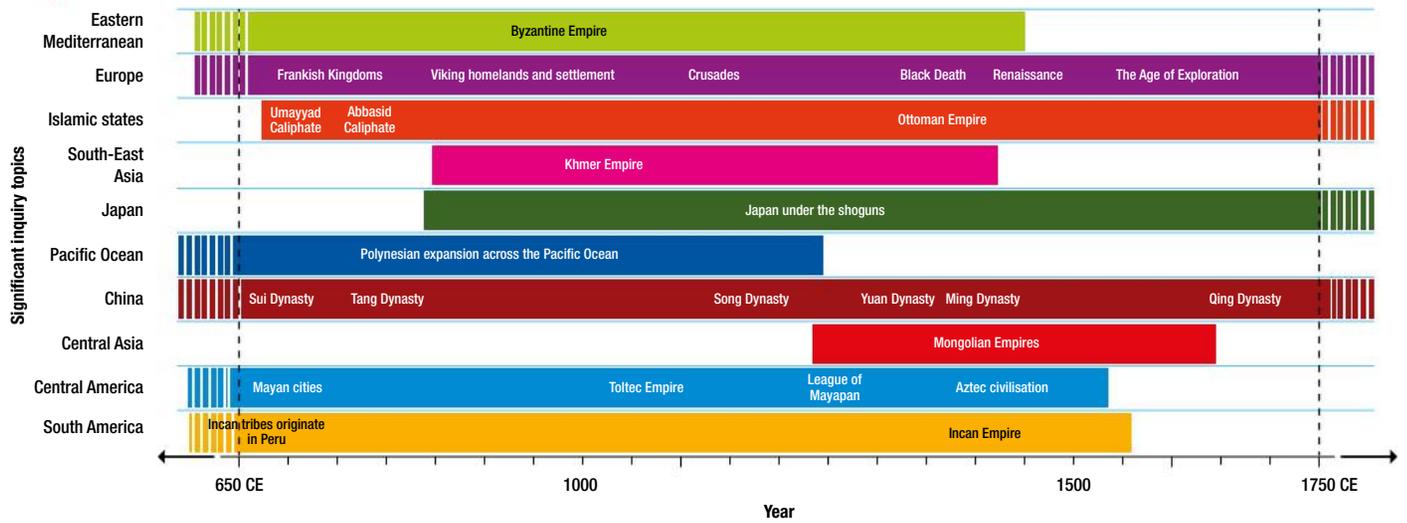
SOURCE 3 An example of a timeline that covers a short span of time



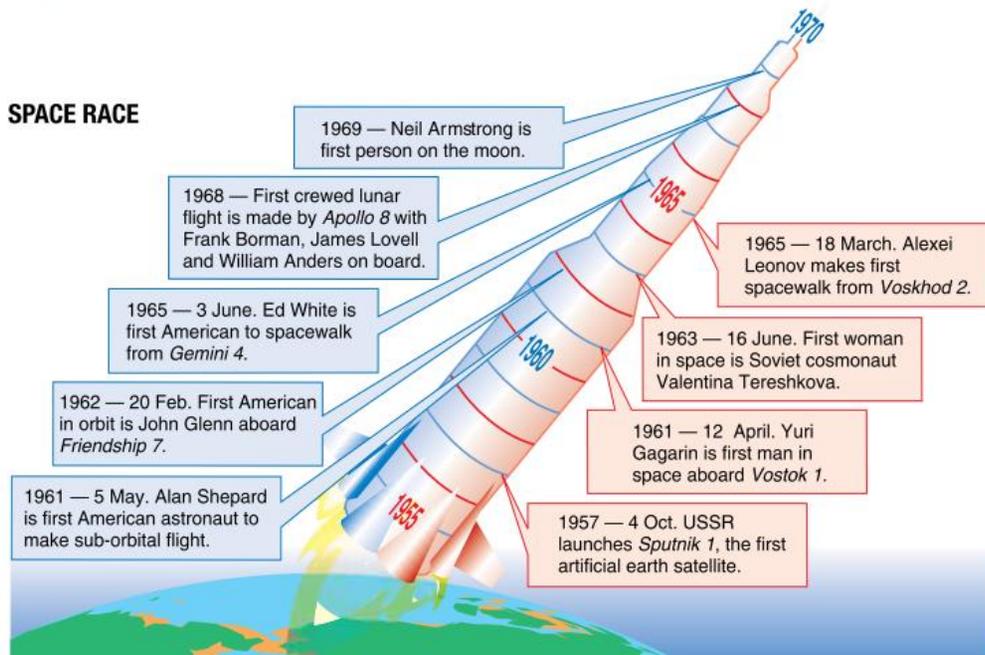
SOURCE 4 An extract from a timeline that provides some illustrative material to accompany descriptive text labels



SOURCE 5 An example of a horizontal timeline that uses coloured bars to compare significant events in different places at the same point in time



SOURCE 6 An example of a timeline that uses a drawing of an object related to the subject or theme of the timeline



1.8.2 Show me

How to create a timeline

Timelines can cover very short or very long periods of time.

- They can focus on just a few months or years.
- They can focus on big, sweeping changes over thousands of years.
- In most cases, they are divided up into equal blocks of time, such as decades or centuries. This is not essential but it helps us to see not only the order of events but how close or how far apart they were.
- A break in the timeline (using a zig zag line, for instance) can show a long span of time between one date and the next.
- To make equal blocks of time you need to use a scale — for example, 1 centimetre = 10 years.
- Timelines can be horizontal (across the page) with the earliest dates on the left and later dates to the right.
- Alternatively they can be vertical (down the page), in which case the dates usually run from the earliest at the top to the latest at the bottom.
- Often we have only approximate dates for events in ancient history. In those cases, we put 'c.' in front of the date. It stands for the Latin word *circa*, which is Latin for 'around' or 'about'.

Step 1

Study the example on the right. Look at the way this timeline has been constructed.

- It is a vertical timeline.
- It has been divided into centuries.
- A scale of 1 centimetre = 1 century has been used.

Step 2

Make sure your completed timeline has a clear title.

The title should state:

- the time period covered
- the subject or theme
- the beginning and end dates.

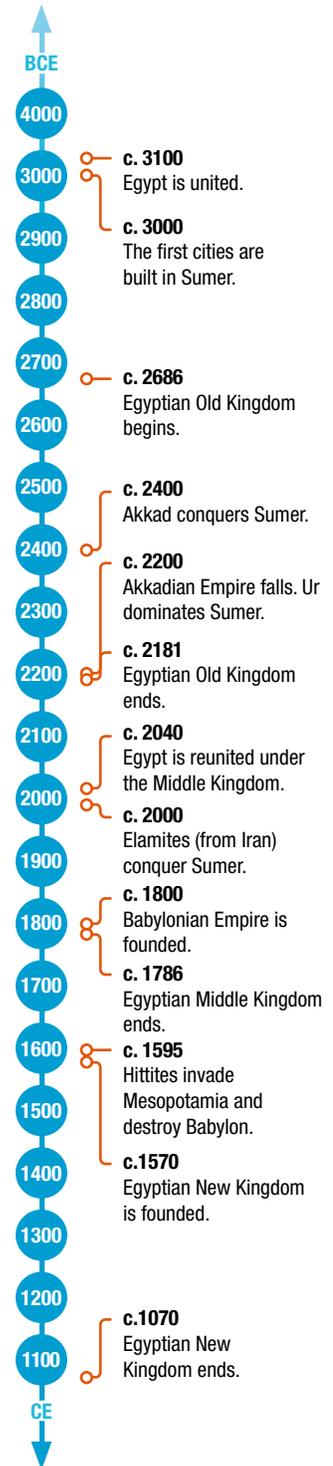
1.8.3 Let me do it

Construct a timeline

Construct a timeline of the rise and fall of civilisations in east and south Asia between 2500 BCE and 200 BCE.

- Use a vertical timeline.
- Divide it into centuries.
- Decide on the scale you will use.

Timeline of the rise and fall of kingdoms and empires in Egypt and Mesopotamia between 3000 BCE and 1000 BCE



Key events for your timeline

- c. 2500 BCE Cities are built by the Indus Valley Civilisation.
- c. 2100 BCE According to Chinese legends, the Xia dynasty begins ruling China.
- c. 1600 BCE The Shang dynasty is established in China. The Indus Valley cities are abandoned and India is invaded by Aryans.
- c. 1100 BCE Iron begins to be used in India.
- c. 1045 BCE The Zhou overthrow the Shang and start the Zhou dynasty.
- c. 770 BCE The Eastern Zhou dynasty begins in China.
- c. 500 BCE Iron begins to be used in China.
- 475 BCE The Warring States period begins in China, starting centuries of conflict.
- 327 BCE India is invaded by Alexander the Great (of Macedonia and Greece).
- 304 BCE India is united under the Mauryan Empire.
- 221 BCE China is united under the Qin dynasty.
- 206 BCE The Qin dynasty is overthrown in a peasant revolt. The Han dynasty begins.

Your timeline will help you to analyse and compare events. For example, you could use it to answer questions such as:

- Which of these two cultures was the first to build cities?
- Which was the first to use iron?

1.8 APPLYING SKILLS

USING CHRONOLOGY

- 1 Based on the timeline you have drawn:
 - a What time span does your timeline cover (i.e. how many years in total are covered by your timeline)?
 - b Which Chinese dynasty shown on your timeline was the earliest?
 - c How many years elapsed between the establishment of the Shang and Qin dynasties?
 - d Did the Indian or Chinese civilisation use iron first? What period of time separated the introduction of the use of iron in the two civilisations?
- 2 Identify three significant events during the period of time illustrated on the timeline for:
 - a China
 - b India.
- 3 What statement could you make about the length of Chinese dynasties over the period shown on your timeline?
- 4 What event of significance for ancient Indian civilisation occurred during the period of the Shang dynasty in China?
- 5 What might have been a consequence for Indian civilisation of the invasion of Alexander the Great? (*Hint: Look for an event that happened relatively shortly after his invasion.*)

1.9 Review

In this topic you have been introduced to important skills that you need to begin your study of history at Year 7 level.

1.9.1 Review

Key knowledge: summary

1.2 How and why do we study history?

- Historians investigate and interpret the past.
- History helps us to understand our heritage and appreciate other cultures.
- History helps us to understand the present and what the future may hold.
- History provides us with essential skills.

1.3 Ages, time and chronology

- Historians divide the past into ages and periods.
- In Australia we count time using a system that was developed in Christian countries but there are other systems.
- Using chronological order and timelines helps us to recognise cause and effect.

1.4 Detective work

- There are several different kinds of sources we can use.
- Sources need to be tested for reliability.
- To begin an investigation we form a hypothesis.

1.5 Evidence from archaeology

- Archaeologists use several techniques to find remains of the past.
- The skills of other scientists contribute to discoveries in archaeology.
- Pottery is an important source of archaeological evidence.
- Some archaeological remains survive while others are destroyed.

1.6 How old is it?

- Relative dating techniques help us determine if a source is older or newer than another source.
- We can find the age of many sources using absolute dating techniques.

1.7 Perspectives and empathy

- Historians try to discover how people thought and felt at different times in the past.
- Using historical imagination requires using your imagination but basing your ideas on evidence.
- We should avoid judging people from the past by the standards of our own age.

Key knowledge: multiple-choice topic test

1. The year 500 BCE would be the same as which of the following years?
 - a. AD 500
 - b. 500 BP
 - c. 500 BC
 - d. 500 CE
2. Chronological order means which of the following?
 - a. A timeline
 - b. In order from the beginning to the end
 - c. Any random order
 - d. From the end to the beginning
3. The work of historians is like that of detectives because historians:
 - a. solve crimes.
 - b. are always right.
 - c. never make mistakes.
 - d. gather evidence from sources and interpret that evidence.

on Resources

Interactivity

Time out: Sources
Identify whether a series of artefacts are primary or secondary sources.

int-0782

Interactivity

World history timeline

Create a visual timeline of key events in the history of the world

int-2932

4. Primary sources are:
 - a. sources that were created around the time we are studying.
 - b. written sources.
 - c. secondary sources.
 - d. books.
5. Which of the following statements is accurate?
 - a. Primary sources are always reliable because they were created in the past.
 - b. Primary sources can never be trusted.
 - c. Primary sources need to be compared with other primary sources for reliability.
 - d. Primary sources hold the answer to every puzzle.
6. Sources that lead to the same conclusion provide which kind of evidence?
 - a. Contradictory evidence
 - b. Supporting evidence
 - c. Absolute proof
 - d. Biased evidence
7. A hypothesis is which of the following?
 - a. A conclusion based on evidence
 - b. A wild guess
 - c. A theory that has to be tested against evidence
 - d. An educated guess
8. Which of the following best describes archaeological sources?
 - a. Artefacts, works of art and constructions from the past
 - b. Old documents
 - c. Anything found underground
 - d. Old buildings
9. Pottery is very useful as archaeological evidence because:
 - a. there is a lot of it.
 - b. it was sold in pottery shops.
 - c. particular pottery styles can be identified with different ages.
 - d. it was the same in all ancient societies.
10. Scientific methods of dating remains from the past include which of the following?
 - a. Palm reading and horoscopes
 - b. Seeing how old they look
 - c. Chemistry and geology
 - d. Radiocarbon dating and stratigraphy
11. In an archaeological dig, older objects will generally be found where in relation to newer objects?
 - a. At the same level
 - b. Lower
 - c. Higher
 - d. In any position
12. Empathising with people in past time means which of the following?
 - a. Trying to understand how they thought and felt
 - b. Sympathising with them
 - c. Approving of their beliefs
 - d. Judging their behaviour

1.9.2 Respond

Using historical sources as evidence

Imagine a team of archaeologists has unearthed the sculptures you can see in **SOURCE 1**. After months of careful digging they have come upon this remarkable find — eight pieces of sculpted stone. They are dirty and worn and obviously very old.

1. What clues and techniques might the archaeologists have used to locate the site at which they found these sculptures?
2. What would they have had to do before beginning to dig?
3. These sculptures are made of stone, but if they were found alongside pottery how would that help archaeologists to work out how long ago they were created?
4. If they were found in a layer that contained charcoal, what dating technique could be used to discover how old they are?
5. As a historian, you want to use this find as evidence for an investigation of the ancient society that made them. Using the skills you have learned in this topic, try to answer the following questions:
 - a. Describe what is depicted on each of the stones.
 - b. Which of these scenes provides evidence about conflict?
 - c. Which of these scenes provides evidence about other aspects of life in this ancient society, and what aspects are they?
 - d. Form a hypothesis about this society based on the evidence in these sculptures. For example, you could begin with: 'This appears to have been a warlike society because the sculptures show . . .'
 - e. Why is it impossible for these sculptures to give us a complete picture of this ancient society?
 - f. What other kinds of evidence might help fill some of the gaps in our knowledge of these people?

SOURCE 1 Ancient relief sculptures (created by chiselling the face of a piece of stone) found in Syria, in the Middle East



Responding to the big questions

At the beginning of this topic several big questions were posed. Use the knowledge and understanding you have gained through your study of the subtopics to answer them:

1. What methods do historians use to investigate the past?
2. How do we use primary sources?
3. How do archaeologists investigate the past?
4. How do we date archaeological evidence?

2

The ancient world: c. 60 000 BCE to c. 650 CE

2.1 Overview

2.1.1 LINKS WITH OUR TIMES

You might have seen travel brochures that advertise ‘the journey of a lifetime’. This topic is also a journey, it will take you through many human lifetimes and we will be travelling not just through space but also through time!

We start in the Old Stone Age, beginning when the ancestors of every modern human being on our entire planet lived in Africa. We will follow the pathway of people who walked out of Africa, probably less than 100 000 years ago. The descendants of this group would gradually spread to populate every inhabitable corner of the Earth.

Our next big stop begins around 11 000 years ago, when people in the Middle East became the first to change to a new way of life based on farming. Gradually, farming spread to many places, enabling people to live in settled communities and to build great monuments like Stonehenge (pictured) between 3000 and 2000 BCE.

We will follow the human journey, looking briefly at great ancient civilisations. Along the way, we will encounter some amazing discoveries that have helped us to imagine the world in ancient times.

BIG QUESTIONS

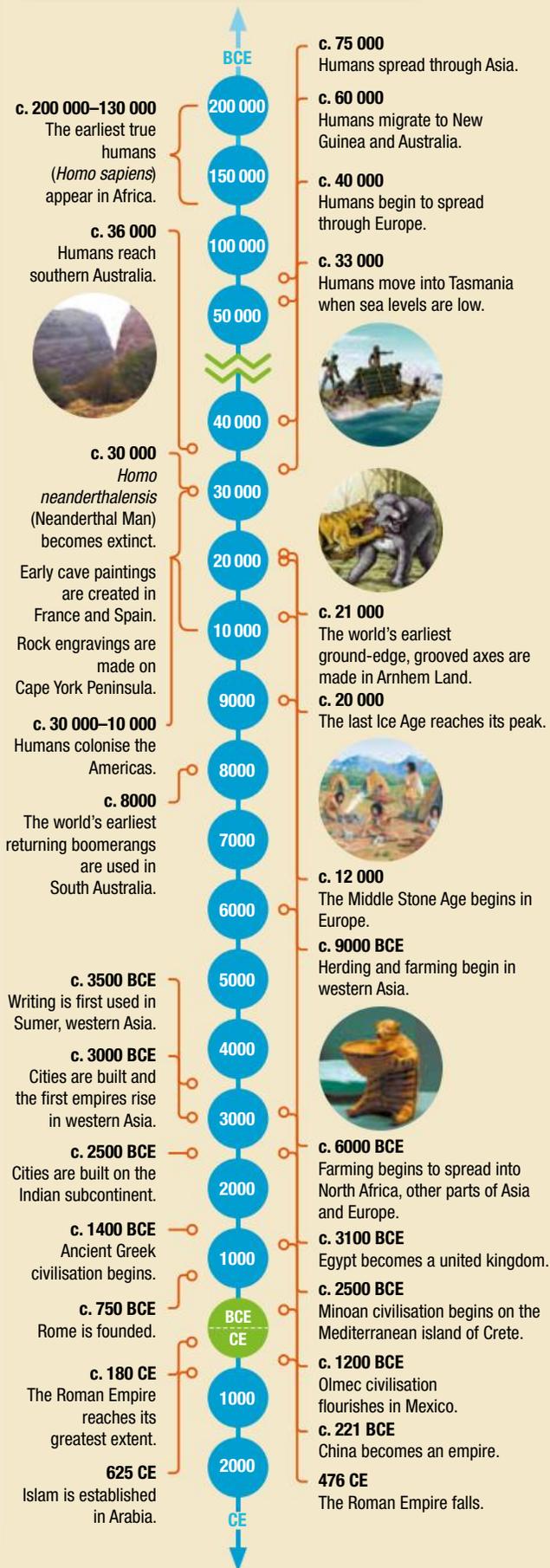
As you work through this topic look for information that will help you to answer these questions:

- 1 To what places did Old Stone Age people migrate when they moved out of Africa?
- 2 What can we know of the ways that Old Stone Age people lived?
- 3 How did the rise of agriculture change people’s lives?
- 4 Where did civilisations emerge in ancient times?
- 5 In what ways did civilisation change human societies?
- 6 What are some of the discoveries and mysteries that indicate what we know and do not know about these times?

STARTER QUESTIONS

- 1 Approximately how long have human beings lived on Earth?
- 2 What things do you already know about the Old Stone Age?
- 3 If people had never invented farming, how different do you think the world would be today?
- 4 What do you think ‘civilisation’ means?

A TIMELINE OF THE ANCIENT WORLD





2.2 Examining the evidence

2.2.1 How do we know about the ancient world?

Our survey of ancient times includes two very different worlds: the prehistoric world, or Old Stone Age, and ancient history, when people adopted new ways of life based on farming. For Old Stone Age societies we have no evidence from written records because there was no writing. So we do not know the name of even a single person who lived in prehistoric times. We have almost no evidence from buildings because Old Stone Age people were **hunter-gatherers**, who lived **nomadic** or semi-nomadic lives and rarely required permanent dwellings. Clothes made of animal skins and tools made of wood do not normally survive for thousands of years. Also there were far fewer people in Old Stone Age times to leave traces behind. Despite these problems, you will realise that there are primary sources, including weapons, tools and cave paintings (see **SOURCE 1**), that can provide us with clues to unlock some of the secrets of the Old Stone Age.

In contrast, societies that experienced the Neolithic Revolution left many primary sources. The growth of towns and cities, the rise of governments, laws and organised religions, the use of metals and the emergence of arts and crafts left many clues. Archaeologists have unearthed vast amounts of evidence that is now displayed in museums around the world (see **SOURCE 2**). These artefacts include brilliantly carved wall panels, pottery, tombs and statues.

Life in large, organised communities created the need for writing to make records of trade, contracts, laws and taxes, but writing soon found other uses. The Sumerians were the first to keep written records of their stories, legends and poems (see **SOURCE 3**). Most of what we know about their literature comes from copies of their stories which were made by people who conquered them and who also wrote on clay tablets. As you study each of the following sources, you can begin to imagine the richness of the cultures that arose in the ancient world.

hunter-gatherers

people who live by hunting animals and gathering plants

nomadic moving about from place to place

learn on

To access videos, interactivities, discussion widgets, image galleries, weblinks and more, go to www.jacplus.com.au

SOURCE 1 An Old Stone Age painting of bison, from Lascaux cave in southern France



SOURCE 2 One side of The Standard of Ur. It is a box decorated on all four sides with scenes from life in Sumer. It was made in about 2600 BCE and was part of the treasure in a royal tomb found in the ancient Sumerian city of Ur. This side is called the 'war side' because it shows scenes of warfare, in contrast to the peaceful activities depicted on the 'peace side'.



SOURCE 3 From *The Epic of Gilgamesh*, one of the best known stories of ancient Sumer. In this story, a man named Utnapishtim tells Gilgamesh the story of how he, his family and helpers built a great boat to save themselves and pairs of animals when their gods decided to flood the world.

All my family and kin I made go aboard the ship.
The beasts of the field, the wild creatures of the field,
All the craftsmen I made go aboard.
...

Six days and nights
Blows the flood wind, as the south-storm sweeps the land.
When the seventh day arrived,
...

The sea grew quiet, the tempest was still, the flood ceased
...

And all mankind had returned to clay.
When the seventh day arrived,
I sent forth and set free a dove.
The dove went forth, but came back;
Since no resting-place for it was visible, she turned round.
Then I sent forth and set free a swallow
The swallow went forth, but came back;
Since no resting-place for it was visible, she turned round.
Then I sent forth and set free a raven.
The raven went forth and, seeing that the waters had diminished,
He eats circles, caws, and turns not round.

2.2 PUTTING IT ALL TOGETHER

USING HISTORICAL SOURCES AS EVIDENCE

- Write a short paragraph explaining three things that **SOURCE 1** could tell us about Old Stone Age people.
- Look closely at **SOURCE 2**. The top panel of the Standard of Ur shows the Sumerian king with armed warriors.
 - Describe the scenes in the middle and bottom panels.
 - What evidence does this source provide for the nature of war in ancient Sumer?
- Read the first six lines of **SOURCE 3** and explain in your own words the events it describes.
- In the last thirteen lines of **SOURCE 3**, the narrator tells what happened each time he released a bird. What do you think this means?
- Use the internet or your library to find the story of Noah's Ark. It comes from the *Book of Genesis* in the Old Testament of the Bible. Compare it with **SOURCE 3**.
 - Describe the similarities between these two stories.
 - Suggest how we might account for these similarities.
- Write a one-page summary of all that you have discovered about ancient societies from just these three sources.

2.3 Out of Africa

learn on

To access videos, interactivities, discussion widgets, image galleries, weblinks and more, go to www.jacplus.com.au

DID YOU KNOW?

In 2011, scientists used evidence from DNA (see 1.6 How old is it?) to rewrite the story of early *Homo sapiens*' migrations. They concluded that the ancestors of Aboriginal Australians most likely left Africa and the Middle East at least 20 000 years earlier than the ancestors of Asians and Europeans.

flint a very hard stone, useful for tools and for making sparks to start fires

species a group or classification of living things

evolve to develop and change by natural processes

fossils remains of plants or animals found in rocks

palaeontologist a scientist who studies fossils

2.3.1 The world of the hunter-gatherers

The human story begins in Africa. Scientific evidence tells us that several different human-like species emerged in Africa between about two million and 200 000 years ago. Members of some of these species, including *Homo sapiens*, the species to which all modern humans belong, migrated out of Africa. Most of the time period during which modern humans have existed is called the Old Stone Age. It was the age of the hunter-gatherers, the time before many people became farmers. This age ended in the Middle East around 11 000 years ago. Elsewhere, it ended later. In some places, including Australia, it ended just a couple of centuries ago.

Imagining the distant past

Imagine living in a world where everything you now take for granted has never existed. You live in caves or shelters covered in bark or skins. If you live in a warm climate, you probably need no clothes. In a cold climate, your clothes are skins from animals your family has hunted.

All your food comes from these animals and from roots, seeds, fruits or berries gathered in the wild. Your only warmth and light at night comes from fires you make by scratching **flint** or rubbing sticks to ignite dry leaves or grass.

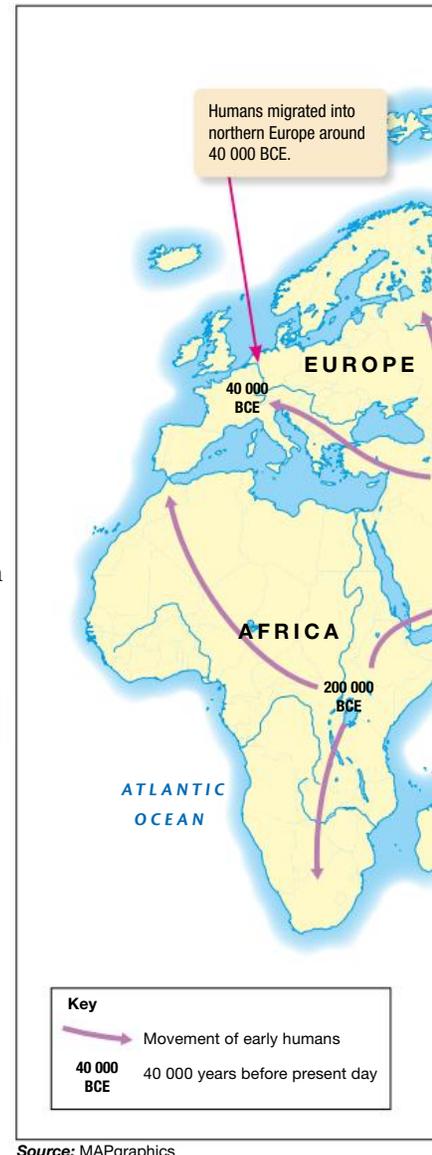
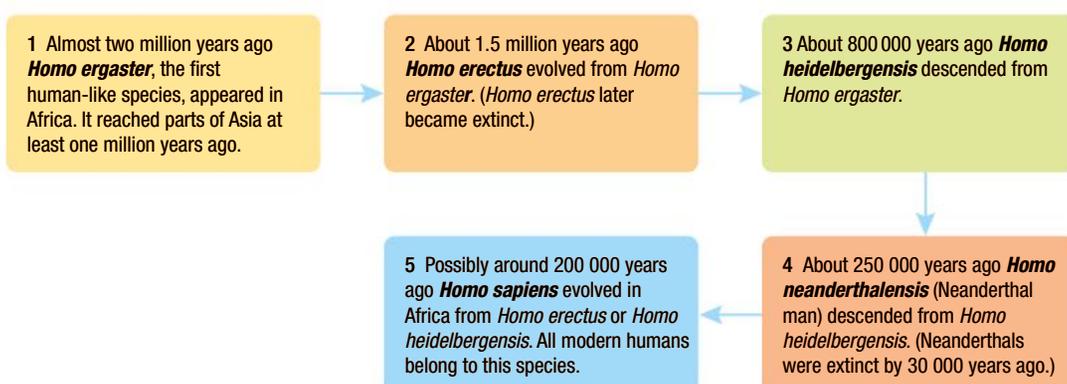
Each day a great ball of fire crosses your sky bringing warmth and light, only to disappear again over what you might believe is the edge of the world. You live in fear of large animals that are faster and stronger than you and who see *you* as food. But you have some advantages. A thumb opposite the fingers on each hand enables you to make and use simple tools and weapons. Your brain enables you to learn from every experience. And you have language — the ability to make sounds that have a shared meaning for the clan with which you will spend your life.

The theory of evolution

Less than two centuries ago most people in Christian, Jewish and Muslim societies believed that the Earth and all living things were only about 6000 years old. This belief came from the Bible. It was challenged by Charles Darwin in 1859. Darwin presented a scientific argument using evidence to show that all **species evolved** from other life forms over millions of years. This is called the theory of evolution. It is supported by evidence from discoveries of **fossils** by **palaeontologists**, but many people still reject this theory.

Scientists now generally agree that life on Earth began about three billion years ago. About six million years ago the line of animals from which modern humans are descended split from that of the chimpanzees. **SOURCE 1** illustrates the way in which many scientists believe humans evolved.

SOURCE 1 How human beings evolved



2.3.1 Activities

CHECK YOUR UNDERSTANDING

- 1 On what continent did human species emerge?
- 2 In the Old Stone Age, how did people obtain food, clothing and shelter?
- 3 Suggest examples of how language could have given humans advantages over other animal species.

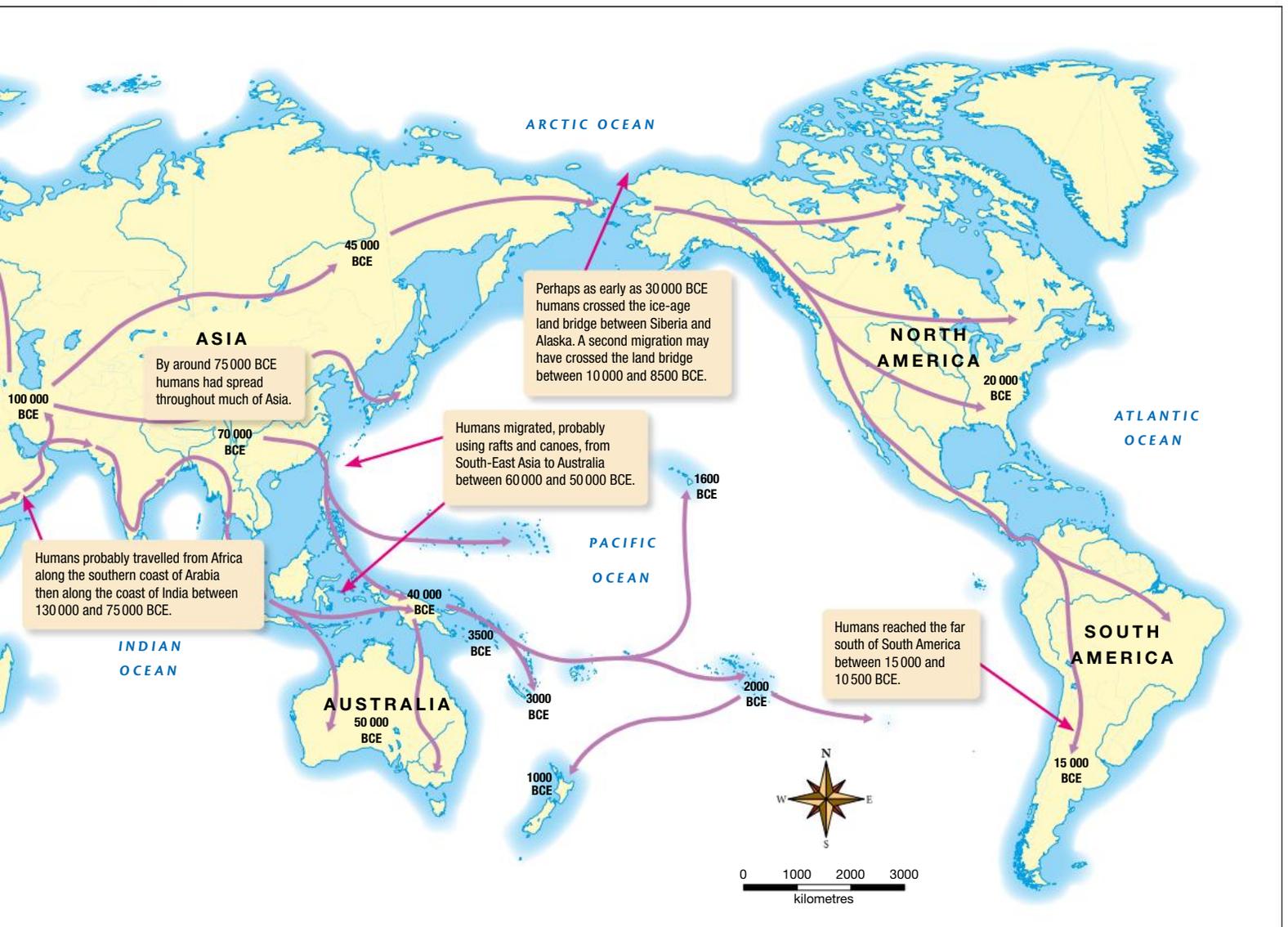
USING HISTORICAL SOURCES AS EVIDENCE

- 4 Using **SOURCE 1**, name three species of early humans.

2.3.2 Human migrations

As we now know, there were originally several human species. However, only our species, *Homo sapiens*, survived. *Homo sapiens* migrated throughout Africa and into Asia, Australia and Europe by around 40 000 years ago and later into the Americas. Palaeontologists and archaeologists have traced these migrations by studying and dating fossil sites and archaeological sites, and comparing the tools and bones of humans and the animals they hunted.

SOURCE 2 A map showing migrations of early humans from Africa to the world



Why did people migrate to new lands?

Perhaps people migrated because of pressure on food supplies, but evidence from the science of **genetics** suggests that 40 000 years ago there were only about 200 000 humans in the world. The cold northern climate could have encouraged groups to migrate south, but this would not explain why other humans moved north into icy Siberia around 40 000 years ago.

2.3.2 Activities

CHECK YOUR UNDERSTANDING

- 1 Using the map in **SOURCE 2**, place the movement of early humans from Africa to each main region of the world in chronological order.
- 2 Working in small groups, make a list of possible reasons for human migration in prehistoric times.

USING HISTORICAL SOURCES AS EVIDENCE

- 3 Due to rising sea levels about 10 000 years ago, routes taken by humans migrating along the coasts of Asia are now under water. Explain how this would make it difficult for archaeologists to trace their movements.

DID YOU KNOW?

Prehistoric people made musical instruments like flutes from hollow bones. The earliest were found in Africa and are believed to be around 45 000 years old.

2.3.3 Technologies and peoples

The earliest tools were stones that were smashed to create a jagged edge (see **SOURCE 3**). Over many thousands of years, humans improved stone tools by flaking and grinding them. From about 40 000 BCE people were using stone chisels, scrapers, and small spear and arrow tips as well as sewing needles and fish hooks made of bone. They were also wearing body ornaments and using symbols in cave paintings.

How were Old Stone Age societies organised?

If prehistoric societies were similar to surviving hunter-gatherer societies, people probably moved around in extended family groups of fewer than fifty individuals. Men and women would have had different roles. The older men would have had most authority, but there would have been few differences in wealth and power. However, this is largely guesswork.

SOURCE 3 A flint hand axe made around 200 000 years ago in Africa



SOURCE 4 The Venus of Willendorf, a stone figure probably made around 27 000 years ago



What can we tell from their art?

Prehistoric art tells us something about how Old Stone Age people saw their world. There is evidence of grinding pigments to make paints in Africa at least 100 000 years ago. There are prehistoric art sites on every continent. Prehistoric people in Europe carved small sculptures (see **SOURCE 4**) and made cave paintings from around 40 000 years ago. Most importantly, archaeologists believe that people who communicated through art must also have communicated through spoken language.

What happened to the Neanderthals?

One of the great puzzles of prehistory is why the Neanderthals died out. We know that Neanderthals and some types of *Homo erectus* lived at the same time as early *Homo sapiens*. But by about 30 000 years ago *Homo sapiens* were the only surviving humans.

Did *Homo sapiens* cause this or did these other species become **extinct** for other reasons? We do not know.

Neanderthals and *Homo sapiens* had similar-sized brains and used similar tools; both were hunter-gatherers and used fire. There is evidence that both cared for sick or injured members of their groups and buried their dead. Fossils suggest that Neanderthals were shorter but more strongly built than *Homo sapiens*. Neanderthals also had shorter lives, lived in smaller groups, never spread past Europe and western Asia and did not change their tool-making technology as much as *Homo sapiens*. Evidence also suggests that Neanderthals were less nomadic. They occupied their sites year-round so they would have had to hunt and gather over a wider area each day.

extinct died out

2.3.3 Activities

CHECK YOUR UNDERSTANDING

- 1 How did humans make their earliest tools?
- 2 Make a list of tools made by Old Stone Age peoples from about 40 000 BCE.
- 3 Draw up a table with two columns.
 - a In the first column, list the things that *Homo sapiens* and Neanderthals had in common.
 - b In the second column, list the ways in which they were different.
 - c Discuss in groups which differences might have helped one to survive while the other became extinct?

USING HISTORICAL SOURCES AS EVIDENCE

- 4 Create a comic strip to show how the tool in **SOURCE 3** would have been made and used.
- 5 **SOURCE 4** is believed to represent fertility (ability to produce offspring). Try to think of a reason why Old Stone Age people made such figures?

2.3 PUTTING IT ALL TOGETHER

USING HISTORICAL SOURCES AS EVIDENCE

- 1 What are we able to know about prehistoric societies from fossils, tools and art and from the ways of life of hunter-gatherer societies in modern times? Refer to **SOURCES 3** and **4** in your answer.

DETERMINING HISTORICAL SIGNIFICANCE

- 2 Evaluate the significance of Darwin's theory of evolution in changing the way people understand their origins.
- 3 What kind of evidence supports Darwin's theory of evolution and why do you think that many people still reject this theory?

2.4 A changing Paleolithic world

2.4.1 The last Ice Age

Today we know that human activities, such as burning coal and oil, are causing global warming. This could bring disastrous climate changes, causing the drying up of fertile farming regions and flooding of river valleys that are home to tens of millions of people. In **Paleolithic** times, humans had no effect on changes in the Earth's climate. Changes in climate did, however, have huge effects on humans.

Paleolithic of the Old Stone Age

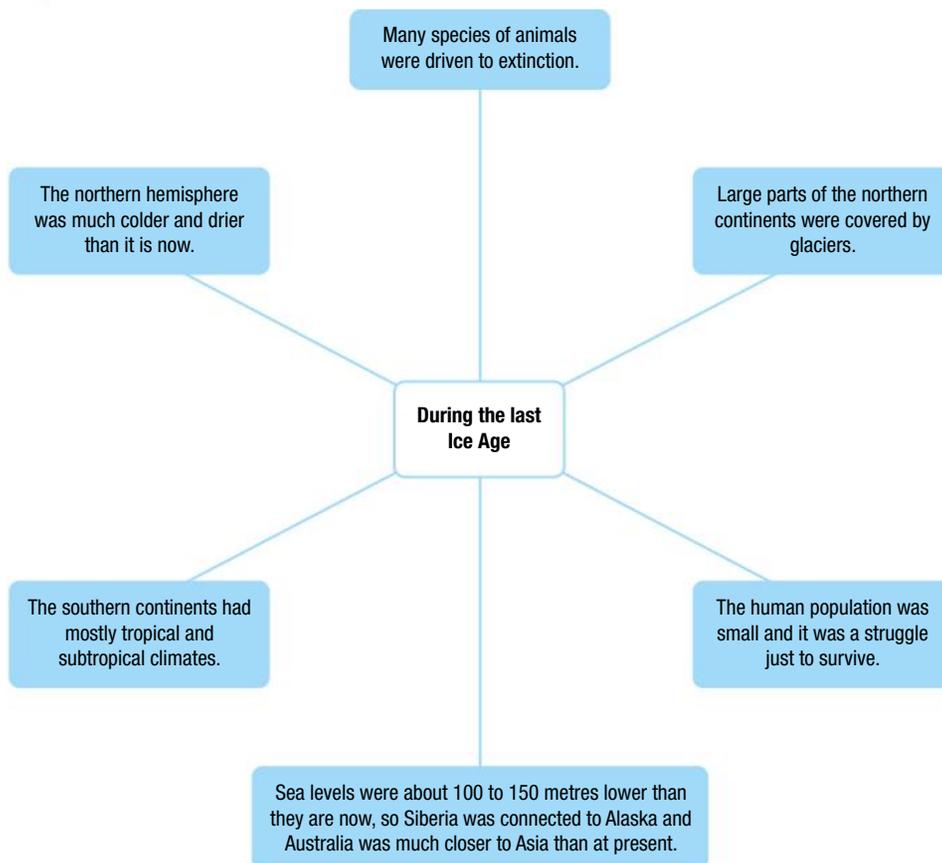
Pleistocene

Epoch the glacial period before the Holocene Epoch

Ice Ages long periods during which glaciers covered much of the northern hemisphere

The time we call the **Pleistocene Epoch** (about 1.8 million to 10 000 BCE) was generally a time of extreme cooling and recurring **Ice Ages**. These periods lasted for tens of thousands of years. Such climate changes are caused by small changes in the Earth's orbit around the sun. The last Ice Age began around 110 000 BCE and reached its peak (its coldest point) about 20 000 BCE.

SOURCE 1 During the last Ice Age, there were many differences with present times.



Living in the Ice Age

Humans survived by adapting to climate changes and becoming more intelligent. The northern hemisphere's long, cold winters meant fewer plant foods. But humans learned to make better weapons and to change their hunting methods to kill large mammals such as **mammoths**. The meat of a mammoth could keep for months in the freezing conditions.

mammoth a large extinct mammal like a modern elephant but with larger tusks and woolly fur to keep it warm

2.4.1 Activities

CHECK YOUR UNDERSTANDING

1 What and when was the Pleistocene Epoch?

USING HISTORICAL SOURCES AS EVIDENCE

2 Referring to **SOURCE 1** and the information in this section, fill in the blanks to complete the following sentences.

- In the last Ice Age the Earth was much _____ and _____ than today.
- Much of the northern hemisphere was covered by _____.
- Ice Ages and other natural changes in the Earth's _____ were caused by small changes in the Earth's _____.
- People coped with the Ice Age by becoming more _____, making better _____ and changing _____ methods.

2.4.2 Humans in a changing environment

Surprisingly, even long ago humans had some effect on their environment. They burned vegetation to create new growth. This attracted the plant-eating mammals they hunted. Burning and over-hunting may have changed the balance of plants and animals in some areas. Humans tamed wolves to become domesticated dogs. As they spread to new places such as Australia, Siberia and the Americas, humans found species of animals that had not learned to fear them. Such animals became easy prey. Scientists believe that humans drove some large animals, such as the mammoth, to extinction (see **SOURCE 2**).

SOURCE 2 Mammoth and ibex (a type of wild goat). A Paleolithic wall painting from the Rouffignac cave, Dordogne, France.



An Ice Age village

At a place called Pushkari, in Ukraine, archaeologists discovered the traces of a settlement that had been inhabited at the peak of the Ice Age. These provided evidence of how humans survived in a world of freezing temperatures and continual drought (see **SOURCE 3**).

The world warms up

The world began warming up from about 18 000 BCE. By 13 000 BCE the ice sheets had started melting. Between 12 000 and 8000 BCE the climate fluctuated wildly. But then the Ice Age was over. It was followed by the **Holocene Epoch**. The new epoch brought a milder climate to the northern hemisphere, but in some parts of the southern hemisphere, such as Australia, vast areas became very hot and dry. This global warming created conditions in which humans in a few places would move towards the New Stone Age, the age of farming, towns and what we call civilisation.

Holocene Epoch the past 10 000 years

SOURCE 3 An archaeologist's description of Pushkari as it was around 20 000 BCE, from Steven Mithen, *After the Ice: A Global Human History 20 000–5000 BC*, 2003

... five dwellings form a rough circle ... They face south, away from the biting icy wind and close to ... a semi-frozen river. The dwellings are igloo-like but built from mammoth bones and hide rather than blocks of ice. Each has an imposing entrance formed by two tusks, up-ended to form an arch. The walls use massive leg bones as vertical supports, between which jawbones have been stacked chin-down to form a thick barrier to the cold and wind. Further tusks are used on the roof to weigh down hides and sods of turf that are supported on a framework of bones and branches ... Temperatures can fall to minus 30 degrees C and there are nine months of it to endure.

SOURCE 4 A modern elephant has smaller tusks than a mammoth and no fur.



2.4.2 Activities

CHECK YOUR UNDERSTANDING

- 1 Explain the main differences between the cause of the global warming that took place from about 20 000 to 10 000 years ago and recent global warming.
- 2 Draw a cartoon to show how Ice Age people might have hunted and killed mammoths.

USING HISTORICAL SOURCES AS EVIDENCE

- 3 Study **SOURCES 2** and **3**.
 - a What is unusual about the image of the mammoth in **SOURCE 2**?
 - b Can you think of any reasons why prehistoric artists might have drawn it? (There are several possible answers.)
 - c Describe the uses made of mammoth parts in **SOURCE 3**.
 - d Make a list of other resources that the people of Pushkari would have obtained from mammoths.
- 4 Use **SOURCE 4** and what you have learned about mammoths to draw a sketch of a mammoth with labels showing how mammoths were different from modern elephants.

2.4 PUTTING IT ALL TOGETHER

IDENTIFYING CONTINUITY AND CHANGE

- 1 Explain what changed and what remained the same in Old Stone Age ways of life during the last Ice Age.

DETERMINING HISTORICAL SIGNIFICANCE

- 2 To establish the historical significance of an event, we ask questions such as: How were people's lives changed? How many people were affected? Using those questions, explain the historical significance of the end of the last Ice Age.

2.5 An amazing journey

2.5.1 Coming to Australia

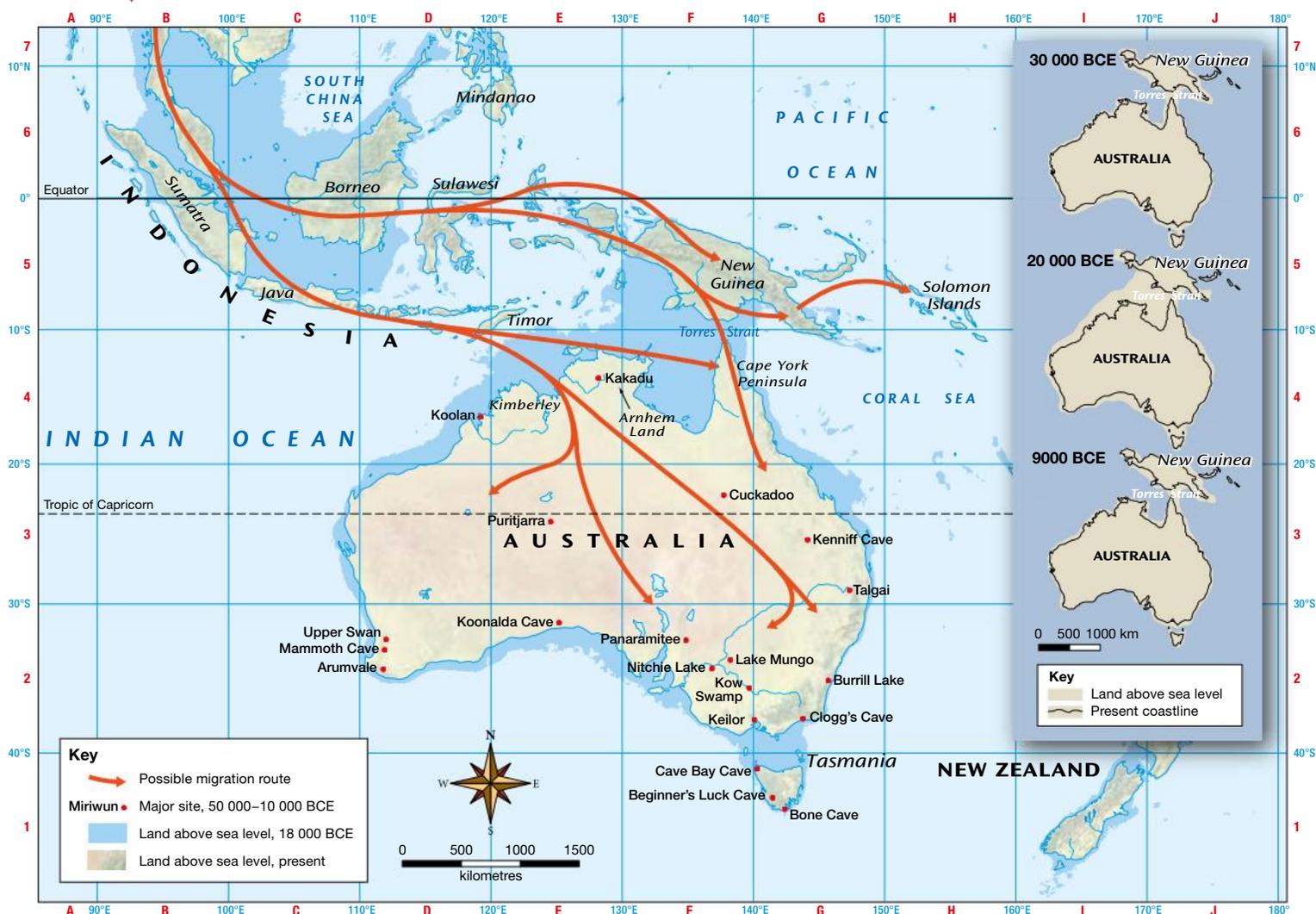
Indigenous Australians who follow traditional beliefs explain their origins through the stories of their creation period. According to some of these stories, their people have been in Australia since the beginning of time. Each language group has its stories of spirit ancestors who created all life in the distant past. However, scientists argue that all human life originated in Africa. From Africa people gradually migrated to the far-flung regions of the world, including Australasia. We can therefore assume that Indigenous Australians must have travelled here in the distant past.

The last Ice Age in the Pleistocene period ended around 10 000 years ago. During the Ice Age much of the world's water was locked up in great ice sheets in the northern hemisphere; this meant ocean levels were up to 160 metres lower than they are today. It also meant that islands and continents now separated by wide seas were then joined to one another or separated by much narrower sea channels. The distance by sea between Australia and Asia was much shorter than it is now, and Papua New Guinea and Tasmania were joined to the Australian mainland (see **SOURCE 1**).

learn on

To access videos, interactivities, discussion widgets, image galleries, weblinks and more, go to www.jacplus.com.au

SOURCE 1 The lowest sea levels in the past 120 000 years occurred about 20 000, 70 000 and 90 000 years ago. The shaded areas show places that are now under the sea but were above sea level until the last Ice Age ended about 10 000 years ago. The map also shows some Australian archaeological sites that are more than 10 000 years old.



Source: Spatial Vision.

fauna animals

anthropoid human-like

SOURCE 2 From Josephine Flood, *The Riches of Ancient Australia*, 1990

The reason why scientists believe in an overseas origin for Australia's first people is there is nothing in the Australian **fauna**, past or present, from which humans could have evolved. There are no **anthropoid** or pongid (ape-like) ancestors in Australia from whom they could be independently descended.

SOURCE 3 A modern artist's impression of the way the first people may have reached Australia, travelling on rafts from South-East Asia around 60 000 years ago



DID YOU KNOW?

Scientists believe that most Aboriginal groups lived in coastal areas. Archaeological evidence of their lives would have been covered over when sea levels rose around 10 000 years ago.

The most widely accepted theory is that groups of Aboriginal people migrated from South-East Asia to Australia during the Ice Age. They did so by walking across the land and 'island hopping' across the narrow seas in canoes or rafts.

When did people first come to Australia?

Most archaeologists now believe that the Indigenous peoples arrived in Australia at least 50 000 and possibly 60 000 years ago. Over many thousands of years they gradually spread throughout the land. Traces of human life found in many parts of Australia provide evidence for this theory. These traces include:

- rock shelters in Kakadu National Park in the Northern Territory with evidence of occupation for at least 50 000 years
- stone tools with radiocarbon-dated charcoal between 45 000 and 38 000 years old from campsites at Lake Mungo in the Willandra Lakes region of New South Wales.

A mystery

This theory does not claim to explain *why* they came to Australia. There is no evidence that would help to explain this. Perhaps it was by accident, although this seems unlikely. Perhaps their migration was caused by pressure from other peoples in South-East Asia. Migration could have taken place gradually over many generations. What we do know is that people gradually occupied the whole Australian continent, including Tasmania, which they reached at least 33 000 years ago.

learn on

To access videos, interactivities, discussion widgets, image galleries, weblinks and more, go to www.jacplus.com.au

myWorldHistoryAtlas

Deepen and check your understanding of the topic with the following resources and auto-marked questions:
Indigenous migrations to Australia

2.5.1 Activities

CHECK YOUR UNDERSTANDING

- 1 What is the difference between sea levels during the last Ice Age and those today?
- 2 How would the difference in sea levels between the last Ice Age and today have helped to make it possible for people to travel from Asia to Australia?

USING HISTORICAL SOURCES AS EVIDENCE

- 3 Use the scale in **SOURCE 1** to calculate roughly how far Indigenous Australians would have had to travel by sea to reach the Australian continent by one or more of the possible routes shown on the map.
- 4 According to **SOURCE 2**, why do most scientists think that Indigenous Australians must have originated outside Australia?
- 5 Imagine you are one of the people depicted in **SOURCE 3**. Describe what you would experience on such a journey.

2.5 PUTTING IT ALL TOGETHER

IDENTIFYING CONTINUITY AND CHANGE

- 1 Using information about climate change and sea levels in subtopic 2.4 along with information and sources in this subtopic, describe possible reasons why at least 50 000 years ago the ancestors of Australia's Indigenous peoples chose to make such an amazing journey.

ANALYSING CAUSE AND EFFECT

- 2 Design a mind map to represent the possible reasons you identified in activity 1.

2.6 The Mesolithic Age

2.6.1 When was the Mesolithic Age?

Our next stop as we race through time is a brief one. It is the short period we call the Mesolithic Age or Middle Stone Age. It was a stage between the Old Stone Age, when people survived entirely by hunting and gathering, and the New Stone Age, when some people developed **agriculture**. It usually marked a step in between these two ways of providing for human needs.

In the area around the eastern shores of the Mediterranean Sea, the beginning of agriculture took place even before the end of the last Ice Age. The **Fertile Crescent** is the name given to the area now covered by Israel/Palestine, Lebanon, Jordan, Syria, south-east Turkey and Iraq (see the map in 2.7 The New Stone Age). By around 14 000 BCE it had become warmer and wetter. Wild barley, wheat and rye grew in this area, and by around 12 000 BCE hunter-gatherers had formed permanent villages in places with good supplies of water, plants and animals. Although these people were not yet farmers, they were nurturing and harvesting wild plants.

In northern and central Europe, the Mesolithic Age began at the end of the last Ice Age, as glaciers melted and the warmer climate produced **marshlands** with abundant food supplies. In Europe, the Mesolithic Age lasted until around 4500 BCE.

agriculture farming and herding animals

Fertile Crescent the area now roughly covered by Israel/Palestine, Lebanon, Jordan, Syria, south-east Turkey and Iraq

marshlands low-lying land that is usually boggy and often flooded

2.6.1 Activities

CHECK YOUR UNDERSTANDING

- 1 The Mesolithic Age marked a step between what two ways of providing for human needs?
- 2 What was the Fertile Crescent?
- 3 What changed in the Fertile Crescent by around 12 000 BCE?

2.6.2 How did life change in Mesolithic times?

Mesolithic peoples still hunted and gathered their food but they also developed new skills. They made small flint blades called **microliths** and used them for arrowheads and as cutting tools. Mesolithic societies developed pottery and there is evidence that different groups traded with each other. There are significant Mesolithic sites in England, Ireland, France, Germany, Denmark, Greece, Serbia, Estonia and The Netherlands.

microliths small stone artefacts

learn on

To access videos, interactivities, discussion widgets, image galleries, weblinks and more, go to www.jacplus.com.au

Star Carr and Howick — two Mesolithic sites

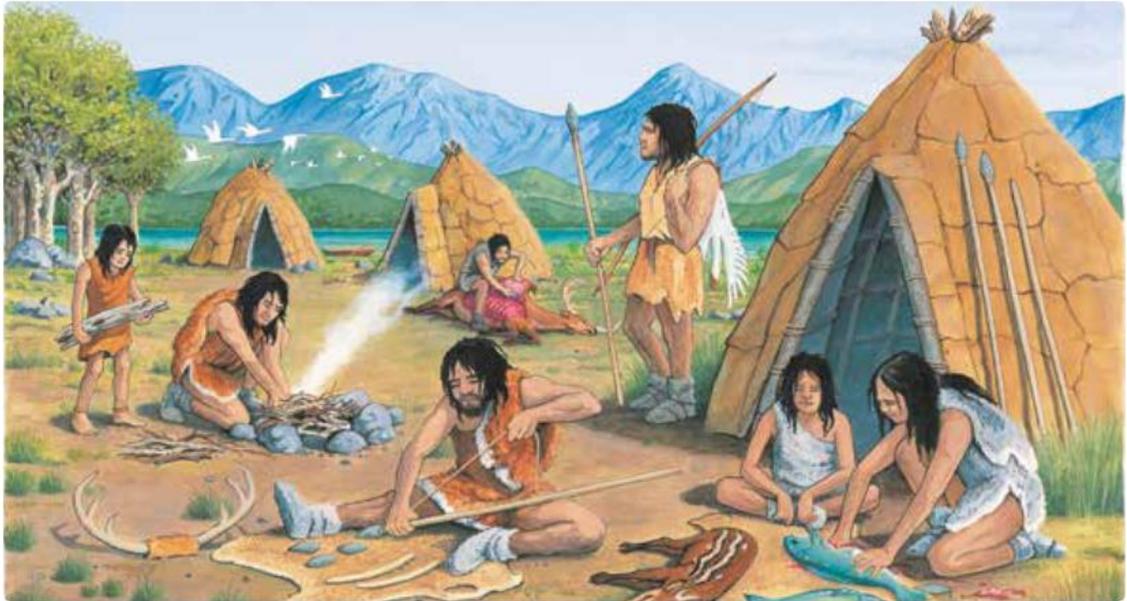
At Star Carr in northern England, archaeologists uncovered the site of a Mesolithic camp beside a lake. Here they found remains of a wooden trackway that crossed the boggy ground between the camp and the lake. Evidence suggests that the camp was a hunting base and that people were burning off the reeds, probably to attract animals that fed on the new shoots.

At Howick, also in northern England, archaeologists have excavated the traces of a house and found evidence that it was used for at least 100 years from about 7800 BCE. If this was a permanent home for hunter-gatherers, it means that in some places abundant food resources had made it possible for people to stop living as nomads and to have permanent settlements.

SOURCE 1 A headdress made from the skull and antlers of a large deer around 8000 BCE. It was excavated at Star Carr.



SOURCE 2 An artist's impression of the Howick Mesolithic house as it might have appeared around 7800 BCE



2.6.2 Activities

CHECK YOUR UNDERSTANDING

- 1 Name two changes in skills that occurred during Mesolithic times?
- 2 What discoveries at Star Carr and Howick provide evidence of permanent settlement?

USING HISTORICAL SOURCES AS EVIDENCE

- 3 Look closely at **SOURCE 1**. What might such a headdress suggest about beliefs or rituals among the people who used it?
- 4 **SOURCE 2** is based on pieces of evidence found at Howick. Explain what made the Howick site different from Old Stone Age campsites.

2.6 PUTTING IT ALL TOGETHER

IDENTIFYING CONTINUITY AND CHANGE

- 1 What do changes in climate and evidence of types of settlements suggest about changing lifestyles in the Mesolithic Age?

DETERMINING HISTORICAL SIGNIFICANCE

- 2 Explain the historical significance of the discoveries of evidence of permanent settlements at Star Carr and Howick.

2.7 The New Stone Age

2.7.1 The Neolithic Revolution

For our next stop, imagine that we have travelled back in time 11 000 years to some villages in the Fertile Crescent. There we see sights that changed the world! The people of these villages had survived by hunting wild animals and gathering plants or seeds along the waterways. In much of the world, hunting and gathering would go on for thousands of years, but somewhere around 9000 BCE these people began growing wheat and barley and keeping herds of sheep and goats.

SOURCE 1 The Ancient Near East. The Fertile Crescent is shaded. The cities marked on the map existed at times between 5000 and 1600 BCE.



Source: Map drawn by Spatial Vision.

Neolithic Revolution

the beginning of the New Stone Age

This new way of living allowed the people to stay in one place, so they replaced their simple shelters with houses made from mud bricks. We call this change the **Neolithic Revolution** — the adoption of farming that marked the beginning of the New Stone Age. Nothing that has happened since, from the invention of the wheel to the creation of the internet, could have taken place without that huge change.

The Neolithic Revolution would lead to the invention of writing, mathematics and money. It would trigger many inventions, the use of metals, the building of cities, organised religion and systems of government. But it would also end the equality people had known in the Old Stone Age and see the rise of kings, empires and wars of conquest.

DID YOU KNOW?

Agriculture had many benefits but it also caused environmental damage. The soil on cleared land was more easily washed away in floods. Irrigation was essential for farming in Mesopotamia, but scientists now believe it contributed to the collapse of some Mesopotamian cities as the irrigated soils were poisoned by mineral salts. By 2300 BCE much of the best land had already been ruined.

2.7.1 Activities

CHECK YOUR UNDERSTANDING

- 1 What was the Neolithic Revolution?
- 2 When and where did agriculture first develop?

USING HISTORICAL SOURCES AS EVIDENCE

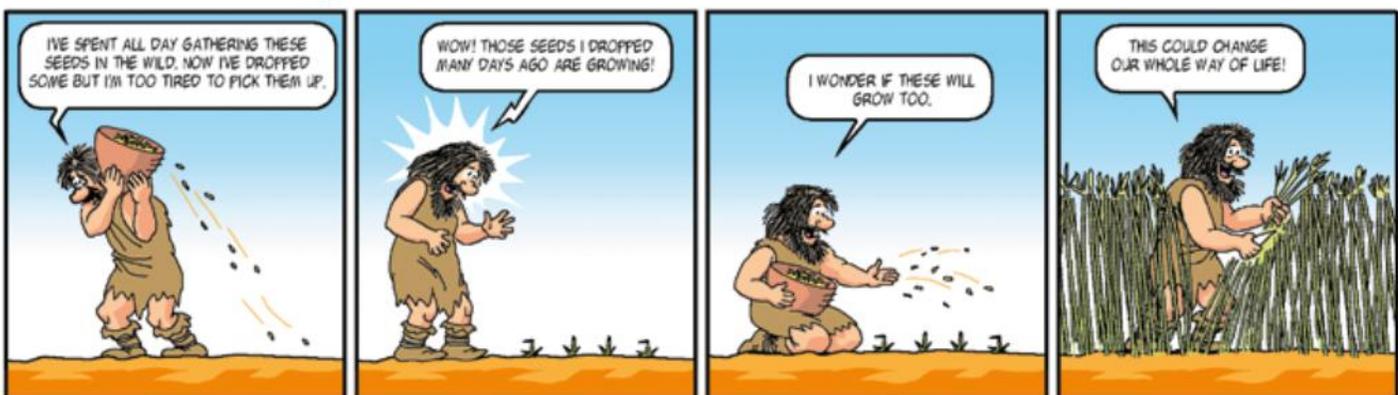
- 3 Look closely at the map in **SOURCE 1**. Identify the geographical features of the Fertile Crescent that allowed farming to emerge around 9000 BCE.

2.7.2 Farming and civilisation

How did people first learn to domesticate animals and grow food crops? Perhaps they caught wild animals and realised that they could breed them to have a permanent supply. People might have dropped some harvested seeds of wild plants then seen these seeds grow where they fell and realised what that could mean (see **SOURCE 2**).

Agriculture made it possible to produce food supplies in smaller areas than were needed by hunter-gatherers. Inventions of tools such as hoes and ploughs and changes such as clearing land and digging irrigation ditches improved yields from crops. Most importantly, improvements in agriculture meant that not everyone needed to work producing food. Some people could specialise in other things, including crafts.

SOURCE 2 A modern artist's impression of how New Stone Age people may have first learned to grow crops



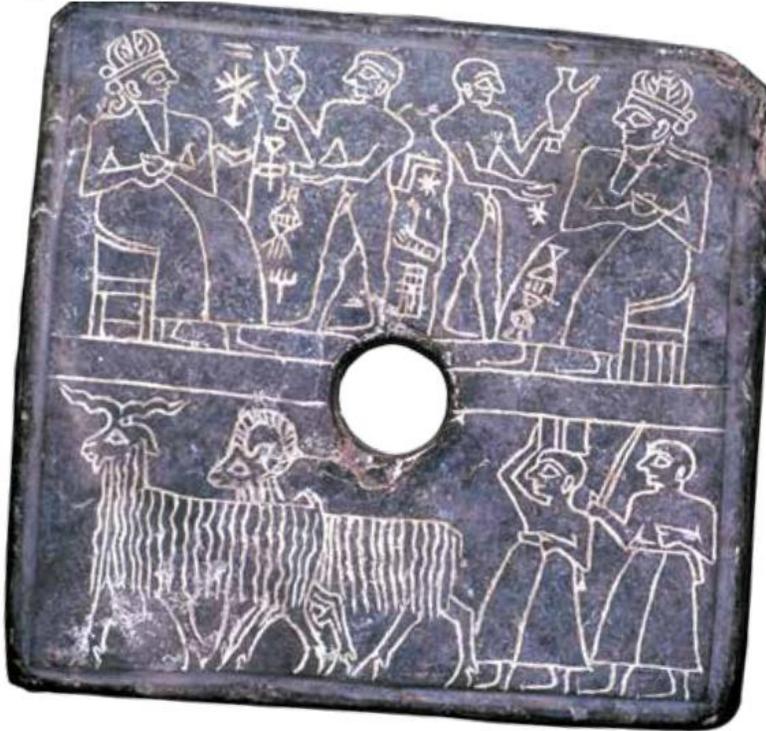
The beginnings of civilisation

Historians disagree on definitions of civilisation. It generally means having an organised community with farming, towns and a culture that encourages advances in technology. The way of life based on farming that first appeared in the Middle East is often called the *beginning* of civilisation. The first large centre of civilisation was Sumer in modern Iraq. Because two rivers, the Tigris and Euphrates, flow through Iraq from north to south, the ancient Greeks called the area Mesopotamia, meaning 'between two rivers'. The rivers regularly flooded the plains, leaving behind layers of fertile mud, and this was ideal for growing crops.

learn on

To access videos, interactivities, discussion widgets, image galleries, weblinks and more, go to www.jacplus.com.au

SOURCE 3 A stone plaque from Sumer with an engraved scene showing an offering to a king, c. 2600–2350 BCE



myWorldHistoryAtlas

Deepen and check your understanding of the topic with the following resources and auto-marked questions:
Early river civilisations

2.7.2 Activities

CHECK YOUR UNDERSTANDING

- 1 What were the most important differences between life in the Old and New Stone Ages?
- 2 According to scientists, how did farming cause environmental damage in Mesopotamia?

USING HISTORICAL SOURCES AS EVIDENCE

- 3 Look closely at **SOURCE 2**.
 - a Describe the sequence of events that suggests how people might have learned to grow crops.
 - b Using **SOURCE 2** as a model, create your own sequence of sketches to show how people might have learned to domesticate sheep and cattle.
- 4 Study **SOURCE 3**.
 - a Describe what is happening in each register (horizontal set of pictures).
 - b What can you tell from this source about the benefits that some gained from the Neolithic Revolution?

2.7 PUTTING IT ALL TOGETHER

IDENTIFYING CONTINUITY AND CHANGE

- 1 Do you think any of the people shown in **SOURCE 3** might have preferred the Old Stone Age way of life? If so, which ones and why? If not, why not?

DETERMINING HISTORICAL SIGNIFICANCE

- 2 The term 'revolution' suggests a big change that was of great significance. Explain why the beginning of the New Stone Age has been described as a revolution.

2.8 Cities, laws, government

2.8.1 Growth of towns and trade

The Neolithic Revolution marked the beginning of more complex societies as farming enabled people to settle in larger communities, usually built along rivers. With these developments came many other changes.

No longer having to travel long distances in search of food, people could build solid dwellings and accumulate belongings such as furniture, containers and ornaments. With permanent shelter and more reliable food supplies, more children survived and populations grew. Food surpluses enabled some people to do different jobs. People created pottery and invented looms for weaving cloth to make clothing. Others learned to work metals — first bronze and later iron. Surpluses also increased trade. A town might produce more grain than it needed and exchange it for another city's salt, cloth, precious stones or cooking oil.

DID YOU KNOW?

The greatest source of wealth in the Middle East today is oil. The ancient Sumerians collected oil in the form of **bitumen** that seeped out of the ground. They used it as a fuel and an adhesive and for waterproofing houses and boats. The Sumerians also invented the wheel, the sail and money.

bitumen tar, as used on modern road surfaces

SOURCE 1 Changes accompanying the rise of agriculture



The earliest towns and cities

By about 8000 BCE there was a permanent town at Jericho (in modern Israel). In Anatolia (part of modern Turkey), Çatal Hüyük, probably the world's first city, appears to have had a population of at least 5000 from around 6500 to 5800 BCE.

2.8.1 Activities

CHECK YOUR UNDERSTANDING

- 1 What is a food surplus?
- 2 Explain how food surpluses enabled some people to specialise in jobs that did not involve producing food.

USING HISTORICAL SOURCES AS EVIDENCE

- 3 **SOURCE 1** is a mind map. Mind maps are a way of showing how one thing led to other things. In small groups, discuss which of the changes in the mind map you think were most important for human progress and why.

2.8.2 Civilisation begins at Sumer

Civilisation soon spread through Mesopotamia, Egypt and beyond. The people of Sumer in southern Mesopotamia were the first to use writing (see **SOURCE 2**), probably about 3200 BCE. Sumerian inventions and ideas spread through their **colonies** in Iran and Syria and through trade (see **SOURCE 3**). Their ideas were adopted by their neighbours and by their conquerors.

colonies countries or regions taken over and controlled by another state

Rulers and laws

Civilisation created the need for leaders who had power over large numbers of people. Sumer is our earliest example. It was made up of several city-states (states consisting of a walled city that ruled over surrounding towns, villages, farms and grazing land). Each city-state had its own ruler, called an **Ensi**, who was said to have been chosen by the gods. It is likely that the Ensi were at first elected by assemblies of free citizens to lead them in battle. Over time these rulers came to inherit their power and some ruled over several cities. The title Lugal was given to such a ruler. The ruler had the power to make laws for his people (see **SOURCE 4**). Inscriptions of Urukagina, the Ensi of the Sumerian city of Lagash, suggest that by 2400 BCE it was common for rulers to record their laws.

Ensi ruler of any Sumerian city-state

cuneiform writing system in which lines were drawn as wedge-shaped marks

SOURCE 2 A Sumerian **cuneiform** tablet from Lagash, third millennium BCE. Sumerians and Babylonians wrote using pictures we call pictograms. Gradually these became simpler so that a few lines represented a picture. The writing was done on clay tablets, which could be baked in the sun and kept.



SOURCE 3 A stone stamp seal carved with a procession of animals, perhaps gazelles. It was probably made in Syria between 4000 and 3000 BCE. Early traders used seals to make impressions in wet clay to identify their property.



SOURCE 4 From an inscription of Sumerian ruler Urukagina listing his legal reforms to protect the poor. The gentry were the privileged big landowners.

An appointed priest may no longer go into the garden of a **villein** and fell a tree or take away the fruits.

If a villein makes a fish-pond, no one of the gentry class may take away his fish.



myWorldHistoryAtlas

Deepen and check your understanding of the topic with the following resources and auto-marked questions:

Early river civilisations **Early urban civilisations**
Mesopotamia – Sumer

villein a poor farmer who worked the land of a big landowner and had fewer rights

DID YOU KNOW?

Until the late nineteenth century the modern world knew almost nothing about ancient Sumer. It really was a lost civilisation. When archaeologists first began digging in Mesopotamia they were not even looking for evidence of the Sumerians. Instead they were searching for traces of the Assyrians, whose civilisation came much later than Sumer. In the 1920s Sir Leonard Wooley found the tombs of some powerful Sumerians of the ancient city of Ur. What the archaeologists found told them they had unearthed a great ancient civilisation. Since then many other archaeological digs have unearthed further traces of Sumer.

learn on

To access videos, interactivities, discussion widgets, image galleries, weblinks and more, go to www.jacplus.com.au

2.8.2 Activities

CHECK YOUR UNDERSTANDING

- 1 Which was the first civilisation to use writing?
- 2 What is the most likely way that Sumerian rulers originally gained power?
- 3 Who made the laws of Sumer?

USING HISTORICAL SOURCES AS EVIDENCE

- 4 Study **SOURCE 2**.
 - a What was cuneiform?
 - b How was it done?

5 Read **SOURCE 4**.

- a How can you tell that privileged classes such as the priests and gentry had much more power than the poor?
- b What was the intention of this Sumerian ruler's law?

2.8 PUTTING IT ALL TOGETHER

IDENTIFYING CONTINUITY AND CHANGE

- 1 Using the information and sources in this subtopic, describe:
 - a How the change from hunter-gatherer societies to settled agricultural societies led to much wider lifestyle changes
 - b How new ideas spread.

DETERMINING HISTORICAL SIGNIFICANCE

- 2 Explain why the development of writing has great significance for historians.

2.9 Society and culture

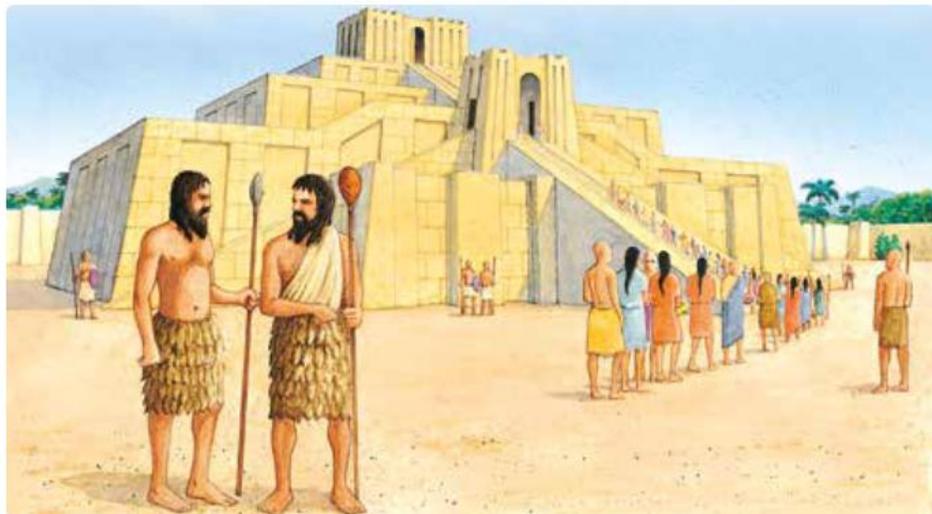
2.9.1 Social classes

Civilisation changed societies. But some people gained much more than others from the changes. What differences were there in wealth and influence? What were the roles of religion, festivals, music and the family? As in the previous subtopic, we will use Sumer as our example.

Officials and nobles

Nobles (aristocracy or gentry) formed a ruling class below the Ensi. Nobles had many privileges and owned large estates that were worked by slaves and landless free citizens. In Sumerian religious beliefs, each city-state belonged to its main god. Some of the city's land was owned by the temple on behalf of the god. Officials administered temple lands on behalf of the Ensi.

SOURCE 1 An artist's impression of a Sumerian ziggurat. The temples were places of worship but were also charged with taking care of the families of men who had died.



As rulers became more powerful, more tax collectors and **scribes** were needed. Like the rulers, these officials gained power and wealth. As **SOURCE 2** shows, some Sumerians resented the wealth and power that certain classes gained at the expense of others.

scribe citizen who could read and write and was trained to keep records

Free citizens and slaves

Many free citizens farmed land of their own. Others worked on the estates of the nobles. Some worked at skilled crafts or were employed in the temple or the palace. There were merchants, boatmen, carpenters, potters and jewellers.

Slaves were the property of temples or palaces and of the owners of rich estates. They could be branded and flogged if they tried to escape. People became slaves by being taken prisoner in war, as a punishment for committing a crime or by being sold by their families. Slaves had some rights under Sumerian laws, including the right to buy their freedom.

SOURCE 2 From a hymn to Nanshe, a goddess of the Sumerian city of Lagash. In this hymn, Nanshe is seen as supporting the poor against the rich.

[Nanshe] knows the orphan . . . knows the widow,
Knows the oppression of man over man . . .
. . .

To set up a place of destruction for the mighty,
To turn over the mighty to the weak . . .
Nanshe searches the heart of the people.

2.9.1 Activities

CHECK YOUR UNDERSTANDING

- 1 List the different social classes of ancient Sumer in order of their wealth and power.
- 2 According to ancient Sumerian religious beliefs, who owned the land of a city-state?
- 3 How could people become slaves and how could they gain their freedom?

USING HISTORICAL SOURCES AS EVIDENCE

- 4 **SOURCE 1** depicts a ziggurat (Sumerian temple). Why would the priests and officials who administered the temples have become very powerful?
- 5 Read **SOURCE 2**.
 - a What does the hymn call on the goddess Nanshe to do?
 - b How does this hymn provide evidence of inequality?
 - c What does it appear to tell us about moral ideas in Sumer?

2.9.2 Everyday life

The Sumerian family

In Sumerian families, marriages were arranged by parents and women had less power than men. If her husband died, a woman could share his property with their children. But if a couple were unable to have children, the woman was blamed and her husband could divorce her. In ordinary Sumerian families, sons probably worked alongside their father from an early age while girls helped their mother.

Temples, houses, music and festivals

All Sumerian buildings were made of mud bricks because mud was the only building material that was plentiful. Most houses were small, single-storey buildings with rooms surrounding a courtyard. The grandest building in each city was the main temple, which developed over time into a huge, stepped tower called a ziggurat, as shown in **SOURCE 1**. Music was important in Sumer. Sumerians played harps, lyres, drums, tambourines and pipes. Poetry and singing were taught in schools. Hymns were sung and played for the gods in the temples and the kings in their palaces.

Religious festivals were also important. One of the main festivals in each city was held at the beginning of the year to ensure good harvests for the year ahead. The king climbed to the top of the city's temple to take part in a ceremony of marriage to a priestess representing the fertility goddess Inanna.

Sumerian gods

Sumer had hundreds of gods and goddesses. Sumerian people believed that these gods had been created out of clay. There were Sumerian stories in which gods and goddesses behaved just like humans. They ate, drank, loved and fought just as people did.

DID YOU KNOW?

In ancient Sumer, children were the property of their parents. A father could sell his children into slavery if they displeased him. However, there are Sumerian stories expressing parents' love for their children.

learn on

To access videos, interactivities, discussion widgets, image galleries, weblinks and more, go to www.jacplus.com.au

SOURCE 3 Bronze statues of ancient Sumerians



myWorldHistoryAtlas

Deepen and check your understanding of the topic with the following resources and auto-marked questions:
Mesopotamia – Sumer

2.9.2 Activities

CHECK YOUR UNDERSTANDING

- 1 Who had the most and the least power in families?
- 2 What roles did music and religion play in peoples' everyday lives?

USING HISTORICAL SOURCES AS EVIDENCE

- 3 Using **SOURCE 3** as your evidence, describe the appearance and clothes of Sumerian men, women and children.

2.9 PUTTING IT ALL TOGETHER

ANALYSING CAUSE AND EFFECT

- 1 Explain why 'civilisation' had the effect of increasing inequality.

DETERMINING HISTORICAL SIGNIFICANCE

- 2 Using information and sources from this subtopic and the previous subtopic, explain why the legacy of Sumer was significant for the ancient world.

2.10 Civilisations and empires in North Africa, western Asia and Europe

2.10.1 The rise and fall of empires

The new way of life based on farming faced hazards such as windstorms and locust plagues that could destroy entire crops. The rivers too held dangers. In Sumer, where almost no rain fell, the rivers needed to be fed by regular rainfall in the far-off mountains. Too much rain brought destructive floods; too little caused drought and famine. But the worst danger in ancient times was the frequent threat of war as empires rose and fell.

A Sumer

Sumerian civilisation emerged around **3500 BCE**. Although later overrun by other powers, it had a lasting influence throughout Mesopotamia and beyond.

SOURCE 1 A Sumerian clay tablet from about 3100–3000 BCE recording the allocation of beer



C Crete and Greece

From around **3000 BCE**, the Minoans built a civilisation on the island of Crete, south of Greece. This peaceful civilisation disappeared when Crete was overtaken by the warlike Mycenaeans from the Greek mainland by about 1375 BCE. From around 750 BCE, Greek city-states set up colonies around the Mediterranean and Black seas. In the late fifth century BCE, the Greeks defeated an invading army of the mighty Persian Empire. Greece was later conquered by Macedonia in 336 BCE and then by Rome in 146 BCE (see **topic 5**).

SOURCE 2 Ancient Greek pottery from 2800–2300 BCE. It was found in Syros, Greece.



E The Hittite Empire

The Hittites, skilled warriors and charioteers, came from Anatolia (Turkey), where they had a capital called Hattusa. In **1595 BCE** they invaded Mesopotamia and destroyed Babylon. In the thirteenth century BCE the great Egyptian pharaoh Rameses II tried and failed to defeat them. However, around 1000 BCE the Hittites were swallowed up by the Assyrian Empire.

G The Assyrians

The Assyrians were from Assur (north of Mesopotamia). Their highly disciplined infantry had the advantage of iron weapons and they had squads of archers and chariots. They created a powerful empire from around **883 BCE**. The Assyrians killed, tortured or enslaved people who rebelled and moved whole populations to prevent rebellion. They collected taxes from conquered subjects and forced them to work as slaves or to fight in the Assyrian army. However, in 612 BCE, armies of Babylonians, Chaldeans and Medes destroyed the Assyrian Empire.

SOURCE 3 An Assyrian wall panel from the eighth century BCE, showing Assyrian forces attacking a city with a battering ram



B Egypt

The longest civilisation in North Africa began when Egypt was first united around **3100 BCE**. This great kingdom experienced many periods of war. During the New Kingdom (c. 1550–1069 BCE) Egypt fought to drive out invaders. During the period from around 1069 to 332 BCE Egypt fell under the rule of Libyans, Nubians, Assyrians and Persians (see **topic 4**).

D Akkadians, Elamites and Babylonians

Around **2400 BCE** Akkad (north of Sumer) conquered the Sumerian cities. When the Akkadian Empire fell about 200 years later, the Sumerian city of Ur dominated Sumer. Around **2000 BCE** the Elamites (from Iran) conquered Sumer. Other peoples moved into Mesopotamia, occupying Akkad and other cities. Around 1800 BCE, King Hammurabi defeated these groups and founded a Mesopotamian empire based on the city of Babylon.

F The Phoenicians

The Phoenicians were great seafarers who lived in what is now Lebanon. They traded with Egypt and Greece, and around **1000 BCE** they founded colonies along the coasts of Africa, Sicily and Spain.

H The Persian Empire

Between **560** and 330 BCE, Persia (modern Iran) created a huge empire that spread from Egypt to India. Babylon had again become a great centre of power under King Nebuchadnezzar (c. 605–560 BCE), but soon after his death the Persians conquered the city.

I The Roman Empire

By **272 BCE**, the city of Rome dominated Italy. By **180 CE**, the Roman Empire had become the greatest empire of ancient times, controlling much of Europe, North Africa and the Middle East. The Roman Empire finally fell to invaders in the fifth century CE (see **topic 6**).

SOURCE 4 Sculpture from the tomb of a wealthy Roman citizen who died in the first century CE



2.10.1 Activities**CHECK YOUR UNDERSTANDING**

- 1 Why would war have been a great hazard for people in ancient times?
- 2 Which civilisation lasted longest in North Africa?
- 3 Name two groups of people who invaded Mesopotamia in ancient times.
- 4 Why would the Assyrians' iron weapons have given them a big advantage over opponents such as Egypt, who still used bronze weapons?
- 5 What ancient empire was based in Iran?
- 6 For around how many centuries did the Roman Empire exist?

USING HISTORICAL SOURCES AS EVIDENCE

- 7 Working in small groups, brainstorm to design and sketch devices that could be used to stop the Assyrian battering rams shown in **SOURCE 3**.

2.10 PUTTING IT ALL TOGETHER**USING HISTORICAL SOURCES AS EVIDENCE**

- 1 Make a list of questions that historians could ask about any three of the sources in this subtopic.

IDENTIFYING CONTINUITY AND CHANGE

- 2 Among all of the changes described in this subtopic, what development can you identify as having continuity?

learn on

To access videos, interactivities, discussion widgets, image galleries, weblinks and more, go to www.jacplus.com.au

2.11 Civilisations in South and East Asia

2.11.1 Ancient China

Humans spread from Africa through Asia, reaching China around 75 000 years ago. When and where did civilisations emerge there? We will focus on ancient India and China because it is in these regions that eastern civilisation first arose. Elsewhere in South Asia, South-East Asia and Japan, civilisations emerged much later.

A site called Spirit Cave, in Thailand (South-East Asia), provides some evidence of farming in Asia around 9000 BCE. The earliest evidence of farming in China comes from Taiwan and dates to about 6000 BCE. Elsewhere in China, farming settlements have been found dating back to around 4000 BCE. Chinese legend tells of a folk hero called the Yellow Emperor who founded Chinese civilisation. His **dynasty**, called the Xia, is said to have ruled from around 2100 to 1600 BCE. However, we have no real evidence that it actually existed. What we can be certain about is that Chinese civilisation developed around the Huang River (Yellow River) and the Yangtze River. The fertile soils of these river valleys were what made a farming civilisation possible.

Early Chinese dynasties

The second Chinese dynasty, the Shang, also seemed to be a myth until archaeologists found supporting evidence in 1928. The finds included written inscriptions on bones. The Shang ruled from 1600 to 1046 BCE so we know that writing existed in China from at least that time. Shang rulers also built cities. At one city, Anyang, skeletal remains of victims of human sacrifice were found. The Shang rulers took sacrificial victims with them to the grave.

In 1046 BCE the Shang dynasty fell to a people called the Zhou. Around 500 BCE, under this dynasty, iron replaced bronze as the main metal for making weapons and the tools that would help increase farm productivity. This change was significant because iron was harder and therefore more efficient.

dynasty a line of rulers from the same family, and the period during which they ruled

China became a unified nation with the arrival of the Qin (pronounced *chin*) dynasty in the third century BCE. The Qin united China after a destructive period called the Warring States period, when rival rulers fought one another for power. The short-lived Qin dynasty was followed by the Han dynasty. The Han ruled China for most of the period from 206 BCE to 220 CE.

Ancient China and the outside world

Throughout this period the Chinese believed the lands beyond their own to be savage places that lacked China's order and learning and were populated by 'barbarians'. China was surrounded by natural barriers that made contact difficult: the sea to the east, deserts to the north and the west, rainforests in the south and the great Himalayan mountain range in the south-west. The only contact between China and western Asia was opened in the first century BCE. It was made possible by a series of trading routes called the 'Silk Road' (see topic 7 Ancient China).

SOURCE 1 A map of South and East Asia showing capital cities



Source: Map drawn by Spatial Vision.

SOURCE 2 From the ancient Chinese annals *Hou Hanshu*

In the ninth year of the Yen-Hi period [166 CE] in the reign of Emperor Huan, king An-tun [the Roman emperor Marcus Aurelius Antoninus] of Ta-ch'in [the Roman Empire] sent an embassy. From the frontier of Jih-nan [in part of Vietnam controlled by China at that time] this [embassy] offered ivory, rhinoceros horn and tortoiseshell; from that time began direct trade relations with this country – but their **tribute** contained no jewels whatever.

tribute riches given by a state to acknowledge submission to another state or ruler

2.11.1 Activities

CHECK YOUR UNDERSTANDING

- 1 For how long have humans lived in China?
- 2 How do we know that under China's Shang dynasty people were sacrificed to be buried with their rulers?
- 3 Why was the introduction of iron a significant change in ancient China?

USING HISTORICAL SOURCES AS EVIDENCE

- 4 What evidence does **SOURCE 2** provide of China's foreign trade relations?
- 5 **SOURCE 2** describes the gifts from the Roman emperor as tribute. This means money or goods paid by a ruler to a higher ruler. What does this tell us about the way the Chinese rulers regarded their relationship with Rome?

2.11.2 Ancient India

Civilisation arose even earlier on the Indian **subcontinent**. The first Indian civilisation was founded in the Indus River Valley, in what is now Pakistan, around 3000 BCE. Its growth was made possible by the plentiful water and fertile soils of the Indus Valley. Its earliest cities were

subcontinent large section of a continent (e.g. the Indian subcontinent)

built around 2500 BCE and there is evidence of trade with Sumer. By 1600 BCE these cities had been abandoned. Remarkably, traces of the Indus Valley civilisation were first dug up only in the 1920s. The oldest examples of Indian writing come from this civilisation.

Around the time that this first civilisation collapsed, nomadic warriors called Aryans invaded India. The country did not become a unified state until the Mauryan Empire was established in 304 BCE. But long before that event two great world religions, Hinduism and Buddhism, arose in India (see topic 8 Ancient India).

SOURCE 3 A scene from *The Mahabharata*, an Indian Hindu epic poem composed in 220 BCE



myWorldHistoryAtlas

Deepen and check your understanding of the topic with the following resources and auto-marked questions:

Early urban civilisations

2.11.2 Activities

CHECK YOUR UNDERSTANDING

- 1 On which river was the oldest Indian civilisation founded?
- 2 In what decade did archaeologists begin excavating the cities of this civilisation?

USING HISTORICAL SOURCES AS EVIDENCE

- 3 Decide on three questions a historian could ask about **SOURCE 3** to use it as evidence for a study of ancient India.

2.11 PUTTING IT ALL TOGETHER

IDENTIFYING CONTINUITY AND CHANGE

- 1 Briefly describe the broad patterns of change in China and India between about 4000 BCE and 220 CE.

DETERMINING HISTORICAL SIGNIFICANCE

- 2 Using **SOURCE 1**, explain the significance of rivers for the development of civilisations in China and the Indian subcontinent.

2.12 Ancient American civilisations

learn on

To access videos, interactivities, discussion widgets, image galleries, weblinks and more, go to www.jacplus.com.au

2.12.1 Human migration within the Americas

North and South America were the last inhabitable continents to be reached by humans. The accepted theory is that during the last Ice Age people crossed over a land bridge from Asia into North America where the Bering Strait now exists (see **SOURCE 1**). At that time, sea levels were much lower than they are today. They could therefore have walked across from one continent to the other. Ancient civilisations arose in parts of the Americas from around 1800 BCE, but there are many gaps in our evidence for them.

SOURCE 1 Probable routes taken by the first humans to America during the last Ice Age. The land bridge between Asia and America is now under the sea.



Source: Map drawn by Spatial Vision.

We know that humans had reached the far south of South America by at least 10 500 BCE, because in 1997, near Monte Verde in southern Chile, archaeologists found an ancient campsite. Here was evidence of people having gathered fruit, edible seaweed, potatoes, grasses, mushrooms and shellfish. These people had lived in animal-hide shelters and hunted now extinct animals. The archaeologists even found the human waste of these prehistoric Americans. Radiocarbon testing was used to estimate the age of these materials.

Until 1997 the oldest evidence of humans in the Americas was a stone spear found near Clovis in Mexico. This was dug up in the 1930s, and is believed to date from 9200 BCE. What makes the find at Monte Verde in Chile remarkable is that it is in the far south. Migration from the far north to South America would have taken thousands of years.

Hunter-gatherers and farmers

The Monte Verde people were hunter-gatherers and, like all American cultures, used stone weapons and tools. Even the cultures that built cities, used gold and silver to make ornaments, and used writing for communication (from around 300 CE) still used stone weapons and tools. The earliest evidence of farming in the Americas is from a cave in the Tihuacan Valley in Mexico. Samples of domesticated corn found in the cave are similar to ancient wild corn. Scientists have dated the corn samples at 2700 BCE, and this probably marks the beginning of agriculture in America.

2.12.1 Activities

CHECK YOUR UNDERSTANDING

- 1 Approximately how long have people lived in the Americas?
- 2 How long ago did farming develop in the Americas?

USING HISTORICAL SOURCES AS EVIDENCE

- 3 Using the scale in **SOURCE 1**, calculate the distance people would have travelled when migrating from Siberia to Central America.

2.12.2 From the Olmec to the Maya

Most American peoples continued to live by hunting and gathering and by small-scale farming, but some developed more complex societies. The earliest civilisation in the Americas, the Olmec, flourished in Mexico between around 1800 and 400 BCE. From around 800 to 200 BCE another civilisation that we call the Chavin flourished in Peru.

SOURCE 2 One of several giant stone heads carved by people of the Olmec civilisation in Mexico about 3000 years ago.



In Central America, in what are now the nations of Honduras and Guatemala, the civilisation of the Maya flourished from about 300 to 900 CE. This civilisation was based on farming, which produced a surplus to provide for its rulers and priests. The Maya built cities with huge stone temples and palaces. These buildings were decorated with carvings and pictures. Their priests created a mathematical system that used the number zero and counted in twenties. They studied the stars and created a calendar. It is possible that the collapse of their civilisation came about after Mayan peasants revolted against their rulers. New Mayan cities were built, but around 975 CE they were conquered by a younger American civilisation — the Toltecs of Mexico.

myWorldHistoryAtlas

Deepen and check your understanding of the topic with the following resources and auto-marked questions:
Mayan and Toltecs Empire

2.12.2 Activities

CHECK YOUR UNDERSTANDING

- 1 When and where did the Olmec civilisation develop?
- 2 Describe the significant achievements of the Maya.

USING HISTORICAL SOURCES AS EVIDENCE

- 3 Look closely at **SOURCE 2**. It is over three metres high.
 - a Why would it be almost impossible for a hunter-gatherer society to produce such an object?
 - b Suggest reasons why the Olmec made such objects.

2.12 PUTTING IT ALL TOGETHER

IDENTIFYING CONTINUITY AND CHANGE

- 1 What similarities and differences can you recognise between the emergence of civilisations in Europe, Asia and Africa and such developments in the Americas?

DETERMINING HISTORICAL SIGNIFICANCE

- 2 Explain why the discoveries at Monte Verde are considered to have great historical significance.

2.13 The ancient birth of modern religions and philosophies

2.13.1 Religions and philosophies that developed in South and East Asia

In ancient times people held many religious beliefs. Most of those beliefs, such as worshipping the sun, have disappeared over time. Today there are five religious faiths that have had such widespread influence or so many followers that they are considered to be major world religions. They are Hinduism, Buddhism, Judaism, Christianity and Islam. Each was established during or very soon after ancient times. In East Asia their influence has been matched by Confucianism. It too originated in ancient times, but it is a **philosophy** rather than a religion.

Hinduism

Hinduism is the oldest of the major world religions. It appears to have originated in western Asia, reaching India around 1600 BCE. The first Hindu books, called the Vedas, come from this time. Today Hinduism is followed by about 80 per cent of the people of modern India; it is the third most popular religion in the world.

Followers of Hinduism are called Hindus. They believe in many gods including a universal spirit, called Brahma. They also believe in **reincarnation**. Hindus believe that a person's current life will determine what form their next life will take. As set out in a series of books called the *Upanishads*, composed from the ninth to the fifth centuries BCE, the Hindu faith holds that a soul exists in each living thing. Cows are particularly sacred, so Hindus do not eat beef.

philosophy study of the causes and meanings of things

reincarnation the process of being reborn over and over again in another human or animal body

learn on

To access videos, interactivities, discussion widgets, image galleries, weblinks and more, go to www.jacplus.com.au

SOURCE 1 Statues of guardian giants at a Buddhist temple in Bangkok, Thailand. These mythical creatures come from the *Ramayana*, an ancient Hindu epic.



Buddhism

Buddhism was founded by a Hindu prince called Siddhartha Gautama in the sixth century BCE in what is now the country of Nepal. After observing the human suffering around him, he decided to abandon his privileged life and seek truth. According to legend, he first spent years as a hermit and then set out to teach people what he called the Four Noble Truths. At this time people began calling him the Buddha, which means 'the Enlightened One'. Followers of Buddhism came to be called Buddhists.

SOURCE 2 Detail of a gigantic reclining Buddha figure in Thailand. It is covered in gold.



The Four Noble Truths are:

- All people suffer pain.
- People suffer because they keep being born and reborn, and pain continues.
- Pain is caused by the desire, or craving, for things.
- To overcome desire, a person must follow the Eightfold Path.

The Eightfold Path includes knowing truth, resisting evil, serving others and **meditation**. The Buddha taught that through this path a person could achieve *nirvana*, a state in which the soul would cease to exist as it comes into harmony with the universe.

Buddhism later lost much of its influence in India but it spread throughout most of Asia, including Sri Lanka, China, Japan, Tibet, Bhutan, Korea and mainland South-East Asia. Today it is the state religion in Thailand and Cambodia.

meditation exercising the mind through contemplation

Confucianism

Confucianism has had an enormous influence, particularly in China and Vietnam. Confucius (K'ung Fu-tse) lived in China from 551 to 479 BCE in a period of ongoing destructive wars. He was not concerned with religion, but rather with making a better society. He taught ideas about life and government to solve the problems of his age. During his lifetime Confucius had little success in influencing rulers but he gained disciples who went on to have great influence.

Confucius's sayings were recorded in a book called *Lun-yu (The Analects)*. He taught the ideals of family obligations, that government should exist for the people's welfare and that people would follow the example of a good ruler. Confucius's ideas were to influence Chinese thought right up to modern times.

2.13.1 Activities

CHECK YOUR UNDERSTANDING

- 1 Which religion that originated in southern Asia has many gods?
- 2 Which religion is the main faith in many countries but not in the country where it began?
- 3 Why has Confucianism been very influential even though it is not a religion?

USING HISTORICAL SOURCES AS EVIDENCE

- 4 How does **SOURCE 1** provide evidence that Hindu ideas have influenced the cultures of Buddhist countries?
- 5 What does **SOURCE 2** suggest about the way Buddhists regard the Buddha?

2.13.2 Religions that developed in western Asia

Judaism

Judaism is the religion of the Jewish people throughout the world. According to stories in the Old Testament of the Bible, the Hebrew (Jewish) people were enslaved in Egypt for about 300 years until a leader called Moses led them to Palestine. On the way he is said to have given them a set of laws called the Ten Commandments, which were dictated to him by their god, Yahweh. These events have long been debated by scholars, but there is some agreement that the Hebrews could have arrived in Palestine around 1100 BCE. Judaism was not a religion that set out to convert other peoples. However, it was to have an enormous influence on two later religions — Christianity and Islam.

Common features of Judaism, Christianity and Islam

All these three religions believe in one God. They share many beliefs and some of the same sacred texts. Judaism has the Torah. Christianity has the Bible. Islam has the Qur'an. All three religions believe that God must be obeyed. Each religion sets out guidelines for their followers to live good lives. Each holds that God will judge people according to how they live their lives and that there is a 'heaven' where good people live with God in an afterlife.

Christianity

The Christian religion arose in Palestine (then part of the Roman Empire) in the first century CE. Christianity was based on the teachings of Jesus Christ, a Jew whose followers preached that he was the son of God. Jesus taught his followers that through faith people could receive forgiveness for sins and gain **eternal life**. Because they saw him as a threat to their power, Jewish religious leaders had Jesus arrested, condemned and **crucified** by the Romans.

eternal life living forever

crucified killed by crucifixion, an ancient form of execution in which the victim was tied or nailed to a pole or (as was Jesus) a cross and left to die slowly in agony

The followers of Jesus came to be called Christians. They spread his teachings but the Romans saw the new religion as a threat because Christians refused to worship the Roman emperor. Roman persecution of Christians ended in 313 CE when Emperor Constantine made Christianity legal. It became the state religion of the Roman Empire in 391 CE and became the religion of nearly all people in Europe over the following centuries. Today Christianity is the main religion in Europe, North and South America, parts of Africa, Australia and some parts of Asia.

SOURCE 3 Jewish worshipers at the Western Wall of the ancient Hebrew temple in Jerusalem



SOURCE 4 Saint Mark's Cathedral in Venice, Italy



Islam

Islam was founded by the **prophet** Mohammed, who was born about 570 CE in Mecca, in Arabia, where people worshipped many gods and made sacrifices to idols. Mohammed believed that he had received revelations from an angel. He called on the people of Mecca to worship the 'one true God', known in Arabic as Allah. *Islam* means 'submission' to the will of Allah.

Many people in Mecca accepted Mohammed's teaching and became Muslims (Arabic for those who had 'surrendered' to Allah). They suffered persecution until Mohammed left Mecca and fled to Medina in 622. The year of this migration, called the *Hejira* in Arabic, is the date from which the Muslim calendar begins. The Muslims won several battles against their opponents. By 630 Mohammed had returned to Mecca, which became the centre of Islam.

After Mohammed's death, his revelations were written down as the Qur'an. This sacred text includes teachings on religious, social and political issues. Between 632 and 732 Islam spread across the Middle East and North Africa into Persia, parts of India and southern Spain. In the following centuries it spread through Central Asia and parts of South-East Asia. Islam is now the world's second most popular religion with more than one and a half billion followers. The world's largest Islamic country is Indonesia.

prophet a revealer or interpreter of God's will

SOURCE 5 Minarets reach to the sky in modern Istanbul in Turkey. These slender towers are connected to mosques (Islamic places of worship) and are used to call Muslims to prayer.



myWorldHistoryAtlas

Deepen and check your understanding of the topic with the following resources and auto-marked questions:
Monotheistic belief systems **Eastern belief systems**

2.13.2 Activities

CHECK YOUR UNDERSTANDING

- 1 Why do you think followers of Judaism did not try to convert other peoples?
- 2 What do Judaism, Christianity and Islam share in common?

USING HISTORICAL SOURCES AS EVIDENCE

- 3 Study **SOURCE 3**. Why do you think the ancient temple wall in Jerusalem is so significant for followers of Judaism?
- 4 What symbol identifies St. Mark's Cathedral (**SOURCE 4**) as a Christian church and what does it represent?
- 5 How many minarets can you count in **SOURCE 5** and what does this suggest about Islam's importance in modern Turkey?

2.13 PUTTING IT ALL TOGETHER

IDENTIFYING CONTINUITY AND CHANGE

- 1 Discuss possible reasons why some religions spread around the world while others remained mainly in one area or with one group of people.

ANALYSING CAUSE AND EFFECT

- 2 Make a timeline to show the order in which each of the major world religions and Confucianism were established.
- 3 Explain where developments within one religion led to the formation of a new religion.

2.14 SkillBuilder: Describing broad patterns of change

online only

What are broad patterns of change?

During any period of history, some changes happen quickly and others occur slowly. Some changes affect only limited numbers of people while others are widespread. In this topic we have studied developments in human societies from early communities (around 60 000 BCE) to later ancient times (up to around 650 CE). Over such a long period we would expect significant changes. Broad patterns of change are not the kind of changes that might have affected one community, rather, they are patterns of change that are extensive and widespread.



Go to your learnON course to access:

- An explanation of the skill (Tell me)
- A step-by-step process to develop the skill, with an example (Show me)
- An activity to allow you to practise the skill (Let me do it)
- Questions to test your application of the skill (Applying skills)

2.15 Review

This final subtopic provides a range of opportunities for you to review and respond through:

- i revising and checking your historical knowledge
- ii demonstrating your ability to apply historical concepts and skills.

Go to your learnON course to access:

- A key chronology of events relevant to the topic
- A summary of the key knowledge presented in the topic
- A 'Big Questions' activity
- A multiple choice topic test
- Short answer or extended writing responses

online only



on Resources

Interactivity

The ancient past before farming timeline

Create a visual timeline of key events in the ancient past before farming.

int-2934

Interactivity

The ancient past since farming timeline

Create a visual timeline of key events in the ancient past since farming.

int-2935

2.14 SkillBuilder: Describing broad patterns of change

2.14.1 Tell me

What are broad patterns of change?

During any period of history, some changes happen quickly and others occur slowly. Some changes affect only limited numbers of people while others are widespread. In this topic we have studied developments in human societies from early communities (around 60 000 BCE) to later ancient times (up to around 650 CE). Over such a long period we would expect significant changes. Broad patterns of change are not the kinds of changes that might have affected one community, such as a change of rulers. Rather, they are patterns of change that are extensive or widespread.

Broad patterns of change have taken place in the modern world in just a generation. For example, when your parents were your age there was no internet, and Facebook or Twitter could hardly have been imagined. Such technological changes have revolutionised the ways we communicate. In the ancient world, patterns of change occurred much more slowly but, just as much as the recent technological revolution, these changes transformed human societies.

Why is it important to describe broad patterns of change?

In a period as long as that of the ancient world there are many examples of broad changes in such things as technologies, religious beliefs and the ways that societies were organised and governed.

Identifying such broad patterns of change will help you to:

- recognise the nature of a change that occurred
- recognise the speed of any change
- recognise the extent or significance of any change
- assess the role of changes in contributing to other changes.

2.14.2 Show me

How to describe broad patterns of change

From your work in this topic, you will already understand that there were enormous changes from the Old Stone Age through the New Stone Age and into later ancient times. You will be able to recognise such changes when comparing primary sources from different ages within the times of the ancient world. You can recognise evidence of broad patterns of change by asking questions such as:

For what broad patterns of change do these sources provide evidence?

To answer such a question you need to break the question down into more specific questions, such as:

1. What kind of development was this? For example, was it a change in the ways in which people provided for basic needs such as food and shelter, or a change in beliefs, transport, technology, trade or entertainment?
2. What was the situation before the change?
3. How did the change occur?
4. What was different after the change?

In the following example, these types of questions have been applied to

SOURCES 1, 2 and 3.

Returning to the question we posed earlier:

For what broad patterns of change do **SOURCES 1, 2 and 3** provide evidence?

SOURCE 1 This Old Stone Age painting on rock shows a man hunting deer. It is from Mexico. Old Stone Age rock paintings, cave paintings and engravings showing similar scenes have been found in many places, including Australia and France. Some are believed to be as much as 30 000 years old.



SOURCE 2 This ancient Egyptian wall painting of people harvesting crops is from the tomb of a successful Egyptian artisan named Sennedjem, c. 1306–1290 BCE.



SOURCE 3 This relief sculpture depicts ancient Assyrians hunting lions. It is from around 883 BCE to 612 BCE when Assyria was a powerful empire in the Middle East.



We can break the question down to more specific questions and answer these:

1. *What kind of development was this?* **SOURCES 1** and **2** provide evidence for a change from hunter-gatherer societies to societies based on farming.
2. *What was the situation before the change?* Before the New Stone Age, which saw the development of farming, all peoples provided for their needs by hunting and gathering, like the hunter depicted in **SOURCE 1**.
3. *How did the change occur?* The change first came about around 9000 BCE when people in the Fertile Crescent began growing crops and herding sheep and goats. As others saw advantages in adopting these new ways, the development spread to other societies, like the ancient Egyptians in **SOURCE 2**.
4. *What was different after the change?* People were able to produce food in smaller areas than were needed by hunter-gatherers so they could settle in permanent dwellings. They could also produce a surplus so that some people could specialise in work other than food production. Large settled societies saw the need for laws and powerful rulers. The surpluses the people produced could support a ruling class, who saw hunting as a form of sport or recreation, as depicted in **SOURCE 3**, rather than as a necessity, as in **SOURCE 1**.

2.14.3 Let me do it

Apply the following questions to **SOURCES 4** and **5** to identify broad patterns of change in another aspect of life in ancient times.

General question: For what broad patterns of change do **SOURCES 4** and **5** provide evidence?

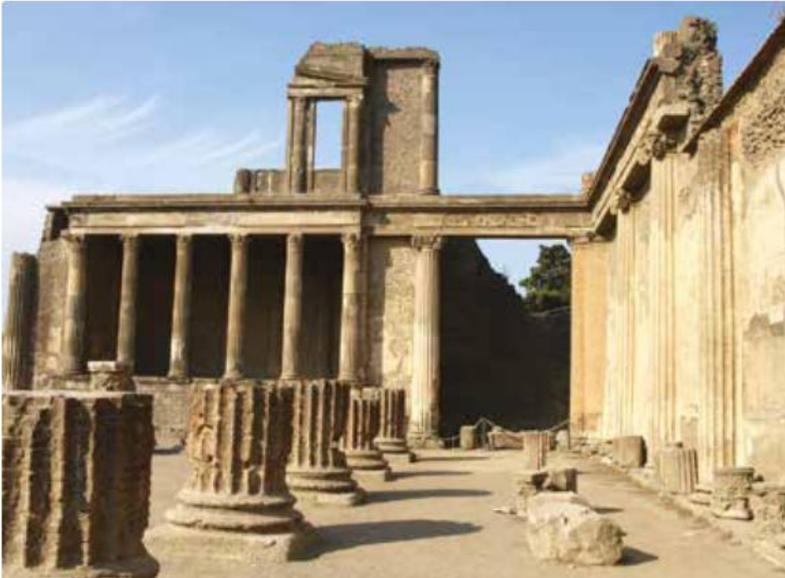
More specific questions:

1. What kind of development was this?
2. What was the situation, as shown in **SOURCE 4**, before the change?
3. How did the change occur?
4. What was different, as shown in **SOURCE 5**, after the change?

SOURCE 4 Creevykeel Megalithic Tomb was constructed in Ireland around 3000 BCE by New Stone Age people. This was around the same time that structures like Stonehenge and other stone circles, and temples and tombs, were built in England. Because everything else built by these peoples was made of wood and other vegetable matter, such giant stone monuments, called megaliths, are the only built traces they left behind.



SOURCE 5 Part of the remains of the ancient Roman town of Pompeii, which was buried in volcanic ash when Mount Vesuvius erupted in 79 CE



2.14 APPLYING SKILLS

IDENTIFYING CONTINUITY AND CHANGE

- 1 Using your answers to the four specific questions for **SOURCES 4** and **5**, write a half-page description of the kinds of broad changes in human-built structures that took place between New Stone Age times and later ancient times. Suggest probable explanations for these changes.

2.15 Review

In this topic we have studied the big picture of broad patterns of change through prehistoric and ancient times. We have followed the human story from the time when humans spread from Africa throughout the world. We have traced their journey through time from the Old Stone Age and through the Neolithic Revolution and seen how societies changed as they developed farming and civilisation.

2.15.1 Review

Chronology: timeline of the ancient world



Resources

Interactivity

The ancient past before farming timeline

Create a visual timeline of key events in the ancient past before farming.

int-2934

Interactivity

The ancient past since farming timeline

Create a visual timeline of key events in the ancient past since farming.

int-2935

Key knowledge: summary

2.2 Examining the evidence

- For Old Stone Age societies our main primary source evidence comes from tools, weapons and cave paintings.
- For New Stone Age, Bronze Age and Iron Age societies we have much more evidence, especially from societies that used writing.

2.3 Out of Africa

- All modern humans descended from people in Africa, some of whom migrated into other parts of the world from around 100 000 years ago.
- Other human species also migrated from Africa but became extinct by about 30 000 years ago.
- Old Stone Age peoples were hunter-gatherers.

2.4 A changing Paleolithic world

- Humans adapted to survive the conditions of the last Ice Age.
- Global warming from around 12 000 BC created conditions in which humans in some places could move towards the New Stone Age.

2.5 An amazing journey

- Lower sea levels during the last Ice Age shortened the distance between Asia and Australia.
- The ancestors of Australia's Indigenous peoples arrived by sea at least 50 000 years ago.

2.6 The Mesolithic Age

- The Mesolithic Age was a step between the Old Stone Age and New Stone Age.
- Mesolithic sites in Europe provide evidence for this brief period.

2.7 The New Stone Age

- People in some places became farmers and herders and lived in permanent villages.
- These changes led to significant inventions, including writing, mathematics, money and specialisation of occupations.

2.8 Cities, laws, government

- Sumer is regarded as the first civilisation.
- The change to more complex societies led to the rise of powerful rulers, laws and increased trade.

2.9 Society and culture

- Civilisation increased differences in social classes and in wealth and power.
- Organised religions became a feature of civilisations.

2.10 Civilisations and empires in North Africa, western Asia and Europe

- Significant ancient empires were founded by Egyptians, Akkadians, Elamites, Babylonians, Hittites, Assyrians, Persians and Romans.
- Empires rose and fell through destructive wars.

2.11 Civilisations in South and East Asia

- The first Chinese dynasty for which we have evidence is the Shang dynasty.
- China became an empire under the Qin dynasty.
- The first Indian civilisation was in the Indus Valley.

2.12 Ancient American civilisations

- Humans reached the Americas crossing a land bridge from Asia.
- The earliest evidence of farming in the Americas has been dated to 2700 BCE.
- The earliest American civilisation was the Olmec.

2.13 The ancient birth of modern religions and philosophies

- Hinduism, Buddhism and Confucianism originated in Asia.
- Judaism, Christianity and Islam originated in the Middle East.

Key knowledge: multiple-choice topic test

1. In which of these continents did humans originate?
 - a. Asia
 - b. Europe
 - c. Australia
 - d. Africa
2. By which of these means did Old Stone Age peoples supply their needs?
 - a. Shooting and fishing
 - b. Herding and gathering
 - c. Hunting and gathering
 - d. Farming and manufacturing
3. How did humans in the northern hemisphere adapt to survive the last Ice Age?
 - a. Making better weapons and changing hunting methods
 - b. Building cities
 - c. Burning large fires
 - d. Staying indoors
4. The term 'Neolithic Revolution' describes which of the following changes?
 - a. From hunting and gathering to mass production
 - b. From unscientific ideas to scientific thinking
 - c. From hunter-gatherer societies to societies based on farming
 - d. From primitive to sophisticated technologies
5. Who were the first people to use writing?
 - a. Romans
 - b. Sumerians
 - c. Greeks
 - d. Egyptians
6. Consequences of the Neolithic Revolution included which of the following?
 - a. Powerful rulers, written laws and growth of towns
 - b. More entertainment and leisure
 - c. Greater equality
 - d. Less diseases
7. In ancient Sumer, what title was given to a ruler of a city-state?
 - a. Big boss
 - b. Chief executive officer
 - c. King
 - d. Ensi
8. Civilisations that arose in ancient western Asia and Europe included:
 - a. the Hittite Empire, the Persian Empire and the Roman Empire.
 - b. the Shang dynasty and the Indus Valley Civilisation.
 - c. the Olmec and Maya.
 - d. the Aztec and Inca.
9. The two oldest world religions are which of the following?
 - a. Islam and Buddhism
 - b. Christianity and Hinduism
 - c. Hinduism and Buddhism
 - d. Judaism and Christianity
10. Ancient Persia was which modern country?
 - a. Egypt
 - b. Iraq
 - c. Turkey
 - d. Iran

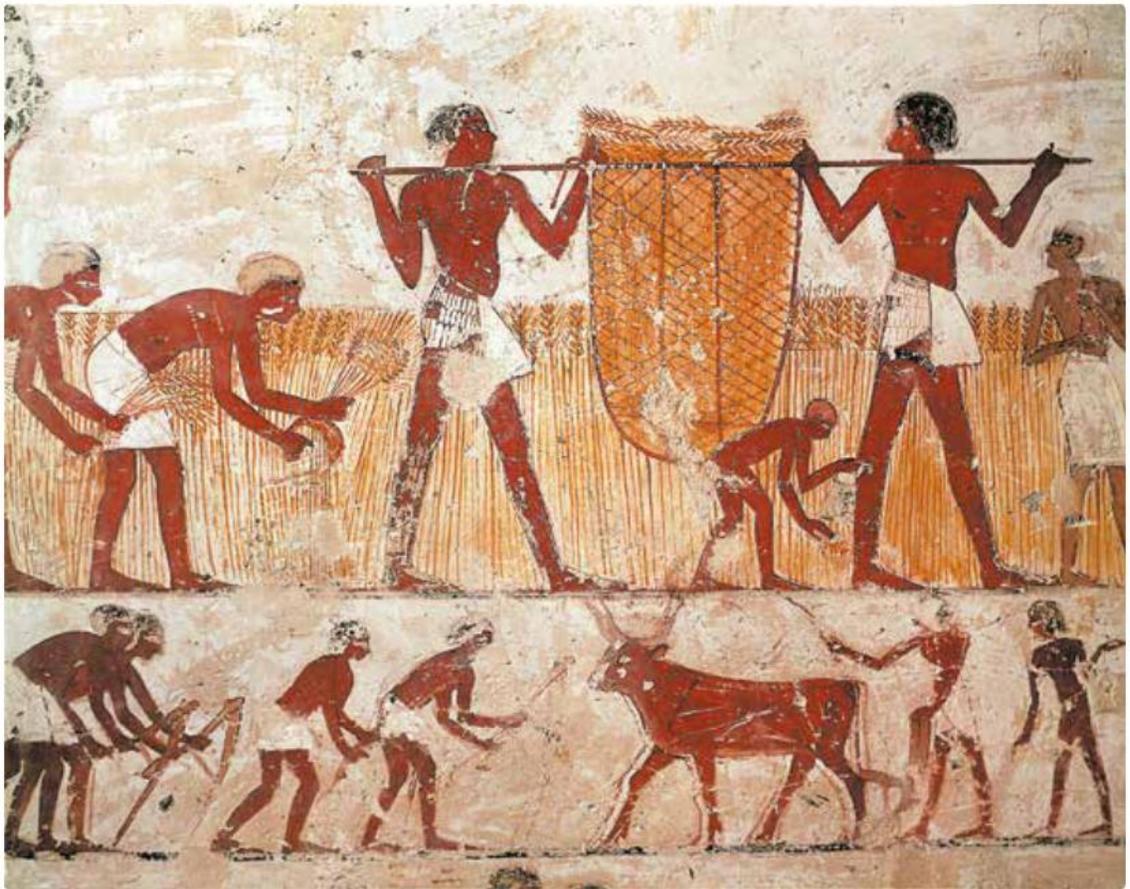
11. On what material was ancient Sumerian writing done?
 - a. Stone
 - b. Clay
 - c. Paper
 - d. Gold
12. Which of the following features of the Fertile Crescent was most important in making it a suitable place for the Neolithic Revolution to occur?
 - a. Animals that could be tamed
 - b. A wet climate
 - c. Rivers that regularly flooded leaving fertile mud
 - d. Clever people

2.15.2 Respond

Identifying continuity and change

1. Describe what activities are being carried out by the ancient Egyptians depicted in **SOURCE 1**.
2. Explain how the lives of the people in **SOURCE 1** are different to the lives of their Old Stone Age ancestors.
3. Explain why such a detailed depiction of everyday life would not have been created before the Neolithic Revolution.

SOURCE 1 A scene from a wall painting in an ancient Egyptian tomb showing farmers at work



Using historical sources as evidence

4. Examine **SOURCE 2**.
 - a. Describe the weapons and armour of the Assyrians.
 - b. Describe the weapons and armour of the Elamites.
 - c. Explain what the warriors are doing.
 - d. Why would Assyrian kings want to decorate their palaces with such scenes?

SOURCE 2 Detail from a wall panel in the palace of the Assyrian king Ashurbanipal. This scene depicts Assyrian soldiers defeating Elamites and killing Elam's King Teumman with a mace around 660 BCE.



Responding to the big questions

At the beginning of this topic several big questions were posed. Use the knowledge and understanding you have gained through your study of the subtopics to answer them:

1. To what places did Old Stone Age people migrate when they moved out of Africa?
2. What can we know of the ways that Old Stone Age people lived?
3. How did the rise of agriculture change people's lives?
4. Where did civilisations emerge in ancient times?
5. In what ways did civilisation change human societies?
6. What are some of the discoveries and mysteries that indicate what we know and do not know about these times?

3 Ancient Australia

3.1 Overview

3.1.1 LINKS WITH OUR TIMES

The history, culture, beliefs and rituals of Aboriginal and Torres Strait Islander peoples stretch back to distant time. Scientists estimate that the story of Aboriginal Australia began between 60 000 and 120 000 years ago. This is a story of the world's longest continuous culture.

The epic history of Aboriginal and Torres Strait Islander peoples lies carved into the rock faces and beneath the soils of this ancient land. The remains of tens of thousands of years of human occupation provide modern Australia with a connection to the past. At archaeological sites such as those at Lake Mungo in New South Wales and Badu Island in the Torres Strait, evidence is revealed of the life and culture of ancient communities. Archaeologists have discovered sites of human occupation on the Australian continent from at least 60 000 years ago and evidence of human activity in the Torres Strait dating to 4000 years ago.

Through the ages, the relationship between the Aboriginal and Torres Strait Islander peoples and their land survived and continues today in stories, songs, dancing and art. Today, archaeologists conduct their research in partnership with local communities, drawing on the knowledge held by the traditional custodians of the land.

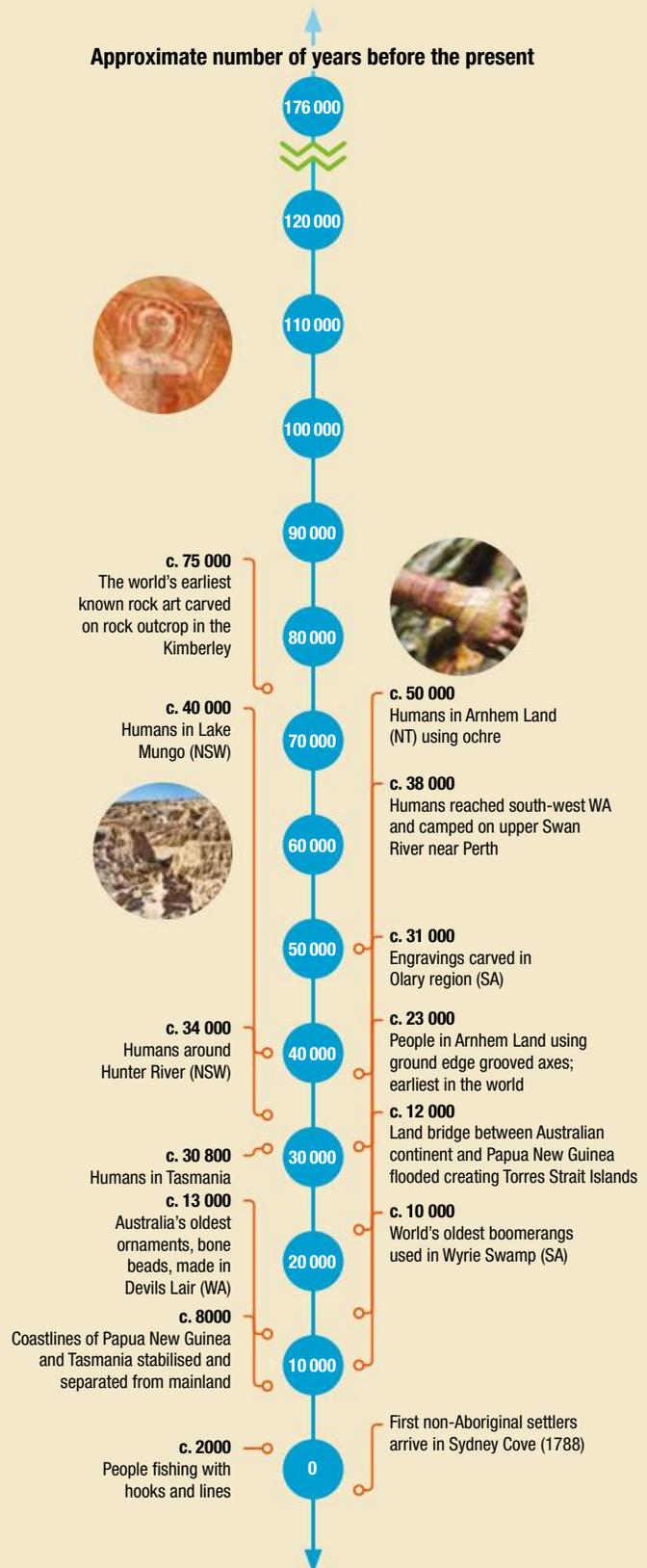
BIG QUESTIONS

As you work through this topic, look for information that will help you to answer these questions:

- 1 Who were the people of ancient Australia?
- 2 How did Australia's geography shape ancient Aboriginal and Torres Strait Islander communities and their culture?
- 3 What evidence exists about Australia's ancient past?
- 4 Why is conservation of Australia's ancient past important?
- 5 Why is the history of Aboriginal and Torres Strait Islander peoples important to modern-day Australia?

STARTER QUESTIONS

- 1 When did the human occupation of Australia begin?
- 2 How do you think people from pre-literate (without reading and writing) societies recorded their history and beliefs?
- 3 Suggest ways in which archaeologists today could work with the traditional custodians of the land.





3.2 Examining the evidence

quarry an excavation or pit from which stone or building material is cut

shell midden a mound of shells and other waste material marking the site of an ancient community

sediment the material that settles at the bottom of a liquid

geologist someone who studies the sediments and landforms associated with ancient campsites

palaeontologist a scientist who studies fossils

anthropologist someone who researches the appearance and features of the life of prehistoric people and the connections they had with other human populations

the Dreaming a common belief system of Australia's Aboriginal peoples that explains creation and the nature of the world, the place that every person had in that world and the importance of ritual and tradition

lore the customs and stories that came from the Dreaming and continued to govern all aspects of traditional life

3.2.1 How do we know about ancient Australia?

The history and beliefs of ancient Australia were not written onto clay tablets or scrolls of papyrus. Modern archaeologists often begin their study of the life and culture of ancient Aboriginal and Torres Strait Islander communities by talking and consulting with the traditional owners of the land.

From oral tradition and archaeology

Our ancient past was remembered through the spoken word. This oral history was passed down through the generations. As such, the archaeological record of our ancient past is incomplete. Archaeologists gather their evidence from ancient occupation sites such as camps, **quarries**, **shell middens** and fish traps, burial areas, ceremonial and sacred sites. Archaeologists interpret layers of **sediment**, charcoal, clay and sand. Sites, such as Lake Mungo in the Willandra Lakes region of western New South Wales, are studied and interpreted not only by archaeologists, but also **geologists**, **palaeontologists** and **anthropologists**.

SOURCE 1 Newspaper account of archaeological excavations at Barrow Island, Western Australia

Boodie Cave on Barrow Island is yielding an ancient secret of global significance: resourceful, well-fed humans were living in its limestone chambers more than 50,000 years ago, several thousand years earlier than archaeologists had estimated.

The startling evidence has been unearthed in surgically excavated pits on Barrow, Western Australia's second largest island, 50km off the Pilbara coast.

Thousands of tiny artefacts lie in sediment dated to 50,000 years old . . .

There are even older dates of 53,000 years from grains mixed in with fragments of a shellfish meal.

...

"People talked about it, and dates of 47,000 for Aboriginal occupation have been well accepted, but there was no hard data before.

...

Barrow Island was once part of the original coastal plain of northwest Australia, now drowned.

For three years, teams from UWA, the University of Queensland, James Cook University and Sacramento University have dug pits in the cave floor, unearthing evidence that early Australians lived off marine and terrestrial life along the limestone ridges until sea levels rose and Barrow became an island 7500 years ago.

And they dined well in a stunningly productive landscape, Veth says.

"You take off the sterile soil surface and . . . in layers below are (the remains of) turtle, oyster, crocodile, porpoise, sea urchin and freshwater mussel. It's like a seafood basket, only 50 times richer. There are also the bones of marsupial carnivores and kangaroos — these people were eating better than we do."

Several traditional owners also helped, such as Eden Bobby from the Kuruma Marthudunera Aboriginal Corporation. "It was a privilege to see first-hand how archaeologists use scientific techniques to understand how the old people of this land lived tens of thousands of years ago," he said.

Most intriguing are material clues to a resourceful people who harvested food and traded items over possibly hundreds of kilometres. "Heating stones" were nestled among ancient turtle remains, large quartzite pebbles carried back from inland gorges to act as cooking agents.

Baler shells show signs of being shaped into spoons or incised with mysterious markings.

...

"One of the big questions of Australian archeology is 'When did Aboriginal people get here?'

"To jump over that 50,000-year mark, with the reliable results of Peter and his team, will attract a lot of international interest in this find."

So when exactly did the First Australians make landfall?

"That's the big question," McNiven says. "We're now able to say it's at least 50–53,000 years ago. It's getting earlier and earlier all the time."

Lore and museums

'Caring for country' is a very important responsibility taken on by many Indigenous Australian communities. To Aboriginal people 'country' refers to the traditional land to which a person belongs, or the land of their **Dreaming**. In caring for their country the traditional owners of the land share knowledge and pass on the **lore**.

Non-indigenous people and government institutions, like museums, also have a very important role to play in protecting and conserving the heritage, culture and artefacts of ancient Australia. Museums are the places where the stories of many people, places and times can be told. The National Museum of Australia preserves and displays collections of **artefacts** that represent our history from ancient to modern times.

Artefacts become wonderful sources of information when they are given a background. Aboriginal and Torres Strait Islander art and objects come to life when they are interpreted by people who have traditional knowledge and understanding. Connecting the oral traditions with the museum objects helps us to see the images and hear the voices of ancient Australia. What survived from the ancient past can then give us a glimpse of the world as it was for the first Australians.

artefact an object made or changed by humans

SOURCE 2 Denise Lovett of the Gunditjmarra people (western Victoria) explaining the importance of connecting artefacts, such as the emu-feather skirt made by her ancestors, with the object's cultural background

I look at the feathers that the women would have collected, made and danced with. I wonder what song they were singing while they danced. Rightfully, this should have been handed down to someone's daughter and the story handed down too. It's sad that we don't have the whole meaning of them, that they are just objects.

SOURCE 3 An emu-feather dance skirt, made and worn by Wendy Berick of the Dja Dja Wurrung people (Melbourne, Victoria)



DID YOU KNOW?

Stone tools are the longest lasting objects that archaeologists find because organic substances such as plants and animals perish after only a few hundred years. Nature sometimes preserves objects such as the wooden boomerangs that survived in the water-logged peat bog of South Australia's Wylie Swamp for over 10 000 years and the 20 000-year-old bone tools at Devil's Lair in Western Australia.

3.2 PUTTING IT ALL TOGETHER

CHECK YOUR UNDERSTANDING

- 1 What is an artefact? Give an example.
- 2 Why do modern archaeologists talk to today's traditional owners of the land?

USING HISTORICAL SOURCES AS EVIDENCE

- 3 Suggest why the sources we have from archaeology may not give a complete picture of life in ancient Australia.
- 4 Why is the evidence found at Boodle Cave in **SOURCE 1** described as 'startling'?
- 5 What were some of the 'material remains' that were found at Barrow Island (**SOURCE 1**)?
- 6 What assumptions could you make about resources used by people in ancient Australia from an examination of **SOURCE 3**?

DETERMINING HISTORICAL SIGNIFICANCE

- 7 'Artefacts from ancient Australia can only reveal their true meaning if their cultural background is also considered.' Explain what you understand by this statement. **SOURCES 2** and **3** may help you to do this.
- 8 Consider the ways we can learn about ancient Australia as presented in this subtopic. Rank them from most useful to least useful as a way of learning about ancient Australia's past. Justify your ranking.

3.3 The first people of Australia and the Torres Strait Islands

3.3.1 The peopling of an ancient continent

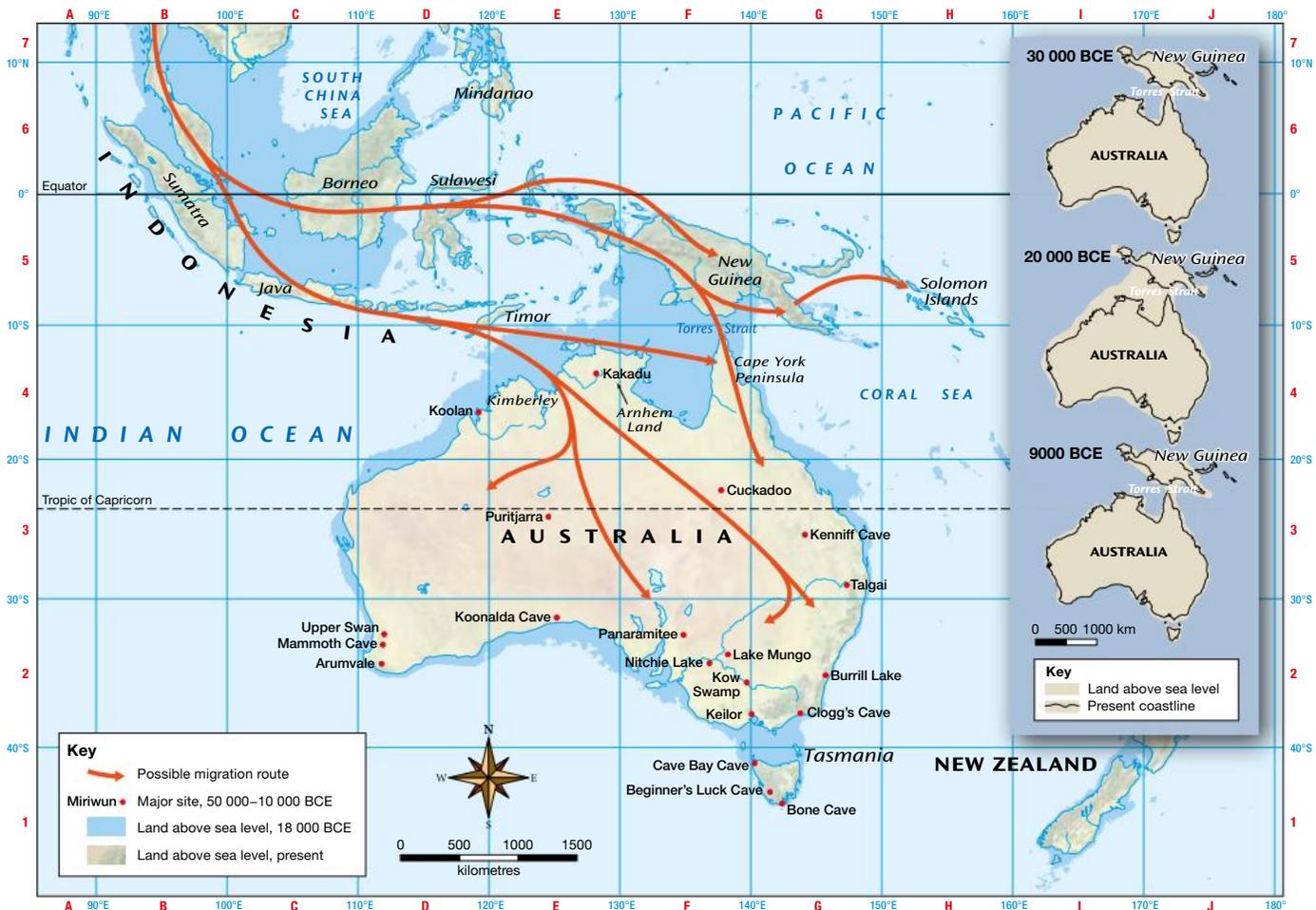
Ice Ages long periods during which glaciers covered much of the northern hemisphere

For the last two million years the Earth's climate has gone through periods of change. During the **Ice Ages** the level of the ocean dropped up to 150 metres below the present level. From 80 000 to 10 000 years ago the sea levels remained so low that Papua New Guinea, the Torres Strait Islands and Tasmania were linked to the Australian mainland.

Scientists generally believe that the first Australians made the journey from South-East Asia sometime during a long Ice Age period. It would have been possible to walk much of the way and still stay in sight of land when crossing the water. It is thought that the ocean levels were at their lowest approximately 55 000 years ago. Later, as the climate became wetter and warmer the sea levels rose and the land bridge between mainland Australia and Papua New Guinea flooded and formed the Torres Strait.

BP (Before the Present) a term used by archaeologists instead of BCE (Before the Common Era) for when time periods are vast. See subtopic 1.2 for more information.

SOURCE 1 Possible migration routes of the forebears of Australia's Indigenous peoples. The lowest sea levels in the last 120 000 years occurred about 20 000, 70 000 and 90 000 **BP (Before the Present)**. Sea levels were lower then because large amounts of water were locked up as ice at the Earth's poles.



Source: Spatial Vision.

Aboriginal peoples

Archaeologists do not agree on the length of time people have lived on the Australian continent. The beginning of human occupation of Australia is generally agreed to date back to the *Pleistocene Period*, a vast period in time lasting from approximately 2.5 million years ago until 10 500 BP. During this period there were great changes in climate and sea levels. The natural environment and landscape were constantly being reshaped.

In the early 1960s it was commonly believed that Aboriginal people had inhabited Australia for only 9000 years. By 1980, **radiocarbon dating** had pushed the dates for settlement of our continent back a further 30 000 years. Scientists and archaeologists continue to debate the topic as new evidence and research technology develops. The remains of tools found in Victoria support a date of occupation in that region as far back as 70 000 years ago.

It is possible that the Aboriginal settlement of Australia occurred over many generations and that the first Australians travelled along different routes. Scientists continue to debate and question the theories of Aboriginal arrival and occupation of our continent. There are currently three main theories:

1. Joseph Birdsell, an American anthropologist, suggested that small groups of people settled the inland areas of Australia first and then spread rapidly across the continent as their population increased. Birdsell's *fast-track model* estimated that within 3000 years the settlement would have extended all the way to the eastern and southern coasts.
2. Sandra Bowdler, an Australian archaeologist, believes the first Australians were a seafaring people who selected coastal areas for their first settlement communities. Bowdler's theory has the spread of the population moving gradually from the coast and along the river systems to avoid the harsh deserts. Central Australia would have been the last place of occupation.
3. David Horton, an Australian biologist and archaeologist, points to the adaptable and varied nature of traditional Aboriginal communities to suggest that a wide variety of coastal, river and woodland environments would have been the starting place for groups of early settlers who progressively spread across the continent.

Torres Strait Islander peoples

The rising sea levels at the end of the last Ice Age created Australia's modern coastline and the islands of the Torres Strait. The Torres Strait Islands are located to the north of the Australian mainland where the Coral and Arafura Seas meet. The islands of the Torres Strait vary greatly in landscape and were mainly formed from the remains of:

- the isolated tops of a range of **plateau** land extending from Cape York, the northern tip of the Australian continent, to the low hills of the southern coast of Papua New Guinea. These are the rocky islands because they are the remains of the former land bridge and are an extension of Australia's Great Dividing Range
- the extinct volcanoes of Mer, Erub and Ugar located on the eastern side of the Torres Strait and the northern end of the Great Barrier Reef. These islands supported large gardens because of the rich volcanic soil
- coral reefs in the central area. These are mostly **cays** with poor quality sandy soil and little water
- **mangrove** mud flats in the top-west. These were formed by **silt** deposits from the large rivers of Papua New Guinea and are rich in wildlife.

Land bridges would have been a migration route and possible place of settlement for early peoples during the Ice Age. The earliest archaeological evidence of permanent settlement of the Torres Strait Islands dates to 4000 years ago. Earlier evidence has been destroyed by powerful tides created by rising sea levels. However, by 2500 years ago a robust seafaring culture was well established on many of the islands.

The people of the Torres Strait Islands are the second group of Indigenous Australians, and are not Aboriginal people who live on the islands of the Strait. According to Torres Strait Island legend, the settlers of the eastern islands had come from the Fly River region of Papua New Guinea. Islanders believe that the people of the western and central region had their origin in the rivers and coasts of Papua New Guinea's southern region. The Torres Strait Islander people generally share the features of **Melanesian** culture with the people of Papua New Guinea. Scientists believe that the first inhabitants of Papua New Guinea and the Torres Strait came from Wallacea (modern Indonesia) approximately 70 000 years ago.

radiocarbon dating a way of dating objects of plant or animal origin according to the amount of carbon left within them

DID YOU KNOW?

It is believed that Aboriginal Australians crossed the land bridge that connected Tasmania to the mainland more than 30 000 years ago. When sea levels rose and covered the land bridge to form Bass Strait, these early Australians remained isolated in Tasmania.

plateau a high, flat topped landform

cay a small island found on coral reefs

mangrove area in a tropical or subtropical climate where vegetation grows in salty or brackish water

silt fine sand or earth particles carried and deposited by running water

Melanesian belonging to the island groups of the South Pacific, north-east of Australia

SOURCE 2 The Torres Strait contains 247 islands and hundreds of cays, reefs and sandbanks. This image shows part of the Murray Islands in the Torres Strait: Waier Island (foreground) with Murray Island in the background. The Murray Islands are the vents of volcanoes that were flooded by rising sea levels 8000 to 10 000 years ago after the last Ice Age.



3.3.1 Activities

CHECK YOUR UNDERSTANDING

- 1 State whether each of the following statements is true or false.
 - a Archaeologists agree on the exact time Australia was occupied by humans.
 - b Scientists believe that the Torres Strait was formed when sea levels rose and the land bridge between mainland Australia and Papua New Guinea was flooded.
 - c Evidence for human occupation of Victoria can be dated back to over 90 000 years ago.
 - d Archaeologist Sandra Bowdler believes central Australia would have been the last area of the continent to be occupied by Aboriginal Australians.
 - e Australia was once connected to Papua New Guinea by a land bridge.
- 2 Briefly describe the various landscapes of the Torres Strait Islands.

USING HISTORICAL SOURCES AS EVIDENCE

- 3 Using the map in **SOURCE 1** and the information in the text, describe how the Ice Age changed Australia and from where archaeologists believe the migration of ancient people to Australia came.
- 4 How do you think the location and geography of the Torres Strait Islands would have influenced occupation of this area by early humans?

3.3.2 Explaining creation – the Dreaming

As human occupation of the Australian continent proceeded, hundreds of different spiritual beliefs and cultural traditions as well as hundreds of different languages developed. However, despite these regional differences, Aboriginal communities did share a common belief in a time known as *the Dreaming*. The Dreaming explained creation and the nature of the world, the place that every person had in that world and the importance of ritual and tradition. The Dreaming also taught people about their country and where water, food and shelter would be found.

learn on

To access videos, interactivities, discussion widgets, image galleries, weblinks and more, go to www.jacplus.com.au

The Dreaming was handed from one generation to the next through stories, music, dance and art. It told of the time that the **ancestral beings** moved across the continent creating and moulding the land and its rivers, lakes, mountains and all living creatures. As the ancestral beings travelled across the landscape they left a trail that could be understood as mountains, waterholes, plant formations and other features of the geography. This trail marked out the traditional land and boundaries of each tribal group. The landforms provided ancient people with their evidence of the Dreaming. After the ancestral beings had finished creating the world they were transformed into trees, rocks, rivers and all the natural features of country. These became the sacred places of Aboriginal culture.

ancestral beings
gods or deities who taught people how to live and the rules of society and who are regarded as the direct ancestors of Aboriginal peoples living today

SOURCE 3 From Regina McKenzie, *Towards a New Dreaming*

Dreaming gives us our history, our origin, where we started from. They are not made up stories, they are factual events from long ago. Our people have made them into stories so that they are easier for children to understand.

The Dreaming established the laws and the nature of the relationships between different groups of Aboriginal people. The links between people were built upon their connections to the land and to the Dreaming. Aboriginal tradition taught people that the place of their birth and their **clan** established the country they belonged to.

clan a group of people of common descent or ancestry

The belief in the Dreaming cannot be accurately translated into English because there is no equivalent set of beliefs in non-Indigenous society. Many Aboriginal words describe the idea of the Dreaming, according to the language group a person belongs to:

- *Ungud* — the Ngarinyin people of the Kimberley region in Western Australia
- *Kulbul* — the Yaraldi people of the lower Murray region of South Australia
- *Wongar* — the Yolngu people of northeast Arnhem Land

Some Aboriginal people claim the origin of their ancient ancestors in Australia, at a time when humans formed with the landscape. Their Dreaming beliefs provide stories of an Aboriginal presence on the continent since the beginning of time. This Dreaming belief explains the origin of all life in Australia and denies theories of the arrival of people from South-East Asia to Australia during a previous Ice Age.

SOURCE 4 Sacred Wandjina rock art painted on the wall at Bachsten Creek in West Kimberley. The Wandjina are ancestral beings of the Kimberley region and the bringers of rain, who made and controlled the weather and fertility.



SOURCE 5 The Torres Strait Islander people also have their Dreaming stories. Tagai, a warrior and fisherman, was the creator being who shaped their world. To seafaring people the stars gave them their navigation for journeys across the ocean. In a range of stories, Tagai is responsible for creating the star patterns in the night sky.

Tagai was a great fisherman. One day he and his crew of 12 were fishing from their outrigger canoe. They were unable to catch any fish, so Tagai left the canoe and went onto the nearby reef to look for fish there.

As the day grew hotter and hotter, the waiting crew of Zugubals (beings who took on human form when they visited Earth) grew impatient and frustrated. Their thirst grew, but the only drinking water in the canoe belonged to Tagai. Their patience ran out and they drank Tagai's water.

When Tagai returned, he was furious that the Zugubals had consumed all of his water for the voyage. In his rage he killed all 12 of his crew. He returned them to the sky and placed them in two groups: six men in Usal (the Pleiades star cluster) and the other six Utimal (Orion). He told his crew to stay in the northern sky and to keep away from him.

Tagai can be seen in the southern skies, standing in a canoe in the Milky Way. His left hand is the Southern Cross holding a spear. His right hand is a group of stars in the constellation Corvus holding a fruit called Eugina. He is standing on his canoe, formed by the stars of Scorpius.

3.3.2 Activities

CHECK YOUR UNDERSTANDING

1 Fill in the blank spaces.

The _____ is a _____ system that is shared by Aboriginal peoples. It describes a time when _____ beings moved across the continent creating the features of the _____ and all living _____.

2 How was the Dreaming handed down to successive generations of Aboriginal peoples?

3 Explain why the belief in the Dreaming cannot be accurately translated into English.

4 Why are the stars so important to Torres Strait Islander people?

USING HISTORICAL SOURCES AS EVIDENCE

5 Read **SOURCE 3**.

a Why was the Dreaming made into stories?

b How does the Dreaming connect people with nature?

6 **SOURCE 4** shows a representation of a creator god for many Aboriginal communities. Describe how the ancient artist portrayed this ancestral being and why it would have been important for ancient peoples to express their stories through their art.

7 Write a brief recount of the Dreaming story in **SOURCE 5** and explain what such stories could teach a listener.

3.3 PUTTING IT ALL TOGETHER

USING HISTORICAL SOURCES AS EVIDENCE

1 What evidence do scientists examine in developing their theories on the human settlement of Australia?

2 Suggest reasons why archaeologists have developed different theories explaining how Aboriginal people occupied the continent.

ANALYSING CAUSE AND EFFECT

3 a List all the dates and events mentioned in this subtopic in chronological order from earliest to latest and draw a timeline.

b Are there any events you can say led i) directly and ii) indirectly to another? Why is this task difficult?

IDENTIFYING CONTINUITY AND CHANGE

4 Write a short paragraph explaining why the acknowledgment of the Dreaming as a set of creation beliefs is important in modern Australia.

DETERMINING HISTORICAL SIGNIFICANCE

5 Does it matter that experts cannot agree on when early humans arrived in Australia? Explain your answer.

learn on

To access videos, interactivities, discussion widgets, image galleries, weblinks and more, go to www.jacplus.com.au

3.4 Managing an ancient land

3.4.1 The influence of the environment on ancient Aboriginal communities

The landscape and climate of ancient Australia was constantly changing. Aboriginal and Torres Strait Islander communities had to develop many methods of hunting and managing their challenging natural environment.

Indigenous Australian communities are widely recognised as having gained an enormous practical knowledge of land and resource management. In traditional communities food was harvested very efficiently, leaving time for the development of cultural activities. The movement of camps was done according to the community understanding of patterns of climate, marine and insect life, plant growth and the habits of wild animals.

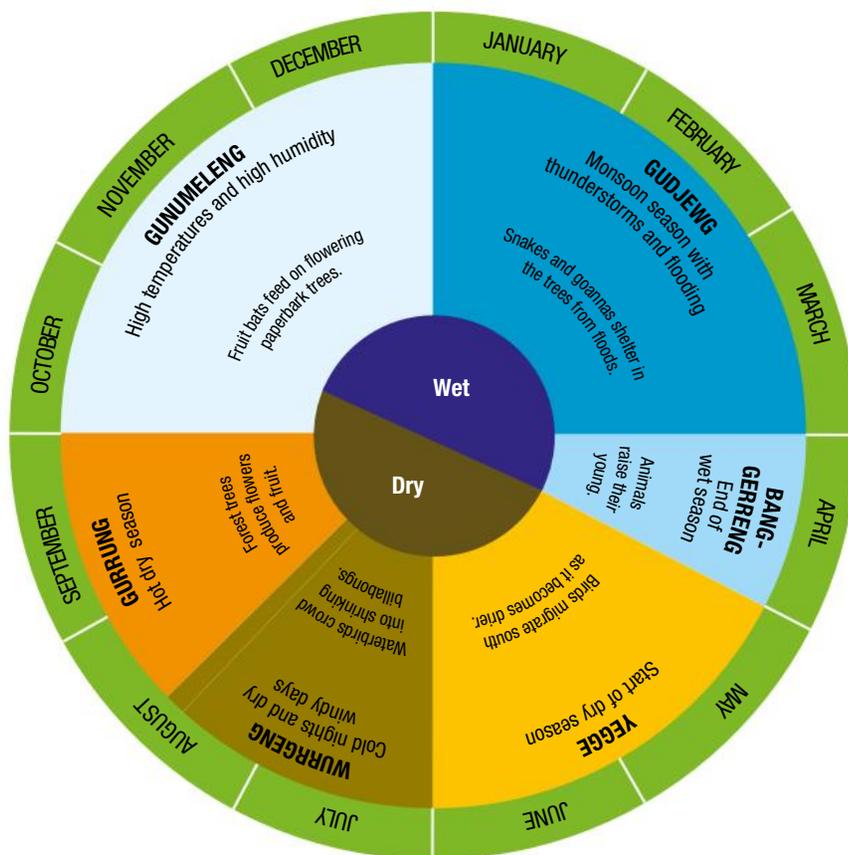
Firestick farming

Fire was central to Aboriginal life and eventually shaped much of the Australian landscape. Fire was a powerful tool that was a part of nearly every activity of daily life.

SOURCE 2 shows the uses of fire.

Carrying a firestick appeared to be an ancient custom. Setting fire to the bush and the grasslands is a practice known as firestick farming. Aboriginal people would often carry firesticks or bundles of smouldering banksia branches to set fire to the dry leaves and grass and to burn ground vegetation. These small scale fires were lit during the cooler seasons when the weather conditions could ensure the fires did not burn out of control. Firebreaks were also put in place to contain fire.

SOURCE 1 Aboriginal communities in the Kakadu area of today's Northern Territory identified six seasons based on the changes in plants, animals and the environment. These are shown below in a modern-day representation.



SOURCE 2 Uses of fire in ancient Aboriginal culture

1. Cooking food and catching animals by flushing them from burrows and driving them into traps

2. Repelling insects and removing snakes from long grass surrounding campsites

3. Manufacturing tools such as spears and stripping bark from trees in the process of making canoes

4. Sending messages by smoke over long distances and clearing the ground through recognised travel pathways



5. Cleaning wounds and scarring the skin for initiation and ritual

6. Scaring off evil spirits and burning the bodies of the dead in regions where this was the funeral tradition

7. Lighting the night for community gatherings and providing warmth for sleeping

8. Regularly burning the forest undergrowth to prevent large scale bush fires

Aboriginal people knew that they could use fire to manage their land and to produce the foods they wanted. Fire changed patterns of plant growth and animal life across the many different landscapes of the continent. The grasslands were burnt to promote regrowth of lush new grass. This was done with the permission of the traditional owners during the season when the grass was dry and of little nutritional value. Thousands of years of burning increased the size of the open grasslands. This encouraged the populations of a variety of the grass-eating animals, such as the kangaroo. Fire increased the availability of food for people who hunted and **foraged**. Bush potatoes and other edible seeds and ground plants flourished in the more open environment left by small-scale fires. Scientists believe that small animals, like the bilby, were threatened with extinction when Aboriginal firestick farming was no longer being regularly practised.

forage the search for provisions or food

SOURCE 3 Joseph Lycett, the early nineteenth century convict artist, painted images of Aboriginal life as it would have been in pre-European times. Lycett's paintings show fire being used as a tool to catch animals and create grasslands. Early European explorers often noted open country with scattered trees that looked like well-tended parkland. Firestick farming created the landscape that Europeans found in 1788.



3.4.1 Activities

CHECK YOUR UNDERSTANDING

- 1 Why did Aboriginal and Torres Strait Islander peoples have to develop so many methods of hunting and managing the land?
- 2 How many seasons are shown in **SOURCE 1**? List them and show beside each the corresponding months of our calendar.
- 3 Explain how fire increased food supplies for Aboriginal communities.

USING HISTORICAL SOURCES AS EVIDENCE

- 4 Use the information from the text and **SOURCE 3** to answer the following questions.
 - a How important was firestick farming to the Aboriginal way of life?
 - b What was the impact on the environment of firestick farming?
 - c What do you think were the consequences for the environment when firestick farming stopped?
 - d How reliable do you think **SOURCE 3** is in providing historians with evidence of ancient Aboriginal land-management practices? Give reasons for your answer.

3.4.2 Managing the land in the Torres Strait Islands

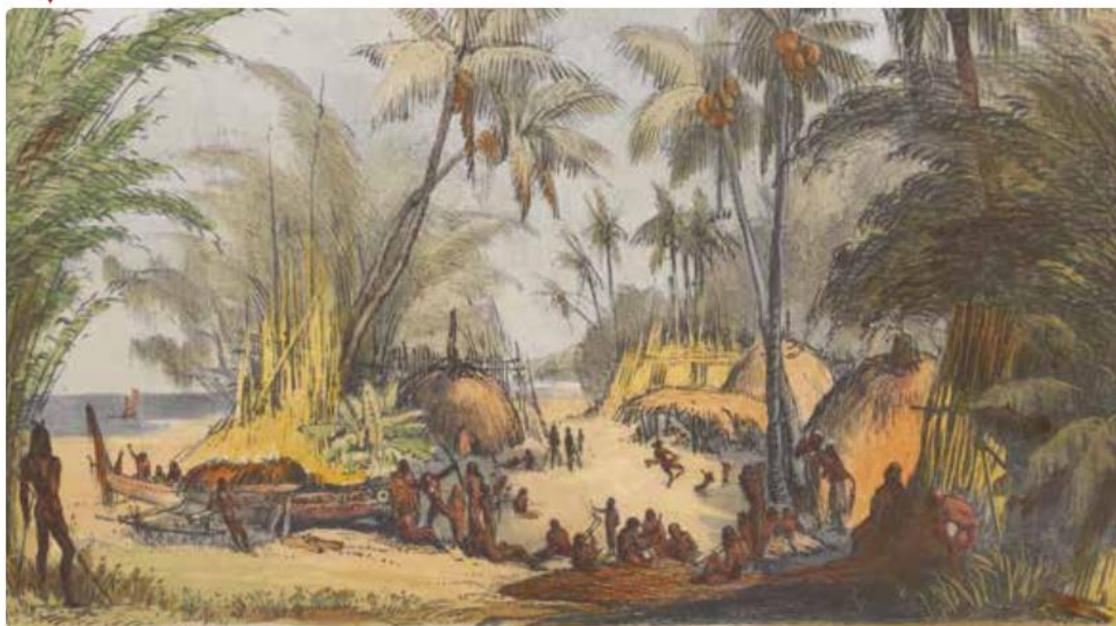
Archaeologists have found evidence of farming in Papua New Guinea dating back 9000 years. The people living in the fertile highland regions farmed the fertile soils of their tropical forests. These ancient farmers also used fire as a tool when **slashing and burning** to clear the land. The people moved each year to new parts of the forest to plant their crops. The soils of their gardens were left **fallow** for a decade before the people returned to plant again. In forest areas with poor soil the gardens were left fallow for up to 25 years. Farming was combined with a hunting and foraging way of life.

Farming practices

Farming was also practised in the Torres Strait Islands during ancient times. Crops and farming knowledge spread from the southern coast of Papua New Guinea to the people of the Torres Strait. The most common crop grown in modern times is the sweet potato, a food that came originally from Peru and was transported across the Pacific Ocean with the European exploration of the 1600s. Ancient Torres Strait communities cultivated a wide variety of crops, according to the particular geographic conditions of the island:

- People on the islands to the north-west, located close to the coast of Papua New Guinea, relied most heavily on agriculture for their food supplies. The people grew the **taro** plant as their main crop; they also established gardens growing bananas away from the tidal swamps on the surrounding uninhabited islands.
- People on the islands to the north-east, where the volcanic soil was moist and fertile, grew coconuts, taro, bananas and a variety of smaller fruits and vegetables.
- People on the islands on the west and closest to the Australian mainland, such as Muralag Island, only farmed on a small scale. Taro was grown as an addition to food supplies that were mainly drawn from the sea. The soils and climate of the rockier islands were not as well-suited to agriculture and so people continued to depend on a hunting and foraging lifestyle.

SOURCE 4 A nineteenth century painting of village life at Erub (Darnley) Island in the Torres Strait. Erub Island is located within the eastern region of the Torres Strait. Its rich volcanic soil supported the farming of taro, bananas and a range of vegetables. At the time of painting, the island supported approximately seven villages and 400 permanent residents.



Fishing practices

While the different island groups of the Torres Strait had different landscapes and ocean conditions they all developed a seafaring culture. Even those who depended on their farming took to the sea for food and resources. Fishing was central to the Torres Strait way of life. The shallow waters, complex tropical reef systems and huge beds of **seagrass** created a great marine **ecosystem**.

slash and burn a method of clearing land for farming where the vegetation is cut down and burned off before new seeds are sown

fallow land that is being farmed but left uncultivated and seeded for a season to allow soil recovery

taro a plant with broad edible leaves and root vegetable, grown in the tropical regions, especially the Pacific Islands

seagrass a grass-like plant living in or close to the sea

ecosystem a community of organisms, plants or animals and the environment they exist in

SOURCE 5 Fishing practices such as those described would have been practised by early Torres Strait Islander people, from *Reports of the Cambridge Anthropological Expedition to Torres Straits* by A. C. Haddon, W. H. R. Rivers, 1912

At low tide men, women, and children may be seen searching the reef for shell-fish and fish which have become imprisoned in rock-pools, but as a rule this simple collecting is done more by the women and children. Although serious fishing is more particularly men's work the women also take a part, but definite fishing expeditions and the quest of dugong and turtle are confined to the men. Practically the fishing of the women is limited to that which they can undertake on the fringing reef of their home island.

Islanders constructed a wide range of tools for fishing such as harpoons and spears, hooks and lines, fish scoops and nets. They built stone walled fish traps and harvested over 450 different species of marine life. Islanders developed techniques of drying and preserving turtle and dugong flesh so that it could be kept for later eating and trading. **Dugong** and turtle were very important to the Torres Strait diet and the subject of Islander myth and legend. Archaeological excavations on the tiny Central Torres Strait Island of Koey Ngurtai uncovered a burial ground of carefully arranged dugong jaws, ribs, skulls and ear bones. Archaeologists suggest the site is of a ritual burial and linked to a Torres Strait Islander belief in the power of the sea and the magic associated with the hunting of the dugong.

dugong a sea animal, sometimes called a sea cow, found mainly on the coasts bordering the Indian Ocean

3.4.2 Activities

CHECK YOUR UNDERSTANDING

- Put the following sentences into correct order and then use this as a short explanation of the importance of farming and hunting to ancient Torres Strait Islander people.
 - Archaeological excavations on the island of Koey Ngurtai uncovered evidence of the ritual burial of a dugong suggesting the islanders' strong spiritual connection with the sea.
 - The particular geographic conditions of each group of islands influenced how and what people farmed.
 - Torres Strait Islander people cultivated a wide range of crops such as taro, bananas and coconuts.
 - Torres Strait myths and legends provide further evidence of the importance of the sea.
 - Farming knowledge spread from Papua New Guinea to the islands of the Torres Strait.
 - Despite the different landscapes all the islanders took to the sea for food and resources.
 - Evidence of this can be seen in the wide range of tools for fishing such as harpoons and spears, hook and lines, fish scoops and nets.

USING HISTORICAL SOURCES AS EVIDENCE

- SOURCE 3** was painted by the English artist, Harden Melville. He was appointed the artist on board the HMS *Fly* and travelled extensively throughout the broader Pacific Island communities during the nineteenth century. Analyse the painting for the clues it gives you to life on the Torres Strait Islands. Describe the impression of lifestyle and the importance of the sea communicated by the artist in the painting.

DID YOU KNOW?

Aboriginal Australians on the mainland also fished, although it is believed that Tasmanian Aboriginal people stopped fishing about 3500 years ago in favour of collecting abundant supplies of shellfish. While harpoons were favoured by Torres Strait Islander people, spears were more common on the mainland. Some of the spears were made using human hair and some with a barb from a stingray.

3.4 PUTTING IT ALL TOGETHER

USING HISTORICAL SOURCES AS EVIDENCE

- How do the sources in this subtopic support the view that Aboriginal peoples lived in harmony with the land?
- Imagine that you have accompanied one of the early nineteenth century explorers on their voyages across the continent and through the islands of the Torres Strait. Refer to the sources and text, and write a series of diary entries detailing some of the land management practices you have witnessed.

ANALYSING CAUSE AND EFFECT

- Consider the geography and climate of ancient Australia and suggest reasons why Aboriginal communities remained small and why the family unit was of such importance.

DETERMINING HISTORICAL SIGNIFICANCE

- Management of land and natural resources was very important to all ancient Australian peoples. Explain how significant the natural environment was in shaping the beliefs and daily life of Aboriginal and Torres Strait Islander peoples.

3.5 Language and ceremony in ancient Australia

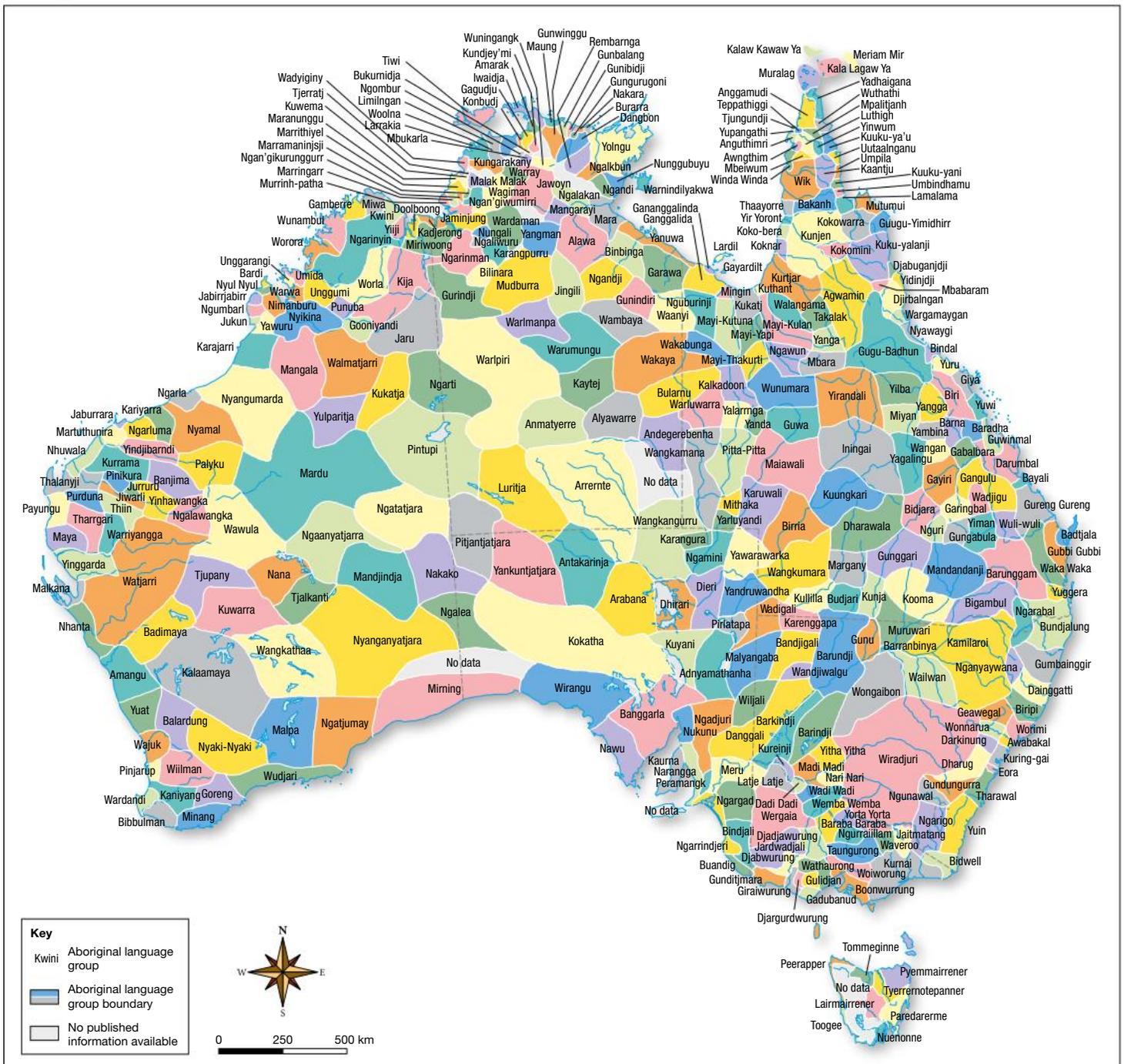
3.5.1 Aboriginal and Torres Strait Islander languages

As modern Australians, we are a multicultural people, as were the people of ancient Australia. The exact number of Aboriginal languages spoken when the Europeans arrived in Australia is unknown but it is estimated that there were approximately 250 separate language groups, with

learn on

To access videos, interactivities, discussion widgets, image galleries, weblinks and more, go to www.jacplus.com.au

SOURCE 1 Map depicting the language and social groups of Aboriginal Australia. Each separate group identified on the map may also contain within it smaller clan and dialect groups.



Source: MAPgraphics Pty Ltd, Brisbane

dialects different forms of a language

hundreds of additional **dialects** of the main language groups. The spread of human settlement across Australia took generations; with so much time passing completely new languages had the opportunity to evolve. Ancient Australian communities developed varied cultural features and different languages because of the vastly different natural environments people lived in and the distances between them.

During the thousands of years of Aboriginal occupation of Australia the climate and conditions changed dramatically. Changes in climate would have affected water supply and where food could be hunted and collected. The rising Ice Age seas would have drowned many ancient communities and forced the first Australians to constantly adapt to the challenges of this shifting landscape. These different language groups could come into conflict with each other through population growth and competition for scarce resources.

Like Aboriginal peoples, the Torres Strait Islander people did not consider themselves a single unified group. Each group had their own language and traditions. There are two main languages spoken today:

- Meriam Mir in the eastern islands, which has two dialects and is related to the Papuan language called *Kiwai*. This language is spoken around the Fly River region of Papua New Guinea.
- Kala Lagaw Ya in the central and western islands, which has four dialects and is still widely spoken by Papuans and some Aboriginal communities.

3.5.1 Activities

CHECK YOUR UNDERSTANDING

- 1 State whether each of the following statements is true or false.
 - a There were at least 250 Aboriginal languages spoken in Australia at the time of European settlement.
 - b During the thousands of years of Aboriginal occupation of Australia there was little change in the climate.
 - c Torres Strait Islander people all speak the same language.
 - d The languages of the Torres Strait Islands show connections with both Aboriginal and Papua New Guinean peoples.
 - e Ancient Australia was multicultural.

USING HISTORICAL SOURCES AS EVIDENCE

- 2 **SOURCE 1** shows very clear boundaries between the different language and social groups. Suggest reasons why the tribal areas were larger in the desert regions and smaller in the well-watered country.
- 3 If a person was to travel from modern-day Melbourne, in the land of the Woiwurrung people, how many language and social groups would the traveller pass through before arriving in modern-day Sydney, in the land of the Eora people? What conclusion could you make from your answer?

DID YOU KNOW?

A smoking ceremony can only be led by an Indigenous Australian with particular cultural knowledge. Smoking ceremonies are a physical and spiritual cleansing of the space where the ceremony is held. Various native plants are collected and used to produce the smoke for the ceremony. The smoldering of the leaves, bark and fungi of native plants is also a sign of respect for people and country.

3.5.2 The role of ceremony in ancient Aboriginal and Torres Strait Islander cultures

Ceremonies are very important to Aboriginal and Torres Strait Islander societies. Ceremony and ritual keep the knowledge of the Aboriginal Dreaming and Torres Strait Islander beliefs alive by expressing the connection between the people and their land. Ceremonies renew the connections between people and country by acting out and displaying ancestral lore and belief, and by teaching the ancient traditions to the next generation. Ceremonies encourage people to come together to recognise the past and the important role that tradition and belief continues to have.

The ceremonial leaders in Indigenous communities are the Elders. The Elders are the caretakers and keepers of sacred knowledge that must be passed down through the generations. Elders are not necessarily old people. The title is gained when a person is respected by the community and recognised as having an understanding of traditional lore, culture and spirituality.

Ceremonies also demonstrate respect and understanding. *Welcome to Country* is an ancient ceremony that recognised the boundaries of clan land which were clearly identified and understood by all clan members and their neighbours. While the details of the ceremony varied according to the traditions of each clan, the ceremony was conducted when members of one clan sought permission to enter another clan's territory. The visitor was required to ask permission to enter country. This permission recognised that the custodians were agreeing to some sharing of the resources of their land, ocean, lakes or rivers.

SOURCE 2 The meaning of country, as explained by Aboriginal leader Professor Mick Dodson.

When we talk about traditional country . . . we mean something beyond the dictionary definition of the word. For Aboriginal Australians . . . we might mean homeland, or tribal or clan area and we might mean more than just a place on the map. For us, country is a word for all the values, places, resources, stories and cultural obligations associated with that area and its features. It describes the entirety of our ancestral domains.

SOURCE 3 An Elder from the Ngarinyin people, of the north-west Kimberley region of Western Australia, explaining the significance of the traditional Welcome to Country.

Before whitefellas came, it was the tradition of Aboriginals that when strangers came into their particular country to hunt or to gather, or to just pass through on their way to other places, that the host Aboriginals would go out to welcome them.

When they met, there would be the formalities of greeting. Part of the ceremony of welcome would be the men sitting around and talking men's business whilst the host women would take the visiting women and children to a women's site to talk women's business.

When this was completed, the two groups would join again and the men would hunt for kangaroo, goannas or bush turkey — and the women would prepare an area for eating and would gather firewood and berries, fruit, nuts and lily roots for a meal.

Then the ceremonies — the corroborees or jumbas would commence — and the dancing, the singing around the fire could well go on, not only all night, but sometimes for many nights in a row. Each jumba with a message — each with its own story — men, women and children taking part. Whilst during the day, the visiting tribe would be taken and shown the sites of significance and be told the stories of the spirit of the land they would be passing,

In this way, the hosts believed that by the end of formalities, when the strangers were ready to move on — they would not be considered strangers but friends who now had the spirit of the country in their hearts — they carried the Wunggud with them — just like the people who lived there.

They believed that once the spirit of the land was in their hearts, then those people would never damage the land — they would love it and care for it like those whose home country it was . . .

3.5.2 Activities

CHECK YOUR UNDERSTANDING

- 1 What term is used to describe ceremonial leaders in Aboriginal and Torres Strait Islander communities?
- 2 What characteristics qualify someone to be a ceremonial leader?

USING HISTORICAL SOURCES AS EVIDENCE

- 3 Using **SOURCE 2** as a guide, explain why a simple definition of the term 'country' might be difficult.
- 4 Using **SOURCE 3**, explain how gender roles differ in a traditional Welcome to Country ceremony. What conclusions could be drawn from this?

3.5 PUTTING IT ALL TOGETHER

USING HISTORICAL SOURCES AS EVIDENCE

- 1 The **SOURCE 1** map shows the traditional lands of the many Aboriginal language and social groups. During the eighteenth century European powers, such as Britain, could take control of territory outside their own borders if they could claim that the land taken was previously unoccupied. The legal term used was *terra nullius*, which meant that it was land belonging to no-one. Using **SOURCE 1** and the text as your evidence, explain why the claim that Australia was *terra nullius* was incorrect.
- 2 The traditional and ancient boundaries of Aboriginal land were marked by natural features of the landscape, such as mountain ranges and rivers. European settlers recognised ownership and boundaries of land by the construction of fences, permanent dwellings or the evidence of farming. Put yourself in the position of an

Aboriginal Elder of the Woiwurrung people. Write a short speech to be delivered to a group of European settlers of Victoria in the early nineteenth century. In your speech you need to argue against the nineteenth century European view of Aboriginal people wandering aimlessly across the landscape. Present the Aboriginal perspective by explaining what the concept of country means, and what gives your people a traditional claim to ownership of land.

IDENTIFYING CONTINUITY AND CHANGE

- 3 Discuss the ways in which Indigenous communities use ceremonies as a way of recognising rights and obligations. Write a short paragraph explaining why the acknowledgment of these ceremonies continues to be important in modern Australia.

3.6 The ancient Australian economy

3.6.1 Trade tracks and songlines

learn on

To access videos, interactivities, discussion widgets, image galleries, weblinks and more, go to www.jacplus.com.au

Australia's Indigenous peoples carefully managed their land and resources to ensure their food supplies were protected. Ancient language and clan groups remained largely self-sufficient. While food was not commonly exchanged, a complex trade network was established over thousands of years. The network extended over hundreds of kilometres, linking many clans and language groups together. The countless pathways of daily travel and trade crossed the continent and are known as the Dreaming tracks. The Dreaming tracks began with the stories told in ancient times of the journeys taken by the Dreaming ancestors. The pathways they took were marked out by the features of the landscape, such as water holes, hills and riverbeds. The people remembered these tracks as the *songlines*.

The songlines

As the ancestral beings travelled across Australia giving life, they created landmarks and named the geographical features of the land. The great rainbow serpent, commonly called Jarapiri in northern and central Australia, laid eggs that became the huge round boulders of Karlwekarlwe (the Devil's Marbles). The serpent's slithering and twisting created the rivers and waterholes. As the ancestral beings formed the land, they also established the laws and 'sang' the country into life. When they completed their work the ancestral beings returned to the sky, sea or land. The songs were the record of what they had done, and the means by which their story could be handed on to future generations of Aboriginal people.

The sequence of songs, or songlines, recorded the route the ancestral beings took on their journeys of creation. These routes, or Dreaming tracks, were the maps that gave Aboriginal people a detailed mental picture of their land and all the living creatures on it. Aboriginal Elders travelled the Dreaming tracks and taught their children how to sing their songlines in the correct order. This knowledge enabled people to make their way safely through country. The man with the best memory of the songlines was honoured as the clan songman and was responsible for ensuring the teaching of the songlines to young men through their years of initiation. The trade routes changed over long periods of time; nevertheless, the archaeological evidence of abandoned tools, shells and bones indicates the songline pathways were in continuous use by Aboriginal people for thousands of years.

SOURCE 1 Donkeyman Lee Tjupurrula Kukatja's artwork *Tingari Dreaming at Walawala* shows the landforms of the region around Kiwirrkura, approximately 400 kilometres west of Alice Springs. Aboriginal artists used symbolism as a way of creating a map of country and the sacred sites. These artworks are maps of the Dreaming places created by the ancestral beings, in the same way that the songlines formed a map, sung in short verses, of the ancestral being's creative journeys.



Symbols commonly used in Aboriginal art

- | | | |
|---|---|---|
|  |  |  |
| Man | Two men sitting | Footprints |
|  |  | |
| Rainbow, cloud, cliff or sandhill | Water, rainbow, snake, lightning, string, cliff or honey store | |
|  |  | |
| Waterholes connected by running water | Camp site, stone, waterhole, rock hole, breast, fire, hole or fruit | |

3.6.1 Activities

CHECK YOUR UNDERSTANDING

1 Fill in the gaps.

The pathways of daily travel and trade across the continent are known as _____. Travel pathways are marked out by features of the landscape and remembered by Aboriginal people as the _____. The songlines recorded the journey taken by the _____ as they travelled across the land. The _____ gave people a detailed mental image of their land that enabled them to travel safely through country.

USING HISTORICAL SOURCES AS EVIDENCE

2 Would **SOURCE 1** be considered a primary or secondary source? Explain.

3 In what way could you compare the symbols used in Indigenous art with, for example, Egyptian hieroglyphs or Sumerian cuneiform?

3.6.2 Trade networks

Archaeological sites across Australia have revealed evidence of the extensive trade networks that criss-crossed ancient Australia. Trade took place between neighbours and regional groups, but also with those who were vast distances away, serving both practical and cultural purposes. Many different items were traded:

- Stone was the heaviest trade item and was often carried in parcels of paper bark tied with string. Evidence of the harvesting and grinding of grass seeds to make flour has been found dating from 3000 BP. The flat-surface grinding stones were a major trade item. Suitable slabs of sandstone were carried by a relay of traders from north-west Queensland, across a distance of 500 kilometres, to reach the plains of Diamantina. The volcanic stone prized for axe heads came from a quarry on Mount William, north of Melbourne. The Wurundjeri mined it and traded it to the north where it was used to cut the bark for canoes that floated along the Murray River.
- **Ochre** from Pukardu in the Flinders Ranges was mined and traded 500 kilometres north along a network stretching across South Australia, New South Wales and Queensland. Small decorated wooden objects called *message sticks* were sent ahead of the trade parties to the custodians of the mines suggesting goods suitable for ochre exchange. The Pukardu ochre was highly sought after because it was believed to have particular spiritual value and was used for body decoration on important ceremonial occasions. Ochre exchange gifts from the people of the north included black manganese paint, boomerangs and spears, nets and bags of grass seeds.

- A small shrub grown in Central Australia called pitjuri was traded from markets held on the banks of the Cooper, Diamantina and Georgina Rivers. Pitjuri is a nicotine-like drug used to relieve hunger, tiredness and pain. People from the north exchanged their spears, glue made from spinifex, stone knives and pearl shell for the pitjuri. From the east came wooden shields and spear shafts made from reeds, and from the west came ochre and light wooden spears. The people from the south exchanged weapons, stone axe heads and possum skins for the pitjuri plant.

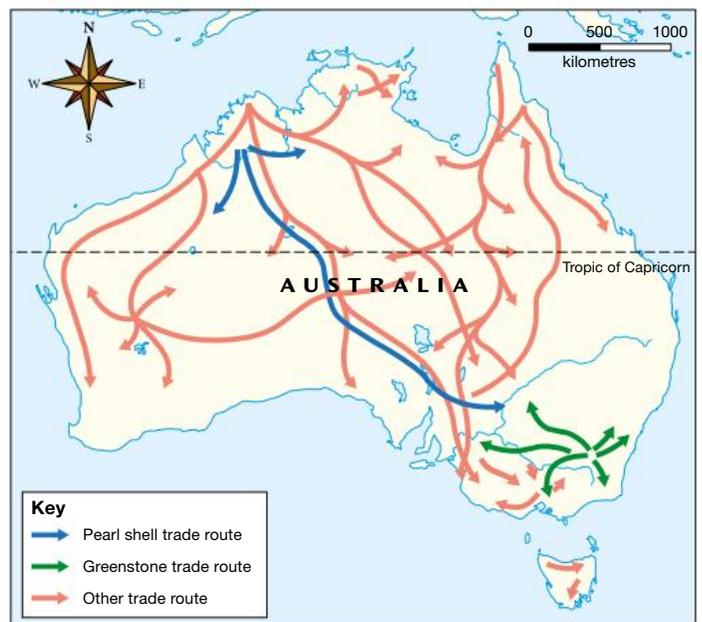
The trade of raw materials, such as ochre, wood and stone, was very important to ancient communities. The most common trade items were, nevertheless, the manufactured goods. The clan groups developed highly specialised skills that were widely recognised by other peoples across the land. The beautifully carved wooden bowls of Central Australia, for example, or the finest spears from the region around Alice Springs were highly valued trade items.

The pearl-shell trade

Of all the goods traded across ancient Australia, the pearl shell probably travelled the furthest. The journey of the pearl shell began when the Ngaluma people collected the shell from their beaches and from the country of

ochre a natural pigment found in soil ranging in colour from pale yellow to orange and red

SOURCE 2 The major trade routes of ancient Australia.



Sources: Museum of Australia, Cited in Barlow, Alex. (1994). Aboriginal Technology

the Kariara and Ngarla people who lived to their north. People also set off on rafts made from mangrove wood to collect the shells from offshore reefs. The Ngaluma traded the shell with the Indjibandi, Njamal and Njangamarda-Iparuka people in exchange for spears made from mulga and witjuti wood. The shells were carefully wrapped in soft bark to protect them as they passed through many hands on their journey across the continent. When they reached the Fitzroy River they were at the crossroads of several trade routes that were under the control of the Koneyandi people. This opened up to trade with the western desert peoples. The prized pearl shells, flaked stone blades and spear points from the Kimberley were traded for boomerangs and beautifully carved spears.

The pearl shell became more valued the further it travelled from the Kimberley coastline. Evidence of the distance of the ancient pearl-shell trade has been found across a vast area of Australia; from the tropics in the far north to the **mallee** scrub between Adelaide and the coastline of Victoria.

mallee a low growing bushy Australian eucalypt plant

3.6.2 Activities

CHECK YOUR UNDERSTANDING

- Briefly explain the importance of the following trade items to Indigenous communities.
 - Pearl shell
 - Ochre
 - Grinding stones
 - Volcanic stone
 - Pitjuri

USING HISTORICAL SOURCES AS EVIDENCE

- Referring to **SOURCE 2**, identify the region of Australia where the trade in greenstone began.
- Greenstone was used for thousands of years by Aboriginal communities to manufacture ground edge axes. Explain what the study of greenstone could tell archaeologists about ancient Aboriginal trade, travel and technology.

3.6.3 Trade practices

Aboriginal communities lived in small self-contained communities for most of the year. The seasons determined the availability of food and resources, and the paths people took through country. An important part of the yearly cycle was the annual gathering of the clans. These great gatherings always took place during times of plenty, when prized food was in good supply. The opportunity to feast on the large freshwater eels of Western Victoria or the Bogong moths in the high country of the Snowy Mountains provided the opportunity to conduct ceremonies, organise marriages, decide matters of law and exchange goods at the market place.

Clan gatherings

The clan gatherings always began with a formal invitation through an exchange of message sticks across country. The western district of Victoria was one of the most densely populated areas of the continent. The people of this region, such as the Yaadwa and the Yaara, shared their resources and engaged in trade when the land was able to provide for a sudden increase in population. An abundance of eels, kangaroo, mushrooms and a variety of root vegetables meant the land could cater for visitors, without bringing food shortages and hardship on the traditional custodians. With eel feasting came markets at Mount Noorat where exchanges took place of valuable items such as spear points, possum cloaks, acacia resin, seashells and net bags. The leftover eels became a takeaway product that was dried and wrapped in kangaroo skin for transporting.

Food was not generally a trade item between ancient Australian communities. In the cooler regions of the continent the food could be preserved more readily. Fish and meat in Victoria and Tasmania were occasionally traded. In the high country of the Snowy Mountains, a wide range

SOURCE 3 Message sticks were very important in protecting people as they moved through the country of another clan or language group. Smoke signals would be sent when entering another group's country, followed by the presentation of a message stick to the Elders and a verbal explanation of the purpose of the visit.



DID YOU KNOW?

Dr Builth, an archaeologist who studied the eel-farming practices of the Gunditjmarra people in Victoria's Lake Condah wetlands, has estimated that these farms could have fed up to 10 000 people.

of food was available with the melting of the snow. Emu, possum, snake meat and Bogong moths provided a rich diet. Every year the Ngarigo and Walgalu people would send out their message stick invitations to the neighbouring peoples. Many clans would gather at Jindabyne and on the Tumut and Wollondibby Rivers for the purposes of trade and ceremony. Groups of men travelled into the high country where the Bogong moths were smoked out of their resting places in the rock crevices. The moths were caught in nets and then cooked into rissoles that were transported down the mountain for all to enjoy during the ceremonial feasting.

The message sticks pictured belonged to the Yirandali language Dalleburra People, Queensland. The messages are written in symbols, not script.

DID YOU KNOW?

Bogong moths are native to Australia and get their name from the Bogong High Plains region in the Victorian Alps. When roasted and eaten, they are said to have a 'nutty taste'. They are highly nutritious.

3.6.3 Activities

CHECK YOUR UNDERSTANDING

- 1 State whether each of the following statements is true or false.
 - a Message sticks were sent before the exchange of goods took place.
 - b Trade often happened alongside ceremonial events.
 - c Clans gathered when seasons were bad to exchange scarce food resources.
 - d Aboriginal communities in ancient Australia understood how to preserve food.
 - e Aboriginal clans generally shared food rather than traded it.

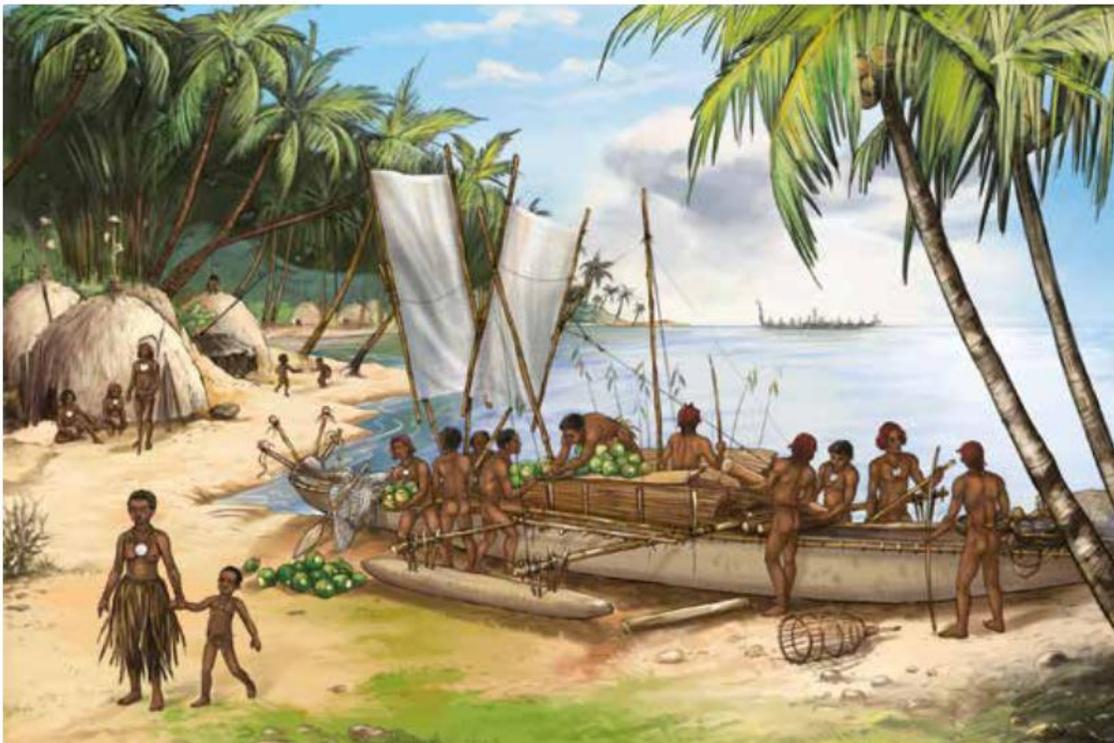
USING HISTORICAL SOURCES AS EVIDENCE

- 2 What do the messages on the message sticks in **SOURCE 3** tell you about what was important to Aboriginal Australians?
- 3 Why might the messages on message sticks have been written in symbols, not languages?

3.6.4 Torres Strait trade

The farmers and fishermen of the Torres Strait Islands had more food than they needed at certain times of the year. Turtle and dugong could be dried, stored and traded with the Aboriginal people of Cape York and the coastal people of Papua New Guinea. A range of root vegetables were also well suited to trade because they did not deteriorate quickly in the tropical heat.

SOURCE 4 Dugout canoes swept along by two or three sails provided the transport for people and their trade goods between the Torres Strait Islands and the coasts of Papua New Guinea and the Australian mainland.



Islander people of each language group traded with their immediate neighbours. The Kaurareg people were the only Torres Strait Islander people trading directly with the Cape York communities. The trade between the two groups took place on tiny Morilag Island, which lay very close to the Cape York coastline. The Kaurareg acted as traders, exchanging goods on behalf of all the other islanders. The Kaurareg exchanged goods such as finely crafted Muralag Island dugong harpoons and small bamboo items for the spears and ochres from Cape York's Gudang people.

Trade was critical for survival on the Torres Strait Islands. The canoes the islanders relied upon for fishing and transport were obtained through a complicated trade link with the Saibai people living in the estuary region of Papua New Guinea's Fly River. Trees large enough for the construction of a canoe hull do not grow on the Torres Strait Islands. The Saibai traded with highly skilled canoe builders living in the heavily wooded forests further up river. The Saibai then adapted the single outrigger canoes that were only suitable for lagoon and Fly River journeys. They turned them into double outrigger canoes and then added masts and woven nipa-palm sails ready for the rough conditions of the open seas of the Strait. The Torres Strait Islander people exchanged shellfish and dried fish, turtle and dugong for their new double outrigger canoes, drums, **sago**, bows and arrows, **cassowary** and bird of paradise feathers.

sago a starch food obtained from palm used to produce a flour

cassowary a large flightless bird related to the emu with a bare head and neck

3.6.4 Activities

CHECK YOUR UNDERSTANDING

- 1 Create your own mind map titled Torres Strait Island Trade. Identify the different trade relationships and the goods exchanged.

USING HISTORICAL SOURCES AS EVIDENCE

- 2 The Torres Strait Islander people and some coastal Aboriginal communities indicated direction by referring to the name given to the wind that came from that direction. The wind and the sea were central to the life in the Torres Strait. Referring to **SOURCE 4**, write two sentences evaluating the importance of the dugout canoes to life and culture of the Torres Strait Islander people.

3.6 PUTTING IT ALL TOGETHER

USING HISTORICAL SOURCES AS EVIDENCE

- 1 Use the sources and text in this subtopic to write a paragraph describing the importance of trade in the economy of ancient Australia. You could begin your paragraph with the topic sentence: The trade practices of ancient Aboriginal and Torres Strait Islander peoples demonstrate a thriving economy based on exchange and ceremony.
- 2 Write a paragraph comparing and contrasting the trade practices of ancient Aboriginal communities with those of Torres Strait Islander communities. Ensure you mention any similarities and any differences in your answer.

IDENTIFYING CONTINUITY AND CHANGE

- 3 Ancient Aboriginal and Torres Strait Islander peoples used the natural resources of the land. What were these resources and how do we now value these in the modern Australian economy? What natural resources appear to be most valued in modern Australia?

DETERMINING HISTORICAL SIGNIFICANCE

- 4 What impact do you think the arrival of Europeans would have had on the ancient economy of Aboriginal and Torres Strait Islander peoples?

3.7 Society, custom and culture

3.7.1 Kinship

Kinship today plays a much more important role in Aboriginal and Torres Strait communities than in Western society. Kinship relationships are more complex than the Western notion of *family* and involve strict rules and obligations. Kinship links are tied to spiritual belief as the Dreaming ancestors were considered to have **genealogical** links with living people and their land, and so are important in deciding each person's kinship connections.

genealogy an account of the descent or ancestry of a person or group

learn on

To access videos, interactivities, discussion widgets, image galleries, weblinks and more, go to www.jacplus.com.au

The kinship networks were strengthened through ceremonial exchange of goods. Younger men, for example, may be expected to give the gift of a spear to an older man from another clan who was connected through a kinship arrangement. The ties would be cemented by the older man's involvement in the younger man's initiation ceremonies. As trade took place over very long distances, possibly requiring movement through country belonging to different language groups, the kinship agreements were very complex. Trade goods were carefully given out to ensure all kin connections were recognised. Different traditions and ceremonies had to be learned and respected to make sure that alliances were protected and the exchange of goods could continue. The act of giving was part of ceremonial life and was very important in honouring kinship.

The kinship system was also a very important feature of life in the Torres Strait because conflict over scarce resources was more common. Trade was essential for people living in tiny island communities. Trade expeditions and negotiations were often very anxious occasions between communities where property and kinship rights were in dispute. Visiting trading parties kept their canoes near the shoreline to enable a hasty retreat if the kinship system failed to keep harmony among the different Torres Strait clans and language groups.

SOURCE 1 Excerpt from a speech given by Bryon Powell, representing the Kulin National Heritage Organisation, explaining the clan links of the Kulin people, May 2000

The Kulin nation was made up of five Aboriginal tribes which took up a fair swag of land in Central Victoria, centring on Melbourne itself ... They were made up of clans, family groups. And what happened with the five tribes, they had commonalities in language, custom, traditions, burial rights, and very strong trade links. And I knew the Woiwurrung and Boon Wurrung, they were exceptionally close, they actually inter-married to strengthen those ties, they traded between themselves ...

SOURCE 2 When outsiders were invited onto Wurundjeri lands a ceremony called *Tanderrum* was held. The ceremony granted safe passage through Wurundjeri country and a ritual exchange of gifts. The nineteenth century Charles Troedel painting shows Wurundjeri clan members fishing and camping at Merri Creek near Melbourne.



3.7.1 Activities

CHECK YOUR UNDERSTANDING

- 1 Briefly explain what the kinship system is and why it is of such significance to Indigenous communities.
- 2 How are kinship and trade connected?
- 3 Why did visiting trading parties in the Torres Strait Islands keep their canoes close to the shore?

USING HISTORICAL SOURCES AS EVIDENCE

- 4 **SOURCE 1** is a modern explanation of what kinship means to Indigenous Australians. Identify the key beliefs and values expressed in the source that have continued to be of significance.
- 5 What does the artist of **SOURCE 2** suggest about the nature of Indigenous society, and how does this contribute to our understanding of the role of the kinship and ceremony in daily life?

3.7.2 Totems

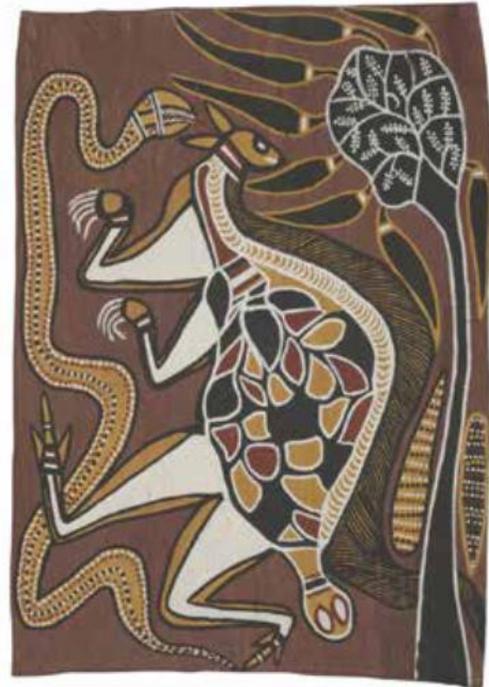
The many language groups of ancient Australia reflected the great variety of cultural beliefs. The spiritual connection with the land was nevertheless shared by all. The spiritual beliefs of the Torres Strait Islander and Aboriginal peoples shaped Indigenous lore across the land.

All life came from the land, and so Indigenous tradition and ceremony centred on fulfilling ones obligations to the land. As the land provided everything for the people, caring for the health of country was a great responsibility. Spirituality and the land were not separate. The Elders passed on their knowledge of the land and the lore through ceremony and the Dreaming stories.

During the Dreaming the ancestral beings created *totems* for the people. A totem is a special species of plant, insect, bird or animal that is held sacred and expresses the connection between the people and nature. The totem is inherited and represents the spirit world as it exists in daily life. A person has a totem shared with other clan members and an individual totem that is given to them around the time of birth. The totem identified the different clan and language groups of Australia. It also gave each individual a sense of place and cultural belonging.

The sacred places of country were protected by keeping the Dreaming beliefs and rituals alive. The Dreaming gave people the rules on where they could live, who they could marry and the animals they could hunt. The continued supply of natural resources depended on people respecting these rules put in place by the spirit ancestors. Areas of animal refuge, where hunting was prohibited, were set aside and so ensured conservation of animal species of great importance to human survival in harsh landscapes. Totems guided Aboriginal and Torres Strait Islander peoples in managing their resources. The Dreaming gave people the totem they would honour for life.

SOURCE 3 A bark painting entitled *Totems of the Manarrngu Mortuary Rites* by David Malangi, 1966. The painting shows a file snake on the left with a water goanna superimposed on a kangaroo in the centre and a tree on the right. The story depicted represents the Manarrngu mourning rites. The singing of this ceremony tells of the death of Gurrumarringu, the mighty hunter of the Manarrngu. The kangaroo and goanna represent animals he hunted. He died due to a snakebite.



3.7.2 Activities

CHECK YOUR UNDERSTANDING

- 1 State whether each of the the following statements is true or false.
 - a Two Aboriginal or Torres Strait Islander people could not have the same totem.
 - b Totems were created by the Elders.
 - c Totems helped Aboriginal or Torres Strait Islander people to manage their resources.
 - d A totem was given at the time of a person's birth.
 - e Totems were used for trade among Aboriginal and Torres Strait Islander peoples.
- 2 Identify what totems were and why they would have varied from one community to another.

USING HISTORICAL SOURCES AS EVIDENCE

- 3 Refer to **SOURCE 3** for an understanding of the significance of the totem. How do the totems shown here reflect the natural environment?

3.7.3 Initiation ceremonies

Archaeologists have learned a great deal about life in ancient Australia by studying ceremonial places, called *bora grounds*. Bora grounds were built with mounds of earth in the shape of two rings. The inner ring was a space reserved for initiation rites.

A boy could not become a man or a girl accepted as a woman until passing through initiation ceremonies. Enduring tests and trials of physical and mental strength took the young from the carefree days of childhood to the responsibilities of the adult world. A general English translation of Indigenous initiation ceremonies was to be *put through the law*; meaning that initiation passed on the knowledge of the Elders, the sacred lores of the Dreaming and the right to participate in the ritual and ceremonies of country. Initiation taught young people codes of conduct, customs and good manners. A person gained status with initiation.

Initiation connected people to the Dreaming by challenging them in ways that the great spirits had been tested. The ceremonies differed according to the particular beliefs of country:

- In south-eastern Australia the Great Spirit Baiame had been forced to overcome hunger, fear and pain. The initiation ceremonies in this region expected the young to endure pain in silence, eat sparingly when hungry and contain fear when confronted with the mystical sounds of the **bull-roarer** in the dark of night.
- The Unambal people of north-west Australia told the Dreaming stories of the Wandjina — ancestral beings that came from the sky to create fire and all the natural features of the land. The Wandjina are closely associated with fertility and so initiation ceremonies involved male **circumcision** performed at the first sign of puberty. This was followed by incisions on the shoulders, arms and buttocks that were then filled with sand to create large decorative raised scars.

Initiation scars and practices, such as knocking out a front tooth (known as evulsion) or removing part of a finger, sometimes identified a person's clan group or kinship relationships. The role each person played in the process of initiation was determined by their kinship obligations. The Elders were responsible for instructing the young through the stages of the initiation, which could have involved a number of ceremonies carried out over a period of years. Initiates had to be taught the lore, the totem history and the ceremonial rites. There were often strong **taboos** that had to be observed about aspects of daily life such as the food eaten and the people spoken to. Obedience to the Elders' instructions was the key to initiation. Once the ceremony was planned the invitations were sent out to the members of kinship and clan groups to be witness to the ancient **rites of passage**.

bull-roarer a sacred object used in Aboriginal religious ceremonies whirled around to produce a roaring noise

circumcision the surgical removal of the foreskin from a male penis

taboo something strictly forbidden

rites of passage a ceremony or event marking an important stage in someone's life

SOURCE 4 A painting by the convict artist Thomas Watling of an initiation ceremony at the Sydney settlement of Farm Cove in 1795



SOURCE 5 An account of the initiation ceremonies of the Yuin people of New South Wales

For thousands of years, young Yuin went up the mountains (Mumbulla Mountain) as boys and came back as men. Painted with red ochre, they would leave the bora ring to follow the Dreaming track from one sacred place to another, which were all visited in proper order.

At each place there were special ceremonies with singing and dancing to tell the story of creation in the Dreamtime. There were special tests too of hardship and endurance to prove that they were worthy of becoming men. The law was explained to them, they learned about Darama, the Creator, who gave the law to the people. It tells of the peoples' links with the land, our mother, from whom we are born and to whom we return.

The mountain represents the school where young men are taught discipline. Respect for Elders and about food and plants, herbs and medicines, hunting tracking and survival ... all things are bound together and all are part of the Dreaming, where unity and harmony must be respected. They learn about the Yuin people, about their totem, Umbarra, the black duck.

3.7.3 Activities

CHECK YOUR UNDERSTANDING

- 1 When were initiation ceremonies held and what was the purpose?

USING HISTORICAL SOURCES AS EVIDENCE

- 2 Imagine you are one of the Yuin boys about to go up the mountain to begin initiation. Write a short account of how you are feeling, the fears you may have, what you have heard about the experiences of other boys and why this ceremony is so important to you. Refer to the text and **SOURCES 4** and **5** for your information.

3.7 PUTTING IT ALL TOGETHER

USING HISTORICAL SOURCES AS EVIDENCE

- 1 Using the sources presented in this subtopic write a paragraph about social customs of traditional Aboriginal and Torres Strait Islander peoples. Remember to include a topic sentence, supporting evidence and a concluding sentence in your response.

ANALYSING CAUSE AND EFFECT

- 2 In ancient Australian communities there would have been more people that you would have called 'brother' or 'sister'. Explain why this was and the effect this would have had on other aspects of Indigenous life and culture.

DETERMINING HISTORICAL SIGNIFICANCE

- 3 Develop a subset of questions you could ask if you were inquiring into this overall question: how important were kinship systems, totems and initiation to Aboriginal and Torres Strait Islander peoples?

3.8 Conflict and death in ancient Australia

3.8.1 War and weapons

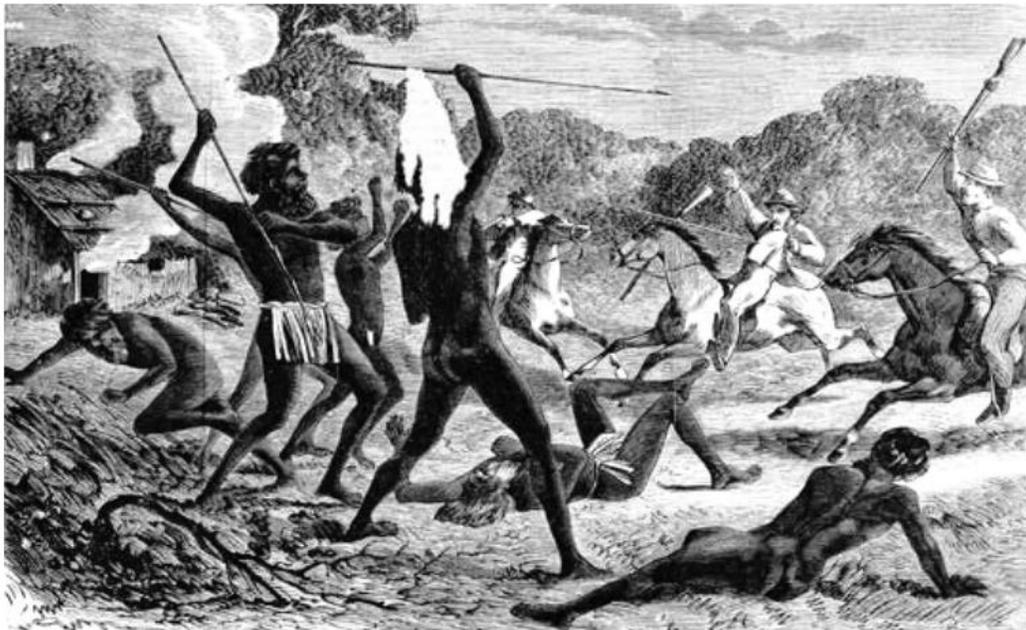
The proudly independent and different language and clan groups of ancient Australia were sometimes rivals, fighting with each other over territory and resources. Men traditionally carried spears for hunting and defence when they moved away from their campsites. Museum collections of Aboriginal and Torres Strait Islander artefacts include hundreds of different designs of weapons of war such as spears, clubs and shields. Artefacts reflect the different geography and climate of the makers' country. Coastal peoples, for example, used fishbone on the tips of their spears whilst desert people used stone. Ancient Australian tools and weapons are noted for their flexibility and adaptability, being objects that could be used for a variety of purposes.

- Clubs were used for throwing, stabbing, slashing and smashing. The wood of clubs was hardened through firing and then treated with ochre and oils to prevent weathering. Clubs came in a variety of shapes and sizes. Club heads varied in shape from being cylindrical or cone

learn on

To access videos, interactivities, discussion widgets, image galleries, weblinks and more, go to www.jacplus.com.au

SOURCE 1 A warrior advancing for combat, from a drawing by eighteenth century French artist Nicholas-Martin Petit, who visited Australia shortly after the arrival of the British



shaped to bulbous or hooked. Long straight clubs were used as fighting sticks and as defence against an opponent's blows. In the north-eastern rainforests a two-edged club was used like a sword. It was carried with a large softwood shield. Large clubs, called *murrawirri*, were used in north-east South Australia for organised combat. At approximately 2 metres in length they were too big to be thrown. *Murrawirri* were usually owned by male Elders and were objects showing a person's importance in the clan. They were also used as valuable trade items. In some communities the *murrawirri* clubs were considered to have special magical powers. Clubs were also used for ceremonial purposes, particularly in dances.

- Boomerangs had a variety of purposes such as fighting, fishing, hunting and ceremonies. Boomerangs were throwing sticks that were accurate at high speeds. They were made from a very hard wood making them a deadly blade when travelling with force through the air. The form and use of boomerangs changed according to where and how the boomerang was made. The returning boomerangs were mainly used in south-east Australia. Boomerangs made in the Kimberley and in Central Australia were large and broad and generally used in combat. These boomerangs did not return when thrown but moved in a powerful swerving line.
- Spears and spear throwers were also used for hunting, fighting, fishing and ceremonial occasions. Fighting spears were designed to inflict serious wounds with heads having up to 40 barbed tips attached and tiny stone or shell fragments set into the spearhead. The barbed spears could not be pulled back out without tearing at the wound. The small shell pieces remained lodged in the flesh of the victim. In the Cape York region a large number of stingray barbs were set into the head of spears that were then regarded as having special magical properties. Every region had its own style of spear and spearhead. The *woomera* is the name commonly given to the spear thrower. The *woomera* was not thrown with the spear, but remained in the man's hand acting as a lever to project the spear with greater force.
- Shields provided defence from spears and clubs. Shields were often decorated with totemic designs and were objects of great beauty. In the region of Victoria a narrow hardwood shield was used as defence against clubs while a broad bark shield was used in spear fights. The bark was harvested when still green and so able to absorb the impact of the spears.

Island warriors

Aboriginal and Torres Strait Island weaponry were similar, with the exception of the bows and arrows that were commonly used in Melanesian communities. Bow and arrows and spears were the main weapons of the Islands. Clubs were constructed with star or disc shaped stone heads and stout wooden handles. The razor-sharp bamboo knives were particularly effective Torres Strait weapons. Some Torres Strait Islander communities had the fearsome reputation of practicing headhunting. The bamboo knives were used for ritualistic decapitation, with the heads then being hung on loops of cane passed through the mouth and out of the neck.

SOURCE 2 Images of the weaponry used by the Torres Strait Islander people



The people of the central region of the Torres Strait lived on flat islands with little natural defences. Raiders came from the east and the west to regularly plunder their gardens. The image of these violent warriors travelling the sea is the stuff of Torres Strait mythology. According to Island legend the warrior chief of the Mabuiag, Kwoiam, organised an army of sea pirates who led raids across the Straits and as far north as Papua New Guinea's Fly River.

3.8.1 Activities

CHECK YOUR UNDERSTANDING

1 Match column A with column B

Clubs	Called <i>murrawirri</i> in north-east South Australia
Large combat clubs	Used for fighting, fishing, hunting and ceremony
Boomerangs	Used as a lever to help propel a spear with force
Fighting spears	Often decorated with totemic designs
<i>Woomera</i>	Constructed with barbed tips
Shields	Used for throwing, stabbing, slashing, smashing

USING HISTORICAL SOURCES AS EVIDENCE

2 Briefly explain the features of Torres Strait Island weaponry and the difference between them and the weapons used by the Aboriginal communities. Refer to **SOURCES 1** and **2** and the text.

3.8.2 Death and funerary customs

Aboriginal and Torres Strait Islander peoples believed that with death a person's spirit would return again to the Dreaming ancestors. Funeral and mourning ceremonies differed according to clan and country, but they were all nevertheless elaborate rituals that could last for many months. The ceremonies were a time to recognise the deceased and the Dreaming ancestors. The ceremonies surrounding death in all traditional Australian Indigenous communities expressed the powerful link between people and country.

Mounds of earth, such as those built in the bora grounds, piles of stones and carved trees often marked the location of burial sites in the south-east of Australia. Funeral traditions and practices varied across Australia:

- simple burial in graves with bodies either stretched out or placed in a crouching position. Grave goods were sometimes placed with the body
- cremation. Sometimes the charred skeletal remains were collected and later buried or placed in the hollow of a tree
- drying out or smoking the body in a process called *desiccation*. The dried remains may have then been kept for a period of time before being buried
- leaving the body on tree platforms to decay. The bones were later collected and often finally buried.

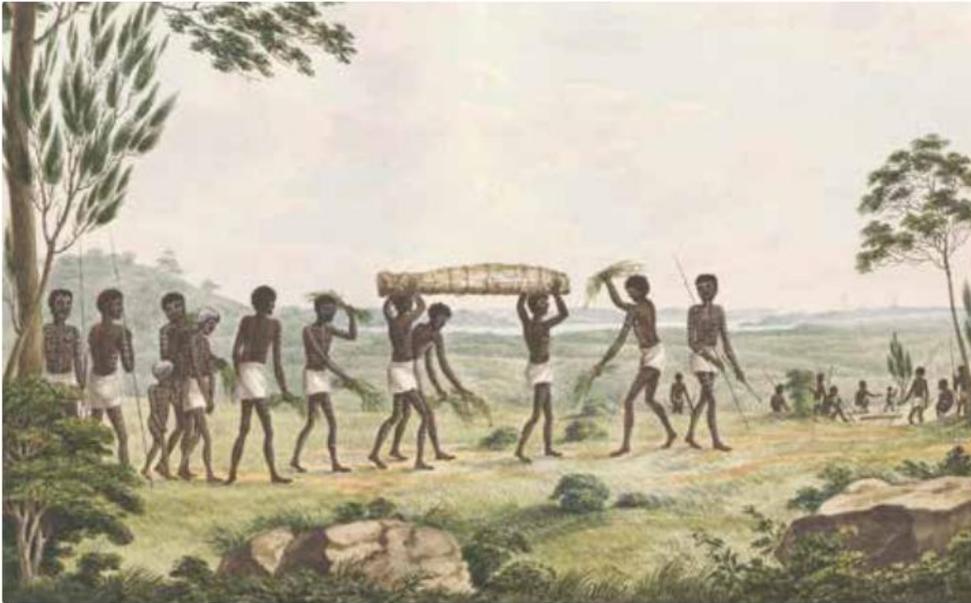
Ritual always accompanied funerals, such as facing the body in a particular direction or burying personal items as grave goods. Sometimes bodies were painted with totemic images or covered in ochre. The Kulin people of Victoria tied the body in a crouching position and buried important members of the community with their possum rugs, stone tools and woven bags. Mourners painted their faces white, women cut their hair and sent the spirit of the dead on their way with singing and dancing.

Death was not usually regarded as being due to natural causes and was often believed to have been caused by evil and supernatural forces. Ritual combat sometimes followed the death of an important member of the clan, as the relatives of the deceased were expected to take revenge against those people held responsible.

Burial sites can tell us about the numbers of people living in ancient communities, their **genetic** background and family relationships, the way in which their society was organised and how these people lived and died.

genetic relating to origin or heredity

SOURCE 3 Illustration of an Aboriginal funeral in the region of Newcastle, New South Wales by Joseph Lycett. Mourners painted with white clay carry the body of the deceased, which is wrapped in bark. The clay on the bodies of the mourners was a sign of grieving.



DID YOU KNOW?

At Roonka Flat, in the Murray River Valley of South Australia, the excavation of an occupation site has found burial sites of different types. Some graves were shallow and oval shaped with the dead lying horizontally, while others were deep shafts where bodies were placed in an upright position. One man's skeleton was found with the remains of a baby placed in his chest cavity.

Tiwi and tutini

The Tiwi people live on Bathurst and Melville Islands, located 80 kilometres off the coast of Darwin. For thousands of years the Tiwi had only very limited contact with the mainland Aboriginal communities because they believed that was where the spirits of the dead made their homes. A beautiful and distinctive art form developed from the Tiwi ceremonies associated with death, known as the *pukumani*. Performance of *pukumani* funerary ceremonies went through stages that took a number of months to complete.

- The first funeral ceremony occurred at the time of death, called the *iliana* by modern Tiwi Islander people. The body was painted with totem symbols and decorated with hair ornaments. Mourners painted their own bodies white.
- Elaborate grave posts called *tutini* were carved as expressions of the person's life and as gifts to the spirit of the dead. The large poles were carved from the trunk of the ironwood tree and then erected around the grave site. The poles symbolised the importance of the dead person.
- The final *pukumani* ceremony took place approximately six months after burial at the *tutini* site. Performance of the ceremony enabled the dead to enter the spirit world. The mourners were painted in rich ochre designs and wore decorative head and armbands, called *pamajini*, as protection against a spirit that could still be angry. Dances and songs were performed during all parts of the ceremony that were drawn from the stories of the great Dreaming ancestor, Purukapali. After the death of his child, Purukapali had ordered the people to make grave posts and to sing and dance.
- With the ending of the ceremony the mourners departed from the grave leaving the beautiful *tutini* to rot away.

SOURCE 4 The burial poles of the Tiwi people of northern Australia. Tree trunks are carved into poles with windows and reduced sections. These examples are painted in the Tiwi art style of geometric and abstract patterns. To form the paint, ochre was mixed with wax, honey or egg yolks. Brushes were made from soft bark, sticks and human hair.



3.8.2 Activities

CHECK YOUR UNDERSTANDING

- 1 Briefly explain how burial practices differed between Indigenous communities.
- 2 What materials are tutini poles made from?
- 3 How long after burial did a pukumani ceremony take place?
- 4 Write out a short guide to the Tiwi funeral rituals for someone who is visiting the islands and keen to become familiar with the traditions.

USING HISTORICAL SOURCES AS EVIDENCE

- 5 Imagine yourself to be a family member participating in the funeral ceremony pictured in **SOURCE 3**. Describe the events that are happening around you; providing some details of the rituals associated with the funeral of your loved one.

3.8 PUTTING IT ALL TOGETHER

USING HISTORICAL SOURCES AS EVIDENCE

- 1 Aboriginal and Torres Strait Islander peoples used natural resources with great skill to create very efficient tools and weapons. Suggest reasons why the archaeological record of these artefacts is limited.

IDENTIFYING CHANGE AND CONTINUITY

- 2 Imagine that you are the producer of a documentary on the customs and culture of ancient Australia. Write a proposal for your documentary, convincing your investors that the ancient history of our land is something that all Australians should know about and celebrate. You are particularly keen to draw attention to the connection between our ancient culture and the traditions and beliefs

that have continued into modern times. Your proposal should include what you intend to be the focus areas, such as the traditions of the Tiwi Islands. Don't forget to include a title for your documentary.

DETERMINING HISTORICAL SIGNIFICANCE

- 3 What evidence of a society can archaeologists find through the study of death and burial practices?
- 4 Look back at the sources in this subtopic and choose one image or account that you feel provides an insight into the culture of these ancient communities. Write a poem or story, or create an illustration expressing the significance of your chosen source.

3.9 Conserving the past

learn on

To access videos, interactivities, discussion widgets, image galleries, weblinks and more, go to www.jacplus.com.au

3.9.1 Investigating Australia's ancient past

With all the fascinating information that archaeological and scientific study of ancient burial sites can give us, it is easy to forget that these sites are also places of great spiritual significance and that ancient Australia is not just a story of the past.

The traditional Aboriginal and Torres Strait owners and custodians of the land continue to care for country and all the generations who belong to it. Australian governments now recognise the rights that Indigenous communities have over human remains, artefacts and heritage sites. Debate over the control and correct treatment of human remains and heritage remains a very important issue for Australia.

The role of the archaeologist

Careful investigation of archaeological sites is where the collection of evidence begins. The sites are the source of information and the basis for our archaeological understanding of how people lived in ancient Australia. Most sites have been found through careful survey of the landscape. Pits and trenches are then dug so that excavation can begin to reveal the layers of history found in places such as middens and campsites.

The Kulin people

The Kulin people of Victoria left a variety of archaeological sites and a range of artefacts that are the record of life that archaeologists and scientists can observe and analyse.

- *Quarries.* The Kulin used many types of stone for a wide range of tools and weapons. Fine grained stone such as quartz was obtained easily and was used for making sharp tools. Axe heads needed a very hard rock so the Kulin used greenstone (diorite), which was found at only a few sites. Ten ancient greenstone quarries have been recorded. The main greenstone site was at Mt William in Central Victoria. Axe heads from this site were traded as far away as Queensland where axes were exchanged for highly valued objects such as possum skin rugs.

SOURCE 1 A collection of Aboriginal artefacts, tools and weapons including boomerangs and hand axes



- *Scarred trees.* Through the Victorian grasslands old trees have been found showing symmetrical scars that are the result of the removal of bark. The Kulin cut the bark for a wide range of purposes such as building shelters, lining graves and making water containers, shields and canoes.
- *Stone scatters.* Kulin families once camped close to water sources such as rivers and lakes. Stone pieces have been found at these sites that were the remains of broken tools or the waste that came from the making of new tools. Different rocks were worked in different ways, for example, the strong greenstone was flaked roughly to shape and then ground on sandstone to gain a sharp smooth blade. Quartz was hit so that slivers off rock were sheared off.
- *Mounds and middens.* In areas where a small area of ground appears to have been raised above the surrounding land, archaeologists have found campsites. The mounds are due to the accumulation of rubbish and earth that has been blackened by the ashes of fires. In the nineteenth century the Melbourne floodplain areas surrounding the Plenty and Maribyrnong Rivers and Darebin and Merri Creeks were reported as being the site of many cooking mounds. Ovens excavated there were large and probably used to cook for approximately 20 people at a time. Food waste such as the remains of shellfish built up at the sites because shell can survive buried in the ground. Middens have also been found on the banks of rivers, lakes and beaches containing shellfish remains mixed with charcoal, bones and tools. This material collects in layers that archaeologists then use for establishing dates of site occupation.
- *Ceremonial circles.* Five Kulin earth circles have been found at Sunbury, west of Melbourne. The circles are approximately 20 metres in diameter and can be seen as a lower level in the ground indicating the earth has been scraped away. Archaeologists believe the area of the circles were used for initiation ceremonies and have found stone flakes and a large number of stone artefacts at the sites.
- *Ceremonial rocks.* Special rocks associated with the Kulin Dreaming beliefs are located in the foothills of the Dandenong Ranges. A number of these rocks are said to represent the sons, Djart-djart and Tharra, of the creator spirit Bundjil. The rocks are also said to be connected to Dreaming stories about the making of fire. Archaeologists believe the rocks indicated sacred ground where activities such as hunting were not permitted.

- *Caves.* Cape Schank, located in Bunurong country, on the south coast of the Mornington Peninsula was of particular spiritual significance to the Kulin people. Dreaming beliefs and stories are connected to locations such as this. Bundjil was believed to have told the rocks to create the cave so that he could have shelter from a mighty storm. Underground caves that were shafts going deep into the earth were also regarded as locations of spiritual significance.
- *Rock wells and springs.* Cavities that were dug into the rock provided reliable water supplies in regions lacking in rivers and permanent creeks. These wells were used by generations of Aboriginal communities as they travelled through country.
- *Fish traps.* Along the coastal areas, Aboriginal people constructed tidal fish traps. The fish swam into the trap at high tide and were then caught at low tide. A stone or wicker basket system was used to trap fish in the rivers. Barriers across waterways would also direct fish into areas where they could be caught. At Toolondo in Victoria, the remains of approximately 4 kilometres of shallow drains and ditches remain as part of an Aboriginal system of eel or fish trapping. At Lake Condah another large system of Aboriginal fish traps was constructed consisting of stone weirs and channels. The Lake Condah trap has been dated to 3000 BP.

SOURCE 2 A map of Australia showing Indigenous art sites and some of the locations of ceremonial and cultural significance in south-east Australia



Source: Spatial Vision

DID YOU KNOW?

Bones and teeth leave a record of health and disease. At Roonka Flat in South Australia, people suffered from arthritis of the jaw and tooth loss. Archaeologists have connected this condition to chewing very stringy food and the use of the mouth as a tool. Chewing tough bulrush roots was part of the process of making the string necessary for the large hunting and fishing nets of the region.

- **Burials.** Along the banks of Australia's longest river, the Murray, numerous burial grounds have been located. The burial sites are sometimes connected to important resources such as stone quarries or fish traps. The number of Murray River burial sites also indicates large Aboriginal populations living in this region over long periods of time. The Kulin sometimes buried their dead in caves or placed them on platforms in trees. The archaeological excavation and study of burial sites is a matter of community concern because archaeology has not always been respectful in the treatment of human remains. Excavation and study of burial sites is no longer acceptable without ongoing consultation with traditional custodians of the land.
- **Rock art.** Rock art sites are found across Australia as patterns, images and designs on rock surfaces. The art can be painted on, using materials like ochre and charcoal, engraved or carved with a sharp stone or rubbed into the rock with a ground stone. An engraving or carving into the rock is called a *petroglyph*. Rock art is difficult to date and requires a range of techniques. Radiocarbon dating can be used on paint, while luminescence dating can be used on some sand and rock sites. Rock art provides a wonderful insight into how ancient people saw their world. The subjects that are depicted also give clues to the daily and cultural activities people were engaged in and the tools they used. Victoria's Grampian National Park contains approximately 60 rock art sites, making it the most important rock art site in the state. The rock art sites feature images of people, human hands, animal tracks, birds and Dreaming spirits such as Bunjil.

3.9.1 Activities

CHECK YOUR UNDERSTANDING

- 1 Match the Kulin archaeological site with its location.

Burial sites	Sunbury, west of Melbourne
Rock art	Cape Schank
Fish and eel traps	Plenty and Maribyrnong Rivers and Darebin and Merri Creeks
Ceremonial circles	Mt William in Central Victoria
Mounds and middens	Lake Condah
Quarries	Grampian National Park
Ceremonial rocks	Banks of the Murray River
Caves	Foothills of the Dandenong Ranges

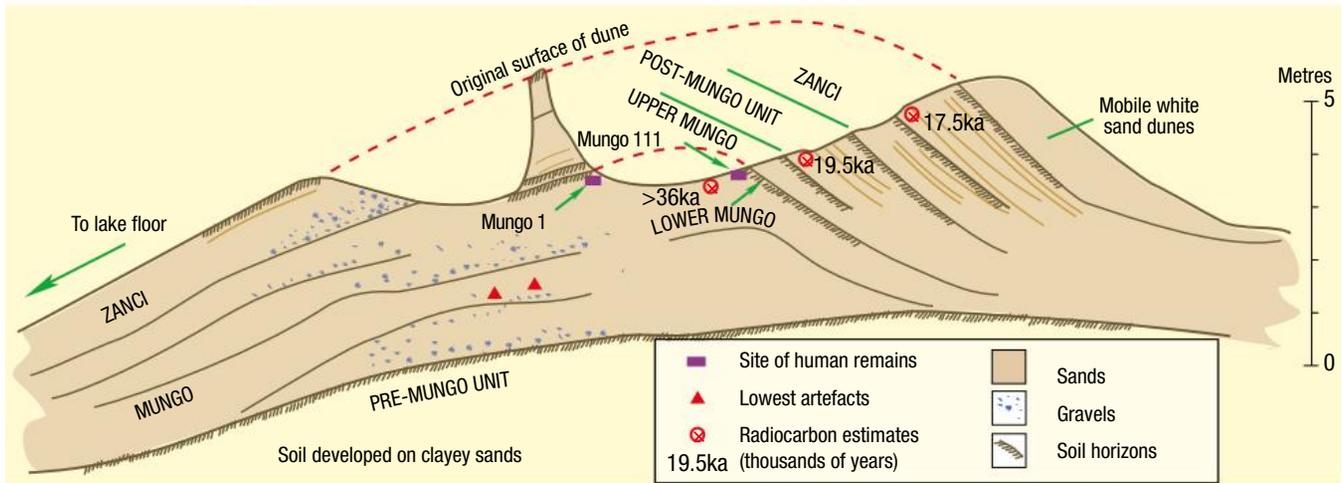
USING HISTORICAL SOURCES AS EVIDENCE

- 2 The map in **SOURCE 2** shows artefacts and sites around Australia of archaeological significance.
- In small groups brainstorm all the challenges for the protection and conservation of these sites.
 - Choose one site of particular interest to you, research it in more detail and then write a letter to your local paper explaining the significance of this site, the conservation threats it faces and what you think we need to do to protect the ancient heritage of our country.

3.9.2 Lake Mungo site study

The evidence of the lives of the ancient people who lived on the shores of the now dry beds of Lake Mungo, in the Willandra Lakes region of western New South Wales has been exposed by erosion. In 1968, wind erosion uncovered the charred remains of a young woman in the sand dunes near Lake Mungo. This skeleton, known as 'Mungo I', had been cremated and then the bones had been crushed before burial. The first archaeologists to study her remains estimate the burial had taken place 25 000 years ago, making it the oldest known cremation in the world. More recent studies have concluded that Mungo I is closer to 40 000 years old.

SOURCE 3 Diagram showing a cross-section of the excavations at the Lake Mungo archaeological site



SOURCE 4 The remains of Mungo III, a man placed on his side with hands clasped and then buried in a shallow grave



Many other human remains and hundreds of artefacts have since been found in the eroded dunes of the vast Lakes region. Possibly the oldest human remains are the skeleton of a person, probably a tall man, who died between 38 000 and 42 000 years ago. Archaeologists have named him 'Mungo III'. The body had been carefully laid out, with hands clasped together and knees slightly bent. Archaeologists believe that so much ochre had been spread over the body during burial that traces of it turned the surrounding soil pink. A sense of the dignity, ritual and respect for the dead were preserved for thousands of years in the remains of Mungo I and III.

Lake Mungo is one of the 17 lakes in the Willandra region, a series of fossil lakes that is a World Heritage Site because of its natural and cultural importance. The remains of fireplaces, shell middens and human burials provide evidence of a time when Lake Mungo was full of water and supporting an abundance of life. In 2003, another remarkable archaeological discovery was made when the 20 000 year old footprints of the Willandra people were found. Archaeologists working with Elders of the Paakantji, Ngiampaa and Mutthi Mutthi people were visiting country when Mary Pappin Junior, a Mutthi Mutthi woman, showed the footprints to archaeologists. Hundreds of the Pleistocene footprints had formed in soft muddy clay, dried and then became fossilised. Aboriginal Elders

have interpreted the footprints as the record of a small group of adults and children walking on top of a thick layer of clay. Within a couple of days a band of hunters ran through the same area. The prints show that one Willandra man ran extremely fast while another was one-legged. Elders from the Paakantji, Ngiampaa and Mutthi Mutthi people continue to work with government in the ongoing care of the Lake Mungo archaeological site.

SOURCE 5 The Pleistocene footprints from the clay at Lake Mungo left a very human record of life in ancient Australia.

'[Some of t]he footprints and stride lengths [belong to a child and] show how the child walked, paused, turned and ran away from the groups they were with, before walking briskly back towards them. Perhaps the child was called back by an adult or older sibling. So seldom in open-site archaeology do we see such a personal and familiar signature.'

Harvey Johnstone and Michael Westaway, archaeologists



Appreciating our heritage

There are many sites in Australia today that are of historical, cultural and archaeological significance. In addition to this, the Australian government has established over 70 Indigenous Protected Areas. These areas are managed by the traditional owners who look after the plants, animals and any special sites. Indigenous rangers manage the impact of visitors, particularly tourists, who come to the area. In this way, Aboriginal and Torres Strait Islander peoples can keep their culture strong.

The Heritage Council of Victoria, for example, agreed in 2010 to principles of the Burra Charter, an agreement that is a guide for the conservation of Australia's heritage sites. The principles are of particular importance to Australia's fragile Indigenous art and settlement sites. The Burra Charter principles express the belief that:

- Heritage sites enrich all our lives because they help us to understand the past and the cultural richness of the world that we live in today.
- The cultural significance of a heritage site is in its location, the objects within it, its use and the meaning that it has to people today.
- Consideration of cultural significance, combined with careful analysis and study, must take place before any decisions are made that affect a heritage site.
- Careful records must be kept to ensure the care, management and understanding of heritage sites into the future.

DID YOU KNOW?

Victoria's declared Indigenous Protected Areas include Deen Maar, Kurtonitj, Lake Condah and Tyrendarra. These areas include sacred and ceremonial sites and major Dreaming tracks.

SOURCE 6 Guidelines for a site study in your area

The following steps should be followed when undertaking a site study of a site relating to Aboriginal and Torres Strait Islander history and cultures.

1. Establish the location of an Australian Indigenous site of cultural significance that you can visit.
2. In small groups, plan your excursion and design a range of archaeological fieldwork activities. Remember that traditional owners should be consulted when planning site visits. Extend an invitation to a member of your local Aboriginal community to accompany your class on the excursion to help explain the significance of the site and the artefacts you are studying.
3. It is very important that the site be treated with the enormous respect you would give a church, mosque or war memorial. Think about how your group will need to move around to ensure you do not damage the site.
In the planning process you will also need to:
 - Check with the National Parks and Wildlife Service for the rules of the site in their care.
 - Ensure that all visitors to your chosen site are aware of the rules of site management and that the only records taken of your visit are what you write, what you photograph and what you draw.
 - Familiarise yourself with the key features of the site location: if it is near water, if it is exposed or protected from the weather, how accessible it is, what the vegetation surrounding the site is, and so on.
 - Research the Dreaming stories and beliefs of the people who created and maintained the site.

4. Prepare an information sheet to help record your excursion findings and details of site features. Include:
 - site name and location
 - details of site or artefact
 - shape
 - size
 - material
 - use or function.

Underneath each entry leave a space for your sketch of the artefact or site feature.

When you have completed your site visit prepare group presentations, reporting on your findings. Your presentation will need to provide background information explaining the features of the site. Remember that the environmental setting including the landscape, climate and natural resources are very important in understanding how people lived. Your presentation should highlight the value of the site to Australian archaeology and any heritage issues you have become aware of. You may want to consider the problems of managing and preserving the site for future generations. You may have noticed that site management and conservation plans have already been put in place. The area of the site may have barriers erected as protection against people and animals, or drip lines to direct running water away from wall engravings or paintings. Conclude your presentation with a statement expressing why you believe the continued study and management of archaeological sites is important, and what you have learned from your study of ancient Australia.

3.9.2 Activities

CHECK YOUR UNDERSTANDING

- 1 Identify the artefacts and evidence of life found at Lake Mungo.
- 2 Why were hundreds of Pleistocene footprints preserved at Lake Mungo?
- 3 What are the principles of the Burra Charter designed to achieve?

USING HISTORICAL SOURCES AS EVIDENCE

- 4 Examine **SOURCE 3** and read the relevant text.
 - a What role did erosion play in discovering the evidence of early Aboriginal occupation of Lake Mungo?

- b How deep was the Upper Mungo level?
 - c Would you expect Mungo I or Mungo III to be closer to the boundary between Upper and Lower Mungo?
 - d What does 'ka' stand for? What difference in time is there between the first date in the Zanci layer and the third date in the Lower Mungo layer?
- 5 Look at the photograph in **SOURCE 4**. What evidence of Aboriginal religious belief and funerary practices could an archaeologist gain from studying this source?

3.9 PUTTING IT ALL TOGETHER

DETERMINING HISTORICAL SIGNIFICANCE

- 1 In 2003, Willandra Elders lifted a 20-year ban on further excavation of the archaeological sites of the Willandra Lakes region. Many Aboriginal communities believed they needed to protect their sites and history from archaeologists who had not previously respected human remains or the objects of sacred or traditional importance. In groups or as a class, consider the issues related to ownership and control of artefacts.
 - a Discuss the concept of a 'shared heritage' and decide what that should mean in modern Australia.
 - b Hold a debate on the topic that 'all Australian Indigenous people's remains and artefacts should be returned to the traditional custodians'.
- 2 The ability to identify with a person and their times is known as empathy. When we empathise we seek to understand, through imagination and knowledge, how others acted and thought. We show empathy when we read a novel, watch a movie, study a painting or listen to others. A child living 20000 years ago left some of the footprints shown in **SOURCE 5**; they are evidence of someone's life from long ago. These footprints provide only a glimpse of that child's life but are nevertheless historically very significant. Write the inscription for a plaque erected near these footprints, explaining to visitors what they are looking at when they see these simple footprints. Convey a sense of the significance of the footprints and support this with some general information on the key features of life in this region during this distant time.

3.10 SkillBuilder: Developing a hypothesis

online only

Developing a hypothesis: Interpreting the evidence of life in ancient Australia: Lake Mungo

In their work of studying the ancient past, archaeologists are dealing with evidence that is in tiny pieces. They must rely on the physical landscape and archaeological evidence to tell the story. Very little material from ancient Australia has survived the thousands of years between their time and ours. Shell, bone and teeth will endure; animal hides, plant fibres, feathers and hair will not.



Go to your learnON course to access:

- An explanation of the skill (Tell me)
- A step-by-step process to develop the skill, with an example (Show me)
- An activity to allow you to practise the skill (Let me do it)
- Questions to test your application of the skill (Applying skills)

3.11 Review

online only

This final subtopic provides a range of opportunities for you to review and respond through:

- revising and checking your historical knowledge
- demonstrating your ability to apply historical concepts and skills.

Go to your learnON course to access:

- A key chronology of events relevant to the topic
- A summary of the key knowledge presented in the topic
- A 'Big Questions' activity
- A multiple choice topic test
- Short answer or extended writing responses



3.10 SkillBuilder: Developing a hypothesis

3.10.1 Tell me

Interpreting the evidence of life in ancient Australia: Lake Mungo

In their work of studying the ancient past, archaeologists are dealing with evidence that is in tiny pieces. They must rely on the physical landscape and archaeological evidence to tell the story. Very little material from ancient Australia has survived the thousands of years between their time and ours. Shell, bone and teeth will endure; animal hides, plant fibres, feathers and hair will not. Archaeologists are involved in the work of detectives as they:

- search for evidence
- analyse the evidence, separating relevant from irrelevant information
- draw conclusions based on the evidence
- combine the evidence with background knowledge to develop a hypothesis.

Lake Mungo is a site of enormous archaeological importance because it provides some understanding of life as it may have been over 40 000 years ago. Our image of life at Lake Mungo is built from the limited archaeological evidence and from our modern understanding of traditional life as it existed in Aboriginal communities in more recent times. It is easy for us to imagine that the lives of Aboriginal and Torres Strait Islander communities remained unchanged for generations. We have built a picture of Indigenous peoples as nomadic hunters, stalking kangaroos or dugongs and living in small independent tribal communities; beliefs, such as the Dreaming, reach back into the distant past and give us a sense of the connection between the past and the present. But we also have a great deal of evidence pointing to the diversity, or mixture of cultural traditions, of ancient Indigenous communities.

What is a hypothesis?

A hypothesis is an explanation, made on the basis of limited evidence, and is a place to begin a more detailed study or investigation. Anyone who develops a hypothesis is making a guess, based on the evidence they have. When a hypothesis is well supported with solid evidence we call it a *theory*.

The difference between theories and hypotheses is known as the *contestability* of history. It reminds us that history is about interpreting the evidence. How the past is understood and interpreted is influenced by the point of view of the historian. If we look at people and events from our own modern Australian point of view we can sometimes misunderstand what has happened. We all have a cultural background that influences us. Our understanding of the world is shaped by many things such as our nationality, values, beliefs, personal experiences and interests.

Archaeologists study the evidence that has survived to explain and understand ancient life at Lake Mungo. Because the archaeological evidence of Lake Mungo is limited archaeologists have developed more than one hypothesis to explain the nature of Lake Mungo life long ago.

3.10.2 Show me

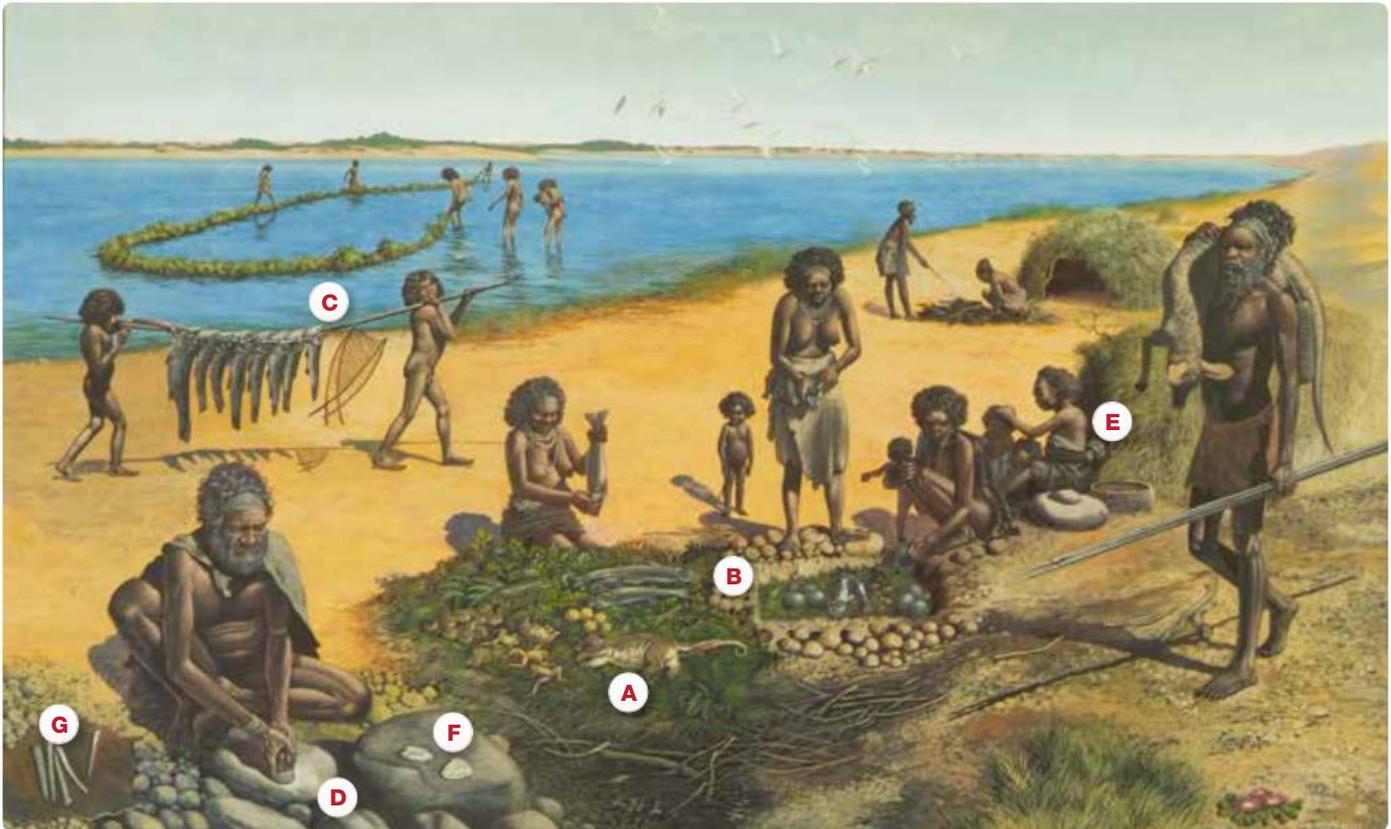
Look carefully at **SOURCE 1**, an artist's reconstruction of Pleistocene life at Lake Mungo. This image gives a very general view of Lake Mungo life, using details that have been borrowed from what we know of later Aboriginal tools, technology and traditions. The image shows Aboriginal people from the Pleistocene Period living in much the same way as Aboriginal people did in south-east Australia at the time of European settlement, two thousand generations later.

SOURCE 1 An image of life during the Pleistocene Period at Lake Mungo, by Giovanni Caselli. The visual reconstruction was based on research published in Bernard Wood's book *The Evolution of Early Man* published in 1977.

A Remains of animal species such as bandicoot, rat, kangaroo, wallaby, wombat and small marsupials such as **bettong** were found in the fireplaces at Mungo. Fireplace evidence suggests that hunters returned to the community site for cooking and eating. Remains of birds, emu eggs and frogs were also found at the site.

B Remains of shellfish and golden perch have been found, as have the shallow fireplace ovens. Perch were probably caught in deeper lake water as indicated in the image of people fishing in the background.

C Fish traps and fish netting were also probably used. The fish trap shown was not found at the Lake Mungo site and is based on artefacts found in south-east Australia dating from a much later period.



D The stone tools shown do not closely correspond with the style of tools found at the Pleistocene Period Lake Mungo site. Grinding stones, as shown, were not found at Lake Mungo, with no evidence of the collection of seeds for grinding before 15 000 BP. Grinding stones found in south-east Australia from much later periods were flat, unlike the rounded stone in the image.

E The clothing and physical appearance of the people are based on images of Aboriginal people from more recent times. Cloaks, body decoration and headbands have not been found. Necklaces made from animal teeth and bones have been found. The baskets and spears are based on artefacts found in the region from much later time periods.

F Axe heads have not been found at the Pleistocene site.

G Bone artefacts similar to those shown have been found in excavation. Archaeologists think these may have been used for sewing or fishing, but definitive evidence has never been found.

bettong small nocturnal marsupials, resembling a small wallaby, with brown-grey fur on top and white on the underside

SOURCE 2 Excerpt from Bernard Wood's *The Evolution of Early Man* describing ancient life at Lake Mungo

Recent research in Australia has shown that thriving communities were established there nearly 30 000 years ago. These people lived on narrow strips of land between land, lakes and the huge sand dunes that stretched out into the desert. Fish bones, shell remains and animal bones are evidence that they learned to exploit the lakes as well as the land. Hearths where they cooled their food have been excavated and it is the carbon from charred bones that has provided the dating evidence.

The following steps will help you analyse the evidence and establish your own hypothesis and investigate the various Lake Mungo hypotheses that archaeologists have put forward:

1. *Begin with a question.* For example, 'What is the key feature of the Lake Mungo lifestyle during the Pleistocene Period?'
2. *Based on your question, write a central statement that becomes your hypothesis.* For example, 'The people of the Pleistocene Period lived in small hunting and foraging family units'. Your central statement, or hypothesis, should be arguable.
3. *Investigate your thesis.* Consider the other possibilities to explain the nature of Pleistocene life at Lake Mungo, for example, 'The people of the Pleistocene Period lived in large communities supported by hunting and foraging a wide area of land'.
4. *Conduct some research into theories developed by archaeologists.* Peter Hiscock, for example, investigated the Lake Mungo site to develop his own visions and theories about life during this period. Hiscock's study of the evidence challenges the Lake Mungo theory expressed in the sources.

The annotations in **SOURCE 1** provide you with questions to consider when assessing the usefulness of the source as evidence of the Pleistocene lifestyle.

3.10.3 Let me do it

Form a hypothesis about life at Lake Mungo and use the steps outlined to write a paragraph explaining why your hypothesis is correct based on your preliminary research. Refer to the information in **SOURCES 1** and **2** to help develop your hypothesis.

Present your Lake Mungo hypothesis to your class in a creative way. **SOURCE 1** is a visual representation of a hypothesis. You could present your hypothesis as a poster, short speech or story.

3.10 APPLYING SKILLS

DETERMINING HISTORICAL SIGNIFICANCE

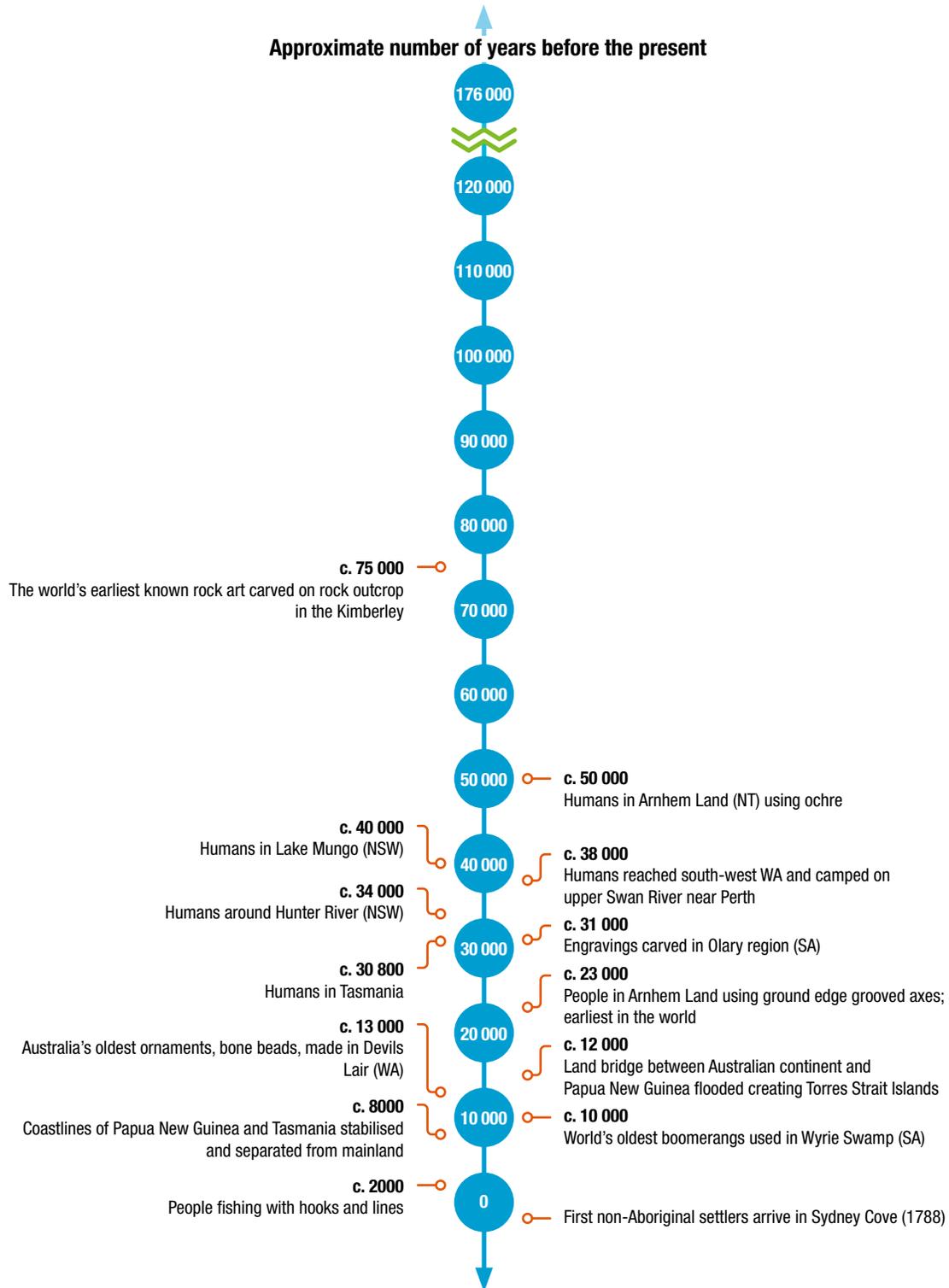
- 1 What evidence do archaeologists need to study in the process of developing their understanding of life in ancient Australia?
- 2 What is the correct meaning of the term 'hypothesis'?
- 3 Why have archaeologists developed more than one hypothesis to explain and understand ancient life at Lake Mungo?
- 4 What is the difference in theories and hypothesis known as?

3.11 Review

In this topic we have investigated the ancient past and culture of Aboriginal and Torres Strait Islander peoples. Our study of the traditions and beliefs of thousands of years and the connections between culture and country gives us an appreciation of the continuing importance of history and heritage in understanding modern-day Australia.

3.11.1 Review

Chronology: timeline of ancient Australian life and events



Key knowledge: summary

3.2 Examining the evidence

- Scientists and archaeologists study the record of Australia's ancient past in sites such as Lake Mungo.
- The oral history of Indigenous peoples has also left a record of the ancient world in the form of stories passed down through the generations.
- Museums work with traditional communities to give meaning to the artefacts they have in their collections.

3.3 The first people of Australia and the Torres Strait Islands

- Scientists believe that the low sea levels of the Ice Age made the settlement of Australia possible because the first Australians were able to walk much of the way from their place of origin in South-East Asia to the islands of the Torres Strait and on to the Australian mainland.
- As human occupation spread across Australia hundreds of different languages and beliefs developed to explain the nature of the land and the links between people.

3.4 Managing an ancient land

- Aboriginal and Torres Strait Islander communities used their detailed knowledge of climate, animal and plant life to manage their resources and survive in very challenging natural environments.
- Fire was used as a tool to care for the land, hunt and promote the growth of new vegetation.
- Farming and fishing was central to life for people living in the Torres Strait.

3.5 Language and ceremony in ancient Australia

- At the time of European settlement, Australia was a multicultural society where there were at least 250 separate Aboriginal languages spoken and hundreds more dialects.
- The languages and traditions of the Torres Strait Islanders were related to both Papua New Guinea and Aboriginal Australia.
- Elders are the ceremonial leaders of Indigenous communities with their knowledge of tradition, culture and spirituality.

3.6 The ancient Australian economy

- Dreaming tracks were well-established trade networks extending for hundreds of kilometres across the land to provide links between many clan and language groups.
- Sequences of songs provided a record of creation beliefs and helped people to create mental maps of their country enabling them to travel long distances in safety.
- Large gatherings of many clan groups occurred annually to coincide with increased food supplies and to provide an opportunity for trade, feasting, ceremonial celebrations, marriage and business negotiations.

3.7 Society, custom and culture

- Relationships between clan groups and within families are complex in Indigenous communities and are known as kinship networks.
- Clans were identified by totems that were plants, insects, birds or animals regarded as sacred and expressing the spiritual connection between people and the natural world.
- Bora grounds were ceremonial places where initiation rites which gave young people the status and responsibility that came with adulthood were often carried out.

3.8 Conflict and death in ancient Australia

- A wide variety of ancient weapons such as clubs and spears developed as a reflection of the very different traditions, geography, resources and climates of Australia.
- The ancient pukumani ceremony of the Tiwi Islands has survived into modern times as a beautiful art form showing the importance to Indigenous communities of funeral ceremony and ritual.

3.9 Conserving the past

- The ancient river bed of Lake Mungo in New South Wales has provided evidence of the oldest known funeral practices anywhere in the world.
- Aboriginal and Torres Strait Islander communities have a very important role in the conservation and cultural appreciation of archaeological sites like Lake Mungo.

Key knowledge: multiple-choice topic test

1. During the Ice Ages people could walk much of the journey from South-East Asia to Australia because the ocean level dropped up to _____ below the present level.
 - a. 10 metres
 - b. 1 kilometre
 - c. 160 metres
 - d. 10 kilometres
2. The Torres Strait is located between:
 - a. the Australian mainland and Papua New Guinea.
 - b. the Australian mainland and Tasmania.
 - c. the Australian mainland and Indonesia.
 - d. the Australian mainland and New Zealand.
3. Despite the different landscapes, all the Torres Strait Islanders:
 - a. spoke the same language.
 - b. grew the same crops.
 - c. gained food and resources from the sea.
 - d. traded with Aboriginal communities.
4. The ceremonial leaders in Indigenous communities are the Elders because:
 - a. their old age has given them wisdom.
 - b. they are respected community members with a deep knowledge of tradition.
 - c. they are born into a hereditary position of power.
 - d. they are the great warriors.
5. What did the term *terra nullius* mean?
 - a. Distant land
 - b. Land belonging to the nullius clan
 - c. Land belonging to no-one
 - d. Land belonging to all
6. Why was pitjuri a valuable trade item?
 - a. It was valued for its great beauty.
 - b. It was a strong timber used to make spears.
 - c. It was used for decoration.
 - d. It was a drug that could relieve pain, tiredness and hunger.
7. Why were kinship relationships very complex in Indigenous communities?
 - a. People lived in small village communities.
 - b. People were living in harsh environments.
 - c. Family links were tied to spiritual beliefs.
 - d. Families were very large.
8. A totem is a special plant or animal that:
 - a. people were permitted to hunt or gather for food.
 - b. was only known of through Dreaming beliefs.
 - c. was chosen during an initiation ceremony to protect a young person.
 - d. was painted and carved onto rock walls.
9. Which of the following was the ceremonial place often used for initiation ceremony?
 - a. Bull-roarer
 - b. Midden
 - c. Bora ground
 - d. Ancestral being
10. What is a *murrawirri*?
 - a. A type of animal
 - b. An ancestral being
 - c. A club
 - d. A boomerang
11. What are the tutini?
 - a. Elaborately carved grave posts used in the pukumani ceremony
 - b. A set of Tiwi Island beliefs
 - c. A weapon used by Torres Strait Islanders
 - d. A totem

12. Lake Mungo is the site of the:
 - a. largest ceremonial grounds found.
 - b. most remote Indigenous communities.
 - c. oldest known cremation site in the world.
 - d. most complex rock art in Australia.

3.11.2 Respond

Using historical sources as evidence

1. Look carefully at the artefacts and images that have been used to tell the story of ancient Australia in this topic. Conduct your own research to locate another three Aboriginal or Torres Strait Islander artefacts or images that you feel contribute to an understanding of the richness of thousands of years of Indigenous history and culture. Create an information sheet to introduce Year 7 students to the study of ancient Australia. Your information sheet should include drawings of the artefacts and images you have chosen accompanied by some background detail on the origin, purpose and significance of your chosen sources.

Determining historical significance

2. Read **SOURCE 1**, an account of Roonka Flat. Create a timeline that places different periods of life at Roonka Flat alongside events in the world beyond Australia. Using the source for your ideas, design a promotional poster for a museum exhibition of the artefacts and archaeology of Roonka Flat. Your poster needs to communicate an understanding of why Roonka Flat is so important to the archaeology and history of Australia.

SOURCE 1 Account of the significance to Australian archaeology of the Roonka Flat site, from Barry Hailstone, *River Murray Burial site*, 1989

On a distant day, 4,000 years before the birth of Christ, the body of a young man was laid to rest in a vertical grave on this river bank with ornaments of oyster shell and bone. It was almost 1,000 years before the Egyptians began building the Great Pyramids. About 2,000 years before Stonehenge was built, and nearly 4,000 years before Julius Caesar strode ashore on a British beach. Claims, supported by radio-carbon dating at many of the world's leading laboratories, yield a record of the richest and most comprehensive human history of any single site in Australia, if not the world. To say that the site is significant is an understatement. The site is one of only a few places on Earth, where you can stand on ground hallowed by the recurrent tenure of Man, for such a time-span, arguably 35,000 years.

The most significant discoveries were made in the area called Roonka — an Aboriginal word, which relates to the grubs of moths that abounded in the root systems of trees, and which were relished by the Aborigine hunter gatherers of the region. International archaeologists agree, that at Roonka, a unique archaeological cemetery has been found which contains a substantial number of skeletons, apparently buried over a very long time stretching back to 17,000 BC, perhaps further. Archaeologists know of no other site like it. It is much richer than any other known site around the world. Burial practices provide a rare insight into the ideologies of bygone societies. Clues about Aboriginal mortality have emerged that have changed the perceptions about Aboriginal prehistory.

People first camped there about 18,000 years ago, but did not use the area as a burial ground until later. The earliest burials are in a distinctive series of 12 graves, dated to a period between 4,000 and 7,000 years ago. Bodies were placed vertically in a shaft hole accompanied by pendant ornaments. One was found with a bone dagger 29cm long, apparently used to pry open the rib cage. There is evidence that some of the bones of the buried skeletons have been rearranged, suggesting that the graves were reopened or revisited at a later date, possibly as part of the burial ritual.

From a later period — since 4,000 years ago — there are 70 graves which show a change in burial practices. The bodies of mature adults were either fully extended or contracted, and graves contained food offerings, bone awls, bodkins and stone artefacts. Some individuals were elaborately clad in ornaments, jewellery and animal skins secured with bone pins or bodkins, and some were accompanied by an infant. Suggesting a differentiation in social status.

Responding to the big questions

At the beginning of this topic several big questions were posed. Use the knowledge and understanding you have gained through your study of the subtopics to answer them:

1. Who were the people of ancient Australia?
2. How did Australia's geography shape ancient Aboriginal and Torres Strait Islander communities and their culture?
3. What evidence exists about Australia's ancient past?
4. Why is conservation of Australia's ancient past important?
5. Why is the history of Aboriginal and Torres Strait Islander peoples important to modern-day Australia?

4

Ancient Egypt

4.1 Overview

4.1.1 LINKS WITH OUR TIMES

Modern Egypt is one of the world's poorer countries. Unlike several other Middle Eastern nations, it lacks oil and other natural resources. Despite such disadvantages, until recently, vast numbers of visitors flocked to Egypt to marvel at traces of its glorious ancient past. They looked in awe at the pyramids at Giza and the royal tombs in the Valley of the Kings; they puzzled over questions such as why the ancient Egyptians were so fascinated by death and how the mighty pyramids were built without any modern construction devices.

Since Egypt erupted in political conflict, in early 2011, visitor numbers have fallen. As you can judge from the image, Egypt is now considered a very volatile place. There have been many oppressive acts by its authorities, violent clashes between protestors and police and soldiers, and several terrorist attacks. However, despite the great dangers, archaeologists have carried on the exciting work of discovering Egypt's tombs, mummies and other clues about the fascinating ancient history of this land.

BIG QUESTIONS

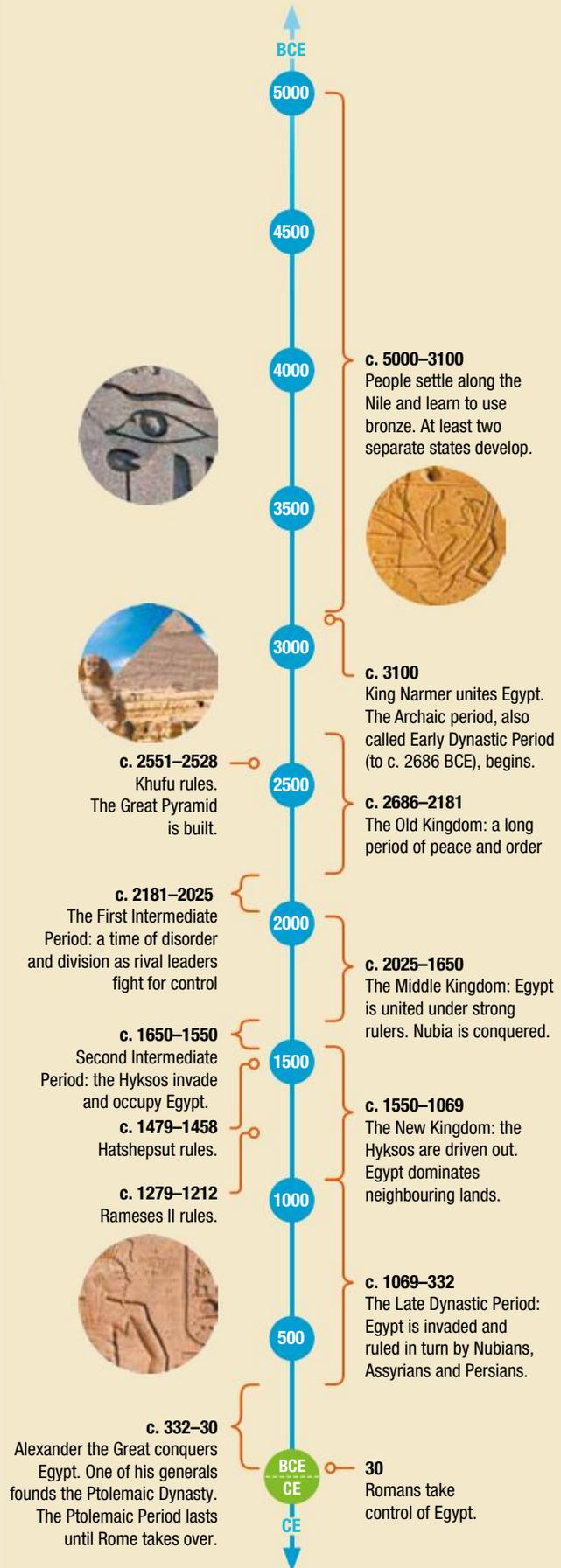
As you work through this topic, look for information that will help you to answer these questions:

- 1 How did ancient Egypt's natural environment influence its civilisation?
- 2 How was ancient Egypt organised and ruled?
- 3 What was the influence in ancient Egypt of religious ideas and beliefs about an afterlife?
- 4 What can ancient sources tell us about life in ancient Egypt?
- 5 What are the legacies of ancient Egypt?

STARTER QUESTIONS

- 1 For how long was Egypt a great ancient civilisation (see timeline)?
- 2 How do you think the pyramids could have been built?
- 3 Have you heard of hieroglyphics (the ancient Egyptian writing system in which pictures and symbols represent words and sounds)?
- 4 Have you read, heard or seen any stories about Egyptian mummies?

A TIMELINE OF ANCIENT EGYPT





قطونيل
القطونيل يستكمل مسيرته

مجالس

4.2 Examining the evidence

4.2.1 How do we know about ancient Egypt?

As you study the pictures in this spread, you will notice many clues about life in ancient Egypt. This is because the ancient Egyptians left a huge amount of primary source evidence behind them. As in Mesopotamia, most Egyptian houses were made of mud bricks so they left few traces, but their pyramids, temples and tombs were made of stone. The pyramids and tombs of Egyptian kings and nobles contained mummies and brilliant artworks, including statues of gods, models and wall paintings. Many of these are very well preserved. There are also colossal stone statues of pharaohs and magnificent painted wall panels.

Ancient Egyptian written primary sources

Egyptians used writing, in the form of symbols called hieroglyphs, from about 3100 BCE but from the fourth century to the nineteenth century CE no-one knew how to read ancient Egyptian. Thanks to the discovery in 1798 of the Rosetta Stone and the dedicated work of two nineteenth-century scientists, the code was broken and scholars can now read the many primary source records of ancient Egypt (see 4.8 Write like an Egyptian).

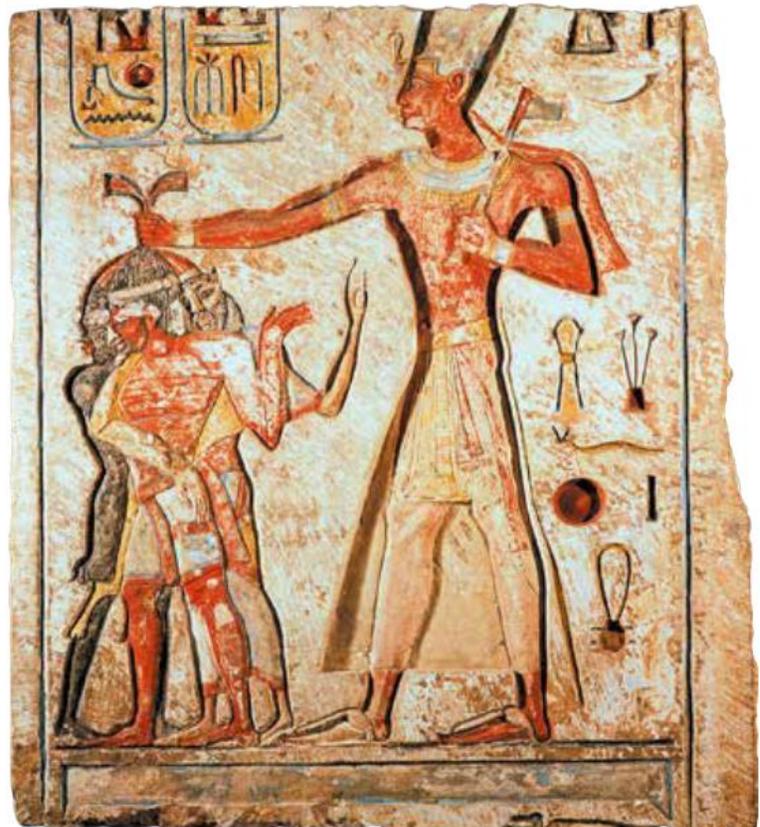
Ancient secondary sources

Some ancient written sources on Egypt are really secondary sources. This is because they were written a very long time after the events they describe. Among them are the writings of the Greek historian Herodotus (c. 484–420 BCE), who travelled to Egypt to gather information. They also include the surviving pages of a history of Egypt written by an Egyptian priest called Manetho around 300 BCE.

SOURCE 1 The gold mask that was found covering the face of the mummy of the New Kingdom pharaoh Tutankhamen



SOURCE 2 A painted limestone panel showing the great New Kingdom pharaoh Rameses II striking bound prisoners of war



SOURCE 3 A wall painting from the tomb of Nebamun at Thebes (c. 1400 BCE), showing him hunting birds in the marshes with a throwing stick. With him are his wife, daughter and cat.



4.2 PUTTING IT ALL TOGETHER

CHECK YOUR UNDERSTANDING

- 1 What types of sources survived from ancient Egypt?
- 2 Why did those sources survive while others left few traces?
- 3 Why don't historians consider ancient written sources by, for example, Herodotus and Manetho to be primary sources for ancient Egypt?

USING HISTORICAL SOURCES AS EVIDENCE

- 4 Look closely at **SOURCE 1** and explain what it can tell us about:
 - a the wealth and power of the rulers of ancient Egypt
 - b the skills of ancient Egyptian artists and craftspeople
 - c preparations that were made for death in ancient Egypt.
- 5 Study **SOURCE 2**.
 - a Describe the main features of this painted panel.
 - b How can you tell that the men on the left are prisoners?
 - c Why do you think the pharaoh is depicted as being much bigger than his captured enemies?
 - d Why do you think an Egyptian ruler would want to be shown killing his prisoners?
- 6 Look very closely at **SOURCE 3**.
 - a Describe the details of the painting.
 - b What are the people standing on?
 - c What is Nebamun using to hunt birds?
 - d Compare and contrast this weapon with an Indigenous Australian boomerang.
 - e What might we learn from this painting about a favourite Egyptian pastime?
- 7 Write a summary of all you have discovered about ancient Egypt from these three sources.

4.3 The gift of the Nile

4.3.1 Floods and irrigation

Like many other ancient civilisations, Egypt developed along a river — the Nile. The waters of the Nile are what made civilisation possible in Egypt's hot, dry, sun-baked land. The Nile is formed by the joining of two rivers, the White Nile and the Blue Nile, which flow north from the wet highlands of central Africa. The Nile flows through the deserts and finally empties through a long **delta** into the Mediterranean Sea. The people of ancient Egypt lived in 'the Black Lands', the river's floodplain. These parts of the land were covered by water whenever the Nile flooded.

Each year, between June and September, heavy rains in central Africa caused the Nile to flood. The annual flooding provided a layer of fertile soil. Without this flooding, civilisation would not have developed in Egypt. People began to live along the Nile from about 5000 BCE. Its waters, the plants that grew in the soil on its banks, and the birds, fish and mammals that lived around it provided all that they needed (see **SOURCE 3** in 4.2 Examining the evidence). They domesticated cattle, sheep, goats and geese and grew crops in the floodplains.

The river provided reeds to make boats, roofs, baskets and **papyrus**, and a transport route for people and goods. The annual flooding also helped set Egypt's calendar. The **Inundation**, the period of flooding, was regarded as the start of each year.

To use the Nile's waters more efficiently, the Egyptians invented a way of irrigating their crops by lifting the water from the river and moving it through ditches in their fields. To do this they used a bucket device called a **shadoof**, a method that is still used today. Most importantly, irrigation enabled part of the population to produce enough food for the whole population. This freed others to do more specialised work.

delta low, triangular area where a river fans out as it nears the sea

papyrus paper made from crushing reeds

Inundation the seasonal flooding of the Nile

shadoof irrigation device used to lift water from the river

DID YOU KNOW?

Away from the floodplain of the Nile, 90 per cent of Egypt is desert. The arid deserts provided little to sustain the Egyptians, but deserts were difficult to cross and for centuries they helped Egypt to develop its civilisation without the constant threat of foreign invasion.

SOURCE 1 From *The Histories*, written by the ancient Greek historian Herodotus, who visited Egypt in 475 BCE

... it is clear to any intelligent observer ... that the Egypt to which we sail nowadays is ... the gift of the Nile ... When the Nile overflows, the whole country is converted into a sea, and the towns, which alone remain above water, look like islands. At these times water transport is used all over the country instead of merely along the course of the river.

myWorldHistoryAtlas

Deepen and check your understanding of the topic with the following resources and auto-marked questions:

[Early river civilisations](#) [Early urban civilisations](#)

4.3.1 Activities

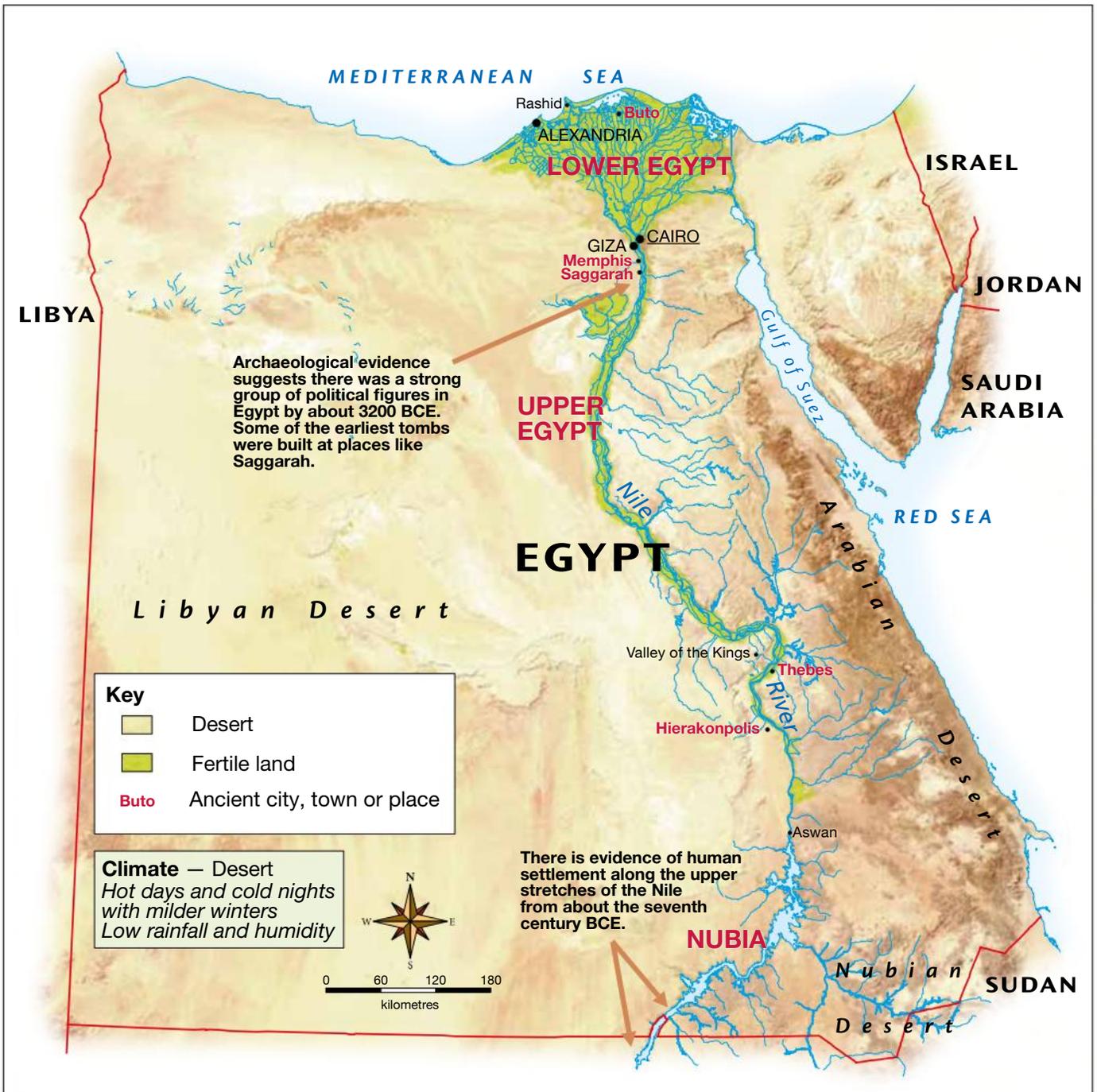
CHECK YOUR UNDERSTANDING

- Complete the following sentences by choosing the correct words from the alternatives in brackets:
 - The Nile is formed by the joining of two rivers, the (Green/White) Nile and the (Blue/Black) Nile.
 - Ancient Egyptians lived in the (deserts/floodplains).
 - The Inundation was the period of (drought/flooding).
 - Egypt's natural defences were provided by (mountains/deserts).
- Suggest why the lands along the Nile's floodplain were called 'the Black Lands'.

USING HISTORICAL SOURCES AS EVIDENCE

- Read **SOURCE 1**.
 - What do you think Herodotus meant when he called the civilisation of ancient Egypt 'the gift of the Nile'?
 - Make a list of other ways in which the flooding of the Nile affected the lives of the ancient Egyptians.
- Using **SOURCE 2**, locate the delta of the Nile and describe its shape and the geographical features that would have made it a good place for farming.

SOURCE 2 Ancient Egypt — its main geographical features and key sites



Source: Map drawn by MAPgraphics

4.3 PUTTING IT ALL TOGETHER

IDENTIFYING CONTINUITY AND CHANGE

1 Explain how cultivating plants and domesticating animals would have transformed the lives of people living along the Nile.

ANALYSING CAUSE AND EFFECT

2 In what sense can the Nile be considered to have contributed to Egypt's success in developing a civilisation?

4.4 The people of Egypt

4.4.1 The structure of ancient Egyptian society

learn on

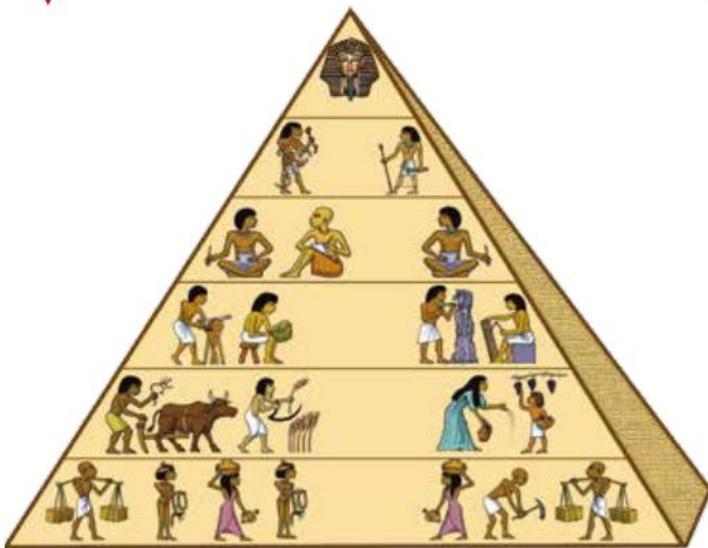
To access videos, interactivities, discussion widgets, image galleries, weblinks and more, go to www.jacplus.com.au

Ancient Egyptian society was layered like a pyramid (see **SOURCE 1**). At the top was the pharaoh, who was considered both a king and a god. Beneath him was the vizier (prime minister) who was in charge of almost everything. Next in importance were the nobles, priests, officials and scribes. Then there were the common people, peasants and slaves.

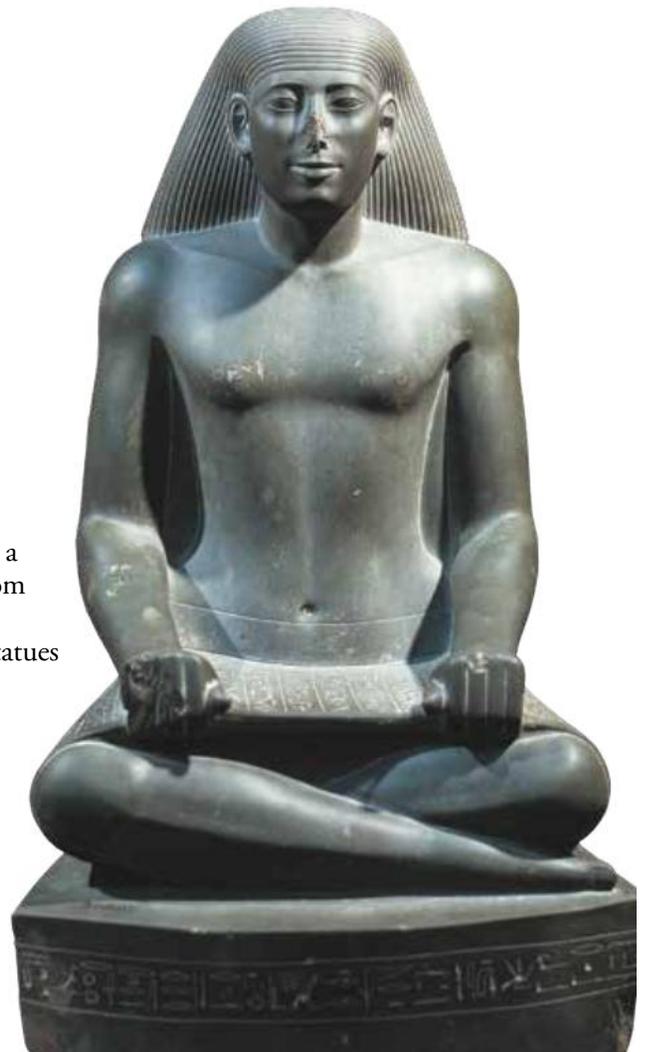
Nobles, priests, officials and scribes

Nobles formed a wealthy class in ancient Egyptian society. These landowning families lived privileged lives while their large estates were farmed by peasants and labourers. Priests controlled the temples and this role gave them enormous power. The work of administering Egypt and ensuring that the pharaoh's wishes were carried out was done by officials. Most high officials were nobles but some were common people who worked their way up as scribes. Egypt's many scribes, like the man in **SOURCE 2**, ranked below the ruling classes of nobles, priests and officials but above the common people. Because they had been trained to read and write scribes were employed to keep state records including taxes.

SOURCE 1 A social pyramid showing where each class ranked in ancient Egypt



SOURCE 2 A scribe sitting with a papyrus on his lap. It took 12 years of study to become a scribe. This statue depicts Nespekasut, a senior scribe of Karnak, in Upper Egypt.



The ordinary people

Among the common people, **artisans** formed a large group. Young men learned their craft from their fathers. Craftsmen included:

- stonemasons, who made temples, tombs, statues and monuments
- painters, who decorated temples, tombs, coffins and canopic jars (see 4.7 Mummies unwrapped)
- woodworkers, who carved furniture and other objects
- wigmakers, who made wigs and false beards
- metalworkers
- weavers
- musical instrument makers
- paper makers, who made sheets of papyrus
- jewellers.

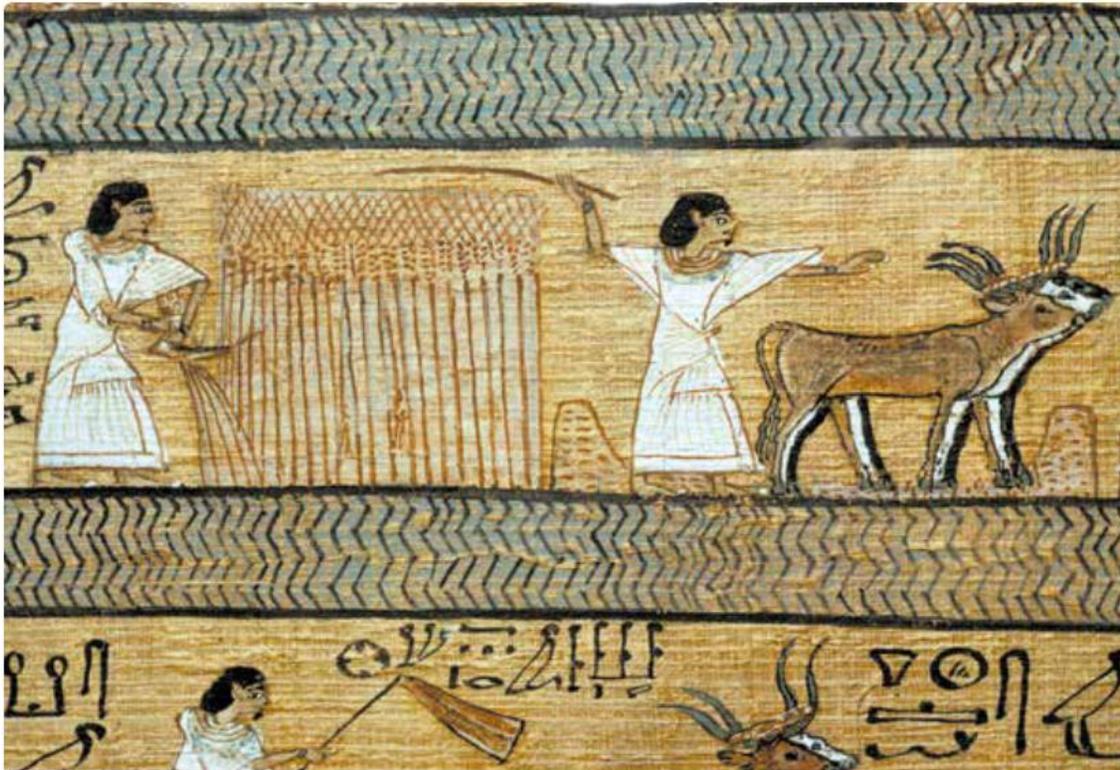
artisans skilled craftspeople

Because money was not used in Egypt until the fourth century BCE, craftsmen were paid in food and beer.

Among the more prosperous commoners were merchants, who conducted trade. Peasants were by far the largest group. They were mostly tenant farmers who worked the land owned by the pharaoh, priests and nobles. Most of what they produced went to their landlords or was paid to the state in taxes. Usually their lives were an unchanging cycle of ploughing, planting, harvesting and other farm work.

During the flood they were sometimes expected to labour on the construction of pyramids, temples or other building projects of the pharaoh. There were also many labourers, servants and some slaves.

SOURCE 3 An Egyptian papyrus depicting farming work



4.4.1 Activities

CHECK YOUR UNDERSTANDING

- 1 What was the role of a vizier in ancient Egypt?
- 2 What were the sources of the power of nobles and priests?
- 3 Name three types of artisans. Suggest which artisans might have been regarded as most important and why.

USING HISTORICAL SOURCES AS EVIDENCE

- 4 Using **SOURCE 1** and other information from this subtopic, identify barriers that existed to moving upwards in ancient Egyptian society and how people lower down the social scale might have felt about such barriers.
- 5 Look at **SOURCE 2**.
 - a Describe how this scribe is portrayed.
 - b Explain how a person may have become a scribe.
 - c Imagine that an ordinary family in ancient Egypt had two sons, one of whom became a scribe. Compare and contrast the lives of the two sons.
- 6 Study **SOURCE 3**. Describe what is happening in this scene and explain what evidence it provides for the everyday lives of the peasants.

4.4.2 Everyday life

All houses were made of mud bricks, but while nobles lived in great houses, artisans, peasants and labourers lived in simple huts. Their furniture was made of wood and rushes, and they stored food in pottery jars. From the evidence in sculptures and wall paintings we know quite a lot about people's appearance. Men are depicted wearing tunics or kilts. Women are shown wearing straight dresses (see **SOURCE 4**). The same sources tell us that Egyptians took part in hunting, enjoyed music and dancing, and played several kinds of board games (see **SOURCE 5**). Children appear to have been valued and loved; they were seen as the main reason for marriage.

SOURCE 4 A painted limestone statue of a woman, called Merseankh, and her husband, Raherka, from about 2500–2350 BCE



SOURCE 5 This ancient Egyptian game box from c. 1400–1200 BCE includes a playing board and a drawer to hold playing pieces.



Food and drink

Ordinary Egyptians had simple foods. They ate bread, onions and other vegetables, with occasional fish or meat, and drank beer. The ruling classes, however, enjoyed much more. In the tomb of one noblewoman, archaeologists discovered a meal that was meant for the **afterlife**. It consisted of porridge, fish, pigeon, quails, beef, bread, fruits, berries and cheese, with wines and beer to accompany the meal.

Stories, rituals and festivals

Stories played a big part in people's lives. The Egyptians shared myths about their gods, tales of travel and adventure, and stories designed to teach wisdom. Their religion featured many rituals and festivals. In the villages people worshipped their favourite gods at local shrines. At home, families worshipped at household shrines. In the temples, priests performed rituals. Temples, believed to be the dwellings of gods, were not public places. However, during festivals the ordinary people were permitted to take part in temple rituals. These festivals ranged from local celebrations to national events. Among them was the Festival of Opet, in which sacred barges were towed up the Nile while crowds applauded and danced along the river banks.

afterlife life after death

DID YOU KNOW?

Ancient Egyptians seasoned their food with salt and sweetened it with honey. Discoveries of children's toys from ancient Egypt include models of animals, dolls with movable legs and arms, leather balls and spinning tops.

4.4.2 Activities

CHECK YOUR UNDERSTANDING

- 1 Explain how the housing of ordinary Egyptians was different from that of the nobles.
- 2 Describe the differences between the food and drink of ordinary Egyptians and that of the ruling classes.
- 3 What did Egyptians do for recreation?

USING HISTORICAL SOURCES AS EVIDENCE

- 4 Look very closely at **SOURCE 5**.
 - a Make up a set of rules that could possibly have been used to play this boardgame.
 - b Suggest what **SOURCE 5** can tell us about everyday life in ancient Egypt.
 - c Evaluate the usefulness of this source as evidence for everyday life in ancient Egypt.

4.4.3. Everyday lives of women in ancient Egypt

Women in ancient Egypt did not have the same rights as men. In all lower-class families, women were responsible for preparing food, including making bread and beer, and caring for children. In peasant families they also worked in the fields. They were usually not taught to read and write. Apart from work as singers, dancers, musicians, servants, nurses and funeral mourners (people paid to weep and wail at funerals), few careers were open to women. Despite this, they had more freedom than in most other ancient societies, where women were treated as the property of men.

SOURCE 6 Mourners painted on the tomb of the vizier Ramoseh



Upper-class women

In Egypt a woman's rank in society depended on her husband's rank, but high status could also be achieved by the mother of a high-ranking son. Wives and daughters of pharaohs and nobles led privileged lives with fine clothes and many servants. By the beginning of the New Kingdom, about 1550 BCE, such women could inherit, own and sell property. They could work as part-time priestesses and decide to marry or divorce. However, marriages between wealthy families were often treated as business arrangements and some wealthy men had several wives. Frequently pharaohs married their own sisters but they had other wives as well.

SOURCE 7 From a New Kingdom love poem in which the poet expresses his feelings for a woman he has been parted from for a week

She is more to me than the collected writings . . .
When I see her, then I am well.
If she opens her eye, my body is young again;
If she speaks, then I am strong again;
When I embrace her, she drives all evil away from me . . .
But she has gone forth from me for seven days!

DID YOU KNOW?

Upper-class women in ancient Egypt possessed a great range of cosmetics and jewellery. Items found include pots for holding kohl (eye shadow), hair curlers, hair tweezers, combs, cosmetics boxes, rings, bead necklaces and collars, amulets, and palettes and stones for grinding cosmetics.

Some upper-class women became high officials. A woman named Nebet became vizier under Pharaoh Pepy I. Another upper-class Egyptian woman who had great influence was Nefertiti. She was the main wife of Pharaoh Akhenaten (ruled c. 1351–1336 BCE). Queens were less important than pharaohs, but images depict Nefertiti as a very beautiful queen who accompanied her husband at ceremonies and on official occasions. Some images even show her in a war chariot.

Hatshepsut – a very significant woman

Only a few queens ever ruled in their own right. The most famous of those who did was Hatshepsut. If a pharaoh died while the heir to his throne was still very young, the highest ranking royal wife could act as regent (someone who rules on behalf of the heir until he is old enough to take the throne). Hatshepsut became regent because when her husband (and brother) Pharaoh Thutmose II died, Thutmose III, the heir to the throne, was only three years old. A few years later she had herself crowned as pharaoh. She ruled Egypt from about 1479 to 1458 BCE and appears to have led Egypt's armies in at least one war.

4.4.3 Activities

CHECK YOUR UNDERSTANDING

- 1 What careers were open to women in ancient Egypt?
- 2 How much equality did women have with men within:
 - a lower class families
 - b the upper classes?

USING HISTORICAL SOURCES AS EVIDENCE

- 3 Look closely at the mourners in **SOURCE 6**.
 - a Analyse this source to explain what it can tell us about ancient Egyptian society and women's roles in it.
 - b Working with a partner, design a job advertisement for an ancient Egyptian mourner.
 - c How do you think Egyptian women might have actually felt about such work?

4.4 PUTTING IT ALL TOGETHER

USING HISTORICAL SOURCES AS EVIDENCE

- 1 Using **SOURCES 6** and **7** as your evidence, form a hypothesis about relationships between men and women in ancient Egypt. What other kinds of evidence would you need to support conclusions?
- 2 It has been estimated that at least 95 per cent of ancient Egyptians were illiterate. This percentage probably included all Egyptians below the rank of scribes. Explain what problems this would pose for historians trying to discover the thoughts and feelings of ordinary Egyptians.

IDENTIFYING CONTINUITY AND CHANGE

- 3 Draw two columns comparing rights and opportunities of women and men in ancient Egypt and identify what each might have done in their everyday lives.

4.5 Pharaoh rules!

4.5.1 King Narmer and the rise of the pharaohs

The wealthiest, most powerful person in ancient Egypt was the pharaoh. He had the support of an army and a host of priests, scribes and officials, but the pharaoh alone decided how Egypt would be ruled. The people saw him as a god.

Ancient Egypt was once divided into two kingdoms — Upper Egypt and Lower Egypt. Each was ruled by a king. The king of Lower Egypt had his capital in Buto, and the king of Upper Egypt, in Hierakonpolis. Around 3100 BCE it is thought that these kingdoms were united under King Narmer. He set up his capital in Memphis.

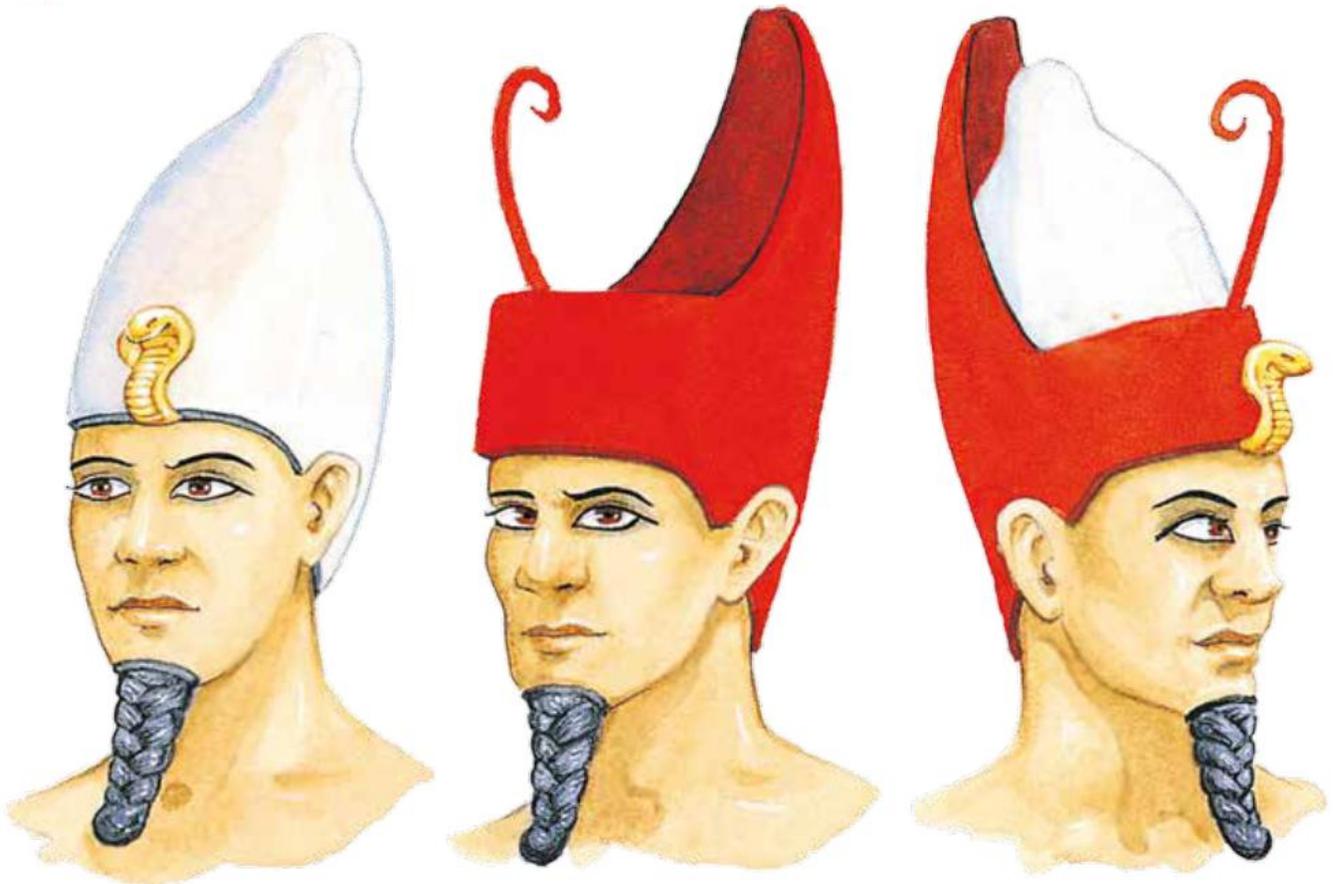
learn on

To access videos, interactivities, discussion widgets, image galleries, weblinks and more, go to www.jacplus.com.au

During the next 2700 years, Egypt's history was divided into a number of distinct periods. Three of the more important of these — times when Egypt was united and powerful, with a rich culture — are called the Old Kingdom, the Middle Kingdom and the New Kingdom.

During these three kingdoms, Egypt's rulers (eventually called pharaohs) came from some 30 dynasties. When a pharaoh died, his eldest son became the next pharaoh, unless a man from another family seized control and started a new dynasty. Sometimes the pharaoh's wife or eldest daughter ruled for a time if the eldest son was very young.

SOURCE 1 The king of Upper Egypt wore a white crown, and the king of Lower Egypt, a red crown. Namer's crown was said to be a mix of both, signifying a united Egypt.



4.5.1 Activities

CHECK YOUR UNDERSTANDING

1 Fill in the gaps in this passage.

It is thought that King Narmer united Egypt in _____ BCE and set up a new capital in _____. In Egypt's long history, the three periods called kingdoms were times when the country was _____ and _____.

2 How did someone become a pharaoh?

SEQUENCING CHRONOLOGY

3 Examine the timeline in the topic opener.

a Find the years during which each of the following periods existed: the Old Kingdom, the Middle Kingdom and the New Kingdom.

b Explain how the other periods were different to these three kingdoms.

USING HISTORICAL SOURCES AS EVIDENCE

4 Explain how and why Narmer's crown (**SOURCE 1**) combined features of the crowns of Lower Egypt and Upper Egypt.

4.5.2 Power and responsibility

Heavenly powers

The ancient Egyptians saw their pharaoh as a man with supernatural powers. He was believed to descend from the sun god, Amun-Ra, and to have the sky god, Horus, living within him.

Egyptians believed that the laws the pharaoh made applied to the whole universe. They believed he made the Nile River flood and helped the land to produce good harvests. As a mark of respect, they did not call him by his name. Rather, they used the word 'pharaoh', which in ancient Egyptian meant 'great house'.

SOURCE 2 The power of the pharaoh was evident in his appearance. For example, he often wore a false beard and a bull's tail (both symbols of pharaonic power), and carried a flail (the symbol of Osiris) and a shepherd's crook (the hieroglyphic sign for a crook meant 'king').

Earthly responsibilities

The people of ancient Egypt expected their pharaoh to protect and feed them, and to maintain a fair justice system and a peaceful society. He drew up the laws of the land and controlled the government and the army. In artworks, he was often portrayed as a military hero (see **SOURCE 3**). Exactly what laws the pharaohs made for their people is something for which we have very little evidence. No written code of laws has survived from ancient Egypt. Nor is there any evidence of a system of law courts. Rather, law cases appear to have been judged by officials who had many other responsibilities. He was also in charge of temple building, tax collection, mines, irrigation, trade, important religious ceremonies and the appointment of officials and priests. His huge wealth came from the labour and produce that the people provided as their taxes. Thousands of ordinary people worked the huge farms he owned or helped in the running of his palace. There they worked as cooks, cleaners, dancers, stable workers, craftsmen, weavers and wig-makers.



SOURCE 3 A gold emblem showing Pharaoh Tutankhamen returning from war. This was just one of many priceless objects found in his tomb.



An obedient, contented society?

Inscriptions and paintings in tombs of pharaohs and officials depict a harmonious society in which ordinary Egyptians worked contentedly in the fields or at their skilled crafts under the rule of the pharaoh. It was an image of a stable society in which everyone accepted their place and never questioned those above them. But how realistic was this?

Some text inscribed on pieces of pottery tell a different story. It is the story of the world's first recorded industrial dispute and it took place during the reign of Pharaoh Rameses III. It tells of tomb builders walking off the job of constructing the royal tomb after the officials in charge failed to pay them the food and supplies to which they were entitled.

SOURCE 4 An ancient scribe's record of the strike of workers employed to construct and decorate the tomb of Rameses III

[The] gang walked out [of the tomb] because they were hungry; there is no wood, no vegetables, no fish. So they went to consult the magistrate . . . who declared, '[the people of the Tomb]' are in the right.

DID YOU KNOW?

Relief carvings show that after battles Egyptian soldiers cut a hand off the body of each dead enemy. These were then heaped into piles, counted by scribes and included in the records to glorify the pharaoh's victories.

4.5.2 Activities

CHECK YOUR UNDERSTANDING

- 1 In what ways did ancient Egyptians associate their pharaoh with gods?
- 2 What was the source of the pharaoh's wealth?
- 3 Create a mind map to outline the powers and responsibilities of a pharaoh.

4.5 PUTTING IT ALL TOGETHER

USING HISTORICAL SOURCES AS EVIDENCE

- 1 Explain what conclusions you can draw from **SOURCES 1, 2** and **3** about the way that pharaohs wanted to be seen and thought of by their people.
- 2 Use the internet to locate images of some of the treasures of the pharaohs. Several museums hold such objects and you can view them online. Present two images to the class as a data show with an explanation of their importance in representing the power of pharaohs.

IDENTIFYING CONTINUITY AND CHANGE

- 3 Analyse **SOURCE 4** using the following questions.
 - a For what event does this source provide evidence?
 - b What were the grievances of the striking tomb workers?
 - c How do you think the workers regarded the pharaoh's officials who were responsible for paying them?
 - d How does this source contradict the image in other ancient sources of an unchanging, contented society?

4.6 Gods and the afterlife

4.6.1 The journey to the afterlife

Death was a very important event for ancient Egyptians. It connected life on Earth with life ever after, so a lot of effort was spent preparing for it. This focus on death has been very valuable for historians, because most of what we know about ancient Egypt comes from what has been found in tombs. Many of the **deities** of ancient Egypt, whether good or bad, played a role in a person's journey to the afterlife.

The ancient Egyptians believed the next world was a fantastic place. However, it was a long way away, and reaching it was not easy. First, the dead person had to cross a wide river. Then he or she had to chant secret spells to get through seven gates guarded by fierce monsters, all

deities gods or goddesses

the while looking out for traps set by evil gods and attacks by savage crocodiles and venomous snakes. Then the dead person's heart was weighed on scales against a feather to see if it was 'heavy with sin'. Forty-two judges decided the outcome.

SOURCE 1 Scenes from the *Book of the Dead of Hunefer*, which dates from around 1310 BCE. It is painted on papyrus. The Egyptians made books of the dead to protect their owners from the perils of the journey to the afterlife. If a heart was found to be 'as light as a feather', its owner joined the god Osiris in the afterlife. If heavy, it was chewed up by a monster god that was a cross between a lion or cheetah, a hippopotamus and a crocodile.



Preparing for the journey of the soul

The ancient Egyptians believed that a dead person had a number of souls. Two of these were the *ka* and the *ba*. The *ka*, the person's life force, stayed within the tomb, getting strength from the food and drink left there. The *ba*, the person's character, set off on its journey towards the afterlife, returning to the tomb to rest each night. To do these things, the soul needed a body. So dead people's bodies were carefully preserved, or embalmed, so they did not rot. An embalmed body is called a mummy.

Mummies were buried with lots of the possessions the person's soul might need in the afterlife.

They included food and drink, clothing, perfume, furniture, jewellery and special charms called **amulets**. Sometimes small wooden or stone figures representing servants doing things such

amulet charm believed to protect against evil

SOURCE 2 The figurines were thought to come to life in the tomb and carry out the wishes of the dead person.



as making bread, ploughing a field or sailing a ship were placed in tombs. As well, prayers, hymns and magic spells from the 200 such texts in the *Book of the Dead* were often written on a scroll of papyrus and buried with the mummy or carved in hieroglyphs on the walls of the tomb. These texts were thought to protect the soul from evil and guide it through the afterlife.

After a dead person's body was mummified, a funeral ceremony was held. The body was carried in a boat across the Nile and buried on the western bank, where the sun set. This was the direction in which the next world was believed to lie. Important people such as pharaohs were buried in elaborate underground tombs consisting of many rooms and tunnels. Poorer people were buried in the hot, dry sands to help preserve their bodies.

4.6.1 Activities

CHECK YOUR UNDERSTANDING

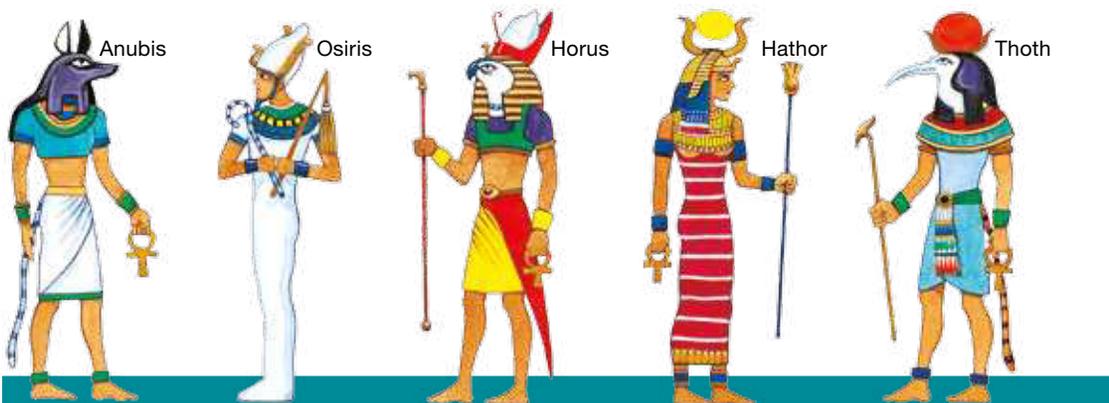
- 1 Beginning with 'Step 1: The dead person's body was embalmed', list in chronological order each step it was believed an ancient Egyptian had to take to reach the afterlife.
- 2 Explain why ancient Egyptians made books of the dead.
- 3 What was the difference between the ka and the ba?
- 4 Why were mummies buried with possessions?

USING HISTORICAL SOURCES AS EVIDENCE

- 5 Analyse **SOURCE 1** using the following questions.
 - a The figure on the far left is the dead person. Which of the steps you listed in answering question 1 is shown in this source?
 - b What is the god with the jackal's head weighing on his scales?
 - c Why is he doing this?
 - d According to ancient Egyptian beliefs, will this dead person's soul be allowed to enter the next world?
- 6 Explain why the figurines in **SOURCE 2** would have been placed in a tomb.

4.6.2 The gods of the ancient Egyptians

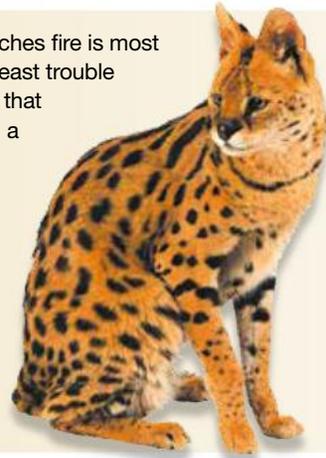
There were many deities in ancient Egypt, each looking after some particular area of people's lives. For example, the god Hopi was responsible for the Nile River. Some gods were portrayed as humans and some as animals. Others were a mixture of both — usually animal heads on human bodies.



Name of god	Responsibility	Associated animal or symbol
Amun-Ra	God of creation; god of the sun and king of the gods	The sun
Osiris	God of the dead; god of the afterlife; a judge in the underworld	Pharaoh mummy
Seth	God of confusion and chaos	Hippopotamus
Isis	Mother goddess; goddess of fertility; wife of Osiris	Woman wearing a throne as a crown
Horus	God of the sky; guardian of the pharaoh	Falcon
Hathor	Goddess of beauty and love; goddess of the sky	Woman with cow horns on her head
Thoth	God of the scribes; god of wisdom and knowledge; god of time	Man having the head of an ibis
Anubis	God of embalming; god of tombs and burials	Man having the head of a jackal

SOURCE 3 Herodotus observed how important cats were to the ancient Egyptians. They were thought to protect people's homes. It is no wonder they were chosen as one of the animals to be associated with a god.

What happens when a house catches fire is most extraordinary: nobody takes the least trouble to put it out, for it is only the cats that matter; everyone stands in a row, a little distance from his neighbour, trying to protect the cats, who nevertheless slip through the line, or jump over it, and hurl themselves into the flames. This causes the Egyptians deep distress. All the inmates of a house where a cat has died a natural death shave their eyebrows ...



4.6.2 Activities

CHECK YOUR UNDERSTANDING

- 1 Which Egyptian deity (god) was linked to each of these animals: jackal, hippopotamus, falcon, ibis?
- 2 In what ways were the gods Anubis and Osiris particularly important in the journey to the afterlife?

USING HISTORICAL SOURCES AS EVIDENCE

- 3 According to Herodotus, **SOURCE 3**, how did ancient Egyptians regard cats? Why might they have been associated with the gods?

4.6 PUTTING IT ALL TOGETHER

IDENTIFYING CONTINUITY AND CHANGE

- 1 Using the sources and other information in this subtopic, identify the main differences between ideas about gods and life after death in ancient Egyptian religion and in any one of the religions that have large followings in the modern world.

ANALYSING CAUSE AND EFFECT

- 2 Explain how beliefs about the gods and the afterlife could have contributed to making ordinary Egyptians content with their position in society.

4.7 Mummies unwrapped

4.7.1 Dead mummies do tell tales!

The art and hieroglyphs found on the tomb walls of ancient Egyptians, and the mummies made of their dead bodies, have told historians a lot about the way of life of the ancient Egyptians.

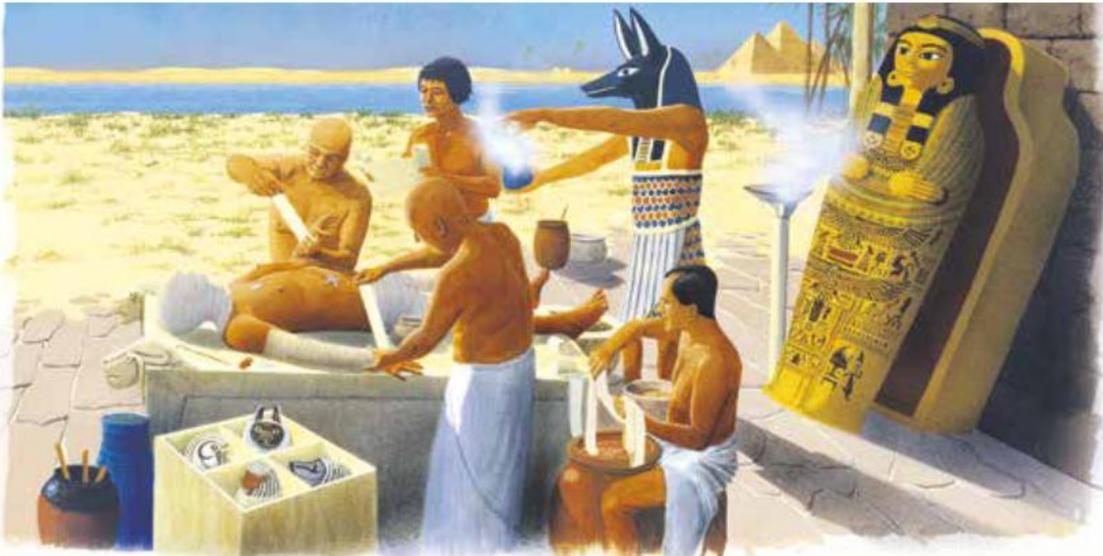
At first, all ancient Egyptians buried their dead in the hot desert sands. However, in time wealthier Egyptians, especially pharaohs, began to build elaborate tombs. They would also mummify bodies so their souls would always have a 'home' to rest in, and be able to 'eat and drink'.

Mummies allow us to have some idea of what famous pharaohs looked like. Scientists and historians can also find out details such as their age, their body shape, whether they had had children, what diseases and health problems they suffered — even, sometimes, what they died of. Researchers have found, for example, that cancer was probably rare or non-existent in ancient Egypt. On the other hand, broken and worn teeth were very common because of their crunching on sand grit and hard pieces of corn that were mixed up in bread.

learn on

To access videos, interactivities, discussion widgets, image galleries, weblinks and more, go to www.jacplus.com.au

SOURCE 1 Instructions to a priest for preparing a mummy



Step 1 Have your jackal mask ready so you can dress up as the god Anubis. Learn the prayers and magic spells from the *Book of the Dead*. You will need to chant these over the dead body as you work.

Step 2 Wash the dead body with water or palm wine.

Step 3 Use a long hook to pull out the brains through the left nostril. Throw them away.

Step 4 Cut open the left side of the stomach and remove the liver, lungs, intestines and stomach. Don't remove the heart as it contains the personality.

Step 5 Cover the internal organs with **natron** to absorb all moisture. Rub the dried organs with oils and resin and wrap them in linen bandages. Then push them into **canopic jars**. Make sure you put each organ in the right jar.

Step 6 Cover the body with natron for 40 days to dry it out. Then rub the dried skin with palm oils and ointments. Pack the stomach cavity with perfumed linen and sew up the wound.

Step 7 Place a magic charm over the stomach wound and a scarab (beetle-shaped charm) over

the heart. Then wrap the body with linen bandages dipped in gum. Wrap every part separately. You will need about 370 square metres of linen. Wrap amulets and magic charms such as ankhs (☩) in with the bandages. The dead person's soul will need these during its journey to the Kingdom of sirs.

Step 8 Place a mask made from linen and glue over the person's head and shoulders. If you have time, paint this or cover it in gold leaf. Also place a panel across the top part of the body, decorated with protective magic symbols and drawings.

Step 9 Place the wrapped mummy in a body-shaped coffin that has been decorated with jewels, paintings and inscriptions of spells. Paint the coffin so it looks a bit like the person when he or she was alive. Be flattering!

Step 10 Tell the relatives the mummy and the canopic jars are ready for burial. Your chief priest will need to accompany the funeral procession to the tomb so he can conduct the ceremony to open the mummy's mouth. The person's soul needs to talk in the afterlife. Remember, the professional mourners will be noisy!

natron a mineral salt used to dry out dead bodies

canopic jars jars used to store the liver, lungs, intestines and stomach of the person being mummified

SOURCE 2 The mummy of a six-year-old Egyptian boy



4.7.1 Activities

CHECK YOUR UNDERSTANDING

- 1 Write the sentences hidden in the table below by correctly matching the phrases in the left and right columns.

A mummy is	to assist the journey of the dead person's soul.
Natron is	to store organs that were removed from the body.
Bodies were mummified	a body that has been preserved by drying and wrapping.
Canopic jars were used	so that their souls would have a place to rest in.
Magic charms were wrapped in with the bandages	a mineral salt used to dry out dead bodies.

- 2 What have historians learned about ancient Egyptians by studying mummies?

USING HISTORICAL SOURCES AS EVIDENCE

- 3 Study **SOURCE 2**.
- As the body of this boy is thousands of years old, what do you think would remain of it had it not been mummified?
 - Which dating technique could be used to tell how old it is?
 - What might you conclude about the social rank of the boy's family from the fact that his face is painted with gold?
 - Explain what else his mummified body might be able to tell us about beliefs, values and practices associated with death and funerary customs in ancient Egypt.

4.7 PUTTING IT ALL TOGETHER

USING HISTORICAL SOURCES AS EVIDENCE

- 1 Referring to **SOURCES 1** and **2**, give a brief explanation of what examining mummified bodies could tell us about differences between the social classes in ancient Egypt.

IDENTIFYING CONTINUITY AND CHANGE

- 2 Using the sources and other information in this subtopic, discuss as a class:
- why preserving bodies was so important to ancient Egyptians
 - the similarities and differences between burial practices and ideas about death in ancient Egypt and the modern world.

4.8 Write like an Egyptian

4.8.1 Unlocking the mystery of hieroglyphs

The ancient Egyptians used writing over 5000 years ago, possibly as early as 3100 BCE. At first they used simple drawings and symbols to represent each word. They wrote on stone, pottery and paper, which they made from papyrus reeds. When the Greeks came to Egypt in the fourth century BCE and saw this writing on temple walls they called the symbols hieroglyphs, which meant 'sacred writing'.

Around the fourth century CE, the secret of reading hieroglyphs was lost and it remained lost for centuries. But in 1799, a French soldier discovered a large black stone at the Egyptian town of Rosetta (now called Rashid). The stone had a written message carved in three different scripts. The scripts were: ancient Egyptian hieroglyphs; a later simplified form of hieroglyphs known as demotic; and, very importantly, ancient Greek, which could still be read and understood. So the 'Rosetta stone', as it became known, made it possible to unlock the mystery of hieroglyphs. Thanks to many years spent by Thomas Young, who was an English scientist, and a Frenchman named Jean François Champollion, the code was broken.

learn on

To access videos, interactivities, discussion widgets, image galleries, weblinks and more, go to www.jacplus.com.au

Scholars could now read the many records that the ancient Egyptians had written. These included the king lists, which were kept by priests and listed the pharaohs and how long they had reigned, as well as myths, legends, hymns, medical and legal documents, and even graffiti.

SOURCE 1 The Rosetta Stone — interpretation of its hieroglyphs allowed scholars to learn much about ancient Egypt.



4.8.1 Activities

CHECK YOUR UNDERSTANDING

- 1 Approximately how long ago was writing first used in Egypt?
- 2 What is the meaning of the Greek word 'hieroglyph'?

USING HISTORICAL SOURCES AS EVIDENCE

- 3 Look closely at **SOURCE 1**. Describe the feature of the Rosetta Stone that made it possible to unlock the mystery of hieroglyphs.

4.8.2 Writing and reading in ancient Egypt

The hieroglyphic 'alphabet' was much larger than ours — it was made up of more than 700 symbols. Some of these were simple drawings, such as a bird, and others were shapes, such as a semicircle. At first, each symbol stood for a word. As the language became more complex, some symbols came also to stand for other language elements besides single words, such as:

- the sound of a consonant (for example, the symbol for an owl also stood for the sound of the letter *m*)
- the sound of a syllable (for example, the symbol for a board game also stood for the sound of the letters *men*)

- ideas or actions (for example, the symbol for a leg shown twice stood for the idea of movement)
- signals to help the reader understand what was meant. A signal might be put at the end of a word so readers knew it had a different meaning from another of the same symbol. (If we used this technique today, we might place a sketch of a bus at the end of the word 'trip' to show that it meant 'a journey' and not 'to fall over'.)

Reading hieroglyphs

At first, hieroglyphic symbols were laid out in columns. People read down each column, from top to bottom. From about 2000 BCE, the symbols were arranged in rows, more like our writing. Sometimes they were read from left to right (as we read) and other times from right to left. So that the reader knew where to start, a symbol of a person, animal or bird was put at the start or end of the line. The direction in which the symbol faced marked the start of a line. So, if a bird faced right, you would read the line from right to left.

Sometimes a symbol was placed above another, rather than to the side of it. In this event, the symbol on top was read first.

The name of a pharaoh was always enclosed in a cartouche — a bullet-shaped oval.

SOURCE 2 Translators have been able to link hieroglyphic symbols with most of the letters of our alphabet.

Symbols for single sounds

a		b		c, k		d		e, y	
f		g		h		i		j	
l		m		n		o		p	
q		r		s		t		u	
w		x		z		th		sh	

Symbols for syllables

neb		ankh		mer		mes	
su		sha		ka		men	

Simpler forms

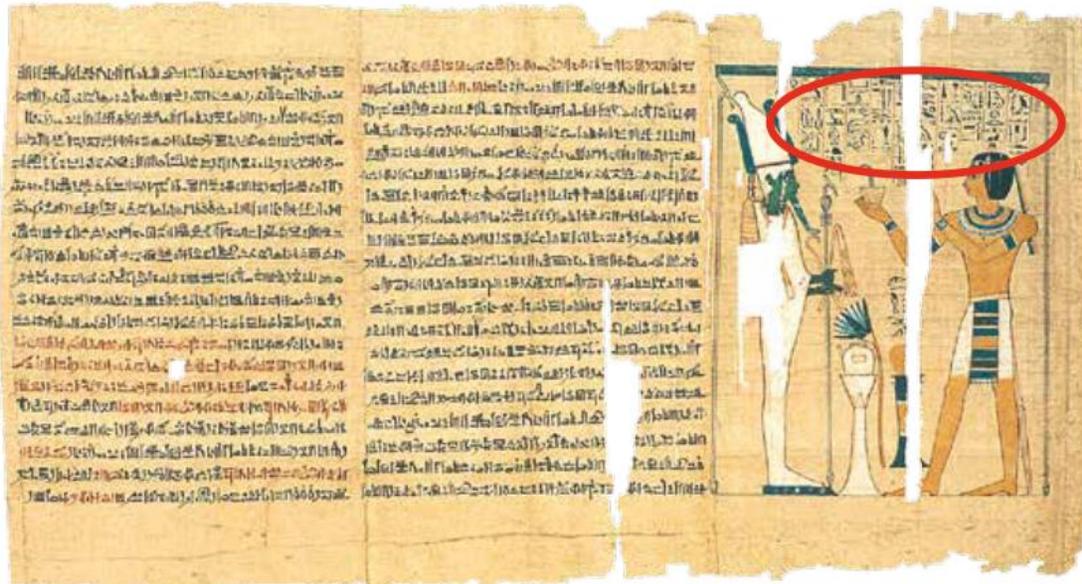
Hieroglyphs were used mainly for religious purposes and in official documents. Priests and scribes could write and read using the system. This is why they can be found in tombs. But hieroglyphs took a lot of time to produce, so simpler, faster scripts were developed. Two other scripts — hieratic script (**SOURCE 3**) and **demotic script** — were used by ordinary people. Both these scripts used hieroglyphic symbols but in simpler forms.

Writing classes

Only boys were taught to read and write. At first they scratched messages on broken pieces of limestone and pottery. Once they could write, they used sheets of papyrus as paper and sharpened bits of reeds as pens. Their inks were solid blocks of powdered minerals, in different colours, which they mixed with water.

demotic script the simplest of the ancient Egyptian scripts, which was almost like handwriting

SOURCE 3 This papyrus sheet shows an Egyptian high priest presenting an offering to Osiris, the god of the afterlife. It contains both the hieroglyphic script (circled) and the simpler **hieratic script** (left and centre).



hieratic script
Egyptian script that was less decorative and complex than hieroglyphs

4.8.2 Activities

CHECK YOUR UNDERSTANDING

- 1 The first hieroglyphic symbols stood for complete words. How and why did that change?
- 2 How were boys taught to write?

USING HISTORICAL SOURCES AS EVIDENCE

- 3 Look closely at **SOURCE 3**.
 - a Which of the two scripts looks most like modern writing?

4.8 PUTTING IT ALL TOGETHER

USING HISTORICAL SOURCES AS EVIDENCE

- 1 Use **SOURCE 2** to decode this message.



- 2 Work in small teams to make a sheet of 'papyrus', using **SOURCE 4** as a reference. Cut a sheet of thick blotting paper (or similar) into strips. Spray strips with a starch solution until they are wet but not sodden. Then lay them in two crossing layers and beat them together. (Place a sheet of lightly oiled greaseproof paper underneath so the paper can be removed once dry.) Polish the beaten sheet with a stone. Then pin down the corners (to stop curling) and place it in the sun to dry.
- 3 Use the piece of 'papyrus' you have made and the hieroglyphic symbols in **SOURCE 2** to create a message for other members of the class to translate. Put these on the display board.

SOURCE 4 How the ancient Egyptians used the stalk of the papyrus reed to make paper

Papyrus reeds



Step 1

Peel off each reed's outer layer.



Step 3

Arrange two layers of wet reed slices as shown. (The starch in the reed works like a glue.) Hit them with a heavy mallet until they mash together.



Step 2

Cut peeled reed into slices and soak these in water.



Step 4

Polish the finished sheet with a smooth stone and allow to dry in the sun.



IDENTIFYING CONTINUITY AND CHANGE

- 4 Explain why ancient Egyptians gradually developed scripts that were more like modern writing than the earlier hieroglyphs.

4.9 Pyramid builders

learn on

To access videos, interactivities, discussion widgets, image galleries, weblinks and more, go to www.jacplus.com.au

4.9.1 Pyramids and hidden tombs

Built about 4500 years ago, the 80 or so pyramids in Egypt are the oldest human-made structures in the world. Of these, the famous three at Giza, near Cairo, are the most impressive. Their construction is an amazing feat of technology. Yet no-one knows for sure how they were built. The ancient Egyptians had only simple tools made of stone, wood and bronze. They had no cranes, computers, rock cutters or heavy earth-moving equipment.

SOURCE 1 The pyramids at Giza in Egypt are the only remaining 'wonder' of the Seven Wonders of the Ancient World.

A Between 200 and 300 granite blocks would have been set in place every day.

B It is thought the workmen might have dragged the blocks over soft sand on top of wooden sleds. On harder surfaces, the blocks may have been moved on top of rolling logs.

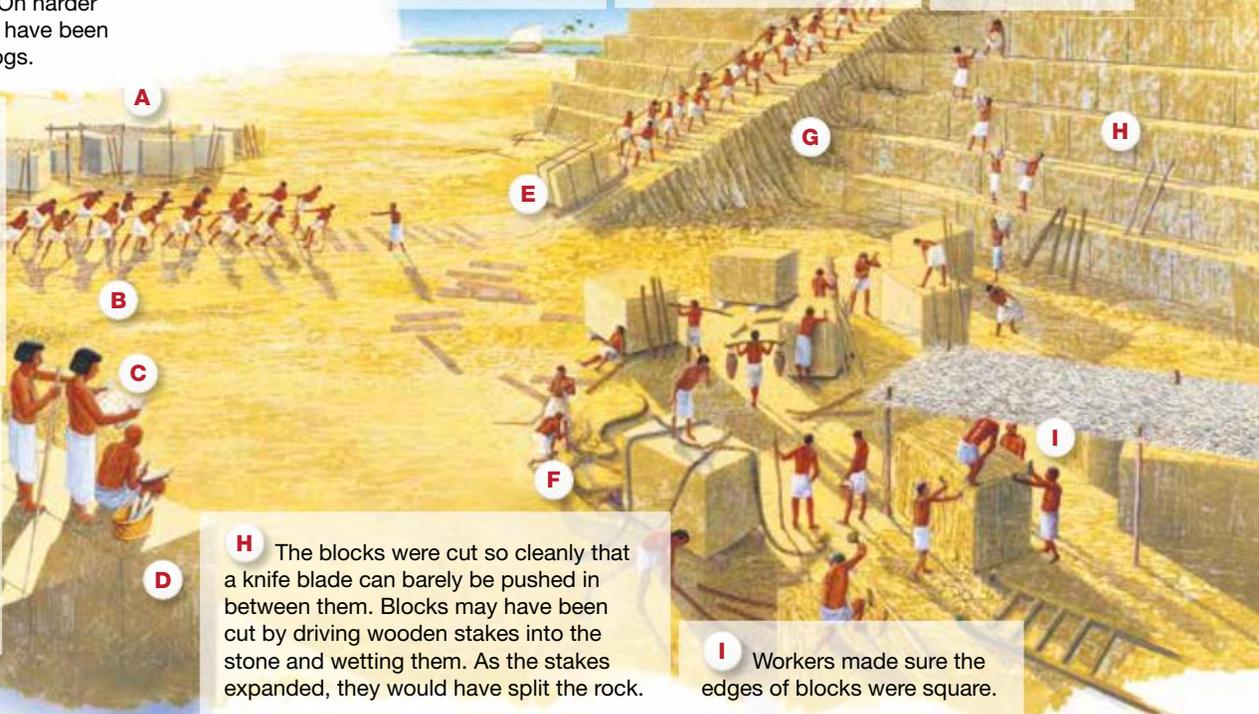
C Architects and other overseers controlled different aspects of the work, using scribes to document details. Skilled craftsmen included stonemasons and carpenters.

D The sides of the pyramids once had an outer layer of polished white limestone. Most of this was later taken down and used to decorate buildings in Cairo.

E Some of the granite blocks are thought to have been cut from rock faces in Aswan, and the limestone from quarries to the east. Both are likely to have reached the site via barges on the Nile River.

F Historians think that around 100 000 men (never slaves) would have worked full time for about 20 years to build the Great Pyramid.

G Huge sand ramps may have been erected to drag blocks up to higher levels.



H The blocks were cut so cleanly that a knife blade can barely be pushed in between them. Blocks may have been cut by driving wooden stakes into the stone and wetting them. As the stakes expanded, they would have split the rock.

I Workers made sure the edges of blocks were square.

From about 2500 BCE, the mummies and treasures of important people such as pharaohs were usually entombed in pyramids. This practice lasted only about 500 years, however, because robbers were a major problem. Thereafter, tombs for such people were dug into mounds and cliffs in the **Valley of the Kings**. But even these were not completely safe. Over time, they were all raided, except one — the tomb of the pharaoh Tutankhamen.

The **Great Pyramid** at Giza, built around 2550 BCE, was the tomb of the pharaoh Khufu. The other two were built for his son Khafre and grandson Menkure. The Great Pyramid, the biggest of the three, is close to 150 metres high and contains around 2 300 000 granite blocks, each of which weighs around 2.5 tonnes.

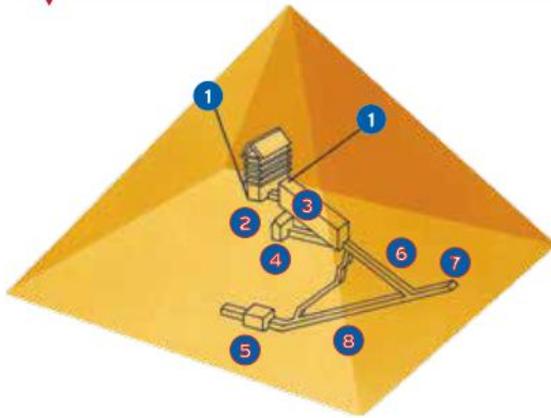
Pyramid mysteries

Some say the technology of the pyramids is so astonishing that they must have been built by an alien intelligence.

Valley of the Kings gorge on the Nile in Upper Egypt that contains many royal tombs

Great Pyramid the oldest and largest pyramid in Egypt; one of the Seven Wonders of the Ancient World

SOURCE 2 Inside the Great Pyramid



- 1 Air shafts
- 2 Pharaoh's burial chamber
- 3 Grand gallery
- 4 Queen's chamber
- 5 False chamber
- 6 Ascending corridor
- 7 Entrance
- 8 Descending corridor

Another view is that those who built the pyramids at Giza, and the **Great Sphinx** that guards them, used knowledge and skills passed down from a very old but highly advanced civilisation that existed long before the Old Kingdom in Egypt. But archaeologists and historians prefer more scientific explanations.

Great Sphinx
monument with the body of a lion and the face of a man; located in Giza near the Great Pyramid

Heavenly sails

One treasure the robbers missed in the Great Pyramid was a 43-metre-long boat, built to carry Khufu to the afterlife. It was not found until 1954. It had been broken into 1224 pieces before being packed into a rock cavity near the base of the pyramid. The cavity was so tightly sealed that when archaeologists broke into it they could still smell the cedar oil in the wood — after 4500 years!

4.9.1 Activities

CHECK YOUR UNDERSTANDING

- 1 Describe the tools and equipment used by ancient Egyptian pyramid builders.
- 2 Explain why the pharaohs stopped building pyramids after 500 years and switched to tombs dug into cliffs and mounds in the Valley of the Kings.

USING HISTORICAL SOURCES AS EVIDENCE

- 3 **SOURCE 1** shows the steps involved in the building of a pyramid. Select three of these steps and explain what tools and equipment would be needed by the workers in order to do their job.
- 4 Study **SOURCE 2**. Imagine that you are an ancient Egyptian who is planning to rob Khufu's tomb. Write a note to our accomplice explaining how to get into the pharaoh's burial chamber and what to look out for.

4.9 PUTTING IT ALL TOGETHER

USING HISTORICAL SOURCES AS EVIDENCE

- 1 Use the internet to conduct research on the Giza pyramids. Prepare a short report on your findings. Include appropriate images.

IDENTIFYING CONTINUITY AND CHANGE

- 2 Imagine that you are a worker on the pyramid who had access to two pieces of modern equipment. Explain what modern equipment you would use and how that would change your task.

4.10 Tutankhamen, Akhenaten and Nefertiti

4.10.1 An archaeologist's dream

The discovery of the tomb of Tutankhamen was the key archaeological event of the twentieth century — but not because of the man or the size of his tomb. Tutankhamen was still a teenager when he died and the tomb had only four chambers. It was important because its contents were

learn on

To access videos, interactivities, discussion widgets, image galleries, weblinks and more, go to www.jacplus.com.au

untouched. More than 5000 objects were found, some of them priceless. We can only imagine what might have been found in the large tombs of more famous pharaohs if they had not been robbed.

In 1922 the British archaeologist Howard Carter found the tomb of Tutankhamen. He had looked for it for years in the Valley of the Kings without success. Then he decided to dig up an area around some old workers' huts. To his excitement, a step was uncovered, carved into the rock. More digging revealed the sealed entrance to a passageway that carried the seal of Tutankhamen. Yet more digging to remove the tonnes of rubble in the passageway revealed the stone door to the tomb.

A hole was cut in the door and Carter inserted a lit candle into the darkness behind. He later said: 'At first I could see nothing... But presently, as my eyes grew accustomed to the light, details of the room emerged slowly from the mist, strange animals, statues and gold — everywhere the glint of gold'.

SOURCE 1 The discovery of Tutankhamen's tomb was described in the *Illustrated London News* of 9 December 1922 as 'the most sensational Egyptological discovery of the century'.

A The antechamber, the first chamber Carter entered, contained about 700 pieces of furniture including stools, beds and gold couches with animal heads, chairs, a chariot (in bits) and two black and gold life-size statues either side of the entrance. There were also jars of oil, lamps, vases, musical instruments, board games and clothing.

B This side chamber contained about 600 items, including pieces of wooden furniture, baskets of food, jars of wine and oil.

C About 200 000 tonnes of rubble had to be removed from this passageway to reach Tutankhamen's tomb.



D Inside the gold-covered burial chamber, some five metres long and 3.5 metres wide, were three other decorated chambers, each inside the other. The inner one was a stone **sarcophagus**, carved with Tutankhamen's name. Inside this were three elaborately decorated body-shaped coffins. The inner one, made of 1100 kilograms of gold, contained Tutankhamen's **mummy**.

E The face and shoulders of Tutankhamen's mummy were covered with a mask of solid gold. It was decorated with blue glass and semi-precious stones such as turquoise and lapis lazuli.

F The treasury chamber contained the pharaoh's treasures. In it was the gold-lined shrine holding the canopic jars. Inside these jars were the pharaoh's mummified internal organs. The chamber also contained gold statues including one of the god Anubis (who guarded the treasures), as well as boats, weapons, a golden throne and chests of jewellery.

sarcophagus stone or wooden coffin (often inscribed or decorated) in Egypt

mummy body that has been embalmed

4.10.1 Activities

CHECK YOUR UNDERSTANDING

- 1 Why was Tutankhamen's tomb such a rare and significant discovery?
- 2 How did Howard Carter find Tutankhamen's tomb?
- 3 Explain the meaning of the following concepts and terms: burial chamber, treasury chamber, sarcophagus.

USING HISTORICAL SOURCES AS EVIDENCE

- 4 Using **SOURCE 1**, identify and select one of the types of items that were found in each of: the antechamber, the side chamber, the burial chamber, the treasury chamber. Explain what archaeologists and historians might discover about life in ancient Egypt from each of your four chosen items.

4.10.2 A new mystery?

The last significant pharaoh before Tutankhamen was Akhenaten, who became pharaoh in about 1353 BCE, under the name Amenhotep IV. In the fifth year of his reign he appears to have initiated a religious revolution in Egypt. He erected a new temple to the sun disk god Aten, changed his name to Akhenaten, meaning 'he who serves Aten' and decreed that in place of the many ancient gods of Egypt the people must worship only the Aten. Images of Akhenaten and many traces of the new religion were deliberately destroyed after his death.

Akhenaten's first wife was Nefertiti. She was depicted as a very elegant and beautiful woman in a limestone bust dated c. 1340 BCE (see **SOURCE 4**) and in many images worshipping Aten with her husband.

Tutankhamen was married to the third daughter of Akhenaten and Nefertiti, and was only about nine years old when he became pharaoh in about 1336 BCE. Under Tutankhamen, Egypt made a complete return to the traditional gods. In inscriptions he was referred to as the good ruler who restored 'what was ruined'. He died aged just 19 leaving no heir to the throne. The head of his mummy is shown in **SOURCE 2**. As revealed in **SOURCE 5**, it now appears that Tutankhamen might not have been alone in his tomb.

SOURCE 2 Head of the 19-year-old Pharaoh Tutankhamen



SOURCE 3 Translated inscription Tutankhamen had carved into a stone column, marking a return to the worship of many gods

I found the temples fallen into ruin, with their holy places overthrown and their courts overgrown with weeds. I reconstructed their sanctuaries, I endowed the temples and made them gifts of all precious things. I cast statues of the gods in gold and electrum, decorated with lapis lazuli and all fine stones.

SOURCE 4 A limestone bust of Nefertiti. It is dated c. 1340 BCE and is held in the Egyptian Museum Berlin.



SOURCE 5 'Egypt's Queen Nefertiti may lie concealed in Tutankhamun's tomb, say archaeologists', ABC News, 5 October 2015

High resolution scans indicate that Queen Nefertiti is buried behind one or two hidden chambers in King Tutankhamun's underground tomb, a British archaeologist says.

...

Dr Nicholas Reeves, from the University of Arizona, has been using radar and thermal imaging technology to examine Tutankhamun's tomb ...

He told a news conference in Cairo that he believes Tutankhamun's mausoleum was originally occupied by Nefertiti.

...

His theory is that Nefertiti has lain undisturbed behind what he believes is a partition wall for more than 3,000 years.

The archaeologist believes the boy king, who died unexpectedly at 19, was buried in a rush in an underground burial chamber that was probably not intended for him.

4.10.2 Activities

CHECK YOUR UNDERSTANDING

- 1 Who were Akhenaten and Nefertiti?
- 2 What big change did Akhenaten bring to Egyptian society and religion?

USING HISTORICAL SOURCES AS EVIDENCE

- 3 Where (see **SOURCE 1**) was Tutankhamen's head (**SOURCE 2**) found?
- 4 Read Tutankhamen's inscription in **SOURCE 3**.
 - a Who caused Egyptian religion to change before Tutankhamen's reign?
 - b How would you account for the temples having 'fallen into ruin'?
 - c Describe the effect of Tutankhamen's reign on Egyptian religion and explain why Tutankhamen might have found it necessary to undertake the works referred to here.
- 5 Describe the way that Nefertiti is portrayed in **SOURCE 4**, the limestone bust.

4.10 PUTTING IT ALL TOGETHER

USING HISTORICAL SOURCES AS EVIDENCE

- 1 Look again at **SOURCE 1** and read **SOURCE 5**.
 - a What was Dr Reeves's hypothesis about Nefertiti and Tutankhamen's tomb?
 - b Where in **SOURCE 1** do you think the partition wall and hidden chambers could possibly be?
- 2 What evidence did Reeves offer to support his hypothesis?
- 3 Reeves's theory was immediately criticised by other archaeologists. What does this tell you about contestability in history?

IDENTIFYING CONTINUITY AND CHANGE

- 4 Work in small groups.
 - a Discuss and explore the way the ancient Egyptian people might have felt about Akhenaten's religious changes.
 - b Explain why we have no real evidence of what ordinary Egyptians thought about these changes.
- 5 Based on what you now know about religious issues from the reign of Akhenaten to the death of Tutankhamen, write a paragraph explaining what we can conclude about change and continuity in this period of ancient Egyptian history.

DETERMINING HISTORICAL SIGNIFICANCE

- 6 Write a letter that Howard Carter could have written to his family in England the day after he saw the contents of Tutankhamen's tomb by candlelight, explaining the historical significance of what he found.

4.11 Expansion and fall

4.11.1 From the Old Kingdom to the New Kingdom

Throughout history all empires have been created by force and all have eventually fallen. There were periods in Egypt's long history when it suffered from **civil wars** and invasions. There were also times of strong governments that drove invaders out of the land and took control of other countries (see the timeline in the topic opener).

One of the worst times was the First Intermediate Period. The collapse of the Old Kingdom was followed by a century of bloodshed as nobles fought each other for control of the country. This made it easy for foreigners to move into the Nile Delta.

Contacts and conflicts

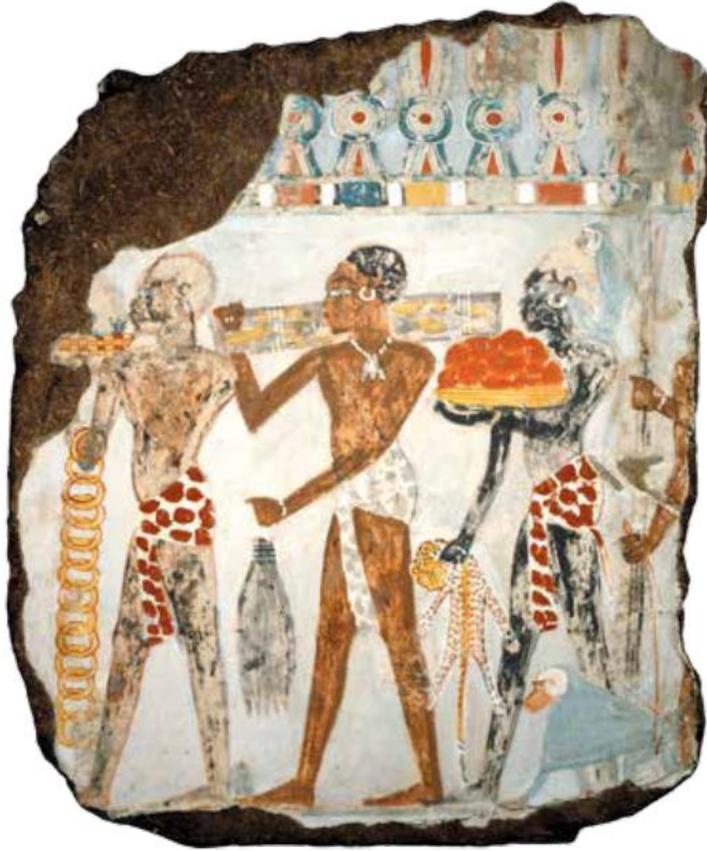
Egypt's relations with other countries involved trade as well as war. Egypt traded with the Phoenicians and others to the north but its most important trade was with Nubia to the south. Egypt traded beer, wine, cheese, oil, linen and tools for Nubian copper, gold, jewels, ebony, ivory, exotic animals and slaves (see **SOURCE 1**). Yet Egypt was also often in conflict with Nubia. During the Middle Kingdom, it took part of Nubia and built forts to control the routes to its gold mines. Around the same time Egypt attacked the Libyans and other desert tribes to its north.

civil war war between rival factions within one state or country

learn on

To access videos, interactivities, discussion widgets, image galleries, weblinks and more, go to www.jacplus.com.au

SOURCE 1 A scene on a wall of the tomb of Sobekhotep. It shows Africans, probably Nubians, carrying ebony logs, leopard skins, gold rings, giraffe tails and a live baboon.



SOURCE 2 Wooden models of Egyptian soldiers of the Middle Kingdom in four columns



DID YOU KNOW?

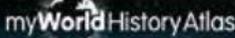
Egypt's army was at first made up mostly of peasants called up whenever needed. By New Kingdom times Egypt had a permanent army with chariots, archers and infantry armed with spears, battle axes, swords and daggers. It appears also to have included conscripted prisoners of war and foreign **mercenaries**.

mercenaries people who fight for a foreign country for money or other rewards

Asiatic peoples of Asia, in this case western Asia, including the Middle East

Wars of the New Kingdom

Egypt was again weak in the Second Intermediate Period when the Hyksos invaded from the north-east. This time was followed by the New Kingdom, the time of Egypt's greatest power. At the start of this period, the armies of Pharaoh Ahmose defeated the Hyksos who had occupied Egypt. Ahmose also regained control of northern Nubia. In the fifteenth century BCE, Egypt defeated a coalition of **Asiatic** princes at the Battle of Megido. The territory occupied by modern Israel, Lebanon and Syria became part of the Egyptian Empire. Later pharaohs fought against the Hittites to keep control of these lands. In these wars Egypt plundered its defeated enemies and gained more wealth from the tribute (treasure, slaves and livestock) that had to be paid by conquered rulers.

 Deepen and check your understanding of the topic with the following resources and auto-marked questions:
Egypt – the Old Kingdom **Egypt – the Middle Kingdom**
Egypt – the New Kingdom

4.11.1 Activities

CHECK YOUR UNDERSTANDING

- 1 Why were foreigners able to invade Egypt's Nile Delta during the First Intermediate period?
- 2 During which times was Egypt strongest and weakest?
- 3 List the lands that Egypt controlled during its strongest period?

USING HISTORICAL SOURCES AS EVIDENCE

- 4 Analyse **SOURCE 1**.
 - a Describe the details in the source.

- b Make a list of the things the Africans, probably Nubians, are carrying.
 - c Outline what **SOURCE 1** can probably tell us about Egypt's trade with Nubia.
- 5 Study the models of soldiers in **SOURCE 2** and use it as your evidence for a brief written description of Egyptian Middle Kingdom infantry.

4.11.2 Decline and fall

Egypt became weaker after the time of Rameses II. Libyans and 'Peoples of the Sea' invaded the Nile Delta. These invaders were defeated many times (see **SOURCE 3**) but gradually Egypt lost its unity and its empire. The priests came to control Upper Egypt, while Lower Egypt was ruled by princes. In the Late Dynastic Period the country fell under the control of Nubians. In about 663 BCE the Assyrians took most of Egypt into their empire. Bronze Age Egypt had no iron ore and could not match the Assyrians' iron weapons. Later Egypt fell under the rule of the Persians, followed by the Greeks and then the Romans.

SOURCE 3 From an inscription in the temple of Pharaoh Rameses III at Thebes describing a victory over the 'Peoples of the Sea', in about 1188 BCE

Year 8 under the majesty of [Rameses III] ... foreign countries made a conspiracy. No land could stand before their arms ... they were coming forward toward Egypt ... I have the river mouths prepared like a strong wall, with warships, galleys and coaster ... The troops consisted of every picked man of Egypt. They were like lions ... The chariotry consisted ... of every good and capable chariot-warrior. Those who reached my frontier ... were dragged in, enclosed on the beach, killed and made into heaps ...

4.11.2 Activities

CHECK YOUR UNDERSTANDING

- 1 Name the groups who invaded Egypt after the time of the New Kingdom Pharaoh Rameses II.
- 2 Why was Egypt unable to match the military might of the Assyrians?

SEQUENCING CHRONOLOGY

- 3 Identify the groups that dominated Egypt during the Late Dynastic Period and afterwards and list them in chronological order.

USING HISTORICAL SOURCES AS EVIDENCE

- 4 Analyse the inscription of Rameses III in **SOURCE 3**.
 - a Describe its style.
 - b Suggest why it would be written in such a style.
 - c Imagine that you are a high ranking official in the time of Rameses III. In the style of **SOURCE 3**, write a message congratulating the Pharaoh on his victory.

4.11 PUTTING IT ALL TOGETHER

IDENTIFYING CONTINUITY AND CHANGE

- 1 Explain how Egypt's lack of Iron Age materials could have contributed to its decline and eventual collapse.

ANALYSING CAUSE AND EFFECT

- 2 Using all three sources as your evidence, examine and write a short explanation of the roles played by war and trade in Egypt's rise and decline. In your answer, you could describe Egypt's changing relations with Nubia and explain why Egypt fought other peoples, how wars enriched Egypt during the New Kingdom and why Egypt eventually declined and collapsed.

4.12 Rameses II — Egypt's greatest pharaoh?

4.12.1 Who was Rameses II?

You have already encountered several rulers of ancient Egypt. They include: Narmer, the first pharaoh of both Upper Egypt and Lower Egypt (see 4.5 Pharaoh rules!); Khufu, for whom the Great Pyramid was built (see 4.9 Pyramid builders); Hatshepsut, the most famous of Egypt's queens (see 4.4 The people of Egypt); and Tutankhamen, who became famous because his tomb was discovered with its contents untouched (see 4.10 Tutankhamen, Akhenaten and Nefertiti). However, many historians have regarded Rameses II, who ruled Egypt between c. 1279 and 1212 BCE, as the greatest of all pharaohs.

Rameses II (sometimes spelled *Ramses* and *Ramesses*) was probably born about 1303 BCE. He was a son of King Seti I. Rameses was in his early twenties when he became Egypt's ruler. He held that position for longer than any other pharaoh. Because of his military campaigns and building projects, including temples and cities, he became known as Rameses the Great.

The warrior king

In about 1278 BCE, Rameses' navy defeated the sea pirates who had been attacking Egyptian trading ships in the Mediterranean Sea. Rameses commanded an army of possibly 100 000 men. He gained fame through many battles in which Egypt fought the Hittite Empire to its north (see 2.10 Civilisations and empires in North Africa, Western Asia and Europe) and the Nubians to its south. During these campaigns, Rameses' forces repelled invasions, regained territories Egypt had lost under previous pharaohs and secured Egypt's borders.

SOURCE 1 The head of the colossal statue of Rameses II at the Temple of Luxor in central Egypt



4.12.1 Activities

CHECK YOUR UNDERSTANDING

- 1 Name three groups of enemies defeated under Rameses II.
- 2 Why did he come to be known as Rameses the Great?

USING HISTORICAL SOURCES AS EVIDENCE

- 3 Study **SOURCE 1**. Describe the impression of Rameses II that is conveyed by this colossal head and explain why he would have wanted to be portrayed this way.

4.12.2 Fighting the Hittites

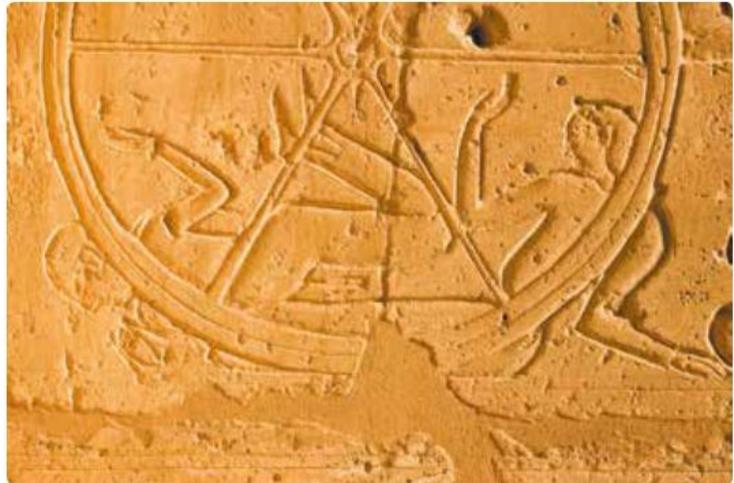
Over 20 years, from about 1277 BCE, Rameses led a series of campaigns against the Hittite Empire. In the first campaign, Rameses defeated several Palestinian princes (see the map in 2.7 The New Stone Age) and captured Amurra, a **vassal state** of the Hittite Empire in Syria.

vassal state a state whose ruler recognises another, more powerful ruler as his overlord

In the following year, Rameses led his armies to attack the Hittite-controlled city of Kadesh. His army had four divisions, with Rameses personally leading the Amun division. However, the waiting Hittite army ambushed another Egyptian division as it was crossing a river, causing the soldiers to flee. According to Egyptian records, in the ensuing battle, Rameses found himself isolated from his forces but, almost single-handedly, he defeated an overwhelming Hittite force, killing vast numbers as he escaped (see **SOURCE 3**). Although the Battle of Kadesh was a **stalemate** and the Hittites remained in Syria, Rameses declared the battle a great Egyptian victory.

stalemate a situation in a contest or conflict in which neither side can defeat the other

SOURCE 2 This relief sculpture in Luxor shows Hittite soldiers being crushed under the wheels of Rameses II's chariot at the Battle of Kadesh.



SOURCE 3 From a poem inscribed by order of Rameses II on the walls of five temples to commemorate his victory at Kadesh

In the midst of many peoples, all unknown,
Unnumbered as the sand,
Here I stand,
All alone;
There is no one at my side;
My warriors and chariots afeared [frightened],
Have deserted me ...
... Two thousand and five hundred pairs of horses
were around,
And I flew into the middle of their ring,
By my horse-hoofs they were dashed all in pieces to
the ground ...

In later campaigns, spread between the seventh and twenty-first years of his reign, Rameses captured Hittite territory. But neither side was able to win a decisive victory and, in about 1258 BCE, the conflict ended with a peace treaty.

Great ruler or great bragger?

Historians have a vast number of primary sources about Rameses' achievements because, more than any other pharaoh, he was a great builder of monuments that glorified his deeds. Enormous numbers of huge statues were constructed,

SOURCE 4 Rameses II in a detail from sculptures and hieroglyphs on his temple at Abu Simbel



portraying him as a handsome, smiling and powerful ruler. At his temple at Abu Simbel, each of the four statues of Rameses II carved out of the face of a cliff is almost 20 metres tall. Records of his exploits, including scenes of him crushing the Hittites, were engraved deeply on monuments and temples throughout Egypt. So great was his reputation that nine future pharaohs took his name.

4.12.2 Activities

CHECK YOUR UNDERSTANDING

- 1 Who did Rameses II's forces fight at the Battle of Kadesh?
- 2 Was the Battle of Kadesh really an Egyptian victory?
- 3 How did the conflict with the Hittites end in 1258 BCE?

SEQUENCING CHRONOLOGY

- 4 Place the main events of Rameses II's life on a timeline.

DID YOU KNOW?

During the 1960s, an international operation was conducted to save the temple at Abu Simbel and its statues. The entire site was carefully cut into sections and moved to higher ground. This was done to save it from being submerged beneath the rising water behind Egypt's new Aswan High Dam.

4.12 PUTTING IT ALL TOGETHER

USING HISTORICAL SOURCES AS EVIDENCE

- 1 Look at **SOURCE 2** and read **SOURCE 3**.
 - a According to **SOURCE 2**, what happened to Hittite soldiers at the Battle of Kadesh?
 - b According to **SOURCE 3**, why were Rameses II's soldiers not at his side, how many enemies did he face and how did he defeat them?
 - c Are **SOURCE 2** and **SOURCE 3** conflicting or supporting evidence?
 - d Are these sources reliable or unreliable? Give reasons for your answer.
 - e How might the soldiers who fought for Rameses II have felt about what was inscribed in **SOURCE 3**?
- 2 Using **SOURCES 3** and **4**, describe how Rameses II wished to be remembered.
- 3 What problems for historians are created by the fact that all four sources in this subtopic and most other primary sources about Rameses II were produced on his orders?

DETERMINING HISTORICAL SIGNIFICANCE

- 4 Using evidence from all sources in this subtopic evaluate the significance of Rameses II in a response of at least one page to the following question: Which is more likely — that Rameses II was significant as a great leader or as a great bragger?
- 5 Use the internet to find other images and inscriptions of Rameses II. Do they support the conclusion you drew in your answer to question 4 or lead you to question it?

4.13 Egypt's heritage

4.13.1 The greatest legacies

The ancient Egyptian civilisation lasted for thousands of years. The Egyptians discovered how to make paper. They created a unique writing system, invented a calendar similar to the one used today and produced a system of mathematics that enabled them to make complicated calculations. Yet very little of ancient Egypt's culture has been handed down. In modern Egypt, nearly all people follow the religions of Islam or Christianity rather than the ancient beliefs of the land, and there is no connection between the arts, society and systems of government of modern and ancient Egypt.

Egypt's greatest legacies to modern times are its archaeological wonders, especially its pyramids, tombs and temples, which have amazed generations. In the past, many of Egypt's archaeological treasures were taken to other lands, where they ended up in museums or private collections. There has been much debate about whether they should rightfully be returned to Egypt. Whatever happens in the future, we can be sure that people will continue to be fascinated by such artefacts, especially the many mummies that are displayed in museums throughout the world.

learn on

To access videos, interactivities, discussion widgets, image galleries, weblinks and more, go to www.jacplus.com.au

SOURCE 1 Pyramids at Giza. The Great Pyramid of Khufu towers above the others.

SOURCE 2 The painted wood coffin of Pharaoh Rameses IV (1153–1147 BCE)



Ongoing discoveries

Egypt continues to yield up fascinating discoveries. In 1999 archaeologists discovered a tomb complex thought to contain thousands of mummies from the time when Egypt was ruled by Greeks and Romans. This was seen as proof that these conquerors adopted much of Egypt's culture. In 2008 another group of archaeologists discovered the ruins of a city from the time of Egypt's first New Stone Age farmers. Ancient Egypt has yet to reveal all its secrets.

SOURCE 3 'Ruins of 7000-year-old city found in Egypt oasis', ABC, 30 January 2008

A team of US archaeologists has discovered the ruins of a city dating back to the period of the first farmers 7000 years ago in Egypt's Fayyum oasis, the supreme council of antiquities said.

'An electro-magnetic survey revealed the existence in the Karanis region of a network of walls and roads similar to those constructed during the Greco-Roman period,' the council's chief, Zahi Hawwas, said.

The remnants of the city are 'still buried beneath the sand and the details of this discovery will be revealed in due course,' Mr Hawwas said.

'The artefacts consist of the remains of walls and houses in terracotta or dressed limestone as well as a large quantity of pottery and the foundations of ovens and grain stores,' he added.

The remains date back to the Neolithic period between 5200 and 4500 BCE.

The local director of antiquities, Ahmed Abdel Alim, said the site was just seven kilometres from Fayyum lake and would probably have lain at the water's edge at the time it was inhabited.

4.13.1 Activities

CHECK YOUR UNDERSTANDING

- 1 How has Egypt's culture changed since ancient times?
- 2 What are ancient Egypt's greatest legacies?

4.13 PUTTING IT ALL TOGETHER

USING HISTORICAL SOURCES AS EVIDENCE

- 1 Why do mummies and coffins like those in **SOURCES 2** and **4** continue to fascinate people?
- 2 On Katebet's mummy, below the image of painted arms are, from top to bottom, a winged goddess, a scarab, an image of Anubis and a shabti figurine. Use the knowledge you have gained from this topic and your library to explain the significance of at least two of these.
- 3 How would the appearance of the Great Pyramid (as illustrated in **SOURCE 1**) have been different in ancient times from the way it appears today? (*Hint: Refer back to 4.9 Pyramid builders.*)

IDENTIFYING CONTINUITY AND CHANGE

- 4 Explain how the discoveries in Egypt's Fayyum Oasis (see **SOURCE 3**) provide further evidence of continuity of ancient Egypt's civilisation.

SOURCE 4

The mummy of Katebet, a woman of wealth and high status who died around 1300 BCE



4.14 SkillBuilder: Analysing and corroborating sources

online only

What are the main ancient Egyptian primary sources?

Ancient Egyptian primary sources include pyramids, tombs, temples, mummies, coffins, art and written records on stone and papyrus.



Go to your learnON course to access:

- An explanation of the skill (Tell me)
- A step-by-step process to develop the skill, with an example (Show me)
- An activity to allow you to practise the skill (Let me do it)
- Questions to test your application of the skill (Applying skills)

4.15 Review

online only

This final subtopic provides a range of opportunities for you to review and respond through:

- i revising and checking your historical knowledge
- ii demonstrating your ability to apply historical concepts and skills.

Go to your learnON course to access:

- A key chronology of events relevant to the topic
- A summary of the key knowledge presented in the topic
- A 'Big Questions' activity
- A multiple choice topic test
- Short answer or extended writing responses



on Resources

Interactivity

Ancient Egypt timeline

Create a visual timeline of key events in ancient Egypt.

int-2936

4.14 SkillBuilder: Analysing and corroborating sources

4.14.1 Tell me

What are the main ancient Egyptian primary sources?

Primary sources from ancient Egyptian include pyramids, tombs, temples, mummies, coffins and written records on stone and papyrus. They also include art such as models, statues and the paintings that decorated papyrus, coffins, canopic jars and the walls of tombs and temples.

Why is it important to analyse and corroborate ancient Egyptian primary sources?

It is important to analyse and **corroborate** ancient Egyptian primary sources because almost all of our knowledge about ancient Egypt comes from primary sources. Works of art, in particular, tell us much about the lives of Egypt's rulers. Some also provide evidence about ordinary Egyptians. Some show peasants and labourers working in the fields, artisans busy at their trades and women grinding grain, weaving cloth and brewing beer.

corroborate to confirm or make more certain

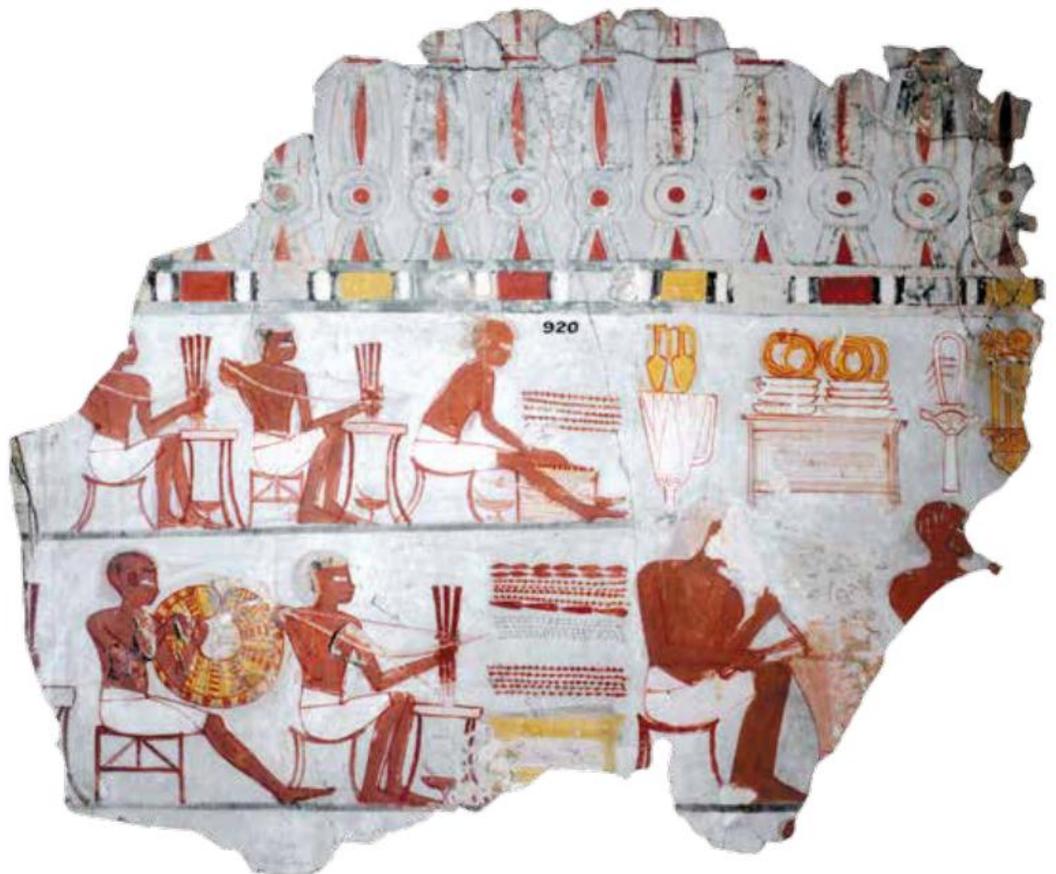
4.14.2 Show me

How do we analyse and corroborate ancient Egyptian primary sources?

When you study a primary source you need to think carefully about the clues it provides and ask questions about its accuracy, usefulness and reliability. You need to ask questions such as:

1. What is it?
2. Who created it and when was it created?
3. Who or what was it created for?
4. For what aspect of ancient Egyptian history does it provide useful evidence?
5. Is the evidence it provides accurate and reliable and how can we tell this?
6. What conclusions can we draw from the source about ancient Egyptian society?

SOURCE 1 A fragment of a scene on a wall panel in the tomb of Sobekhotep, a senior Egyptian treasury official during the reign of Thutmose IV (c. 1419–1386 BCE)



These questions have been applied to **SOURCE 1**.

1. *What is it?* It is a scene from a wall panel in a tomb.
2. *Who created it and when was it created?* We cannot know the name of the artist/s who created it but we do know that it was created around 1419 to 1386 BCE.
3. *Who or what was it created for?* It was painted to decorate the tomb of an Egyptian official named Sobekhotep.
4. *For what aspect of ancient Egyptian history does it provide useful evidence?* It provides evidence that ancient Egyptian craftspeople included talented artists such as those who created this scene. It shows Egyptian craftsmen manufacturing jewellery so it provides useful evidence for such work. Therefore, it would be very useful for any study of the skills and methods of Egyptians who worked in such crafts.
5. *Is the evidence it provides accurate and reliable and how can we tell this?* We might assume that the artists who depicted such scenes based them on what they saw in Egypt. However, to test the accuracy and reliability of this source we would need to compare it with other artworks and written manuscripts that describe the same kinds of work.
6. *What conclusions can we draw from **SOURCE 1** about ancient Egyptian society?* We could conclude that crafts like manufacturing jewellery were highly organised with specialised workers in factory-type workshops. This meant that agriculture produced a surplus that freed such workers from the need to produce food. There must also have been a privileged class that consumed the luxury products of the workshops. Probably there was also foreign trade in these products.

4.14.3 Let me do it

Use the six questions to interpret **SOURCE 2** as evidence for the lives of the people of ancient Egypt.

SOURCE 2 A fragment of a painting in the tomb of Nebamun. It was made around 1350 BCE and shows a banquet scene divided into two registers (levels).



4.14 APPLYING SKILLS

USING HISTORICAL SOURCES AS EVIDENCE

- 1 Using the answers to the questions on **SOURCES 1** and **2**, write a brief general statement about work and social life in ancient Egypt.
- 2 Explain how you would differentiate between the primary and secondary sources for ancient Egypt.
- 3 In this Skillbuilder you have worked with paintings from wall panels in tombs. Identify five other types of primary sources that a historian could use for a study of ancient Egypt.
- 4 Explain why it is sometimes difficult to identify the origin and purpose of ancient Egyptian primary sources?

4.15 Review

In this topic we have explored the fascinating history of ancient Egypt, about which so much has been discovered while so much more awaits discovery. We learned about the importance of the Nile for Egypt's civilisation, about the people of Egypt from pharaohs to peasants, Egyptian beliefs about gods and an afterlife, and much more.

4.15.1 Review

Chronology: timeline of ancient Egypt

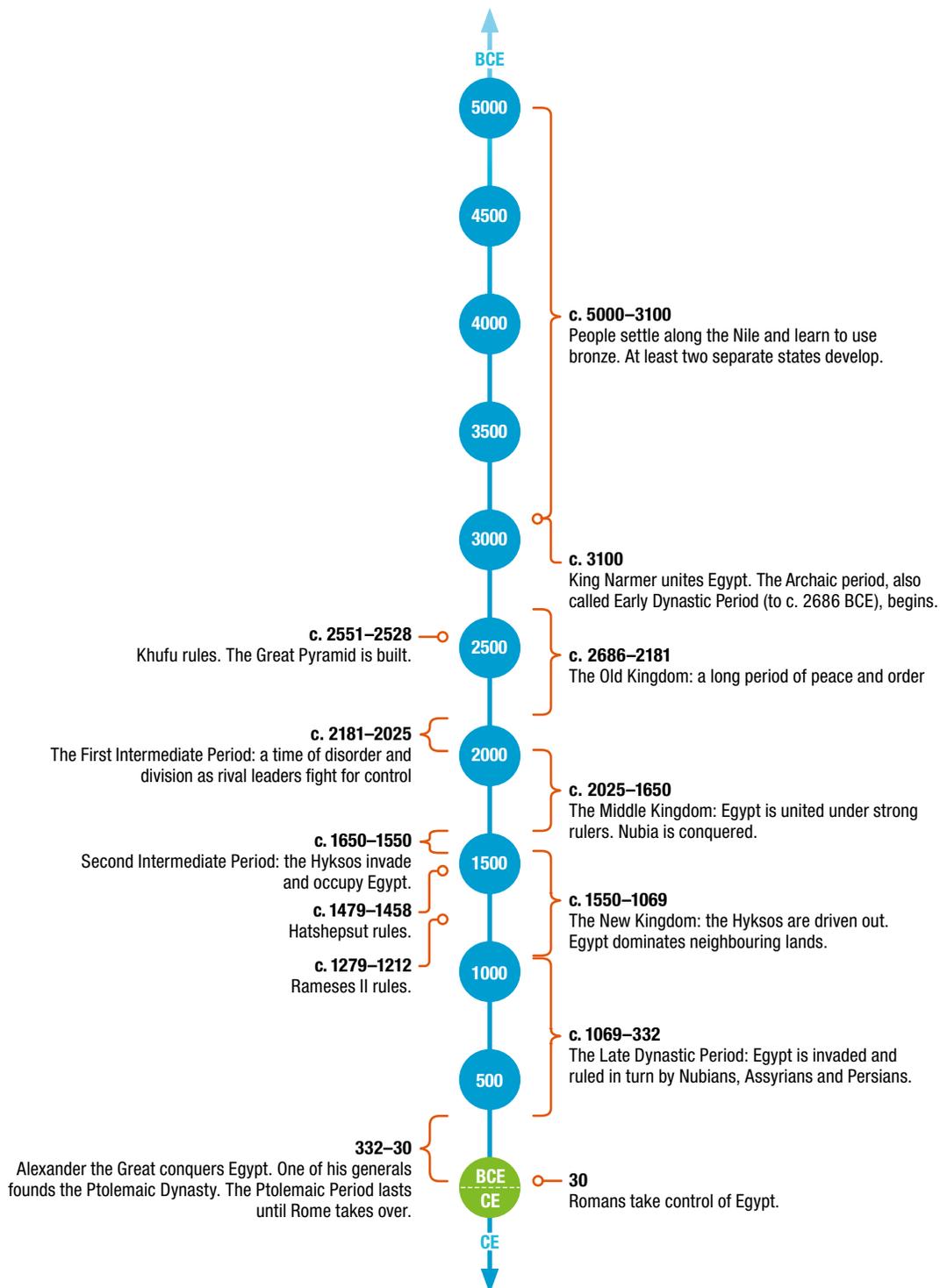
on Resources

Interactivity

Ancient Egypt timeline

Create a visual timeline of key events in ancient Egypt.

int-2936



Key knowledge: summary

4.2 Examining the evidence

- Pyramids, temples, tombs, mummies and artworks such as tomb wall paintings, models and statues provide a huge amount of archaeological evidence.
- Scholars are able to read ancient Egyptian written primary sources since the code for hieroglyphs was broken.

4.3 The gift of the Nile

- Civilisation could never have developed in Egypt without the Nile.
- The annual flooding of the Nile provided fertile soil for farming.

4.4 The people of Egypt

- Egyptian society was layered like a pyramid.
- Most ordinary people were peasants but others were engaged in a variety of skilled occupations.
- Women had fewer rights than men but more rights than women in most other ancient societies.

4.5 Pharaoh rules!

- Pharaohs came from some 30 dynasties over ancient Egypt's long history.
- Pharaohs were believed to have god-like powers but also had vast responsibilities.

4.6 Gods and the afterlife

- Ancient Egyptians had many different gods.
- They believed in an afterlife and buried possessions they might need in that afterlife.
- Burial customs have provided most of our evidence for ancient Egypt.

4.7 Mummies unwrapped

- Mummification was carried out to preserve bodies so that a dead person's soul would have a home.
- Mummification was a complex process that was carried out with great care wherever possible.

4.8 Write like an Egyptian

- The ancient Egyptians were probably the first people to use writing after the Sumerians.
- Early hieroglyphs took a long time to produce so the Egyptians developed simpler, faster scripts.

4.9 Pyramid builders

- During the Old Kingdom, pyramids were built to house the mummies of pharaohs.
- The Egyptians built them with tools made of stone, wood and bronze.
- Because the contents of the pyramids were robbed, later pharaohs were entombed in the Valley of the Kings.

4.10 Tutankhamen, Akhenaten and Nefertiti

- Tutankhamen's tomb is very significant because, unlike tombs of greater pharaohs, its contents had not been robbed.
- Before Tutankhamen's reign, Akhenaten carried out a religious revolution, decreeing that Egyptians must worship only Aten, above all other gods.
- Nefertiti was Akhenaten's first wife and a woman of great influence in ancient Egypt.

4.11 Expansion and fall

- Egypt's relations with other countries involved trade and war.
- During times of strength, Egypt drove out invaders and dominated other lands.
- During times of weakness and division, Egypt suffered invasions.

4.12 Rameses II — Egypt's greatest pharaoh?

- Rameses II has been regarded as Egypt's greatest pharaoh because of his military achievements and the monuments glorifying him.
- His greatness is contestable mainly because the evidence of it was constructed on his orders.

4.13 Egypt's heritage

- Archaeological treasures are Egypt's greatest legacies.
- There is ongoing archaeological work in Egypt and significant discoveries are continually being made.

Key knowledge: multiple-choice topic test

1. In Egypt the Inundation was which of the following?
 - a. A temple
 - b. An annual period of flooding
 - c. A bucket used for irrigation
 - d. A writing tool
2. The Nile is formed by the joining of which two rivers?
 - a. The Murray and Darling
 - b. Green Nile and Yellow Nile
 - c. Red Nile and Black Nile
 - d. White Nile and Blue Nile
3. After the pharaoh, the next most powerful official was:
 - a. the president.
 - b. the prime minister.
 - c. the vizier.
 - d. the lord high executioner.
4. Skilled artisans in ancient Egypt included:
 - a. peasants and slaves.
 - b. stone masons and paper makers.
 - c. scribes.
 - d. nobles and priests.
5. Which of the following women ruled Egypt as pharaoh from 1479 to 1458 BCE?
 - a. Nefertiti
 - b. Cleopatra
 - c. Hatshepsut
 - d. Neber
6. The Great Pyramid was built during which of these periods of ancient Egyptian history?
 - a. The Old Kingdom
 - b. The First Intermediate Period
 - c. The Middle Kingdom
 - d. The Second Intermediate Period
7. In ancient Egypt, a woman's social rank depended on the rank of which of these?
 - a. Her mother and father
 - b. Her brother or sister
 - c. Her cousins
 - d. Her husband or son
8. Which of the following gods were associated with death, tombs and the afterlife?
 - a. Seth and Horus
 - b. Osiris and Anubis
 - c. Isis and Hathor
 - d. Amun-Ra and Thoth
9. When a body was mummified, where were most internal organs stored?
 - a. Refrigerators
 - b. Cupboards
 - c. Cellars
 - d. Canopic jars
10. The tomb of Tutankhamen was a significant archaeological find because:
 - a. Tutankhamen was a powerful pharaoh.
 - b. the tomb was enormous.
 - c. it was the only royal tomb that had not been robbed.
 - d. there was a curse on the tomb.

11. Which two groups did New Kingdom Egypt have wars with?
 - a. Hyksos and Hittites
 - b. Greeks and Persians
 - c. Romans and Assyrians
 - d. Phoenicians and Israelites
12. Which two groups did Egypt trade with?
 - a. Peoples of the Sea
 - b. Nubians and Phoenicians
 - c. Sumerians and Babylonians
 - d. Chinese and Indians

4.15.2 Respond

Using historical sources as evidence

1. Look closely at **SOURCE 1** (the section of the obelisk). During the time of the Roman Empire it was taken from Egypt and placed in a public area in Constantinople (now Istanbul).
 - a. Referring to the symbols in 4.8 Write like an Egyptian, see if you can identify some of the hieroglyphs.
 - b. What does the transporting of this enormous obelisk from Egypt to Constantinople suggest about Roman attitudes to Egyptian culture?

SOURCE 1 A section of a huge Egyptian obelisk engraved in neat hieroglyphs



2. In subtopic 4.4 you read about Hatshepsut, who became regent of Egypt following the death of her husband, Thutmose II (who was also her half-brother). Hatshepsut was able to rule as regent because the heir, Thutmose III, was only three years old. But instead of handing over to the heir, Hatshepsut had herself crowned as pharaoh. Use the internet and your library to find out more about Hatshepsut. Look particularly for images of her mortuary temple, which has nearly 200 statues and carvings glorifying her achievements. One inscription in the temple states that her father, Thutmose I, appointed her as his successor and ordered his subjects to obey her. Hatshepsut also claimed to be the daughter of the god Amun-Ra.

Using the information you have found, in about one page of writing:

- a. Identify the difficulties that would be faced by a woman trying to achieve such a position in ancient Egyptian society.
- b. Explain why Hatshepsut would have found it necessary to make claims involving her father and a god to support her right to the throne.
- c. Evaluate her right to be considered a most significant individual in the history of ancient Egypt.

Responding to the big questions

At the beginning of this topic several big questions were posed. Use the knowledge and understanding you have gained through your study of the subtopics to answer them:

1. How did ancient Egypt's natural environment influence its civilisation?
2. How was ancient Egypt organised and ruled?
3. What was the influence in ancient Egypt of religious ideas and beliefs about an afterlife?
4. What can ancient sources tell us about life in ancient Egypt?
5. What are the legacies of ancient Egypt?

5 Ancient Greece

5.1 Overview

5.1.1 LINKS WITH OUR TIMES

In 2004 the Summer Olympic Games, officially known as the XXVIII Olympiad (28th Olympiad), were held in Athens, the capital of modern Greece. The image shows the Australian Olympic team at the opening ceremony of the Athens Olympics. Its motto, *Welcome Home*, was chosen because Greece was the birthplace of the Olympics. According to Greek tradition, the first ancient Greek Olympics were staged in 776 BCE. As we will see in this topic, the Olympics are far from being our only legacy from Greece. Greeks have settled in many places, bringing their culture with them. More people of Greek descent live in Melbourne than in any city except Athens. Much more importantly, many ancient Greek ideas were handed down to the present through other cultures. Ancient Greek influences are all around us.

BIG QUESTIONS

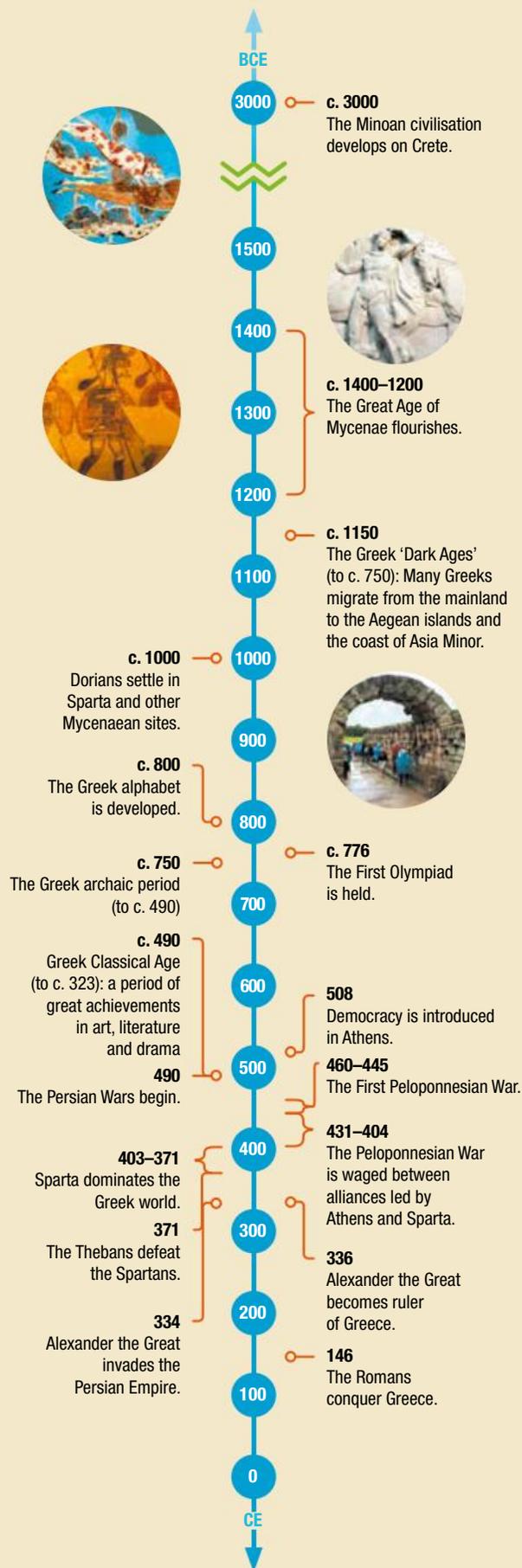
As you work through this topic, look for information that will help you to answer these questions:

- 1 How did the environment of ancient Greece influence its civilisation?
- 2 How were ancient Greek societies organised and ruled?
- 3 What were the main beliefs, values and cultural achievements of the ancient Greeks?
- 4 What conflicts took place within Greece and between Greek city-states and other societies?
- 5 What can ancient sources tell us about life in ancient Greece?
- 6 What have been the legacies of ancient Greece?

STARTER QUESTIONS

- 1 What can you see in the picture from the Athens 2004 Olympics that would not have existed in the ancient Greek Olympics?
- 2 In what ways do you think immigrants from Greece have influenced Australia?
- 3 The ancient Greeks were very interested in geometry. Can you think of one of their ideas that we still use in geometry?
- 4 What do you think 'democracy' means?

A TIMELINE OF ANCIENT GREECE





AUSTRALIA

5.2 Examining the evidence

5.2.1 How do we know about Ancient Greece?

acropolis stronghold on high ground in an ancient Greek city-state

Every year millions of people visit Greece to marvel at the many surviving traces of its ancient civilisation. These include the shells of magnificent buildings such as the Parthenon and Erechtheion on the **Acropolis** of Athens, and the National Archaeological Museum, which holds the world's largest collection of ancient Greek artefacts. They also visit the extensive ruins of the original Olympic games at Olympia and other sites such as the god Poseidon's temple at Sounion and the sanctuary at Delphi, which the ancient Greeks called the 'navel of the Earth'. There are also great collections of Greek art in other parts of the world, including the famous Parthenon Marbles, which were taken from the Parthenon by the British diplomat Lord Elgin more than two hundred years ago and are now displayed in the British Museum in London.

SOURCE 1 Some of the many marble sculptures that once adorned the Parthenon in ancient Athens



SOURCE 2 Mycenaean soldiers painted on pottery. Mycenae was the earliest civilisation on the Greek mainland.



SOURCE 3 A theatre mask used in performances of plays in ancient Athens. Beside the mask you can see the excavated remains of an ancient Greek amphitheatre in Aphrodisias on the Turkish coast. It was in open-air theatres like this that ancient Greek actors performed wearing such masks.



SOURCE 4 Part of the ancient Greek temple called the Parthenon, viewed from below the Acropolis of Athens



Written sources

The Greeks also left many written records. Ancient Greek writers are still read today. Among the best known are the works of the epic poet Homer, the historians Herodotus (c. 484–425 BCE) and Thucydides (c. 460–403 BCE), the philosophers Plato (c. 428–348 BCE) and Aristotle (c. 384–332 BCE), and playwrights such as Sophocles (c. 495–405 BCE). Their works and other written records add much to our understanding of ancient Greece.

5.2 PUTTING IT ALL TOGETHER

USING HISTORICAL SOURCES AS EVIDENCE

- 1 Look closely at **SOURCE 1**.
 - a Describe the details of the scene depicted in this sculpture.
 - b What opinion could you form from this source about the artistic skills of ancient Greek sculptors?
 - c Use this source to develop a hypothesis about the wealth and values of ancient Athens.
- 2 What do you think we might learn from **SOURCE 2** about:
 - a the skills of Mycenaean potters
 - b the arms and armour of Mycenaean soldiers?
- 3 What kind of character do you think the mask shown in **SOURCE 3** was meant to represent?
- 4 Design a mask to represent a different kind of character. Use plasticine or other suitable material to make this mask.
- 5 Look closely at the building in the top left of **SOURCE 4**. Describe a feature of this ancient building that you recognise as having influenced the style of many modern-day public buildings.
- 6 Write a short summary of what you have discovered about ancient Greece from these four sources.

learn on

To access videos, interactivities, discussion widgets, image galleries, weblinks and more, go to www.jacplus.com.au

5.3 The Minoans and Mycenaeans

5.3.1 Minoan civilisation

Civilisation in Greece began before 3000 BCE when people started to grow crops and herd animals on Crete, the largest of the Greek islands. The archaeologist Arthur Evans was the first to excavate their cities. He called these people Minoans after their legendary King Minos. During the fourteenth century BCE, their peaceful civilisation appears to have been overrun by the more warlike Mycenaeans of mainland Greece.

SOURCE 1 A fresco (wall painting) from Knossos showing young Minoan men and women leaping on the back of a bull



SOURCE 2 Crete, Greece and Egypt at the time of the Minoan and Mycenaean civilisations



Source: Map drawn by Spatial Vision.

By about 2500 BCE the Minoans had built towns. They had also learned to make tools, weapons and ornaments from bronze and to create beautiful pottery. The main Minoan city, Knossos, dates from about 1900 BCE. The walls of the buildings in Knossos were decorated with scenes of Minoan life, including athletes leaping and performing acrobatics on the backs of wild bulls (see **SOURCE 1**).

Around the time that Knossos was built the Minoans were building palaces and most Minoans were living in large coastal towns. These were probably centres of their extensive sea trade. There is evidence that the Minoans set up trading bases on several Greek islands and exchanged goods with Egypt, Syria and other civilisations. The Minoans used a written language we call Linear A. It disappeared suddenly about 1450 BCE and it is still not understood. Around 1700 BCE the Minoan cities were destroyed following the eruption of a volcano on the island of Santorini, which triggered a massive tsunami. The cities were rebuilt but were destroyed again by earthquakes in about 1450 BCE.

5.3.1 Activities

CHECK YOUR UNDERSTANDING

- 1 Describe the achievements of Minoan civilisation by around 1700 BCE.
- 2 What appears to have caused the collapse of Minoan civilisation?

SEQUENCING CHRONOLOGY

- 3 List the main events in the rise and fall of Minoan civilisation in chronological order.

USING HISTORICAL SOURCES AS EVIDENCE

- 4 Study **SOURCE 1**.
 - a Describe what is depicted in this Minoan wall painting.
 - b Do you think the Minoans did such things for sport or could there be another explanation for the scene? Give reasons for your answer.
- 5 Referring to **SOURCE 2**, explain how the location of Crete would have helped the Minoans to trade with other civilisations and how the Minoans would have benefited from trade.

5.3.2 The Mycenaeans

Most archaeologists believe that by about 1375 BCE Mycenaean invaders from small kingdoms such as Mycenae, Athens and other hilltop cities on the Greek mainland had conquered the Minoans. Mycenaean civilisation flourished between about 1400 BCE and 1200 BCE. The Mycenaeans were great seafarers and traders and were highly skilled in the use of bronze. They appear to have copied some aspects of Minoan culture. Their warrior ruling class lived in palaces and enjoyed music, dancing and sport.

The Mycenaean spoke an early form of Greek. Their written language, which we call Linear B, has been translated since its code was cracked in 1952. The earliest Mycenaean stories to appear in written sources are Homer's *Iliad* and *Odyssey*. These epic poems had been handed down by word of mouth for centuries before they were written down. The *Iliad* tells the story of how in about 1200 BCE the Mycenaeans laid siege to, and finally captured and destroyed, the city of Troy in Anatolia (present-day Turkey).

Homer's *Iliad* and the Trojan War

The story told in the *Iliad* is so popular that it has been told and retold, even by Hollywood in a twenty-first century movie. Whether any part of the story is true is still a mystery. Some archaeological discoveries have only added to the debate. The story was probably passed down by storytellers for three centuries before it was recorded in writing by Homer. Homer is believed to be a Greek who lived in the eighth century BC. However, some scholars think that his poems were the work of several people.

As the *Iliad* tells the story, there are several main characters. Among them are:

- Agamemnon, the king of Mycenae
- Menelaus, the king of Sparta and brother of Agamemnon
- Helen, the wife of Menelaus
- Priam, the king of Troy
- Paris, son of Priam
- Odysseus, a Mycenaean warrior hero.

SOURCE 3 A scene from one of the wall paintings found at Tiryns, a Mycenaean site from the fourteenth to thirteenth centuries BCE



According to the *Iliad*, the war started because Paris abducted Helen and took her to Troy. As Homer tells the story, Agamemnon gathered a great Greek navy and led a ten-year siege of Troy that included huge battles outside the city's walls. Troy was finally defeated by Mycenaean trickery. Pretending to have given up the siege, the Greeks left a giant wooden horse with their hero Odysseus and about twenty other warriors hidden inside. Seeing that the Greeks had sailed away, the Trojans thought that the Greeks had left the horse as a gift. After the rejoicing Trojans dragged the horse into the city, Odysseus and his companions crept out and opened the city gates for the returning Greeks, who seized and destroyed Troy.

Fact or fiction?

Even in ancient times the truth of the *Iliad* was doubted (see **SOURCE 4**). Until the late nineteenth century CE, the story was thought to be simply a myth. Then, in 1870, a German amateur archaeologist, Heinrich Schliemann, began digging on what he believed was the site of ancient Troy. He used the *Iliad* to help find its location and he discovered the ruins of a city that could have been Troy (see **SOURCE 5**). However, later excavations showed that the level Schliemann identified as Troy was hundreds of years too early.

SOURCE 4 From *The Histories*, written by the ancient Greek historian Herodotus (c. 484–425 BCE)

... had Helen really been in Troy, she would have been handed over to the Greeks with or without Paris' consent; for I cannot believe that either Priam or any other kinsman of his was mad enough to be willing to risk his own and his children's lives and the safety of the city, simply to let Paris continue to live with Helen.

SOURCE 5 At Canakkale, about 300 km south-west of Istanbul in Turkey, Schliemann dug up these city ruins. Later excavations have shown that the site contains ruins of nine different settlements, built one on top of the other.



The Mask of Agamemnon?

Four years later, Schliemann excavated Mycenae to find the grave of Agamemnon. He found at least five royal graves filled with gold and other treasure. His most exciting finds were several gold masks, including one pictured in **SOURCE 6** that became known as the 'Mask of Agamemnon'. Many archaeologists doubt that this really is Agamemnon's death mask for several reasons:

- Schliemann had a record of faking archaeological finds and he could have had the mask made.
- The grave where the mask was found is about 300 years earlier than the supposed date of the Trojan War.
- The 'Mask of Agamemnon' looks very different from the masks, including **SOURCE 7**, found covering the remains of other Mycenaean chieftains.

There is still no clear evidence that the Trojan War really happened or that the grave Schliemann unearthed at Mycenae was in fact the grave of King Agamemnon.

SOURCE 6 The gold 'Mask of Agamemnon'. Heinrich Schliemann claimed to have found it in 1876 when he excavated graves in Mycenae. It is held in the National Archaeological Museum, in Athens.

SOURCE 7 Another Mycenaean gold mask from excavated graves in Mycenae, now held in the National Archaeological Museum, in Athens



5.3.2 Activities

CHECK YOUR UNDERSTANDING

- 1 Who were the Mycenaeans?
- 2 What role might the Mycenaeans have played in the destruction of Minoan Crete?
- 3 According to legend:
 - a What caused the Trojan War?
 - b How did the Mycenaean Greeks win the Trojan War?
 - c What was the main effect of the Trojan War?

USING HISTORICAL SOURCES AS EVIDENCE

- 4 Analyse **SOURCE 3**. What might it be possible to say about Mycenaean art and everyday life using it as your evidence?
- 5 In **SOURCE 4**, what does Herodotus doubt about the account of the Trojan War in the *Iliad*?
- 6 The *Iliad* was an epic poem, whereas Herodotus was trying to write history. How would this lead to him taking a different perspective on the cause of the Trojan War?
- 7 Why is it likely that the walls in **SOURCE 5** are not the walls of ancient Troy?
- 8 Compare **SOURCES 6** and **7**.
 - a Describe the features of the mask in **SOURCE 6**.
 - b Describe the features of the mask in **SOURCE 7**.
 - c If both of these masks were really found in the graves at Mycenae, why do you think a decision was made to call **SOURCE 6** rather than **SOURCE 7** the mask of Agamemnon?

5.3 PUTTING IT ALL TOGETHER

USING HISTORICAL SOURCES AS EVIDENCE

- 1 Choose two sources in this subtopic and determine three questions you would ask about each of them to assess their accuracy, reliability and usefulness for a study of Minoan and/or Mycenaean history.

- 2 Why do you think other archaeologists and historians have contested Heinrich Schliemann's interpretation of his findings about Troy and Agamemnon?

IDENTIFYING CONTINUITY AND CHANGE

- 3 Describe the main changes that took place in the ancient Greek world between 3000 BCE and 1200 BCE.

learn on

To access videos, interactivities, discussion widgets, image galleries, weblinks and more, go to www.jacplus.com.au

5.4 The 'Dark Age' to the Archaic Period

5.4.1 The influence of geography

From their heavily fortified cities, the Mycenaean kings dominated the south of Greece from around 1600 BCE to 1200 BCE. But soon after 1200 BCE Mycenaean culture suffered a sudden and violent collapse. This was followed by the Greek 'Dark Age', which lasted almost four hundred years. We know very little about ancient Greece between 1150 BCE and the development of the Greek alphabet around 800 BCE.

What we do know is that the landscape, climate and natural resources of Greece had a huge influence on its civilisations in this period and later. As you can see in **SOURCE 1**, 75 per cent of the Greek mainland is mountainous. This meant that settlements were isolated from each other, overland travel was difficult and only about 20 per cent of the land was useful for farming. This caused the Greek settlements to turn to the sea for contacts and trade between each other.

Greece had long, hot summers and short, cool and wet winters. Rainfall was unreliable and long droughts could cause hunger but floods could also destroy food crops. However, soils in many of the valleys were suitable for growing barley, oats and some wheat, while the



Source: Map drawn by Spatial Vision.

uplands provided slopes for grazing sheep and goats and growing grapes and olives. Most ancient Greeks were small farmers who lived in small villages. They provided the staples of the Greek diet — bread, wine and olive oil — as well as products from the herds — wool, skins, cheese and occasionally meat.



Trade

Although sudden storms made sea travel in ancient times very dangerous, the Greeks also relied on the sea for overseas trade for bronze, timber and other materials they lacked. Some wheat also had to be imported due to the Greek population increasing around 600 BCE and this crop not growing well in the steep terrain and limestone soils. The Greeks imported it and other foods from Egypt, southern Italy and around the Black Sea. They exported olive oil, wine and pottery.

5.4.1 Activities

CHECK YOUR UNDERSTANDING

- 1** Complete the following paragraph by selecting the correct words from the list: sea; fifth; unreliable; mountainous; isolated; hot.

The type of civilisation that developed in ancient Greece was influenced by the _____ landscape, _____ summers and _____ rainfall. Only a _____ of the land was good for farming. Because Greek settlements were _____ from each other, the Greeks used the _____, despite the risk of dangerous storms.

USING HISTORICAL SOURCES AS EVIDENCE

- 2** Look closely at **SOURCE 1**.
- a** How much of Greece is mountainous and how would that have affected farming and travel by land?
 - b** Why is the Greek coastline very long relative to the size of Greece?
 - c** How would these geographical features have encouraged many Greeks to emigrate from Greece?

5.4.2 The development of the Greek city-states

The Greek 'Dark Age', c. 1150–750 BCE

The period from about 1150 to 750 BCE is called the Greek 'Dark Age' partly because very little is known of it. Mycenaean palaces were looted and burned and nearly all the Mycenaean fortresses except Athens were abandoned. We do not know who the attackers were. Until the late twentieth century historians mostly agreed that they were **Dorians** from northern Greece. Among these Dorians were people who settled in villages at the site of Sparta around 1000 BCE. However, archaeological evidence suggests that the Mycenaean kingdoms had collapsed before the Dorians moved south.

During the Dark Age the art of writing was lost, trade collapsed and central government disappeared. A consequence was a lack of evidence for this period. Another important Dark Age development was the migration from around 1050 BCE of mainland Greeks to the Aegean islands and the coast of Asia Minor (modern-day Turkey). According to Greek legends, these migrants included people fleeing from the Dorians. Around the same time the **Iron Age** reached Greece with the beginning of tool and weapon manufacturing using iron.

Dorians tribes from the north of Greece who moved into the south during the Dark Age

Iron Age period in which people learned to use iron to make tools and weapons

SOURCE 2 An archaeological excavation at the site of an ancient Greek settlement in what is now the Black Sea port of Odessa, in Ukraine



SOURCE 3 Athens today as seen from its port, Piraeus. The arid mountains in the background are typical of Greece.



The Archaic Period and the rise of the polis

The time between c. 750 and 490 BCE is called the Archaic Period. It describes the time leading up to the Classical Period. Many changes took place in the Greek world. **Pan-Hellenic** institutions such as the Olympic festivals came to express a common Greek culture. Around 750 BCE Greeks set up colonies in southern Italy, Sicily and even as far away as the Black Sea. This was probably because of a growing shortage of farming land on the dry, rocky mainland. By the early seventh century BCE, throughout the Greek mainland, islands and colonies a new kind of state developed. Greeks formed **poleis** — independent, self-governing city-states such as Athens, Sparta, Corinth and Thebes that often fought each other for territory.

pan-Hellenic for all the Greeks

polis (plural **poleis**) ancient Greek city-state

5.4.2 Activities

CHECK YOUR UNDERSTANDING

- 1 What is meant by the Greek 'Dark Age'?
- 2 What became of the Mycenaean cities and writing in this period?
- 3 To which areas did Greeks migrate during the Dark Age?

USING HISTORICAL SOURCES AS EVIDENCE

- 4 Look closely at **SOURCE 2**. What four questions would you ask about its usefulness and reliability as evidence for the establishment of ancient Greek colonies?
- 5 Athens (see **SOURCE 3**) was an ancient Greek city-state and is the capital of modern Greece. Describe the landscape of its surroundings.

5.4 PUTTING IT ALL TOGETHER

USING HISTORICAL SOURCES AS EVIDENCE

- 1 Using all of the sources in this subtopic as evidence, explain why Greece became a country of independent, self-governing city-states that often fought against each other.

IDENTIFYING CONTINUITY AND CHANGE

- 2 Describe the broad changes that occurred in Greece between c. 1200 and 490 BCE.

learn on

To access videos, interactivities, discussion widgets, image galleries, weblinks and more, go to www.jacplus.com.au

5.5 Government in Athens and Sparta

5.5.1 Athens – the roots of democracy

Athens and Sparta were the two most powerful city-states in ancient Greece. They had many things in common with other ancient Greek city-states. For example, they generally worshipped the same gods and used the same language and alphabet. However, city-states had their own laws and traditions and their own ruling systems.

Greek city-states (or poleis) were originally ruled by kings. Later most came under the control of **oligarchies**. From the seventh century BCE many poleis were for a time led by absolute rulers called tyrants, who all the same often carried out reforms to win popular support. In most cases the aristocrats (oligarchs) eventually regained power. Then in 508 BCE Athens introduced a new system of government called **democracy**.

Democracy in Athens was at its height by the fifth century BCE. Athenian citizens decided how their city-state would be run. At meetings of the governing assembly (called the *Ecclesia*), they voted on laws and elected officials. Membership of the Council of 500 and jury courts was rotated. This meant that all citizens could participate, and no-one became too powerful. In fact, someone suspected of trying to grab power could be ostracised. **Ostracism** meant that if 6000 citizens spoke up against a man, he could be exiled from Athens for 10 years. Citizens expressed their concern by scratching the man's name on a piece of broken pottery called an *ostrakon*.

But was it democratic?

In Athens, as in Australia, only adult citizens could vote. In Australia today most people who live here are citizens. However, during the fifth century BCE, only about 45 000 of Athens' population of around 300 000 were citizens. Women and children (who made up nearly half the population), **metics** (who made up about 12 per cent) and slaves (who made up about 25 per cent) could not take part in the democratic process.

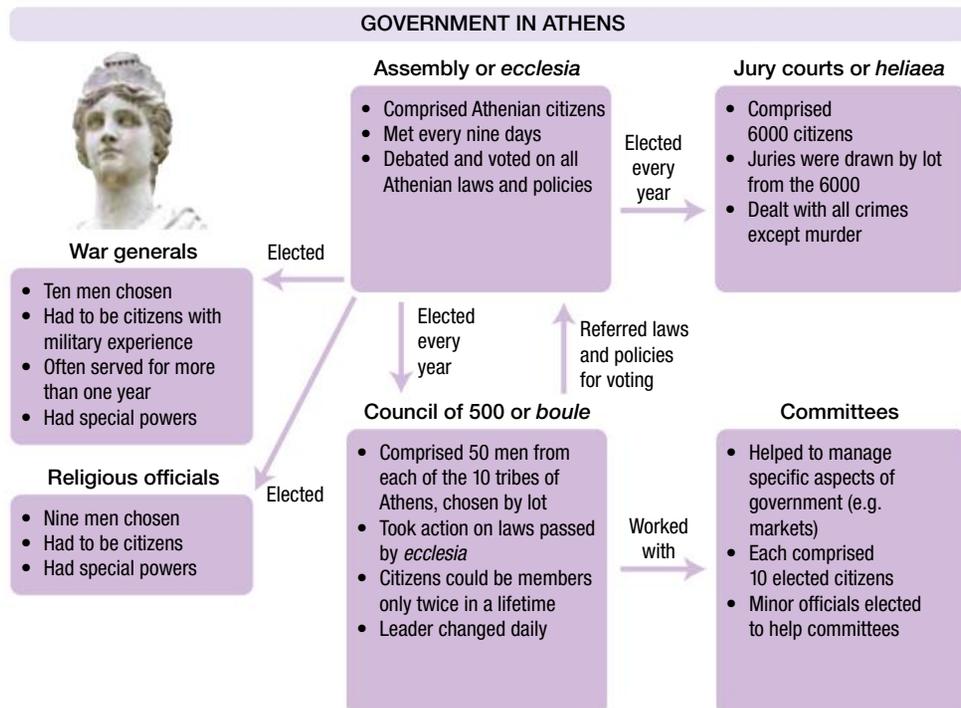
oligarchy governing council of rich aristocrats

democracy a political system according to which citizens choose the way in which they are governed

ostracism the punishment of being banished from Athens

metic free man living in Athens but not born there; could not vote or own property but served in the army and paid taxes

SOURCE 1 Government in Athens



DID YOU KNOW?

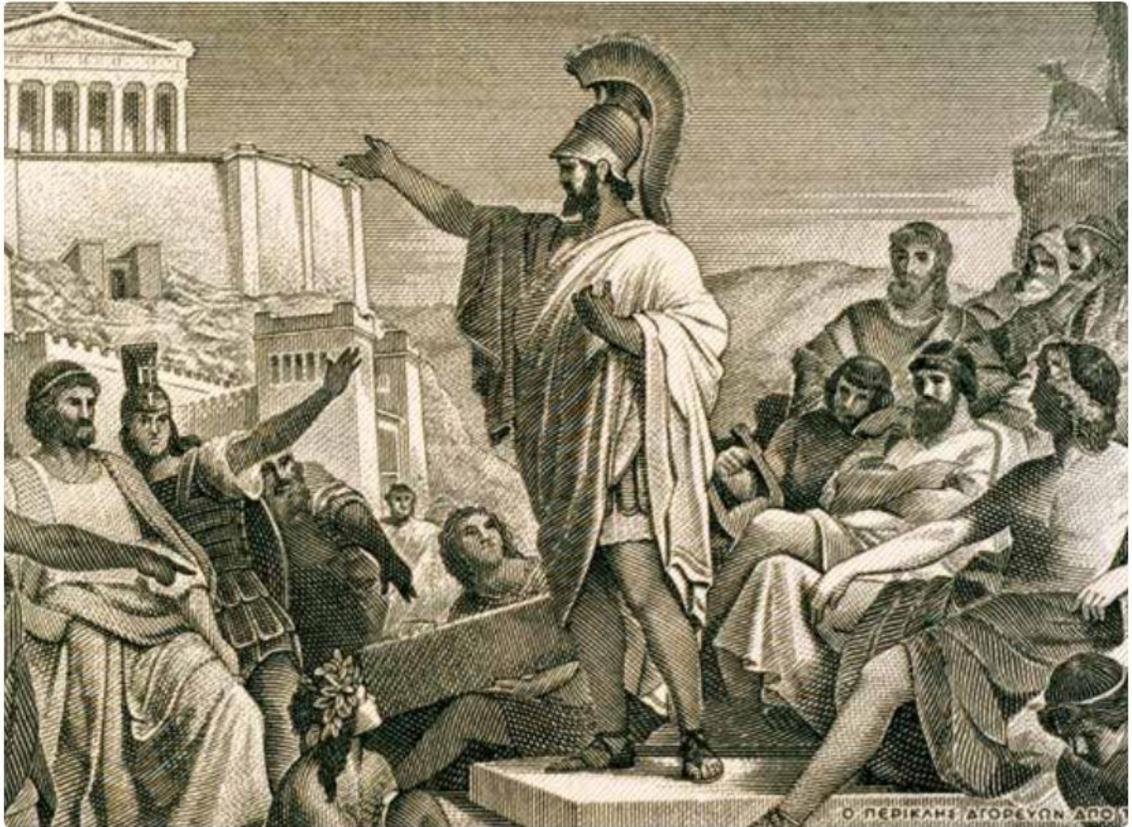
All citizens were able to participate personally in the government of Athens because the citizen population was fairly small. Each citizen could discuss and vote on Athenian laws. They could also be elected to work as public officials on a fair, rotational basis. This sort of democracy is called direct democracy.

The form of democracy in Australia is called representative democracy. Australian citizens over 18 vote for politicians who they believe will best represent their or the community's interests. Generally, these representatives belong to political parties. The party or coalition winning most of the 150 seats in the federal House of Representatives (the lower of the two houses of Parliament) forms the Federal Government. The main losing party or parties form the Opposition, whose role is to critically review what the government does. The Senate comprises 76 people — 12 from each state of Australia and two from each territory. Its role is to protect state interests.

helot slave of the Spartan state

Ephorate five-man ruling body in Sparta that advised the kings

SOURCE 2 Painting of Athenian Assembly after the death of Pericles in 429 BCE



5.5.1 Activities

CHECK YOUR UNDERSTANDING

- 1 What did the ancient Greek city-states have in common?
- 2 When did Athens introduce a system called democracy?
- 3 What percentage of the population of Athens were citizens?
- 4 Why could citizens be ostracised and what happened to them?

SEQUENCING CHRONOLOGY

- 5 In chronological order, list the three forms of government that existed in many Greek city-states before Athens introduced democracy. What were the differences between these forms of government?

USING HISTORICAL SOURCES AS EVIDENCE

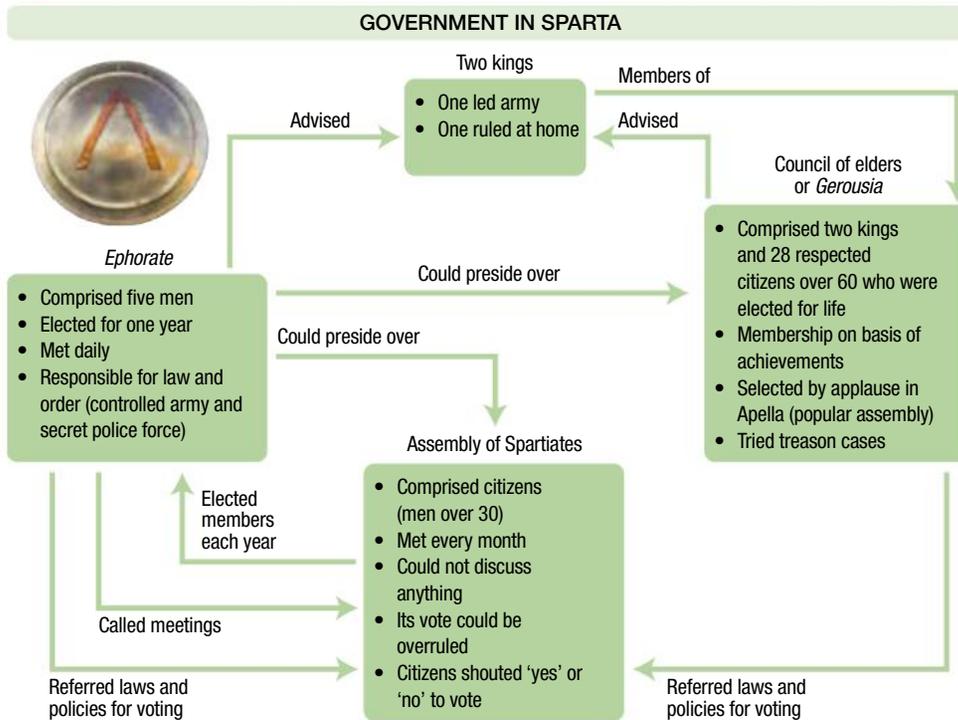
- 6 Using **SOURCE 1**, explain the difference between the Assembly and the Council of 500.
- 7 Describe the scene in **SOURCE 2** and suggest what impression it gives of the character of meetings of the Athenian Assembly.

5.5.2 Spartan rule

Dorians settled at the site of Sparta around 1000 BCE. During the eighth century BCE, Sparta took control of the Laconian plain and conquered neighbouring Messenia. The Spartans made most Laconians and Messenians slaves, called **helots**, whom they controlled brutally.

Initially, Sparta was ruled by two kings who inherited their position. By about the end of the seventh century BCE the government had become an oligarchy. Most power was in the hands of a few families who controlled the **Ephorate** and dominated the council of elders. These two bodies decided what laws and policies the Spartan citizens in the Assembly of Spartiates would vote on. Citizens could not discuss these matters. They could only shout 'yes' or 'no' to a proposal. Even if they voted 'no', this decision could be overruled.

SOURCE 3 Government in Sparta



5.5.2 Activities

CHECK YOUR UNDERSTANDING

- 1 What was the effect of the Spartan conquest on the Messenians?
- 2 Around what time did Sparta become an oligarchy and what did that mean?

USING HISTORICAL SOURCES AS EVIDENCE

- 3 Examine **SOURCE 3**.
 - a Explain who could be Spartan citizens.
 - b Describe powers held in Sparta by each of the following institutions: the Ephorate, the Gerousia and the Assembly.

learn on

To access videos, interactivities, discussion widgets, image galleries, weblinks and more, go to www.jacplus.com.au

5.5 PUTTING IT ALL TOGETHER

USING HISTORICAL SOURCES AS EVIDENCE

- 1 Using **SOURCES 1** and **3** and other information in this subtopic answer the following questions.
 - a Who voted on laws and policies in Athens and in Sparta?
 - b In which, Athens or Sparta, did ordinary citizens have the most power?
 - c Which groups in Athens and Sparta had none of the rights of citizens?
 - d What were the differences between Athenian and Spartan attitudes to political democracy and law-making.

- 2 Use the internet to find archaeological sources from Athens and Sparta. Develop a hypothesis to suggest why there are many from Athens and so few from Sparta.

IDENTIFYING CONTINUITY AND CHANGE

- 3 Read the Did You Know? in this subtopic. Working in groups:
 - a Identify the differences between the direct democracy of Athens and the representative democracy of modern Australia.
 - b Explain the advantages and disadvantages of each system of democracy.

5.6 Everyday life in Sparta

5.6.1 A strong city-state

After brutally putting down a slave revolt in about 650 BCE Sparta became a military state, and it remained so for the next 300 years. Culture and art were no longer valued, and luxuries were despised. The main role of a Spartan man was to be a brave warrior, while the main role of a Spartan woman was to bear strong children.

SOURCE 1 As the Greek writer Plutarch notes, the main aim of boys' education was to teach them to be fierce, disciplined soldiers.

The boys learned to read and write no more than was necessary. Otherwise their whole education was aimed at developing smart obedience, perseverance under stress and victory in battle. So as they grew older they intensified their physical training, and got into the habit of cropping their hair, going barefoot and exercising naked. From the age of twelve they never wore a tunic, and were given only one cloak a year. Their bodies were rough, and knew nothing of baths or oiling.

SOURCE 2 Spartan males lived a harsh and disciplined life, much of which was spent in military camps.

A The army barracks and other Spartan settlements had no walls.

B Even after they married, Spartan men still ate in the army barracks as a member of a mess. To become a citizen, a man had to be a member of an army mess.

C Men lived in military camps until they were 30, when they could become a citizen and marry.

D Spartan soldiers grew their hair long and usually wore little clothing. However, when fighting or training, they wore armour and bright red cloaks. When in their phalanx formation, they stood close together, with shields touching and their spears jutting straight out ahead.



E Boys were often flogged to teach them to put up with pain and develop their courage. Being caught stealing was severely punished — though stealing itself was accepted.

F Beds were a bundle of long reeds, cut from the riverbanks, and laid on the floor.

G In the military camps, boys and young men exercised, played war games and learned about Sparta's rules of conduct. The boys enjoyed no 'home comforts' and discipline was very harsh.

Like many settlements in ancient Greece, Sparta was a city-state. This means it was a fortified centre surrounded by a town community and farmlands. The farmlands provided the produce that people needed to survive. Like all city-states, it had its own laws and form of government. The city-state of Sparta became very powerful because it was the only one with a permanent army.

A tough life

Sparta soon dominated the **Peloponnese peninsula**. But life in Sparta was harsh. Ancient Greek writers claimed that weak or sickly male babies were abandoned on a hillside to die of exposure. However, recent archaeological evidence casts some doubt on this story.

Boys left home at the age of seven to start their military training in barracks. Everything was geared to protecting the state — personal needs did not matter.

Spartan women

Spartan women could not become citizens, vote or hold public office. However, they could own land and represent themselves in court. There is evidence that Spartan women came to own about a third of Sparta's land and wealth because so many Spartan men were killed in battle. Like boys, they were taught to be brave and outspoken.

Women wore plain clothing, cut their hair short and did not wear perfume, make-up or jewellery. They trained to keep fit, and exercised and danced naked. Their role was to bear healthy children and to be tough for their men.

Such great importance was placed on producing Spartan children that it influenced the way Spartans viewed death and funerary customs. The most honourable death for a Spartan man was to die in battle. Along with men who died in battle, women who died in childbirth were the only Spartans who were permitted to have their names on tombstones.

Peloponnese peninsula the southern part of mainland Greece, joined to the north by the narrow Isthmus of Corinth

5.6.1 Activities

CHECK YOUR UNDERSTANDING

- 1 Why did Sparta need to develop such a strong army?
- 2 What was life like for Spartan women?
- 3 Look up the adjective 'spartan' in a dictionary. Explain why the word has the meaning it does today.

USING HISTORICAL SOURCES AS EVIDENCE

- 4 Read **SOURCE 1**. Explain how you think the hardships Spartan boys had to endure would have helped them to develop obedience and perseverance.

- 5 Look carefully at **SOURCE 2**, and read the labels. Then answer the following questions.
 - a What did Spartan boys do to keep fit and increase their mental strength?
 - b Would Spartan army camps have been easy targets for an enemy? Explain.
 - c Why might the way Spartans lived have reduced the influence of the family? How might this have benefited the state of Sparta?
 - d Describe what an approaching phalanx of Spartan soldiers would look like. Why might it frighten their enemies?

5.6.2 The helots and the perioeci

Unlike slaves in other Greek states, the helots were not owned by individuals. They were the property of the Spartan state, which allocated families of helots to farm the land set aside for each Spartan. Because the helots greatly outnumbered them, the Spartans lived in fear of a helot rebellion. It was probably this fear that led the Spartans to cruelly control the helots and to adopt a system that made Sparta such a harsh military state.

The **perioeci** were descended from Dorian tribes who settled in other areas around Sparta. Though perioeci men had to serve in Sparta's army if required, they were otherwise free. They were mainly craftspeople and merchants — occupations forbidden to the elite Spartans.

How did the helots react to enslavement?

Ever since the Spartans conquered the Messenians, reducing them to the status of slaves, it was this slavery that made the Spartan way of life possible. Spartans could only be full-time soldiers because their state provided each Spartan family with sufficient helots to work their land and to provide those families with the produce they needed.

perioeci peoples of Laconian towns around Sparta who could be required to fight for Sparta but were not citizens

Evidence suggests the Messenian helots never lost the will to regain their freedom. They rebelled against Sparta around 650 BCE and again in 464–459 BCE. It is very likely that the methods used by the Spartans to suppress the helots made the helots even more rebellious. The Spartan Ephorate ran a secret police force called the Krypteia. It recruited young Spartans and sent them out for a year to spy on the helots. They were authorised to kill helots, especially those who appeared to have the kinds of qualities that might fit them to lead a helot rebellion (see **SOURCES 3** and **4**).

SOURCE 3 A description of the treatment of helots, by the ancient Greek writer Plutarch (c. 46–120 CE)

The magistrates dispatched privately some of the ablest of the young men into the country, from time to time, armed only with their daggers . . . they . . . killed all the Helots they could light upon; sometimes they set upon them by day, as they were at work in the fields, and murdered them . . .

Aristotle, in particular, adds, that the ephori, [ephors] so soon as they were entered into their office, used to declare war against them [the helots], so that they might be massacred without a breach of religion.

SOURCE 4 A description of the treatment of helots who had fought for Sparta against Athens in 424 BCE, by the ancient Greek writer Thucydides (c. 460–403 BCE)

The Helots were invited by a proclamation to pick out those of their number who claimed to have most distinguished themselves against the enemy, in order that they might receive their freedom; the object being to test them, as it was thought that the first to claim their freedom would be the most high-spirited and the most apt to rebel. As many as two thousand were selected accordingly, who crowned themselves and went around the temples, rejoicing in their new freedom. The Spartans, however, soon afterwards did away with them, and no one ever knew exactly how each one of them perished.

How have historians explained Sparta's treatment of the helots?

Our only ancient sources for Sparta are a few archaeological traces and the writings of several ancient Greeks, including Herodotus and Thucydides. Almost none of our ancient written primary sources were created by Spartans and none by helots. Yet an enormous number of books and articles have been written about ancient Sparta by historians using the little evidence that exists. **SOURCES 5** and **6** are two examples.

SOURCE 5 An account of Spartan motives for suppressing the helots, from Sarah B. Pomeroy, et al., *Ancient Greece. A Political, Social and Cultural History*, 1999

The Second Messenian War [of c. 650 BC] had been a terrifying revelation of the potential risks of the helot system, and the possibility of a repetition haunted the imaginations of Spartans and their enemies. One certain way of avoiding such a catastrophe, abandoning Messenia, was unthinkable . . . the Spartans realized that if all potential hoplites could be mobilized and trained to the highest degree of skill possible, Sparta would enjoy an overwhelming military advantage over its helots and other enemies . . . In effect they waged a perpetual war against the helots and were consequently always prepared to engage in other acts of aggression when necessary.

SOURCE 6 An account of Sparta recruiting helots as soldiers, from Antony Andrewes, *Greek Society*, 1991

The other main source [of recruits] was the helots. The 700 whom Brasidas took with him to the north [in 425 BC] were still formally slaves; they were only liberated on their return home . . . About the same time . . . Sparta created a whole new class . . . These were helots who were already liberated at the time when they were enrolled. For the next fifty years, they were a very important part in Sparta's military effort . . . The training-up of such numbers from a notoriously oppressed and ill-treated class looks like an appalling risk, though no doubt, in case of trouble, the Spartans could count on the *perioikoi* [perioeci] to support them.

5.6.2 Activities

CHECK YOUR UNDERSTANDING

- 1 Who were the perioeci and the helots?
- 2 In what ways was the position of the helots different to that of slaves in other parts of Greece?
- 3 Explain how the slavery of the helots made the Spartan way of life possible.

USING HISTORICAL SOURCES AS EVIDENCE

- 4 Read **SOURCES 3** and **4** and analyse them by answering the following questions.
 - a What information about Spartan treatment of helots does each source provide?
 - b What kind of source is it?
 - c Who wrote each source and around when would it have been written?
- 5 Do **SOURCES 3** and **4** provide complementary evidence or conflicting evidence for the Spartans' treatment of the helots? Give the reasons for your answer.
- 6 Compare and contrast **SOURCES 5** and **6**. What conclusion does each of these secondary sources present on Spartan attitudes towards the helots?
- 7 How do Pomeroy (**SOURCE 5**) and Andrewes (**SOURCE 6**) differ in their interpretations of Sparta's treatment of the helots?

d Why do you think each source was written and how useful is it as evidence for this topic?

e What more would you need to know about the author to judge the source's reliability?

5.6 PUTTING IT ALL TOGETHER

USING HISTORICAL SOURCES AS EVIDENCE

- 1 Using the sources and other information in this subtopic, explain what life was like for a helot and how the helots might have viewed their situation.

IDENTIFYING CONTINUITY AND CHANGE

- 2 Using the sources and other information in this subtopic, explain how Sparta's enslavement of the helots changed everyday life in Spartan society after 650 BCE.

ANALYSING CAUSE AND EFFECT

- 3 What can we tell about the effect of Sparta's almost constant involvement in warfare from the fact that the only Spartans allowed tombstones were men who died in battle and women who died in childbirth?

learn on

To access videos, interactivities, discussion widgets, image galleries, weblinks and more, go to www.jacplus.com.au

5.7 Everyday life in Athens

5.7.1 The very different lives of Athenian men and women

Athens was the largest of the Greek poleis. It was very different from Sparta. From the fifth century BCE it was one of the richest and most beautiful cities in the ancient world, famous for its temples, fine public buildings and love of the arts. It had theatres where plays were performed and its citizens had a high regard for learning.

The man was the important figure in Athenian life. He decided everything — when and whom his daughters would marry, and even whether or not new babies would live or die. Most girls were married in their early teens to men twice their age (see **SOURCE 1**).

SOURCE 1 This painting from a small Greek pottery box shows a bride being escorted to the home of her new husband after a wedding feast at her parents' home.

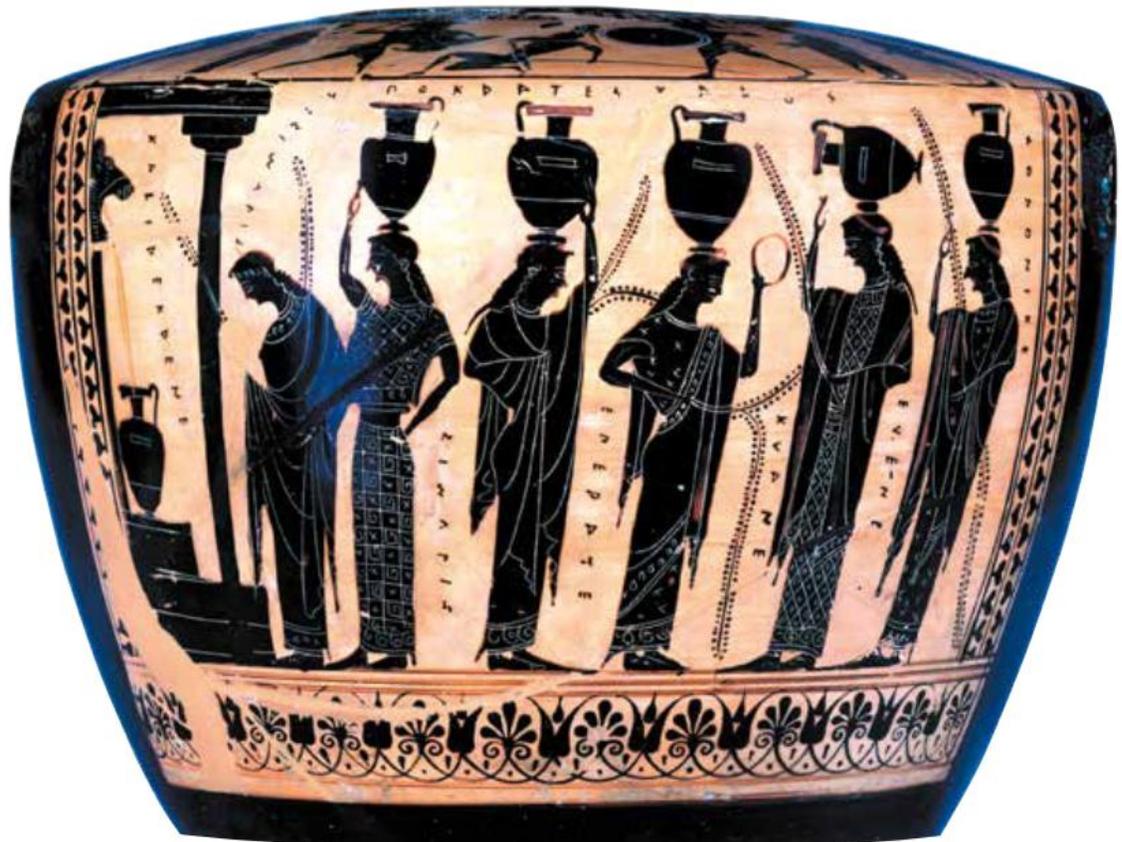


agora large open space in the centre of a Greek city that served as a public meeting area and marketplace

After marrying, a man spent most of his time away from the house. He might carry out government duties, run a workshop, work out in the gymnasium, meet his friends in the **agora** for a chat or attend dinner parties. In contrast, a woman spent virtually the rest of her life in the home. She was expected to produce children, especially sons. With the help of slaves and older daughters, women ran the household (see **SOURCE 2**). Marriage feasts were one of the few occasions when women were able to do something other than home duties and to celebrate with their menfolk.

amphora large clay vase used to store and carry liquids such as water, wine and olive oil

SOURCE 2 One of the few regular trips women could make outside the home was to collect water from public fountains near the agora. They carried the water in an **amphora**.



Education

Only boys went to school. Very privileged girls might have a home tutor to teach them to read or perhaps play the lyre. Boys started school — a dawn-to-dusk affair — at around the age of seven. Their teachers read to them from papyrus scrolls, and the boys learned how to write on a wooden-framed slate (a fine-grained stone that easily splits into sheets) coated with wax. They were also taught reading (including poetry), maths, music and physical fitness.

Housing

Though most Athenian houses had two storeys, they were fairly small. Wealthy Greeks did not usually build impressive mansions, as most used their spare money to fund athletic and religious events. The home of a wealthy Greek family might have a central courtyard, a bathroom and a stone floor, rather than one made from packed earth. Apart from this, there was little difference between a mansion and the homes of poorer people.

Athenian houses were made of sun-dried bricks. All rooms faced inwards and were usually fairly dark, airless and smoky spaces. This was because windows were small and set high, and open fires were often lit indoors. Furniture was sparse, with household items mostly stored on the floor or hung from nails in the wall.

Men and women had separate living areas. The women's area was as far away as possible from the entrance and public areas of the house. It was forbidden to strangers and was often very dark.

5.7.1 Activities

CHECK YOUR UNDERSTANDING

- 1 Describe the lifestyles of Athenian men and boys.
- 2 To what roles were Athenian women and girls confined?

USING HISTORICAL SOURCES AS EVIDENCE

- 3 Examine **SOURCE 1**. Identify the bride and groom and discuss what evidence this source provides for the wealth and social class of the couple getting married.
- 4 What evidence does **SOURCE 2** provide for the clothing and hairstyles of Athenian women and for their position in Athenian society?

5.7.2 Public life, death and burial

Only men could become citizens. Women generally had no legal or political rights. They could not hold public office or go shopping. They could, however, take part in some religious festivals and rituals.

Men's banquets were an important and common part of daily life as you can see in **SOURCE 3**. Slaves removed guests' sandals when they arrived and washed their feet. Lying around on low couches, the men enjoyed food such as fish fried in olive oil, boiled vegetables, cheese made from goats' milk, bread, figs, dates and grapes. They ate with their fingers, drinking wine mixed with water.

The fifth century BCE was the peak of the Golden Age of ancient Greece. By this time, Athens was a wealthy city with a stable democracy, strong trade links, a thriving culture and a keen sense of civic pride.

SOURCE 3 After a meal, men relaxed by telling jokes and riddles and playing musical instruments. Sometimes they might be entertained by singers, dancers, musicians or gymnasts.



Death and burial practices

Athenians, like most other Greeks, believed in an underworld, where Hades, the brother of Zeus, reigned over the dead. They believed that a person's *psyche* (spirit) left the body at the very moment of death. To make sure that the psyche would find its way to the afterlife, the dead person's mouth and eyes were closed. The body was anointed with oil, wrapped and displayed for two days while women stood by wailing and friends and relatives visited to mourn. On the following day, the body was taken in a procession to the cemetery, which was outside the city gates of Athens, and placed in a tomb.

In the seventh and sixth centuries BCE, aristocratic families erected earth mounds, upright slabs or pillars, or statues and some very elaborate monuments at grave sites. But by the end of the fifth century, Athenians were burying their dead in simpler stone coffins. In both eras, the aim was to ensure that the dead were remembered. They appear to have believed that such remembrance was needed to ensure life after death.

learn on

To access videos, interactivities, discussion widgets, image galleries, weblinks and more, go to www.jacplus.com.au

5.7.2 Activities

CHECK YOUR UNDERSTANDING

- 1 Describe ways in which men were privileged in Athenian public life.
- 2 How were the Athenian dead prepared for the afterlife?
- 3 What do Athenian funeral rituals tell us about their beliefs?

USING HISTORICAL SOURCES AS EVIDENCE

- 4 Describe the scene in **SOURCE 3** and discuss what Athenian women might have thought about men's banquets.

5.7.3 A city of beauty and bustle

Like most other city-states, Athens had a prominent acropolis at the centre of its cluster of houses and a large agora (or marketplace). It was surrounded by a large area of open country.

The Acropolis

During this time, elegant buildings were erected on the Acropolis in Athens — a large, rocky hill about 150 metres high. The largest of these was the **Parthenon**, which is pictured in **SOURCE 4**. It was a temple dedicated to the goddess Athena. She was the city's patroness and protector in time of war.

The Parthenon was decorated with many beautiful sculptures as well as with carved panels of the gods, battles and festivals. During the early nineteenth century, many of these carved panels

Parthenon Athenian temple dedicated to the goddess Athena

SOURCE 4 Work on the Parthenon started in 447 BCE and took 25 years to complete. Much of the building was destroyed in 1687. It was then being used by the Turks to store gunpowder, which exploded under enemy attack.



were removed, cut into pieces and shipped to Britain by Lord Elgin. He was at that time the British Ambassador to the Turkish Empire, of which Greece had been part for over a thousand years. Today more than half of the surviving panels are in the British Museum. The Greek government is trying to get these 'Parthenon marbles' back.

The Agora

Below the acropolis was the Agora (see **SOURCE 5**). This large tree-filled square, framed by public buildings, was the place where everything happened. It was the city's centre of government. It was also the place to buy goods such as food, animals, furniture, jewellery, musical instruments and pots. Men went there to shop, learn more about new ideas, watch plays and chat with their friends. Women were rarely seen.

Attica

Most of the population of Athens lived in Attica (the surrounding countryside that was ruled by Athens). Although many were farmers, the generally dry and rocky landscape meant crops such as grain were not always easy to grow. So Athens imported grain from places like Egypt and Sicily. It also imported timber and metals. On the other hand, crops such as olives, figs and grapes grew well. The export of goods such as olive oil and wine made Athens very wealthy.

SOURCE 5 The agora was the political, legal, commercial and social heart of the city in ancient Greece.

A Public buildings surrounding the Agora in Athens included the law courts (*Heliaea*), the mint, the military headquarters (*Strategeion*) and the *Bouleuterion* (meeting place of the Council of 500).

B Plays were first held in the Agora and later in special amphitheatres. They began as religious ceremonies in honour of the Greek god Dionysus. He was the god of wine and merriment.

C Athenian pots were usually decorated with detailed scenes of daily life and with the stories of myths and legends.

D Slaves were bought and sold in the Agora. A highly skilled slave might cost 6000 drachma; a simple wooden couch might cost 20 drachma. A drachma was the main silver coin of the ancient Greeks. Before coins were introduced, goods in ancient Greece were bought and sold by bartering.

E To build columns, ropes and pulleys were used to hoist blocks of stone into position. Metal rods joined each block to the one above and below.

F The mass of men provided an audience for philosophers such as Socrates. Works by philosophers such as Plato (Socrates' star pupil) and Aristotle (a follower of Plato) have been translated into English.



5.7.3 Activities

CHECK YOUR UNDERSTANDING

- 1 What was the Acropolis of Athens?
- 2 To whom was the Parthenon dedicated?
- 3 How were the Parthenon marbles lost from Greece?
- 4 Why did men visit the Agora?

USING HISTORICAL SOURCES AS EVIDENCE

- 5 Look closely at **SOURCE 4** and use clues from **SOURCE 5** to explain how the Parthenon's supporting columns were built.
- 6 Study **SOURCE 5**. In two columns make a list of similarities and differences between the activities in the Agora and what would be seen in a modern market.

learn on

To access videos, interactivities, discussion widgets, image galleries, weblinks and more, go to www.jacplus.com.au

5.7 PUTTING IT ALL TOGETHER

USING HISTORICAL SOURCES AS EVIDENCE

- 1 Work in small groups to design a poster or a museum display for an exhibition on everyday life in ancient Athens. Use sources and other information from this subtopic along with images and information from websites, including museum websites. For each heading select a suitable image and write a paragraph about it. Arrange your display under at least four of the following headings:
 - Eating and drinking
 - Clothing, hairstyles, makeup and jewellery
 - Worshipping
 - Entertainment
 - Marriage
 - Children
 - Occupations.

IDENTIFYING CONTINUITY AND CHANGE

- 2 Explain what similarities in the houses of rich and poor Athenians and changes in burial practices might suggest about the impact of democracy in Athens.

5.8 Laws, myths, gods and oracles

5.8.1 Laws, myths and gods

The ancient Greeks lived in about a hundred separate city-states that often fought each other. But they had many things in common that gave them a sense of shared identity. They all spoke dialects of the Greek language. They also shared the same myths, worshipped the same gods and took part in the same festivals to honour these gods.

Greek laws

There is evidence that each Greek city-state had its own laws, although no systematic collection of ancient Greek laws has survived. In some matters like inheritance, the laws of the city-states seem similar. But, even so, there were differences between Athens and Sparta. By the seventh century BCE, many Greek poleis chose men called 'law-givers' to make written records of their existing laws or set down new laws.

Athens is the city-state for which we have the most evidence. Athens appointed Draco as its first law-giver around 620 BCE. Around 594 BCE, he was followed by Solon, who created several new laws. Under Solon's laws, murderers were to be banished but most crimes were punished only by fines. His laws also dealt with such matters as trade and the location and spacing of houses in Athens. Solon's laws also corrected at last one injustice that had threatened to cause civil war in Athens. In the seventh century BCE, creditors (people who were owed money) had power to enslave those who could not repay their debts. Solon abolished this practice, freed debt-slaves and cancelled their existing debts.

Law courts were established in Athens to try cases and decide on punishments but there were no official judges or lawyers. For most court cases, decisions were made by Athenian citizens, who were chosen by lot.

Sparta's laws were not written down. However, according to ancient Greek historians, Lycurgus was the legendary law-giver who brought Sparta the 'Great Rhetra', the set of laws dictating the entire Spartan system. Most evidence suggests that these laws were probably introduced after 650 BCE. However, it is doubtful that Lycurgus actually existed and much more likely that his story was a myth.

SOURCE 1 Herodotus, *The Histories*, Book I, 66.

How the change to good government came about I will now relate. Lycurgus, a distinguished Spartan, visited the Delphic oracle, and no sooner had he entered the shrine than he was greeted with these words:

*Hither to my rich temple have you come, Lycurgus,
Dear to Zeus and to all gods that dwell in Olympus.
I know not whether to declare you human or divine –
Yet I incline to believe, Lycurgus, that you are a god.*

... [Lycurgus] made fundamental changes in the laws, and took good care that the new ones should not be broken. Later he reorganized the army, introducing the system of messes and the new tactical divisions of squadrons and companies ... By these changes Spartan government was put upon a sound basis, and when Lycurgus died a temple was built in his honour.

Greek myths

In common with people in many societies, the early Greeks had their myths (see **SOURCE 2**), which were handed down from one generation to the next through epic poems recited by storytellers. From about 800 BCE these stories were written down. Homer's *Odyssey* and *Iliad* are the two best known of these epics. The *Iliad* tells the story of the siege of Troy. The *Odyssey* follows the 10-year homeward journey of Odysseus, hero of Troy, and his encounters with many strange creatures and great dangers. In these mythical stories, the gods behave like people, often taking sides in human conflicts.

SOURCE 2 A relief sculpture from mid-fourth-century BCE Athens depicting two Amazons fighting a Greek warrior. In Greek mythology, the Amazons were a nation of female warriors. They were often depicted in battles with Greeks.



immortals gods who lived forever

The gods of Mount Olympus

The Greeks believed their lives were controlled by the many gods who lived on Mount Olympus in the north of Greece. These gods were **immortals** but they had all too human weaknesses. The chief god was Zeus. The other gods were his brothers, sisters, sons and daughters. Each was responsible for a different aspect of human life.

- Hera, Zeus's wife, was patroness (protector) of marriage and children.
- Ares was the god of war.
- Artemis was patroness of hunting and wild animals.
- Dionysus was the god of wine and pleasure.
- Athena was the goddess of wisdom.
- Hephaestus was the god of fire.
- Hermes was the messenger of the gods.
- Apollo was the sun god and god of law.
- Aphrodite was goddess of love and beauty.
- Poseidon was god of the sea.
- Pluto was god of the underworld.

These were the most important gods, but there were others, and there were many mythical heroes who were not immortals but had powers beyond those of ordinary people.

metope part of the pattern of alternating motifs under the pediment (the triangular part crowning the front) of a Greek building

mythology a body of myths

SOURCE 3 A **metope** from the Temple of Zeus at Olympia. The scene tells part of the myth of the 12 labours of Heracles (Hercules). It shows Atlas offering Heracles the apples of the Hesperides while Heracles and Athena hold up the sky and the world.



DID YOU KNOW?

In Greek **mythology**, the hero Heracles was not a god, but he was so strong that the gods sometimes depended on his strength. When he was still a baby, he strangled poisonous snakes. As a youth, he killed a ferocious lion. As a man he performed legendary feats that included abducting Cerberus, the three-headed hound that guarded the underworld. For a time he also held up the sky, which was normally supported by Atlas. His death came as a result of a trick played on him. He put on a poisoned robe that caused such pain that he threw himself onto a fire. The gods then took him up to dwell with them on Mount Olympus.

5.8.1 Activities

CHECK YOUR UNDERSTANDING

- 1 How were most crimes punished under Solon's laws?
- 2 Which of Solon's laws would have been popular with poor citizens in Athens?

USING HISTORICAL SOURCES AS EVIDENCE

- 3 Identify reasons why most historians would doubt the story in **SOURCE 1**.
- 4 Suggest why the scene in **SOURCE 2** was a popular theme in ancient Greek art.
- 5 Identify the three figures in **SOURCE 3**.

5.8.2 The oracles – messages from the gods

In our own times some people still believe in fortune tellers. Similarly the ancient Greeks believed in oracles. An oracle was a place where people could question the gods about the future. It was also a message from the gods in answer to such a question. The most important oracle was at Delphi (see the map in 5.4 The 'Dark Age' to the Archaic Period). According to myths, Delphi was the 'navel of the world' so the Greeks built a sanctuary there. Any Greek who went to Delphi to consult the oracle had to pay a fee, sacrifice a goat and look for **omens** in its **entrails**. They would then ask questions of a priestess called the Sybil. The priests of Apollo would translate the Sybil's answers but they were usually vague enough to have many possible meanings.

omens signs that predict good or evil

entrails internal organs of an animal

SOURCE 4 From *The Persian Wars*, by the ancient Greek historian Herodotus

... the Athenians, anxious to consult the oracle, sent their messengers to Delphi ... [They] went back with it to Athens. When, however, upon their arrival they produced it before the people, and inquiry began to be made into its true meaning, many and various were the interpretations which men put on it.

5.8.2 Activities

CHECK YOUR UNDERSTANDING

- 1 What were the two meanings of the term 'oracle'?
- 2 Explain why the ancient Greeks consulted oracles.

USING HISTORICAL SOURCES AS EVIDENCE

- 3 Read **SOURCE 4**.
 - a Identify reasons why the message from the oracle could have many different meanings.
 - b What can you tell from this about the type of answers given to questions put to the oracle at Delphi?
 - c Why might such answers have been given?

5.8 PUTTING IT ALL TOGETHER

USING HISTORICAL SOURCES AS EVIDENCE

- 1 Use your library or the internet to research a Greek myth. It could be related to the scene in **SOURCE 2** or **SOURCE 3**. Write a short summary of the myth and tell it to the class.

IDENTIFYING CONTINUITY AND CHANGE

- 2 In small groups, discuss similarities and differences between the roles and importance of myths, religion and predictions of the future in ancient Greece and in modern times. You could, for example, compare the role of oracles in ancient Greece with astrologers who write the horoscope columns today.

DETERMINING HISTORICAL SIGNIFICANCE

- 3 Evaluate the role of shared myths and shared gods in contributing to a sense of Greek identity.

learn on

To access videos, interactivities, discussion widgets, image galleries, weblinks and more, go to www.jacplus.com.au

5.9 The Olympic Games

5.9.1 The ancient Olympics

For modern athletes, the most important competition is the Olympic Games, which attracts top competitors from all over the world in a huge range of sports. These sports include running, high jump, swimming, soccer and discus throwing. For any modern athlete, to represent his or her country at the Olympic Games is considered the greatest honour. To win a medal at the Olympic Games is usually the peak of a top athlete's career. The idea for the modern games was taken from ancient Greece, but in many ways the ancient games were very different from those of today.

The ancient Greek city-states had many religious festivals but the most important of them was held every four years at Olympia, in the city-state of Elis, to honour the god Zeus. The Greeks regarded 776 BCE as the year of the first **Olympiad**. By the sixth century BCE the Olympic festival attracted competitors from all over the Greek world. During each Olympiad a truce was declared between any city-states that were in conflict. As the Greeks were scattered over mainland Greece, the islands and colonies, these festivals contributed to a common sense of Greek identity. The Olympic festival continued to be held until 393 CE, when it was abolished by the Christian Roman emperor Theodosius I, who was opposed to all pagan festivals.

Olympiad a staging of the Olympic Games

SOURCE 1 From *History of the Peloponnesian War*, by the contemporary historian Thucydides

This summer were celebrated the Olympic Games . . . The Spartans were refused access to the temple by the Eleans and so prevented from sacrificing and competing in the games. This was because the Spartans had not paid the fine which had been imposed upon them by the Eleans according to the Olympic law. The Elean case was that the Spartans had made an attack . . . and had sent **hoplites** of theirs into Lepreum during the period of the Olympic truce.

hoplites Greek foot soldiers

5.9.1 Activities

CHECK YOUR UNDERSTANDING

- 1 Where did the idea for the modern Olympic Games come from?
- 2 What date is given to the first Olympiad?
- 3 What god was honoured at the ancient Olympic festival?

USING HISTORICAL SOURCES AS EVIDENCE

- 4 According to Thucydides in **SOURCE 1**:
 - a Which Greek city-state was refused permission to attend the Olympic Games?
 - b What evidence does this source give for reasons why a city-state could be excluded from the ancient Olympics?

5.9.2 The events

The main events in the ancient Olympics were running races. These included the stade (a sprint), the dolichos (a long distance race) and a race in which the competitors ran in leg guards and helmets carrying their shields. Other events included boxing, wrestling and the pankration (see **SOURCE 2**). The pentathlon was the highlight of the festival. It included discus throwing, long jump, javelin throwing, running and wrestling. When chariot racing was added to the Olympics it became the most spectacular of all events, with up to forty chariots racing and turning at high speeds. The city-states gave many rewards to their athletic heroes but crowns of olive leaves were the only official Olympic prizes.

SOURCE 2 A fifth-century BCE Athenian vase depicting the pankration, a form of wrestling in which the only banned tactics were biting and eye-gouging



SOURCE 3 The entrance to the ancient stadium at Olympia. The arch was added by the Romans.



DID YOU KNOW?

Games were the main part of the ancient Olympic festival, which began with a religious ceremony and lasted five days. For the amusement of the crowds there were also acrobats, plays and sideshows. As the ancient games expanded, new events were added, including poetry and music competitions. Merchants attended the games to sell souvenirs. Athletes competed naked and only men were allowed to take part in the events. At first, women were not even allowed as spectators, although this changed later.

5.9.2 Activities

CHECK YOUR UNDERSTANDING

- 1 Name three events in the ancient Olympics that are not in the modern Olympics.
- 2 Explain why those three events would not be held in any modern Olympics.

USING HISTORICAL SOURCES AS EVIDENCE

- 3 Study the depiction of the pankration in **SOURCE 2**. Describe what it and the other events you identified in your answer to Activity 2 might reveal about one purpose of the ancient Olympics.
- 4 What does **SOURCE 3** suggest about how the Romans came to regard the Olympics when they conquered Greece?

learn on

To access videos, interactivities, discussion widgets, image galleries, weblinks and more, go to www.jacplus.com.au

5.9 PUTTING IT ALL TOGETHER

IDENTIFYING CHANGE AND CONTINUITY

- 1 Make a list of the differences between the ancient Greek Olympic Games and the modern Olympics. You could organise your notes under the following headings:
 - Locations where the games are held
 - Nationalities and gender of the athletes
 - Events
 - Rewards for winners and place-getters
 - Purpose of the Olympics
 - Periods of time from the beginning to the end of one Olympic Games.
- 2 Work in groups to find out why any modern country has been excluded from the Olympics or has chosen not to take part in them. You can find information on this issue on the internet. Present your findings to the class.
- 3 Use **SOURCE 2** and your imagination to write and present a sport commentary on the pankration.

DETERMINING HISTORICAL SIGNIFICANCE

- 4 Based on your work in this subtopic, how would you evaluate the historical significance of the ancient Olympics?

5.10 Greeks, Persians and Alexander the Great

5.10.1 The first Persian invasion, 492–490 BCE

The city-states of Greece were often at war with each other, but most of them united when the mighty Persian Empire attacked Greece in 490 BCE and again in 480–479 BCE. Together they saved Greece from being swallowed up by the Persian Empire. In the following century Greece was again invaded, but this time by their northern neighbours the Macedonians, who would soon set out to conquer the known world.

In ancient times Persia was the land we now call Iran. Under Cyrus the Great (559–529 BCE) and his successor, Cambyses, the Persians won a great empire that included Anatolia (modern Turkey), Palestine, Syria and Egypt. In 499 BCE the Greek cities of Anatolia, with help from Athens, revolted against their Persian overlords. The revolt failed and Persia seized the offshore Greek islands.

The Battle of Marathon

To punish Athens for supporting the rebellion, King Darius I of Persia sent a fleet to invade the Greek mainland in 492 BCE, but the fleet was wrecked in a storm. Still Darius demanded that the Greeks submit to him. When Athens and Eretria refused, Darius sent another fleet carrying a large Persian army. His forces captured Eretria in 490 BCE and then sailed for Attica. They landed on the plain of Marathon, 40 kilometres from Athens (see **SOURCE 1**). There, 10 000 Athenians and their Plataean allies defeated 50 000 Persians in a surprise attack.

SOURCE 1 Naval and land campaigns of the Persian Wars



Source: Map drawn by Spatial Vision.

5.10.1 Activities

CHECK YOUR UNDERSTANDING

- 1 What is the modern name of Persia?
- 2 Name the modern countries that belonged to the Persian Empire under Cambyses.
- 3 What did Athens do in 499 BCE that provoked a Persian invasion?
- 4 Why did the Persian invasion of Greece fail in 492 BCE?

USING HISTORICAL SOURCES AS EVIDENCE

- 5 Examine **SOURCE 1**.
 - a How close did the Persian force get to Athens in 490 BCE?
 - b Who defeated the Persians at Marathon, ending the first Persian invasion attempt?

5.10.2 The second invasion, 480–479 BCE

Darius died in 486 BCE but his son, Xerxes, spent several years organising a still greater invasion of Greece. His preparations included building a floating bridge to carry his army across the narrow strait called the Hellespont that separates Europe from Asia. A huge army of spearmen, archers and cavalry from all over the Persian Empire marched into Greece. It was supported by a great fleet sailing down the coast (see **SOURCE 1**). To meet the threat, 31 Greek states called off their quarrels and agreed to unite against the Persians.

Athens played the leading naval role in the conflict but Sparta led the Greek armies in major land battles. At Thermopylae in 480 BCE the Spartan king, Leonidas, held a narrow mountain pass against the Persian horde with just 300 Spartans and about 7000 other Greek hoplites. They were eventually defeated and killed, but they crucially delayed Xerxes' advance.

SOURCE 2 A modern artist's impression of Greek and Persian infantry at Thermopylae in 480 BCE



Naval battles

Shortly after the Battle of Thermopylae, at Artemisium, 60 kilometres from Thermopylae, a Greek fleet fought three battles against the much larger Persian fleet. Both sides suffered heavy losses, but the Persians were greatly weakened, having already lost hundreds of ships in two storms.

As the Persian fleet approached Attica, Athens was evacuated and left to be burned by the Persians. Then the Greek navy attacked the Persians at Salamis, where the sea was too narrow for the Great Fleet to be used effectively. This time the Persians were completely defeated.

The final clashes

At Plataea in 479 BCE the Spartans led a Greek army of about 100 000 in destroying a much larger Persian force. Only a fraction of the once mighty invading army survived to return to Persia. The Greek fleet then sailed for the island of Samos off the coast of Anatolia. They landed and defeated the Persian army at Cape Mycale. Although fighting continued for many more years, the Greeks no longer feared Persian invasion.

SOURCE 3 From the description of the Battle of Thermopylae in Herodotus, *The Histories*, Book VII, 227

Of all the Spartans and Thespians who fought so valiantly, the most signal proof of courage was given by the Spartan Dieneces. It is said that before the battle he was told by a native of Trachis that, when the Persians shot their arrows, there were so many of them that they hid the sun. Dieneces, however, quite unmoved by the thought of the strength of the Persian army, merely remarked: 'This is pleasant news that the stranger from Trachis brings us: if the Persians hide the sun, we shall have our battle in the shade.'

5.10.2 Activities

CHECK YOUR UNDERSTANDING

- 1 Who was Xerxes?
- 2 Describe the preparations Xerxes made for the second Persian invasion of Greece.

SEQUENCING CHRONOLOGY

- 3 Place the major battles of the second Persian invasion on a timeline with notations to show who won each battle and how they won.

USING HISTORICAL SOURCES AS EVIDENCE

- 4 Read **SOURCE 3** and analyse and evaluate it using the following questions.
 - a Who wrote this source and why might it have been written?
 - b As the Spartans were all killed at the battle, how would the writer have obtained this source?
 - c How could we know that it is reliable?
- 5 What clues do **SOURCES 2** and **3** provide about the reasons why the Spartans and other Greeks were able to delay the Persian army at Thermopylae?
- 6 Work in pairs to explore the differences between Persian and Greek perspectives on the Persian Wars. One student should explain the causes of the wars from a Persian point of view. The other should give a Greek viewpoint. Then compare them and decide whether either or both views could be right.

learn on

To access videos, interactivities, discussion widgets, image galleries, weblinks and more, go to www.jacplus.com.au

5.10.3 Alexander the Great

The Peloponnesian Wars

Cooperation among the Greeks did not last long. During the Peloponnesian Wars (460–445 BCE and 431–404 BCE), Greece was divided into two camps — the states and colonies dominated by Athens and those who allied with Sparta. The second war finally ended when Sparta, with Persian help, forced Athens to surrender. Sparta came to dominate Greece until the Greek city-state of Thebes defeated the Spartans in 371 BCE.

Macedon conquers Greece

After so many years of fighting each other, the Greek city-states were too weak to withstand a new invasion when Philip of Macedon conquered Greece in 338 BCE. Two years later Philip was murdered and his son Alexander (356–323 BCE) became the ruler of Macedon and Greece. When Thebes again revolted, Alexander crushed the city ruthlessly, killing 6000 of its people and enslaving the rest.

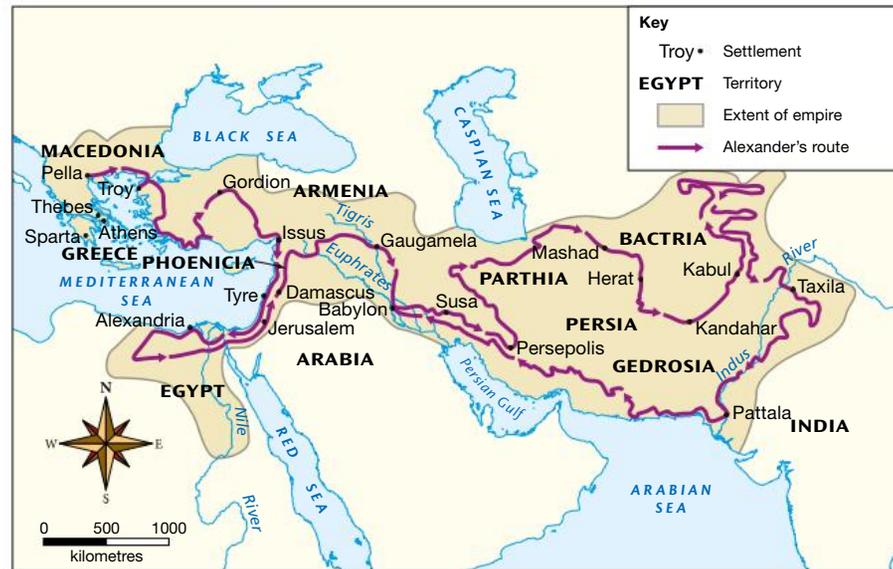
Alexander creates an empire

In 334 BCE Alexander led an army of Greeks and Macedonians eastward to invade the Persian Empire. They defeated King Darius III in battles at Issus and Gaugamela in 333 and 331 BCE (see **SOURCE 5**).

SOURCE 4 A detail from the Alexander Sarcophagus (stone coffin) showing Alexander on horseback (Sidon, in modern-day Lebanon)



SOURCE 5 The empire of Alexander the Great was established through an 11-year military campaign during which his army marched nearly 34 000 kilometres.



Source: Map drawn by Spatial Vision.

SOURCE 6 Two sides of a silver coin of Alexander the Great, probably made around 324 BCE. The figure on horseback is believed to be Alexander. The figure at left is wearing a Macedonian cloak, Greek armour and a Persian head-dress and carrying a thunderbolt. They are believed to be the only surviving images of Alexander from his lifetime.



In 330 BCE Alexander conquered Persepolis, the Persian capital, and seized control of the empire under the title 'Great King'. But his armies pressed on. By 326 BCE, Alexander had reached India and defeated the Indian king Porus, whose forces included troops on war elephants. In every land he conquered, Alexander had cities built to strengthen his control. Many were named Alexandria.

Alexander died of fever when he was only 32 years old. His huge empire fractured into three main parts: his homeland of Macedon included all of Greece; Egypt was ruled by one of Alexander's generals, Ptolemy Soter, and his descendants for three centuries; in the east, the Seleucid Empire stretched from Syria to Afghanistan.

The age of the Greek city-states ended with Alexander. But although he adopted many of the customs of the peoples he conquered, he was devoted to Greek culture, which he spread throughout much of the east. Alexander's conquests were one important way in which Greek ideas were spread far beyond Greek shores and passed down through time.

myWorldHistoryAtlas

Deepen and check your understanding of the topic with the following resources and auto-marked questions:

Persian Wars **Peloponnesian Wars** **Philip of Macedon**
Alexander the Great



5.10.3 Activities

CHECK YOUR UNDERSTANDING

- 1 Over how many years did the Greek city-states fight each other in the Peloponnesian Wars?
- 2 How did the results of the Peloponnesian Wars help Philip of Macedon to conquer Greece?

- 3 Describe how Alexander treated Greek city-states that revolted against his rule.

SEQUENCING CHRONOLOGY

- 4 List significant events in Alexander's career in chronological order.

5.10 PUTTING IT ALL TOGETHER

USING HISTORICAL SOURCES AS EVIDENCE

- 1 Study **SOURCES 4** and **6**.
 - a Describe the way that Alexander is depicted in these sources.
 - b Why do you think he is depicted like this? (Clue: normally only a god would be shown holding a thunderbolt.)
- 2 Study the map in **SOURCE 5** showing Alexander's conquests and compare it with a map of the same region in a modern atlas.
 - a List the ancient countries conquered by Alexander.
 - b Find the modern names of those countries.

IDENTIFYING CONTINUITY AND CHANGE

- 3 Using the sources and information in this subtopic, evaluate the extent to which Greece remained the same and the extent to which it changed from the beginning of the Persian Wars to the death of Alexander the Great.

ANALYSING CAUSE AND EFFECT

- 4 Identify one cause of war that was significant in the Persian Wars, Philip of Macedon's conquest of Greece and Alexander's wars to build his empire.

learn on

To access videos, interactivities, discussion widgets, image galleries, weblinks and more, go to www.jacplus.com.au

5.11 The heritage of ancient Greece

5.11.1 Medicine, mathematics, science and philosophy

Along with the idea of democracy and the Olympic tradition, many ancient Greek ideas have influenced later times, even up to our present age. The heritage of ancient Greece includes developments in science, mathematics, architecture, medicine, philosophy, drama and poetry. Ancient Greek civilisation reached its high point in the fifth century BCE. In the fourth century BCE, Greek culture had spread as far east as India through the conquests of Alexander the Great. After the Romans conquered Greece in 146 BCE, Rome absorbed Greek culture and contributed to the passing down of Greek ideas through the ages.

Medicine

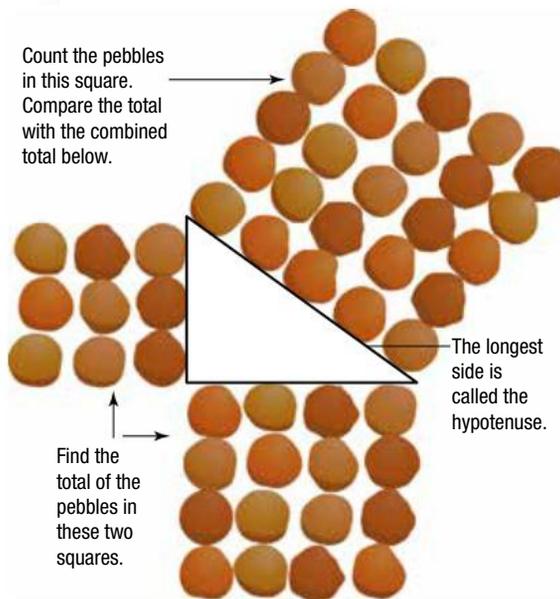
Most ancient Greeks thought that sickness or disability was a punishment from the gods. Hippocrates (c. 460–377 BCE) practised and taught medicine, changing many of its ideas and methods. Among his teachings was the then new idea that sickness was caused by problems in the body, including diet. His set of principles to guide the conduct of medical practitioners, the Hippocratic Oath, is still widely observed today.

Mathematics, science and philosophy

Ancient Greece produced some remarkable thinkers. Anaxagoras, Aristarchus and Eratosthenes developed ideas based on observations in **astronomy**, including the idea that the Earth orbited the sun. Pythagoras (c. 582–500 BCE) arranged pebbles to show the connections between space and numbers; he is remembered today for Pythagoras's Theorem (see **SOURCE 1** at right). As well as numbers and geometry, he was also interested in astronomy (he concluded that the Earth was round), musical notes and matter. He believed all things were made up of four elements: earth, air, fire and water. Euclid also developed explanations that are still used in geometry. Thales (c. 624–546 BCE) discovered static electricity. Archimedes, who lived in the third century BCE, discovered important principles in physics.

astronomy study of the stars and planets

SOURCE 1 The philosopher and mathematician Pythagoras found that the square of the length of the hypotenuse (the side opposite the right angle) of a triangle was equal to the sum of the squares of the other two sides.



Another achievement of the Greeks was the development of philosophy by thinkers such as Socrates, Plato and Aristotle. In the fourth century BCE, Aristotle taught that the other planets, the moon and the stars all moved around the Earth. This idea was mistakenly believed throughout Europe for nearly 2000 years after his death.

5.11.1 Activities

CHECK YOUR UNDERSTANDING

- 1 What did most ancient Greeks believe to be the cause of sickness?
- 2 Draw up to columns. In the left column put the following names: Hippocrates, Pythagoras, Aristotle, Euclid, Thales, Archimedes. In the right column briefly describe their achievements or mistakes.

USING HISTORICAL SOURCES AS EVIDENCE

- 3 Study **SOURCE 1** and use the pebble method to demonstrate Pythagoras's theorem.

5.11.2 Architecture, drama and poetry

The Greeks developed building styles that are still used today. Many great modern buildings are influenced by ancient Greek styles. For example, the Melbourne Shrine of Remembrance, Geelong Town Hall, Ballarat Railway Station and the Art Gallery of New South Wales all have **porticos** like an ancient Greek temple.

Theatre was very popular in ancient Greece. One of the most famous Greek playwrights is Aristophanes (c. 448–380 BCE). He wrote brilliant comic plays that are still performed today. Few women had the chance to achieve fame in ancient Greek society, but one who did was Sappho from the island of Lesbos. Born in about 600 BCE, she became the greatest poet of the ancient Greeks. Some of her poems were preserved on Egyptian papyrus (an early form of paper), but only fragments remain. There are also many ancient Greek sayings that are still used because they remain as relevant today as they were when first written. Among them are the words of the writer of fables Aesop, who lived in the sixth century BCE. He wrote, for example, ‘We hang petty thieves and appoint great ones to public office’ and ‘In union there is strength’.

portico a roof supported by columns, usually attached as a porch to a building

SOURCE 2 The ruins of the Erechtheion, regarded by many as the most beautiful building on the Acropolis of ancient Athens



5.11.2 Activities

CHECK YOUR UNDERSTANDING

- 1 Name two Victorian buildings that have been influenced by ancient Greek styles.
- 2 Who was Aristophanes?
- 3 What did Sappho achieve and why was her achievement very unusual in ancient Greek society?

USING HISTORICAL SOURCES AS EVIDENCE

- 4 Study **SOURCE 2**.
 - a Describe the surviving features of the Erechtheion.
 - b Why do you think it is regarded as an outstanding example of ancient Greek architecture?

learn on

To access videos, interactivities, discussion widgets, image galleries, weblinks and more, go to www.jacplus.com.au

5.11 PUTTING IT ALL TOGETHER

IDENTIFYING CONTINUITY AND CHANGE

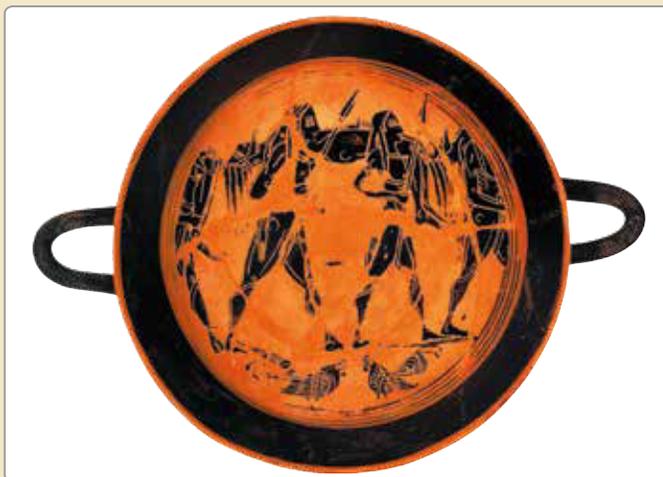
- 1 To find out more about the legacies of ancient Greece to later ages, work in groups to research one of the following questions.
 - a What are the words of the Hippocratic Oath?
 - b What is Archimedes' Principle and is it still used today?
 - c Where and how were Greek plays performed in ancient times? And today?
 - d How did the Greek idea about the elements differ from modern scientific understanding of the elements?
- 2 Use the internet to find out what international efforts have been undertaken to conserve the remains of buildings like the Parthenon and Erechtheion and to conserve sculptures and other traces of ancient Greek culture.

5.12 SkillBuilder: Analysing and corroborating sources

online only

How do we analyse and corroborate ancient Greek sources?

Ancient Greek sources include pottery, tombs, temples, fortifications, weapons, tools, coins, theatres, written records and artworks. Almost all of our knowledge of ancient Greece comes from such sources.



Go to your learnON course to access:

- An explanation of the skill (Tell me)
- A step-by-step process to develop the skill, with an example (Show me)
- An activity to allow you to practise the skill (Let me do it)
- Questions to test your application of the skill (Applying skills)

5.13 Review

online only

This final subtopic provides a range of opportunities for you to review and respond through:

- i revising and checking your historical knowledge
- ii demonstrating your ability to apply historical concepts and skills.

Go to your learnON course to access:

- A key chronology of events relevant to the topic
- A summary of the key knowledge presented in the topic
- A 'Big Questions' activity
- A multiple choice topic test
- Short answer or extended writing responses



on Resources

Interactivity

Ancient Greece timeline

Create a visual timeline of key events in ancient Greece.

int-2937

5.12 SkillBuilder: Analysing and corroborating sources

5.12.1 Tell me

What are the main ancient Greek sources?

Ancient Greek sources include pottery, tombs, temples, fortifications, weapons, tools, coins, theatres and written records. They also include artworks such as statues and other sculptures in stone and bronze and the paintings that decorated vases and other types of pottery.

Why is it important to analyse and corroborate ancient Greek sources?

Almost all of our knowledge of ancient Greece comes from such sources. Works of art, in particular, tell us much about ancient Greek culture, especially myths and religious ideas. Buildings and sculptures tell us about technology, skills and values. Written records tell us about Greek ideas about politics, myths, history, science and a vast range of other subjects. Not all ancient Greek sources are really primary sources as some were written long after the events they describe.

5.12.2 Show me

How do we analyse and corroborate ancient Greek sources?

When you study an ancient source you need to think carefully about the clues it provides and ask questions about its accuracy, usefulness and reliability. You need to ask questions such as:

1. What is it?
2. Who created it and when was it created?
3. Who or what was it created for?
4. For what aspect of ancient Greek history does it provide useful evidence?
5. Is the evidence it provides accurate and reliable and how can we tell this?
6. What conclusions can we draw from the source about ancient Greek society?

These questions have been applied to **SOURCES 1** and **2**.

Ancient writers and many later historians have regarded Spartans as tough soldiers who would die fighting rather than surrender or run from battle. **SOURCES 1** and **2** are relevant to this issue.

1. *What is it?* It is a cup with a design showing Spartan soldiers carrying the body of a comrade killed in battle.
2. *Who created it and when was it created?* We do not know who made it but we know that it was created in Sparta in the sixth century BCE.
3. *Who or what was it created for?* We cannot know whom it was created for. It was made to be a cup but more likely as a decoration than for practical uses.
4. *For what aspect of ancient Greek history does it provide useful evidence?* It indicates that Spartans honoured their men who died in battle by carrying their bodies from the battlefield.
5. *Is the evidence it provides accurate and reliable and how can we tell this?* Without other evidence, we can not tell whether this source is accurate and reliable. However, several ancient Greek sources support this view of the Spartans.

SOURCE 1 A sixth century BCE Spartan cup showing Spartan soldiers returning from war carrying a slain comrade



6. *What conclusions can we draw from the source about ancient Greek society?* The Spartans regarded fighting bravely and dying in battle as great virtues.

SOURCE 2 Written by the Athenian general and historian Thucydides (c. 460–403) in his book, *History of the Peloponnesian War*, this extract describes the surrender of a force of 120 Spartans in the seventh year of this war between Athens and Sparta

was ... made, to know if they [the Spartans] would surrender themselves and their arms to the Athenians ... [Hearing] this offer, most of them lowered their shields and waved their hands to show that they accepted it. Hostilities now ceased ... after consulting together they surrendered themselves and their arms ...

Nothing that happened in the war surprised the Hellenes [Greeks] so much as this. It was the opinion that no force or famine could make [Spartans] give up their arms, but that they would fight on ... and die with them in their hands: indeed people could scarcely believe that those who had surrendered were of the same stuff as the fallen.

1. *What is it?* It is an account of the surrender of a force of Spartans during the Peloponnesian War.
2. *Who created it and when was it created?* It was written by Thucydides, an Athenian general and historian, in the fifth century BCE, soon after the events it describes.
3. *Who or what was it created for?* Thucydides wrote a history of the Peloponnesian War, a conflict that divided the Greeks for many years. The extract was part of that history. Its original readers would most likely have been other Athenians.
4. *For what aspect of ancient Greek history does it provide useful evidence?* It tells of an occasion when a Spartan army surrendered to Athenians rather than fighting to the death.
5. *Is the evidence it provides accurate and reliable and how can we tell this?* In judging its accuracy and reliability, we should take into account that the writer was an Athenian general and therefore someone who had fought against the Spartans. Without other evidence, we cannot tell whether this source is accurate and reliable. However, as many other Greeks would have witnessed this event it is unlikely that Thucydides would have distorted the facts.
6. *What conclusions can we draw from the source about ancient Greek society?* We can conclude that, although the Spartans regarded fighting bravely and dying in battle as great virtues, they did not always carry out this ideal. If the source is reliable, we might conclude that Spartans were not always as heroic as many liked to think they were.

5.12.3 Let me do it

Ancient writers and many later historians have regarded Spartan women as being as tough as Spartan men. **SOURCES 3** and **4** are relevant to this issue. Use the six questions to analyse **SOURCES 3** and **4**.

SOURCE 3 From Plutarch, *Moralia, III, Sayings of Spartan Women*, 241. Plutarch lived c. 46–120 CE. He was born in Athens but was an admirer of Sparta and was writing many centuries after the events he described.

Another Spartan woman killed her son, who had deserted his post because he was unworthy of Sparta. She declared: 'He was not my offspring ... for I did not bear one unworthy of Sparta'.

Another, hearing that her son had fallen at his post, said: 'Let the cowards be mourned, I, however, bury you without a tear, my son and Sparta's'.

As a woman was burying her son, a shabby old woman came up to her and said, 'You poor woman, what a misfortune!' 'No, by the two goddesses, what a good fortune,' she replied, 'because I bore him so that he might die for Sparta and that is what happened for me'.

Another woman handed her son his shield, and exhorted him: 'Son, either with this or on this'.*

* In order to run from battle a soldier would have to throw away his heavy shield. A soldier who was killed in battle would be carried home on his shield.

SOURCE 4 A bronze figure of a running girl, 520–500 BCE, believed to have been made in or near Sparta



5.12 APPLYING SKILLS

USING HISTORICAL SOURCES AS EVIDENCE

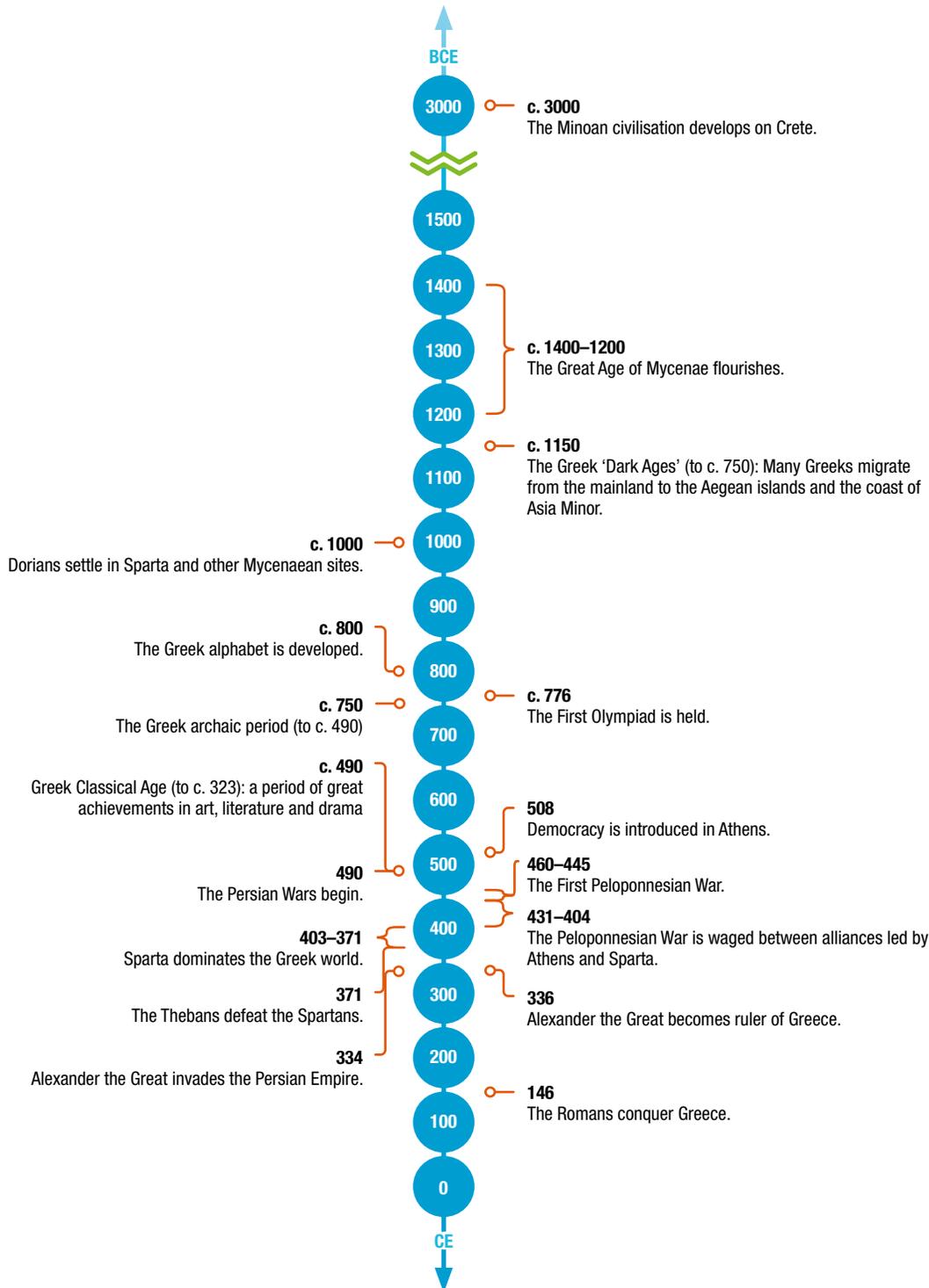
- 1 Explain how you would differentiate between ancient Greek primary sources and secondary sources about ancient Greece.
- 2 Why should **SOURCE 3**, the extract from Plutarch, be classified as secondary source?
- 3 In this SkillBuilder you have worked with a Spartan cup and a bronze figure (artefacts) and written accounts by two ancient Greek historians. Identify three other types of primary sources that a historian could use for a study of ancient Greece.
- 4 Explain why it is sometimes difficult to judge the reliability of ancient Greek primary sources?

5.13 Review

In this topic we have explored the world of the ancient Greeks, their city-states and the things they had in common, including myths, religion and culture. We also discovered about ideas that arose in ancient Greece and which continue to influence our lives today.

5.13.1 Review

Chronology: timeline of ancient Greece



on Resources

Interactivity

Ancient Greece timeline

Create a visual timeline of key events in ancient Greece.

int-2937

Key knowledge: summary

5.2 Examining the evidence

- There is an abundance of archaeological evidence from ancient Greek civilisation.
- Remains include the shells of whole buildings, amphitheatres, statues, relief sculptures and vases painted with scenes from myths and aspects of everyday life.
- The ancient Greeks left many written sources, including histories, poetry and drama.

5.3 The Minoans and Mycenaeans

- Minoan civilisation developed on Crete from around 3000 BCE and was destroyed around 1575 BCE.
- Mycenaean civilisation flourished between 1400 and 1200 BCE.
- The Mycenaeans were legendary conquerors of Troy, as told in the *Iliad*.

5.4 The 'Dark Age' to the Archaic Period

- Geographical features shaped the kind of civilisation that developed in Greece and its patterns of trade.
- Most Mycenaean citadels were abandoned in this period and the art of writing was lost.
- Dorians occupied much of southern Greece.
- Many Greeks migrated from the Greek mainland.

5.5 Government in Athens and Sparta

- The city-states of Athens and Sparta developed very different forms of government.
- Under the Spartan system, power was concentrated in the hands of a few families.
- Athens adopted democracy from 508 BCE.

5.6 Everyday life in Sparta

- From around 650 BCE, Sparta became a harsh military state.
- Spartan enslavement of the Messenians made the Spartan way of life both possible and necessary.
- Spartan women had more power than Athenian women.
- The Messenian helots never abandoned their desire for freedom.

5.7 Everyday life in Athens

- From the fifth century BCE, Athens was a rich and beautiful city with a flourishing culture.
- Men ruled Athenian society. Women were denied education and had very few rights.
- Athenian burial customs reflected those of most of the ancient Greek world.

5.8 Laws, myth, gods and oracles

- Each Greek city-state appears to have had its own laws.
- The myths and gods of ancient Greece were common to all Greek city-states.
- The ancient Greeks believed in oracles, the most important of which was at Delphi, where they believed they could receive messages from the gods.

5.9 The Olympic Games

- The ancient Greek Olympic festival was held every four years to honour the god Zeus.
- The festival contributed to a common sense of Greek identity.
- The festival was very different to the modern Olympic Games.

5.10 Greeks, Persians and Alexander the Great

- When the Persian Empire invaded Greece, many of the Greek city-states united and they were able to inflict crushing defeats on the Persians.
- The Greek city-states were weakened by the Peloponnesian Wars and were conquered by Macedonia in 338 BCE.
- Philip's son, Alexander the Great, became ruler of Macedon and Greece.
- Alexander invaded the Persian Empire and created a vast empire, stretching from India in the east to Egypt in the south-west and Macedonia in the north-west.

5.11 The heritage of ancient Greece

- The heritage of ancient Greece includes the idea of democracy and the Olympic Games.
- Another legacy of ancient Greece were developments in science and the arts.
- Rome absorbed Greek culture and contributed to passing down Greek ideas through the ages.

Key knowledge: multiple-choice topic test

1. Which of the following causes probably contributed to the collapse of the Minoan civilisation?
 - a. Lack of trade
 - b. A tsunami and earthquakes
 - c. Plagues
 - d. Floods
2. The earliest Mycenaean stories to appear in written sources are which of these?
 - a. The *Iliad* and *Odyssey*
 - b. The *Bible*
 - c. The *Koran*
 - d. The *Upanishads*
3. Many Greek city-states were isolated from each other due to which of these geographical features?
 - a. Rivers
 - b. Deserts
 - c. Mountains
 - d. Seas
4. In ancient Athens, ostracism meant which of the following fates?
 - a. Imprisonment
 - b. Torture
 - c. Enslavement
 - d. Exile
5. Which of the following people in Athens were excluded from the rights of citizens?
 - a. Farmers and soldiers
 - b. Poor people
 - c. Women, metics and slaves
 - d. Rich people
6. Which of the following resources did the ancient Greeks import?
 - a. Olive oil and grapes
 - b. Bronze and timber
 - c. Wine and beer
 - d. Pottery
7. Although Spartan women could not be citizens, they could:
 - a. vote.
 - b. hold public office.
 - c. fight in wars.
 - d. own land.
8. Helots were which of the following?
 - a. Messenians enslaved by the Spartans
 - b. Allies of the Athenians
 - c. Followers of Alexander the Great
 - d. Peoples of the Persian Empire
9. In Athens, the large temple dedicated to the goddess Athena was called:
 - a. the Agora.
 - b. Attica.
 - c. the Parthenon.
 - d. the Erechtheion.
10. An event that was part of the ancient Greek Olympic festival but not part of the modern Olympic Games was:
 - a. long distance running.
 - b. the high jump.
 - c. discus throwing.
 - d. the pankration.

11. Marathon, Thermopylae and Salamis were the sites of major battles in which of these conflicts?
 - a. The Trojan War
 - b. The Persian Wars
 - c. The Peloponnesian Wars
 - d. The Macedonian conquest of Greece
12. Which of the following ancient Greeks contributed to ideas in medicine?
 - a. Hippocrates
 - b. Socrates
 - c. Sappho
 - d. Aristophanes

5.13.2 Respond

Using historical sources as evidence

1. Write an analysis of this source based on the following questions.
 - a. What are the main details of the painting on the vase?
 - b. What types of skilled craft workers or artists would have created the vase?
 - c. Why would it have been created?
 - d. What evidence does it provide of ancient Greek artistic skills?
 - e. What evidence does it provide of ancient Greek beliefs and values?

SOURCE 1 A red-figured stamnos (a type of ancient Greek vase) from about 430–420 BCE. The mythical scene shows Helen being abducted by Theseus.



Determining historical significance

Alexander the Great is considered to be one of the most significant individuals not just in ancient Greek history but in ancient history generally. Write a half- to one-page assessment of Alexander's significance using the following points as a guide:

- how Alexander maintained his power in Greece
- Alexander's invasion and defeat of the Persian Empire
- the extent of his conquests by the time of his death
- the effect of his rule on the Greek city-states
- the significance of his role in spreading Greek culture.

Responding to the big questions

At the beginning of this topic several big questions were posed. Use the knowledge and understanding you have gained through your study of the subtopics to answer them:

1. How did the environment of ancient Greece influence its civilisation?
2. How were ancient Greek societies organised and ruled?
3. What were the main beliefs, values and cultural achievements of the ancient Greeks?
4. What conflicts took place within Greece and between Greek city-states and other societies?
5. What can ancient sources tell us about life in ancient Greece?
6. What have been the legacies of ancient Greece?

6

Ancient Rome

6.1 Overview

6.1.1 LINKS WITH OUR TIMES

In the early twenty-first century we live in a world in which one superpower, the United States of America, has such enormous military power that it can dominate much of the world. The last time one power was so dominant was the age of the Roman Empire. Between the second century BCE and the second century CE, Rome came to control most of the known world. For some, Roman rule brought peace and prosperity; for others it brought slavery and death. Rome was a violent society that spread its power through wars of conquest and entertained its people with cruel public exhibitions. But it was also a society that saw great achievements in science, engineering, politics, law and literature. In the fifth century CE the Roman Empire collapsed, but many of its achievements lived on. Roman ideas have contributed in many ways to our own society. Today, largely because of the remaining traces of its ancient greatness, Rome continues to attract more visitors than almost any city in the modern world.

BIG QUESTIONS

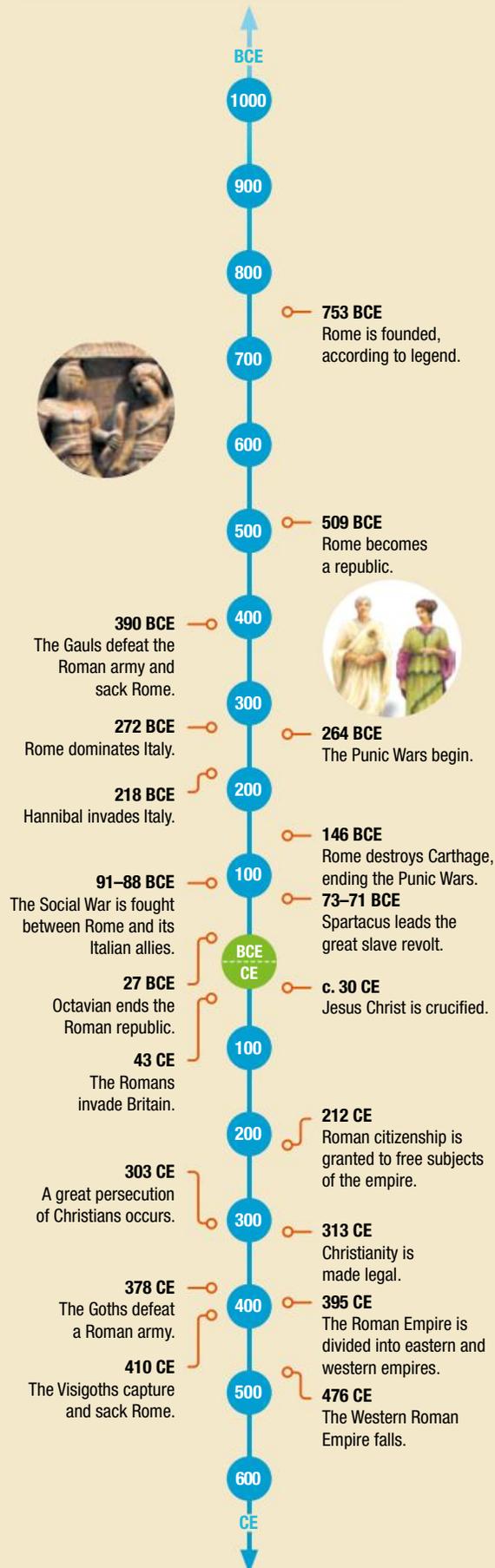
As you work through this topic, look for information that will help you to answer these questions:

- 1 What can primary sources tell us about life in ancient Rome?
- 2 What were the main beliefs, values and cultural achievements of the ancient Romans?
- 3 What were some of the most significant events in the history of ancient Rome?
- 4 How were ancient Rome and its empire organised and governed?
- 5 What were the effects of conflicts within Roman society and between Rome and other societies?
- 6 What have been the legacies of ancient Rome?

STARTER QUESTIONS

- 1 What movies have you seen that are set in ancient Rome?
- 2 How was ancient Rome portrayed in those movies?
- 3 Who were gladiators and why did they sometimes fight to the death?
- 4 For many years ancient Rome was a republic. What do you think this means?

A TIMELINE OF ANCIENT ROME





6.2 Examining the evidence

learn on

To access videos, interactivities, discussion widgets, image galleries, weblinks and more, go to www.jacplus.com.au

pumice lava ejected from a volcano that solidifies into a light, porous rock

6.2.1 How do we know about ancient Rome?

The Romans left many written records of their times. Among ancient Roman writers who are still read today are the historians Seneca (c. 4–65 CE), Tacitus (c. 55–117 CE) and Suetonius (c. 69–140 CE). The former Roman Empire is also rich in archaeological sources. Among the millions of visitors Italy receives each year are many who travel to see traces of ancient Roman civilisation. These traces include columns and arches erected by the Roman emperors, buildings such as the Colosseum and the remains of the ancient Roman Forum.

Pompeii

Many also visit the ruins of Pompeii, which reveal a picture of what life was like for ancient Romans. Pompeii is near the Italian city of Naples. Along with the nearby town of Herculaneum, Pompeii was destroyed when Mount Vesuvius erupted on 24 August, 79 CE. The volcano threw pillars of ash and a soft porous rock called **pumice** into the air. Pompeii, its buildings and people were buried in volcanic ash more than three metres deep. Herculaneum was hit by a blast of superheated gas that killed everyone. The town was then covered in boiling ash, pumice and rocks.

When archaeologists led by Giuseppe Fiorelli excavated Pompeii in the nineteenth century, they unearthed the streets, shops, houses and other structures of the coastal resort town of 15 000 people, along with games, decorations and even graffiti, all of which were as if ‘frozen in time’. They pumped plaster into cavities left by bodies in the hardened ash to create the forms you can see in **SOURCES 1** in **2**. Pompeii provides us with detailed evidence of Roman town life because:

- the town was destroyed very quickly and few people escaped
- those lucky enough to escape had no time to take their belongings
- the town was preserved undisturbed under metres of ash for more than 1700 years.

SOURCE 1 Plaster casts of victims of the volcanic eruption that destroyed Pompeii



SOURCE 2 Plaster cast of a dog that was killed by the volcanic eruption

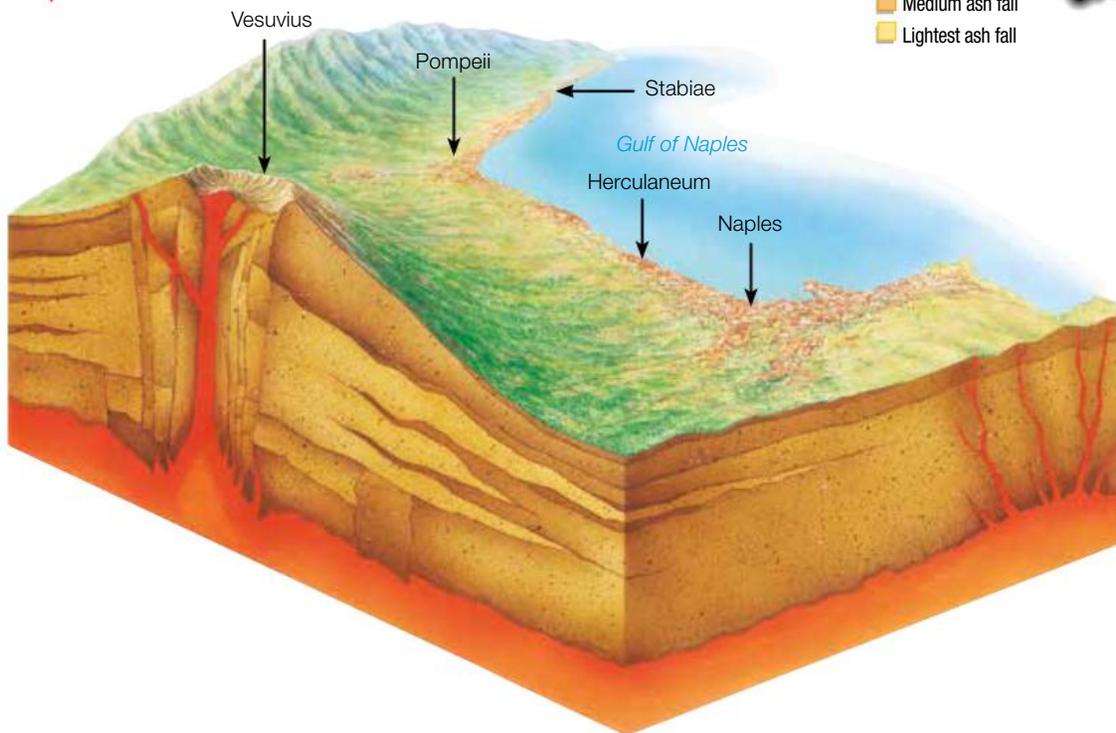
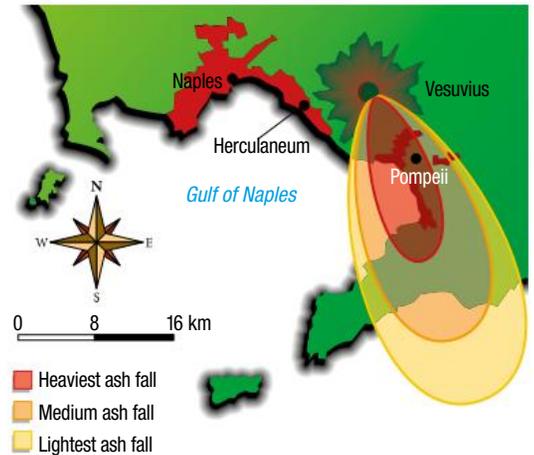


SOURCE 3 From an account by Pliny the Younger, who, as a young man, witnessed the destruction of Pompeii

By now ash, which became hotter and thicker . . . was falling on the boats. This was followed by pieces of tufa [porous rock] and stones blackened, burnt and cracked by the fire . . . Meanwhile sheets of flame and tall columns of fire were belching forth from several parts of Vesuvius, their flashing and intensity heightened by the darkness of the night . . . The buildings were being frequently and violently shaken and seemed as they tottered backwards and forwards to be being moved from their foundations . . .

SOURCE 4 Pompeii and Herculaneum were totally destroyed by the eruption of Vesuvius. At first, the volcano spurted a column of ash and pumice high into the air, which fell back like rain. As the energy in the eruption weakened, the column collapsed into a glowing avalanche. Herculaneum, which had escaped the earlier fallout of ash, was covered by about 20 metres of boiling 'mud' — a mixture of hot ash, pumice and rocks.

SOURCE 5 The eruption of Mt Vesuvius. The prevailing winds carried most of the fallout from the explosion south, and Pompeii was soon covered by three to four metres of ash and pumice.



6.2 PUTTING IT ALL TOGETHER

USING HISTORICAL SOURCES AS EVIDENCE

1 Look closely at **SOURCE 1**.

- a** Using the information in this subtopic, explain how the archaeologists created these forms.
- b** Describe the positions of the bodies.
- c** Do you think these people died quickly? Give reasons for your answer.

2 Study **SOURCE 2**. How can you tell that this dog suffered a very different death from the people in **SOURCE 1**?

3 **SOURCE 3** is an eyewitness account.

- a** What happened to people who tried to escape in boats?
- b** How do we know that the eruption of Vesuvius was accompanied by earth tremors?

4 List three questions you would ask about each of these three sources if you were using them as evidence for the destruction of Pompeii.

5 Explain why Pompeii is considered one of our most valuable sources for understanding everyday life in the Roman Empire.

6.3 The rise of the Romans

6.3.1 Rome's origins

Rome has a very long history — from at least 753 BCE, and possibly earlier, to the collapse of the Roman Empire in 476 CE. Historians call the period 509–27 BCE the Roman Republic and the following period the Roman Empire, because Rome was then ruled by emperors. However, Rome had been building an empire long before it was ruled by emperors.

The ancient Romans explained their origins through myths. In the myth of Romulus and Remus, twin boys were raised by a she-wolf. When they grew up they decided to establish a town on the site where the she-wolf found them. In 753 BCE, after killing his brother Remus during an argument, Romulus became the first ruler of a collection of villages on the site of present-day Rome. Over the following century these villages grew into a city, and the wolf became its symbol.

The Romans and their neighbouring tribes were Latins. They lived on the plain of Latium, which had a mild climate, fertile soils and a reliable water supply in the Tiber River. The city is located where the Tiber is easy to cross and close to salt flats (salt was a very important commodity in ancient times). Rome's central location in Italy would make it easy for Roman armies to travel in several directions to combat enemies. During the sixth century BCE, Etruscan kings (from Etruria to the north) ruled Rome brutally. In 509 BCE the Romans rebelled. They expelled their last Etruscan king and developed a system of government unlike that of other city-states: Rome became a **republic**. By this time Rome was the most powerful city-state on the plain of Latium.

SOURCE 1 These items were found in a Latin (possibly Roman) tomb of a military commander who was buried about 475 BCE, soon after Rome became a republic. They include his bronze body armour, helmet, axe and spearheads (held in the National Archaeological Museum of Rome).



learn on

To access videos, interactivities, discussion widgets, image galleries, weblinks and more, go to www.jacplus.com.au

DID YOU KNOW?

In the early Roman Republic most political power was held by the heads of a few powerful families. The most powerful position was consul. There were two consuls, who commanded the military and dealt with legal disputes. The republic lasted for almost 500 years.

republic system of government in which the head of state is not a monarch

6.3.1 Activities

CHECK YOUR UNDERSTANDING

- 1 According to legend, why did the wolf become a symbol of Rome?
- 2 How did Rome become a republic?
- 3 What were Rome's geographical advantages?

USING HISTORICAL SOURCES AS EVIDENCE

- 4 Compare **SOURCE 1** with images of Greek soldiers in topic 5. Which items in **SOURCE 1** indicate that the Latins, including Romans, were influenced by the ancient Greeks?

6.3.2 Rome's growing power

Over the next two centuries Rome expanded its power through war. In 493 BCE Rome made a treaty with the other Latin tribes to subdue the Aequi and Volsci, hill tribes that raided the plain of Latium. In 396 BCE Rome captured the powerful Etruscan city of Veii. But a few years later the Gauls from the north defeated the Roman army and destroyed much of Rome. In time the Romans set about rebuilding their power, and by 272 BCE they had inflicted more defeats on the hill tribes and the Etruscans, suppressed revolts by their former Latin allies, crushed the **Samnites** and taken control of the Greek colonies in the south.

Samnites a mountain tribe of central Italy

Tactics of power

By 272 BCE Rome had almost 150 000 inhabitants and controlled most of Italy. It had become wealthy through plundering and taxing those it defeated. To control such a vast area, the Romans:

- used conquered peoples against one another
- made alliances with former rivals
- sold defeated enemies into slavery
- allowed conquered cities to keep their own local government, but forced them to supply troops for Rome
- colonised strategically important places with Roman citizens.

SOURCE 3 From a description by the ancient Roman historian Livy of a Roman victory over the Volscians in 385 BCE

The large enemy forces, relying only on their numbers . . . were bold only in battle cry, throwing of missiles and the first onrush of the battle; sword-fighting, holding ground, an enemy's face flashing in its fury they could not stand up to. Their front lines were driven in and panic spread to the supporting troops . . . then the ranks were broken in many places . . . After that, as the first lines collapsed and everyone saw his own turn to be killed was coming to him, they turned and ran. The Romans followed hard on their heels, and so long as they kept their weapons and fled in a packed crowd, it was the infantry's task to keep up the pursuit. But when the enemy were seen to be throwing away their weapons and scattering widely over the land, then came the moment for the cavalry squadrons to be let loose . . . and by riding across their path hold the column until the infantry could catch up and finish the enemy off with a regular massacre.

SOURCE 2 Italy in the sixth century BCE



Source: Map drawn by Spatial Vision.

myWorldHistoryAtlas

Deepen and check your understanding of the topic with the following resources and auto-marked questions:
Republican Rome

6.3.2 Activities

CHECK YOUR UNDERSTANDING

- 1 What caused Rome to be involved in several wars between 493 BCE and 272 BCE?
- 2 What were the effects of these wars on Rome's Power?

USING HISTORICAL SOURCES AS EVIDENCE

- 3 Use **SOURCE 2** to make a list of the peoples the Romans defeated to gain control of Italy.
- 4 Read **SOURCE 3**.
 - a According to this source, what were the weaknesses of the Volscians?
 - b When the Volscians fled, what was the task of the Roman infantry?

- c How was the Roman cavalry used?
 - d What hypothesis could you form from this source about Roman attitudes to defeated enemies?
 - e Titus Livy (born in 59 BCE) spent more than forty years in Rome while writing his *History of Rome*. Do you think he could be biased? Give reasons for your answer.
 - f How might a Roman soldier who had been in this battle have felt about Livy's description?
- 5 Create a comic strip to demonstrate the Roman tactics described by Livy.
 - 6 Write an account of this battle as it might have been told by a surviving Volscian.

6.3 PUTTING IT ALL TOGETHER

IDENTIFYING CONTINUITY AND CHANGE

- 1 Using the sources and other information in this subtopic, identify the ways in which Rome changed between 509 and 272 BCE.

ANALYSING CAUSE AND EFFECT

- 2 Explain how Rome achieved the changes that occurred between 509 and 272 BCE.

6.4 The spreading empire

6.4.1 Building the empire through war

Over the following centuries the Romans continued to expand their empire. By 146 BCE Rome was the strongest power in the area around the Mediterranean Sea. Its empire continued to grow, reaching its greatest extent in the late second century CE.

The Punic Wars

In the First Punic War (264–241 BCE), the Romans defeated Carthage, a powerful North African naval and trading city that had colonies around the Mediterranean. Rome's victory gave it control of Sardinia and Sicily and weakened a trading rival.

The Second Punic War (218–202 BCE) began when the Carthaginian general Hannibal led an invading army, including 40 elephants, over the freezing Alps and down into Italy (see **SOURCE 2**). In major battles at Trebia, Lake Trasimene and Cannae, Hannibal's force defeated Roman armies and gained allies in Italy. However, the Romans would not give in. On the advice of the general and consul Fabius Maximus, the Romans avoided further formal battles. When Rome launched counterattacks on Carthaginian Spain and North Africa, Hannibal's army had to return to defend their city. The Second Punic War ended with Hannibal's defeat at Zama in 202 BCE.

At the end of the Third Punic War in 146 BCE, following a long siege, the Romans finally captured Carthage. They destroyed the city totally. Every one of its people was killed or sold into slavery.

learn on

To access videos, interactivities, discussion widgets, image galleries, weblinks and more, go to www.jacplus.com.au

SOURCE 1 Hannibal's route and major battles in the Second Punic War



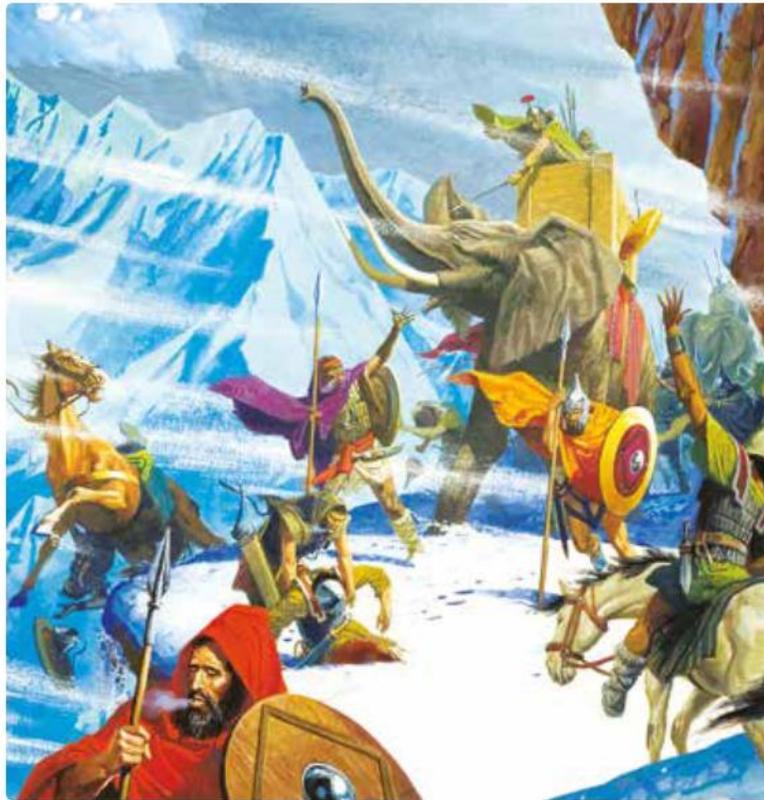
Source: Map drawn by Spatial Vision.

The Social War and the growing empire

In 91 BCE Rome's Italian allies united against it. Their main grievance was that Rome would not allow them to become Roman citizens even though they provided most of the empire's soldiers. This conflict is known as the Social War. The Italian allies lost the war but won the right to be Roman citizens.

By about 30 BCE the Roman Empire had grown to include most lands around the Mediterranean. It was extended far to the north when the Romans invaded Britain in 43 CE. They defeated the British tribes but were unable to defeat the tribes of Scotland. By 96 CE the empire extended to the Rhine and Danube rivers in northern Europe, and to Armenia and Mesopotamia in the east (see the map in 6.6 Citizens and rulers).

SOURCE 2 A modern artist's impression of Hannibal's forces crossing the Alps



myWorldHistoryAtlas

Deepen and check your understanding of the topic with the following resources and auto-marked questions:

Punic Wars

learn on

To access videos, interactivities, discussion widgets, image galleries, weblinks and more, go to www.jacplus.com.au

6.4.1 Activities

CHECK YOUR UNDERSTANDING

- 1 Name the three major battles in which Hannibal defeated the Romans.
- 2 How did Fabius Maximus outmanoeuvre Hannibal?
- 3 What caused the Social War?
- 4 How far north did the Roman Empire extend by 43 CE?

USING HISTORICAL SOURCES AS EVIDENCE

- 5 Use **SOURCES 1** and **2** and an atlas to:
 - a list the modern countries through which Hannibal's forces would have reached Italy
 - b describe the hazards of Hannibal's route
 - c suggest what this strategy might tell us about Hannibal as a military leader.

6.4 PUTTING IT ALL TOGETHER

IDENTIFYING CONTINUITY AND CHANGE

- 1 In modern times, how would we describe a power that massacred and enslaved the entire population of a city, as the Romans did the people of Carthage?
- 2 Hold a class discussion on the following question: Should we judge the actions of

people from the ancient past by the moral standards of our own age?

ANALYSING CAUSE AND EFFECT

- 3 Identify the trade advantages, especially in sea trade, that Rome would have gained as a result of destroying the power of Carthage.

6.5 The Roman army

6.5.1 Roman army weapons and tactics

Until the end of the first century BCE, the Roman army was made up of citizens who owned land. They had to provide their own equipment and armour. The fighting season was from late spring until early autumn, after which the soldiers returned to their lives as farmers. Fighting was popular among Romans, as a successful general could earn much glory and become very wealthy.

As the area under Roman control grew, a bigger and better organised fighting force was needed. In 396 BCE soldiers began to be paid, marking the start of Rome's professional army.

The Roman army was one of the most disciplined military forces that has ever existed. Men between the ages of 17 and 22 enlisted for around 20 years. They had to be fit.

learn on

To access videos, interactivities, discussion widgets, image galleries, weblinks and more, go to www.jacplus.com.au

SOURCE 1 Roman soldiers were very well trained and well equipped.

A Each legion marched into battle behind a standard — a tall pole with a silver eagle at the top. This symbol of the 'king of the birds' represented the legion's power.

B Sandals had to be strong and well ventilated to stand up to long marches. A special pattern of iron studs was hammered into the leather soles to support the weight of the soldier evenly, and help protect the soles.

C The dagger had a double-edged blade.

D These tall, crested helmets helped soldiers see their leaders in battle.



E Roman forts were often protected against attack by palisades — sharp stakes of wood dug into the ground (some with barbs attached).

F Soldiers often stood side by side and overlapped their shields to form a protective cover called a testudo. The word 'testudo' comes from the Latin word for tortoise.

6.5.1 Activities

CHECK YOUR UNDERSTANDING

- 1 Why did the Roman army originally fight only between spring and autumn?
- 2 What began to change in the Roman army from 396 BCE and why?

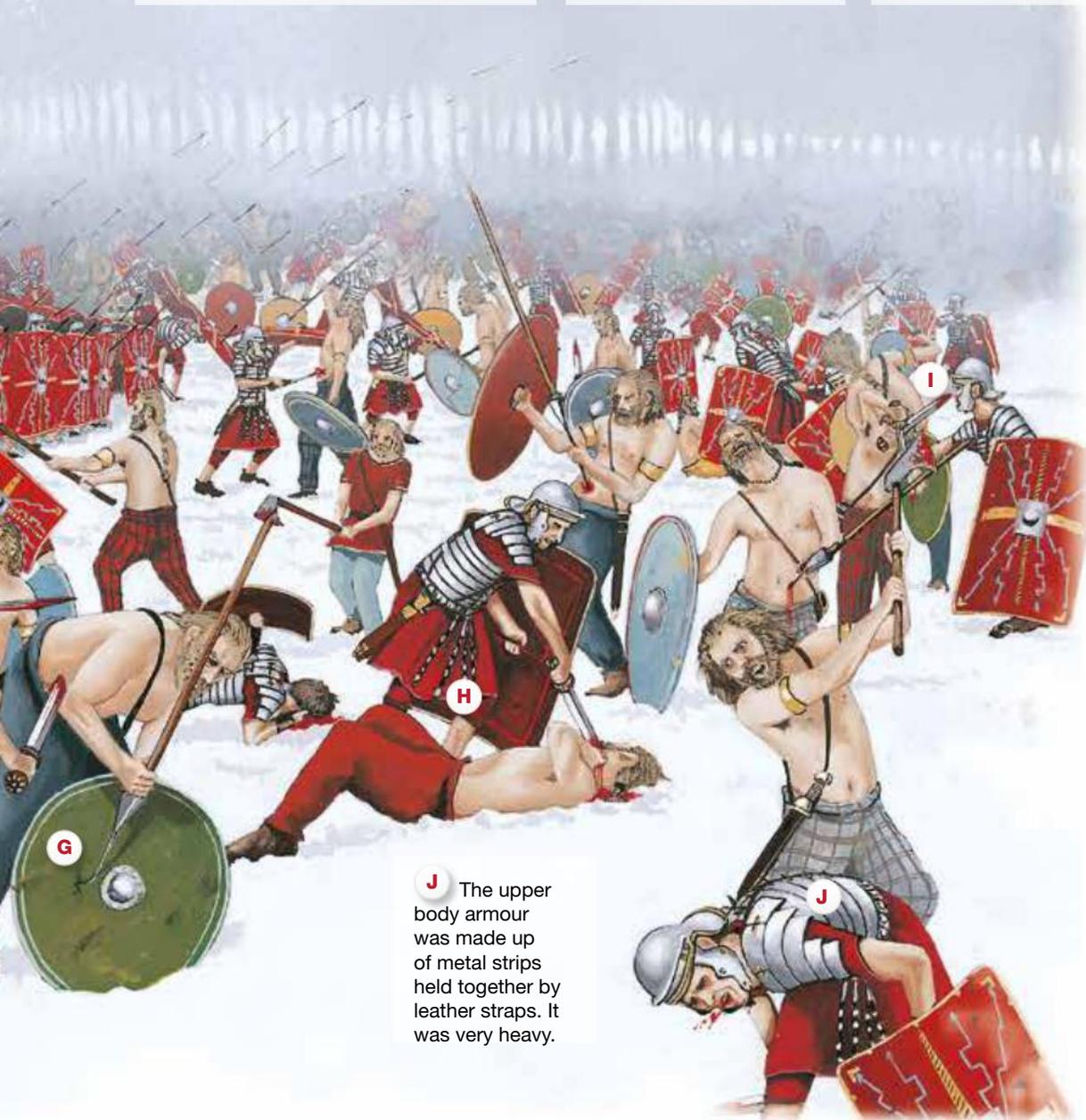
USING HISTORICAL SOURCES AS EVIDENCE

- 3 Use **SOURCE 1** to do the following.
 - a Sketch and label a diagram of a testudo.
 - b Explain what was meant to happen when a Roman javelin pierced an enemy's shield.
 - c Discuss why the tactics and weapons shown in **SOURCE 1** made the Romans formidable enemies.

G The head of the heavy javelin was connected to the shaft by a long, thin strip of soft iron. When the point penetrated an enemy's shield, this strip would bend, making the javelin impossible to remove.

H The decorated leather strips on these belts showed the rank of a soldier. They also helped to protect against a groin injury.

I The short sword, about 60 cm long, was used to stab rather than slash. It was a very effective killing device at close quarters.



J The upper body armour was made up of metal strips held together by leather straps. It was very heavy.

auxiliaries soldiers in the Roman army drawn from areas conquered by Rome and made part of its empire

aqueduct structure built to carry water long distances

6.5.2 A Roman soldier's harsh life

Soldiers were not supposed to marry, although many did in secret. As well, their food and equipment had to be paid for from their wages. Extra soldiers, called **auxiliaries**, were provided by countries Rome had conquered.

When not marching or fighting, the soldiers, called legionaries, built camps, roads, walls and **aqueducts**. Sometimes camps were temporary; at other times, they became permanent forts that often developed into towns. They were always laid out the same way. This meant that soldiers knew how to build them and find their way around them.

SOURCE 2 The Roman historian Polybius reports that discipline in the army was harsh, with penalties that included death.

A court martial composed of the tribunes is convened at once to try [a soldier for being careless on patrol duty]. If he is found guilty he is punished by the bastinado. This is inflicted as follows: the tribune takes a cudgel [short, heavy stick] and just touches the condemned man with it, after which all in the camp beat or stone him, in most cases dispatching [killing] him in the camp itself.

loot goods or property taken from a defeated enemy after a battle

Soldiers were often allowed to share the **loot** from a battle. Many were also given land when they retired. Such rewards helped to win support for military leaders who sought political power.

DID YOU KNOW?

The harshest punishment in the Roman army was decimation. It means 'removal of a tenth'. If a unit of the army was considered guilty of mutiny or cowardice, its soldiers were divided into groups of ten. Each group drew lots to decide which one would be killed. The remaining nine soldiers then had to kill their unfortunate comrade, usually by clubbing or stoning him.

Organisation of the Roman army

Unit	Composition
Century	About 80–100 men
Cohort	Six centuries
Legion	Ten cohorts

6.5.2 Activities

CHECK YOUR UNDERSTANDING

- 1 What did Roman soldiers have to pay for out of their wages?
- 2 How were Roman soldiers employed when not fighting?
- 3 What benefits could soldiers receive and what was one motive of military leaders who provided such benefits?

USING HISTORICAL SOURCES AS EVIDENCE

- 4 According to Polybius in **SOURCE 2**, what punishment was given to a Roman soldier who was careless on patrol duty?
- 5 Why do you think such brutal discipline was used?

6.5 PUTTING IT ALL TOGETHER

USING HISTORICAL SOURCES AS EVIDENCE

- 1 Imagine you are a new legionary. Using **SOURCES 1** and **2** as a reference, write a letter to your family describing what you see as the good and bad aspects of life as a Roman soldier.
- 2 Use the internet to research and create an illustrated report on Roman siege engines and forts.

6.6 Citizens and rulers

6.6.1 Social divisions

After the Romans had expelled the last Etruscan king (c. 509 BCE), they introduced a system of government called a republic. In theory, all Roman citizens had a say in how the city was to be run. In practice, power was controlled by the rich upper classes. Over the next 500 years, however, more of the people got a say, although women and slaves still had no voice at all.

To qualify as a Roman citizen you had to be 25 or older, a male and freeborn (not born a slave). Whether or not you were classed as a slave depended on the status of your mother: if she was freeborn, so were you. Citizens could vote on the way Rome was ruled. They were also protected by Roman laws.

Roman citizens were divided into two classes — **patricians** and **plebeians** (see **SOURCE 2** in 6.6.2). Patricians came from the small number of aristocratic families that had founded the Republic and tended to have both wealth and influence. Everyone else was a plebeian. This didn't stop some plebeians becoming very rich, but they rarely won the same influence as patricians.

There were many more plebeians than patricians, though, and in the fourth century the plebeians even went on strike to force the patricians to surrender some of their power!

One thing the plebeians won from this strike was the right to elect 10 men every year as tribunes, or 'protectors of the people'. The tribunes could *veto* (Latin for 'I forbid') what any other politician was trying to do. In theory, this veto was used to protect the interests of the ordinary people.

patricians members of the aristocratic families that founded the Republic

plebeians all non-patrician citizens of Rome

SOURCE 1 Romans from the first century CE, depicted on an altar held in the National Museum of Rome



learn on

To access videos, interactivities, discussion widgets, image galleries, weblinks and more, go to www.jacplus.com.au

6.6.1 Activities

CHECK YOUR UNDERSTANDING

- 1 Who could be a Roman citizen?
- 2 In theory, who had a say in how the Roman Republic was run?
- 3 In practice, which social class really ran Rome?

- 4 How did some of the ordinary people gain a share of power in the fourth century BCE?

USING HISTORICAL SOURCES AS EVIDENCE

- 5 To which social class do you think the Romans in **SOURCE 1** would have belonged? Give the reasons for your answer.

6.6.2 Ruling the Roman Republic

Every year, Rome would elect more than 50 men to run the city. These men were known as **magistrates**, but they held office for only one year and they always had one or more colleague with the same degree of power. Roman politicians competed to get elected as more and more powerful magistrates. Once a man had held office as a magistrate, he became a member of the **Senate**. (The word *Senate* derives from the Latin *senex*, meaning 'old man'.) In theory, the Senate acted as a council of advisers to the consuls, but in reality they held much direct power. Meetings of the Senate were controlled by the consuls, the most senior magistrates (see **SOURCE 2**).

magistrates men elected by the citizens to run Rome for a year

Senate governing body in ancient Rome, (in theory) an advisory body of ex-magistrates

Voting in the Roman Republic

All citizens had the right to express their opinion by voting in one of several assemblies (similar to a modern parliament). These assemblies also elected the magistrates every year. Originally voting was by a show of hands, but eventually this public expression was replaced by a secret ballot. Citizens carved either 'V' (disagree) or 'A' (agree) on a small piece of wax. The pieces were then put in a container to be counted.

learn on

To access videos, interactivities, discussion widgets, image galleries, weblinks and more, go to www.jacplus.com.au

Democracy or not?

Although it might seem that the Roman Republic was a democracy, this was not so. When the republic first started, the plebeians, although citizens, had no real say, as their votes did not count as much as those of the patricians. This made the plebeians angry. In time, they set up their own assembly. The patricians were worried by this, as they knew that the plebeians (who had far greater numbers) could revolt and overrun them. So, eventually, the patricians let them elect tribunes to put forward their views. In 366 BCE a tribune became a consul for the first time; consul was the highest rank in the Republic. By 287 BCE all decisions of the plebeians' assembly were seen as lawful. Even so, the plebeians only ever had limited power compared with that of the patricians.

SOURCE 2 Magistrates would try to move up through the ranks as this increased their wealth and power.



Senator (also a patrician)

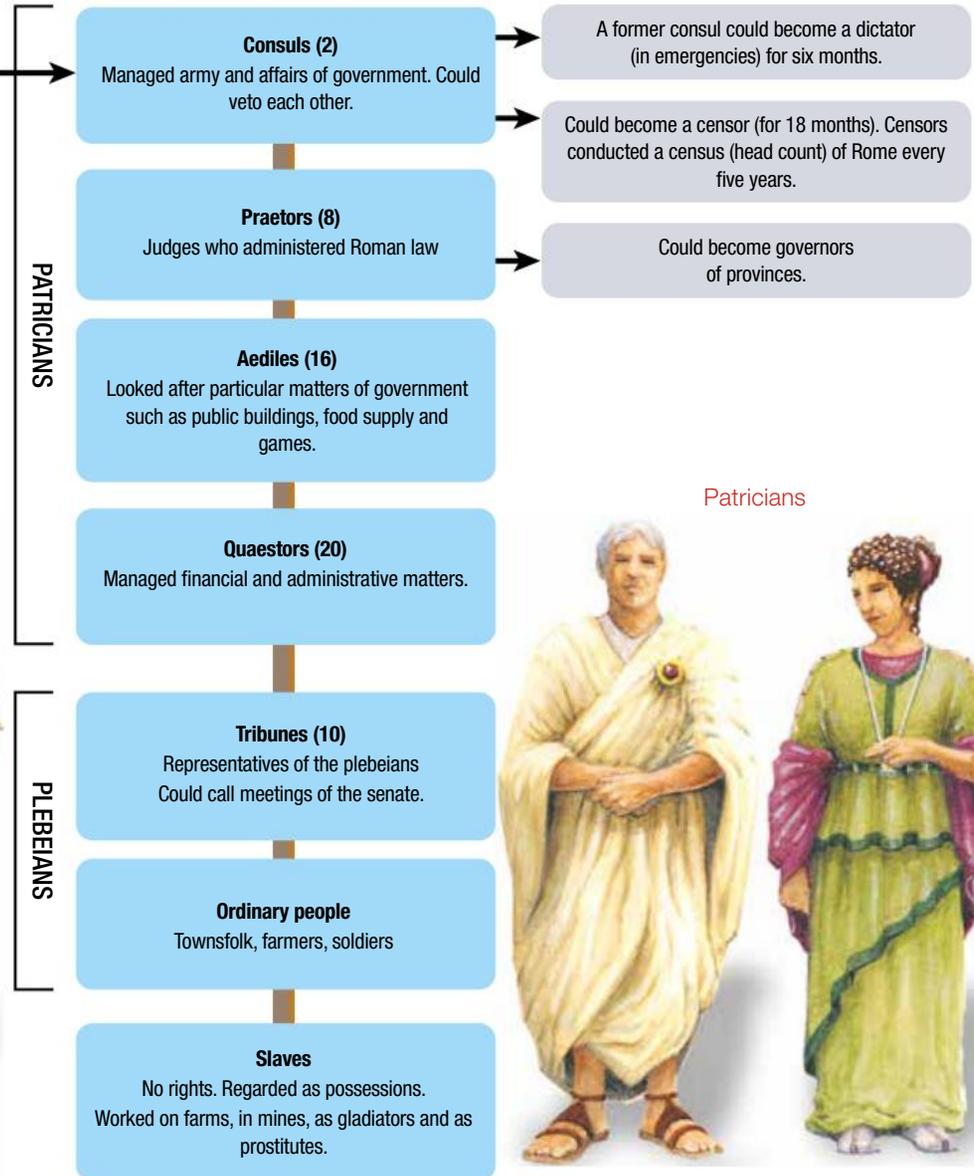


Plebeian

Plebeian



Patricians



6.6.2 Activities

CHECK YOUR UNDERSTANDING

- 1 What was a magistrate in ancient Rome?
- 2 How did a Roman become a member of the Senate?

USING HISTORICAL SOURCES AS EVIDENCE

- 3 Using **SOURCE 2**, describe the roles and powers of: consuls, praetors, aediles, quaestors and tribunes.

DID YOU KNOW?

Every Roman province had to pay taxes to the Roman authorities. In 212 CE Roman citizenship was granted to all free subjects of the empire. The empire's growth meant slavery for many. On the other hand, conquered people often adopted Roman ways, including styles of housing and dress, and many benefited from peace and increased trade. This peace imposed by the conquerors was called the Pax Romana.

DID YOU KNOW?

By contrast, Australia today is a true representative democracy. All its citizens now have the same rights and privileges, no matter what their gender, race or wealth. One of their rights is the right to vote. Australian citizens can have their own opinions and may express them without fear of being punished. Citizens aged over 18 can vote for politicians to represent them in government by marking a ballot paper issued during an election. Elections for Federal Parliament are usually held every three years. Federal Parliament consists of two houses — the House of Representatives and the Senate.

6.6.3 From republic to empire

With increased wealth and opportunity, competition for power among the patricians also intensified, plunging the city into chaos. In 27 BCE the Republic collapsed. So began the age of the emperors (a single ruler, often chosen by the Senate, but ruling much like a king). Although Julius Caesar (100–44 BCE) was not an emperor, his career marks the turning point from republic to empire (see **SOURCE 3**).

Julius Caesar

Julius Caesar outsmarted his political rivals and proved himself to be a brilliant general. His willingness to share the hardships of war, as well as the loot of battle, made him very popular with his soldiers. Using his loyal troops, Caesar seized power in 49 BCE by attacking the most powerful man in Rome, his great rival (and former friend) Pompey. In the ensuing civil war Caesar won control of Rome, and in 44 BCE he had himself appointed Dictator for Life.

SOURCE 3 Profile of Gaius Julius Caesar (based on the writings of the Roman historian Suetonius)

Born 100 BCE; died 44 BCE. Class: patrician

Well built, tall, fair hair, balding (combed his hair forward), dark brown eyes

Very fit, but sometimes had epileptic fits

Ambitious, but fair man who judged men on their fighting record

Good at sword fighting, horse riding, public speaking, writing

Often wore a wreath of laurel leaves on his head (as a sign of victory)

Introduced the Julian Calendar, used for more than 1500 years

Introduced a number of land, law, tax and social justice reforms



Caesar or rex?

Rex is the Latin word for king. Romans had hated kings since before they had thrown out their Etruscan rulers in 509 BCE. After Caesar's defeat of Pompey and seizure of power, some senators accused him of acting like a king. Perhaps this is why he chose not to take the title of *rex*.

SOURCE 4 Suetonius's description of Caesar's assassination (Suetonius lived about 69–140 CE)

As soon as Caesar took his seat [in the Senate House], the conspirators crowded around him as if to pay their respects. Tillius Cimber ... came up close, pretending to ask a question ... caught hold of [Caesar's] shoulders. 'This is violence!' Caesar cried, and at that moment one of the Casca brothers slipped behind and with a sweep of the dagger stabbed him just below the throat. Caesar grasped Casca's arm and ran it through with his stylus; he was leaping away when another dagger caught him in the breast. Confronted by a ring of drawn daggers, he drew the top of his gown over his face ... Twenty-three dagger thrusts went home as he stood there.

civil war war between rival factions within one state or country

Some of the senators who had survived the **civil war** decided they could not permit Caesar's power grab. They arranged for his murder on 15 March, 44 BCE. Among those involved in stabbing him to death were old and trusted friends such as Marcus Brutus.

The Roman Empire

After Caesar's assassination, his great-nephew Octavian (later called Augustus) took control of Rome. Eventually, following a period spent eliminating his rivals, he declared himself emperor. As Augustus, he founded a dynasty (family of leaders) that ruled the empire until 68 CE.

The Roman Empire endured until 476 CE under a series of emperors who either were given the title by the Senate or simply seized power.

SOURCE 5 The Roman Empire at its peak. The empire consisted of a number of provinces, each ruled by a governor.

learn on

To access videos, interactivities, discussion widgets, image galleries, weblinks and more, go to www.jacplus.com.au



Source: Map drawn by Spatial Vision.

myWorldHistoryAtlas

Deepen and check your understanding of the topic with the following resources and auto-marked questions:
Roman Civil Wars **Roman Empire**

6.6.3 Activities

CHECK YOUR UNDERSTANDING

- 1 When did the Roman Republic collapse?
- 2 How did Julius Caesar seize power?

USING HISTORICAL SOURCES AS EVIDENCE

- 3 Using **SOURCE 3**, identify and describe characteristics of Julius Caesar that would have helped his quest for power.
- 4 According to Suetonius in **SOURCE 4**, how many Romans must have taken part in the assassination of Caesar?
- 5 How would you test the reliability of **SOURCE 4**?

6.6 PUTTING IT ALL TOGETHER

USING HISTORICAL SOURCES AS EVIDENCE

- 1 Using the sources and information in this subtopic, what features of Rome's society, political system and growth of its empire could have made it difficult for Rome to remain a republic?

ANALYSING CAUSE AND EFFECT

- 2 In small groups discuss whether Caesar's ambition and method of seizing power was the cause of his assassination.

DETERMINING HISTORICAL SIGNIFICANCE

- 3 Evaluate the significance of Julius Caesar in changing the history of Rome.
- 4 Do you think the concerns of the senators would have been shared by the common people? Why or why not?

6.7 Spartacus and Nero: two significant individuals

6.7.1 Spartacus: leader of the great slave uprising

No two leaders could have been less alike, nor could they have played more different roles in Rome's history, than Spartacus the slave and Nero the emperor. Spartacus was a gladiator who led a massive slave rebellion that spread fear through Rome. Nero has long been regarded as a cruel and wasteful tyrant who became a symbol of the worst aspects of Roman power.

As the Roman Empire grew, so did the number of captives who were sold into slavery. Rome's wealth was built on slavery, and slaves usually had the most miserable lives of all people in its empire. Many slaves worked on the estates of rich Romans. Others were servants. For the slightest act of rebellion a slave could be killed by **crucifixion**.

Those who suffered most were miners, prostitutes and gladiators. Mineworkers rarely lived past the age of 21. Prostitutes often died young from abuse or disease. Few gladiators lived for long, as they were trained to fight to the death for the amusement of Roman crowds (see **SOURCES 2** and **3**). Unlike many slaves, however, gladiators knew how to fight.

At Capua, south of Rome, in 73 BCE an event took place that started a rebellion that shook the Roman Empire. It began when a group of gladiators overpowered their guards and escaped. Their main leader was a **Thracian** gladiator called Spartacus. Their numbers soon grew to thousands as they freed other slaves and taught them how to fight. They defeated each Roman legion that was sent to crush them, and by the following year the rebel force numbered about 10 000 and was growing fast as it raided Roman towns and freed more slaves. Panic spread through Rome.

The rebels were finally defeated. Two of their groups were wiped out by Roman legions. The main rebel force under Spartacus was at last defeated in a pitched battle in which as many as 60 000 rebels may have died fighting (see **SOURCES 4** and **5**). Six thousand were taken prisoner. As an example to others who might consider rebellion, the entire 6000 were crucified along the road from Capua to Rome.

SOURCE 1 A Roman stele (funerary monument) of a freedman (former slave), dressed in a toga, and his freedwoman wife



crucifixion slow, painful execution by being nailed or bound to a cross or pole

Thracian a native of the Roman province of Thracia (see **SOURCE 5** in 6.6.3 From republic to empire)

learn on

To access videos, interactivities, discussion widgets, image galleries, weblinks and more, go to www.jacplus.com.au

DID YOU KNOW?

Slaves had no rights at all until a law of the Emperor Claudius banned the practice of torturing or killing them. In reality, however, this law often failed to protect them. A few educated slaves had fairly comfortable lives and some slaves were granted their freedom or were able to save enough money to buy it, but for most slaves life was harsh.

SOURCE 2 From an account of gladiators in combat by the Roman historian Seneca (4–65 CE)

I arrived at the Colosseum in the middle of the day ... No sooner has a man killed his rival than the crowd shout for him to kill another, or be killed. In the end every fighter dies ... why watch their sufferings?

SOURCE 4 From an account of the slave revolt by the Greek historian Plutarch (c. 46–120 CE)

Spartacus ... was a Thracian from the nomadic tribes and not only had a great spirit and great physical strength, but was ... most intelligent and cultured ... Spartacus had grown to be a great and formidable power but ... could not expect to prove superior to the whole power of Rome, and so he began to lead his army towards the Alps ... His men, however, would not listen to him. They were strong in numbers and full of confidence ...
... both consuls were sent out to deal with what was considered a major war and a most difficult one to fight ...

SOURCE 3 A fragment of a relief sculpture depicting two gladiators named Scholasticus and Damascenus. It is from the third century CE. The sign θ indicates that Damascenus died in the fight. Most gladiators' lives ended this way, although a few very successful fighters were able to buy their freedom.



SOURCE 5 From Plutarch's description of the final battles of the revolt

Crassus's troops killed 12 300 men, but he found only two of them who were wounded in the back. All the rest died ... fighting back against the Romans.
... Spartacus ... surrounded by enemies, still stood his ground and died fighting to the last.

6.7.1 Activities

CHECK YOUR UNDERSTANDING

- 1 Which group in Roman society benefited most from slavery?
- 2 What do you think would have been the worst jobs for slaves?
- 3 Why were the gladiators able to launch a slave revolt?

USING HISTORICAL SOURCES AS EVIDENCE

- 4 Freedmen and freedwomen were former slaves. The toga was a sign of Roman citizenship. How does **SOURCE 1** provide evidence that some slaves were able to advance in Roman society?
- 5 Read **SOURCE 2**.
 - a How can you tell that not all Romans approved of gladiatorial combats?
 - b Do you think many Romans would have shared Seneca's perspective? Why do you think this?
- 6 Using **SOURCE 3** as your evidence, how long do you think a gladiator's career would be likely to last?
- 7 Read **SOURCES 4** and **5**. Explain what these sources say about:
 - a how big a threat the slave revolt posed to the power of Rome
 - b why Spartacus was finally defeated
 - c the courage of Spartacus and the other rebels.
- 8 Imagine you are a slave who has joined Spartacus. Write a letter to your fellow slaves telling them your reasons.

6.7.2 Nero: emperor, party-thrower and murderer

Nero Claudius Caesar Drusus Germanicus was the adopted son of Emperor Claudius. Nero was just 17 when he became emperor in 54 CE after his mother, Agrippina, had Claudius poisoned. At first Nero behaved like a competent and fair ruler but within five years he had murdered his step-brother and his mother and divorced his wife and step-sister Octavia, who he later murdered.

Nero sought popularity by spending vast sums of money raised by taxes on parties and public spectacles. Among the many terrible things attributed to him, Nero had high-ranking senators tortured and killed for treason so that he could confiscate their property to fund his wasteful lifestyle. By 68 CE, Rome's provinces rebelled against him. Fearing execution, Nero committed suicide.

SOURCE 6 An account of Nero's lifestyle by the ancient Roman writer Suetonius (c. 69–140 CE)

He gave an immense variety of entertainments . . . parties, chariot races in the Circus, stage plays, a gladiatorial show . . . and actually raced four-camel chariots! At the Great Festival, as he called the series of plays devoted to the eternity of the Empire . . . all kinds of gifts were scattered to the people . . .

Nero practiced every kind of obscenity, and . . . finally invented a novel game: he was released from a cage dressed in the skins of wild animals, and attacked the private parts of men and women who stood bound to stakes.

SOURCE 7 An extract from Alexander Canduci, *Triumph and Tragedy: the rise and fall of Rome's immortal emperors*, published in 2010

Nero was a conundrum [riddle]. His creative and artistic side sat uneasily next to his bloodthirsty paranoia [mental illness marked by fear of being persecuted] and . . . disregard for others . . . In the aftermath of the fire [the Great fire of Rome in 64 CE], rumours spread that Nero was the culprit who had started it. In order to throw suspicion off himself . . . Nero . . . began a campaign against the Christians . . . feeding them to the beasts at the great games, crucifying them and setting them alight.

SOURCE 8 An extract from an article written by Robert Draper 'Rethinking Nero', published in *National Geographic* in 2014

The case against Nero . . . would appear to be open and shut. And yet . . . his death was followed by outpourings of public grief . . . mourners long continued to bring flowers to his tomb . . .

The dead do not write their own history. Nero's first two biographers, Suetonius and Tacitus, had ties to the elite Senate and would memorialise his reign with lavish contempt . . .

Nero's early reign was golden. He banished Claudius's secret trials, issued pardons, and when asked for his signature on a death warrant, moaned, 'How I wish I had never learned to write!'

SOURCE 9 The site of Rome's Circus Maximus, where, according to Suetonius, Nero drove a chariot in a race



6.7.2 Activities

CHECK YOUR UNDERSTANDING

- 1 How did Nero become emperor of Rome?
- 2 What crimes did he commit against his own family?
- 3 How did he gain popularity?

USING HISTORICAL SOURCES AS EVIDENCE

- 4 For what two sides of Nero's character does **SOURCE 6** provide evidence?
- 5 Does **SOURCE 7** accept or support the view of Suetonius?
- 6 **SOURCE 8** questions the accepted view of Nero.
 - a How does it cast doubt on the reliability of Suetonius?
 - b What does it suggest about how the common people of Rome regarded the changes brought about by Nero?
 - c How does this interpretation differ from that of **SOURCE 7**?
- 7 Look at **SOURCE 9**, the site of the Circus Maximus, where Nero took part in a chariot race.
 - a Use the internet to discover what it looked like in Nero's time.
 - b Working in small groups, write a racing commentary on Nero's chariot race in a style that would have won favour with him.

6.7 PUTTING IT ALL TOGETHER

IDENTIFYING CONTINUITY AND CHANGE

- 1 Identify and describe ways in which people's lives were changed by Nero.

DETERMINING HISTORICAL SIGNIFICANCE

- 2 Explain why Spartacus should be regarded as a significant individual in Roman history.

6.8 Living in the Roman Empire

6.8.1 Changing Roman society

Around 90 per cent of people in the Roman Empire were peasants who lived on farms or in villages. Far fewer lived in towns and cities. Wherever they were, the poor lived very differently from wealthy Romans. Some plebeians became wealthy through trade but most were skilled or unskilled workers, shopkeepers or **tenant farmers**. As more slaves were used, increasing numbers of poor citizens became unemployed. By contrast, wealthy Romans usually did no physical work and lived in luxurious villas with baths and even underfloor heating. As the empire grew, so did the gap between the rich and the vast numbers of the poor.

Large Roman towns were well planned, with government buildings and a **forum** where the citizens could gather. The city of Rome had expensive villas for the rich and fine government buildings. The rich feasted at banquets where they ate lying on their sides on couches while being entertained by dancers and musicians. Some made it a habit to overeat then vomit so they could continue to feast.

Meanwhile, the poor survived on bread and porridge and lived in rented slums without kitchens, toilets, heating or running water (see **SOURCE 1**). Their drinking water came from public fountains and they washed in public baths. To keep the poor from rebelling, the ruling classes provided free grain, public baths and toilets and cruel forms of entertainment. They also encouraged the poor to live in colonies in conquered lands.

SOURCE 1 From a description of housing conditions of the poor by the Roman writer Juvenal, first century CE.

We live in a city shored up with slender props . . . for that is how the landlords stop the houses from falling down.

The impact of slavery on social change

The main reason for the existence of large numbers of poor citizens in Roman towns was the vast number of conquered peoples who became slaves. The increased use of slave labour changed Rome from a society based mainly on small farmers to one based more on large agricultural estates owned by the very rich and worked by slaves. Many of the city-dwelling poor Roman citizens were displaced people who moved from the countryside to towns and survived on casual work or on the dole.

tenant farmers poor farmers who rented small plots of land

forum open meeting place of a town or city

learn on

To access videos, interactivities, discussion widgets, image galleries, weblinks and more, go to www.jacplus.com.au

6.8.1 Activities

CHECK YOUR UNDERSTANDING

- 1 What occupations were most plebeians engaged in?
- 2 Why did large numbers of plebeians become unemployed?

- 3 Draw a mind map to compare the lives of rich and poor in the Roman Empire?

USING HISTORICAL SOURCES AS EVIDENCE

- 4 What evidence does **SOURCE 1** provide about the housing of the poor in Rome?

DID YOU KNOW?

Public entertainments included executions, live animal hunts, fights between tormented animals and contests between gladiators and animals. So many lions were captured for wild animal shows that the species disappeared in the Middle East.

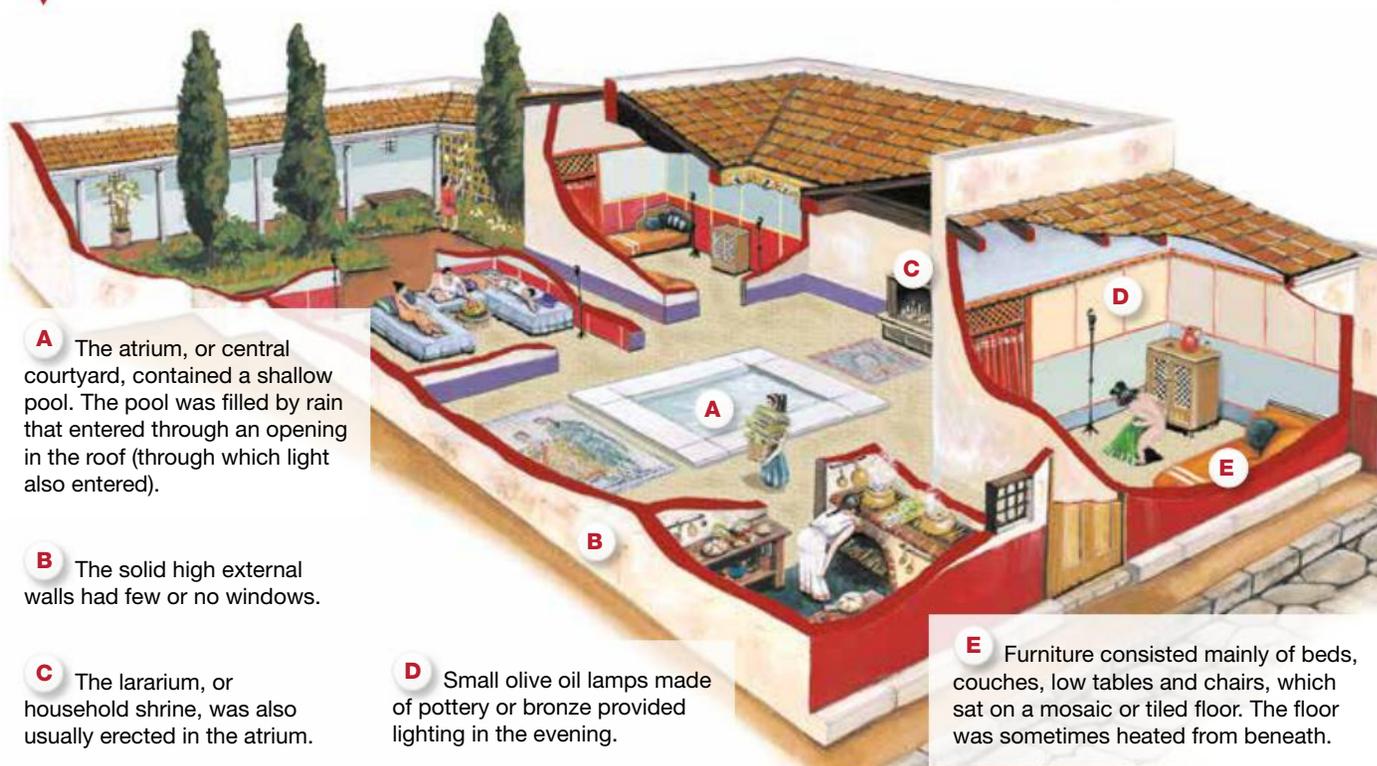
6.8.2 Roman culture

Rome produced a rich culture, but it was probably enjoyed by less than five per cent of the population. These Romans were influenced by the cultures of some of the peoples they conquered, especially the Greeks. From Greece, the Roman armies brought back paintings and statues. Rich Romans used Greek slaves to educate their children and to decorate their homes and public buildings with paintings, sculptures and statues. Many Roman statues of Roman leaders and gods were copies of Greek statues.

The Romans adopted and imitated Greek literature. Homer's *Odyssey* was translated into Latin and plays were performed at festivals. Many of these plays were comedies that ridiculed everyday events. Roman writers produced histories, poetry and books on military tactics, law and medicine. Among the most famous was the poet Virgil. His greatest work was the *Aeneid*, which tells the story of Aeneas, who according to legend fled from the destruction of Troy and founded Rome. Virgil's success showed that some Romans could rise from poor backgrounds. He was the son of a peasant. Horace, another great Roman poet, was the son of an ex-slave. Both were encouraged by Augustus and benefited from the tradition of noble **patronage**.

patronage supporting and encouraging authors and artists

SOURCE 2 A typical villa of the type occupied by wealthy Romans



Virtues

Among the ideas of the ancient Romans, **virtue** was considered very important. Roman writers and philosophers praised such virtues as family values, patriotism and justice. In schools, boys were taught to read, write and use Roman numerals. They also learned **rhetoric** and logical thinking and studied the works of great classical writers.

virtue moral standard or value

rhetoric the art of public speaking

DID YOU KNOW?

Roman fathers had total power over their families, including the power to kill their children or sell them into slavery. Girls received little schooling other than in household skills. Married women had few rights and could be killed if they committed adultery.

6.8.2 Activities

CHECK YOUR UNDERSTANDING

- 1 Describe some ways in which privileged Romans were influenced by Greek culture.
- 2 What virtues were praised by Roman writers and philosophers?
- 3 What powers did Roman fathers have within their families?
- 4 How was the education of boys different from that of girls?

USING HISTORICAL SOURCES AS EVIDENCE

- 5 Imagine you are a member of the wealthy Roman family who own the villa depicted in **SOURCE 2**. Describe how you would furnish and decorate your house and what preparations you would make for your first banquet.

6.8.3 Roman technology

The Romans built some 84 000 kilometres of roads, as well as countless bridges, walls, aqueducts, temples and public buildings, including baths. They had no earthmoving equipment, steel cranes, power tools or computer-aided design, yet the way they built many of these structures was not bettered for nearly 2000 years.

SOURCE 3 The general layout of cities throughout the Roman Empire followed the pattern set for the city of Rome.

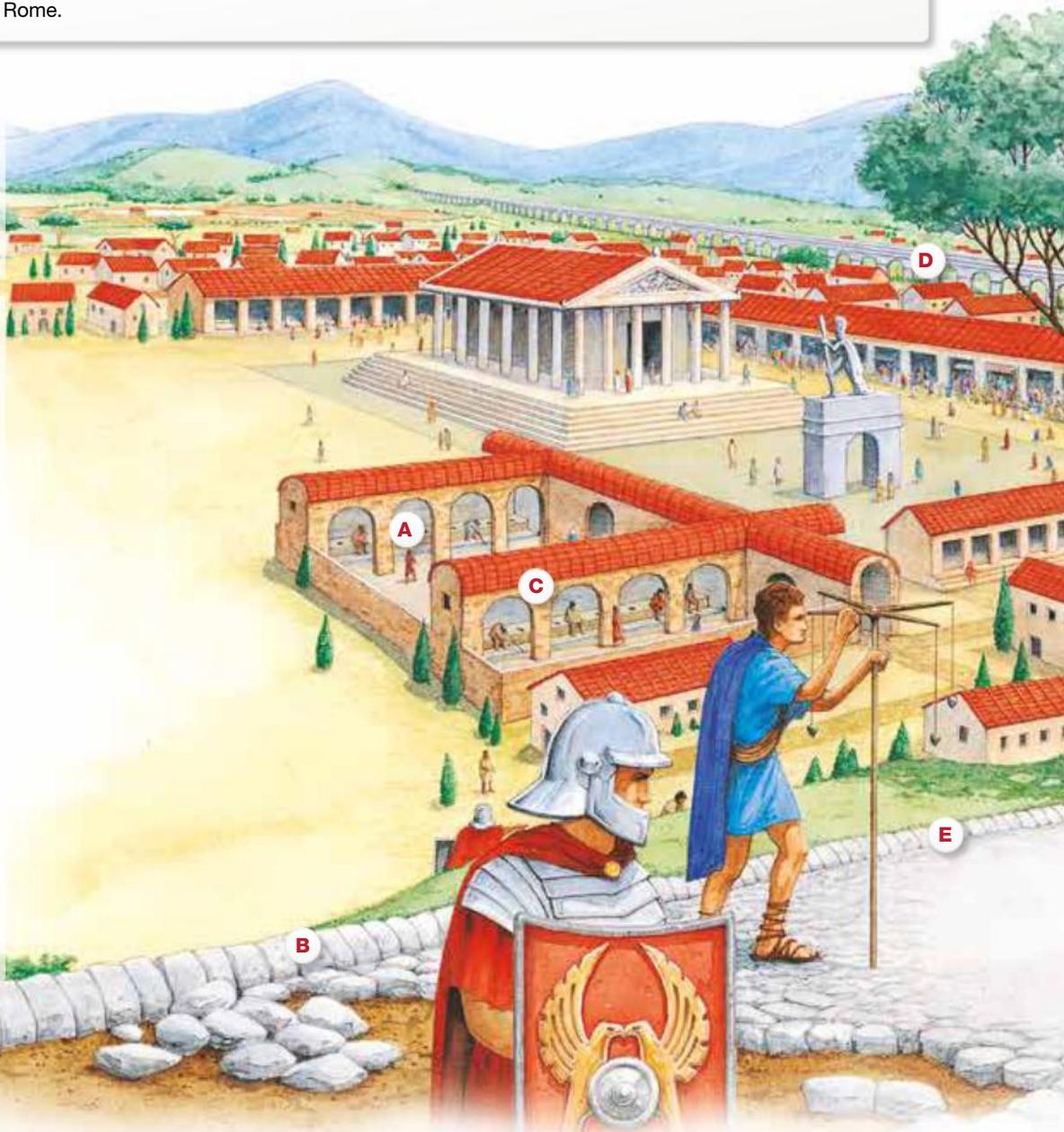
A Roman public toilets consisted of stone or concrete benches with holes in them. A channel of running water under the holes removed human waste. A sponge on the end of a stick was used for cleaning.

B Roman roads were usually straight, and often very long. They were usually laid on a bed of rubble, over which was poured a layer of concrete or gravel. Sometimes stone slabs were placed on top. They were slightly higher in the middle so that water and debris could wash off easily.

C The Romans further developed the **Etruscans'** arch to produce, first, the single-tunnel vault (many arches joined together, one behind the other), then the cross-vault (two tunnel vaults crossing at right angles) and then the revolutionary dome.

D Aqueducts allowed water to flow down to a settlement by means of gravity. To ensure that the water flow did not stop, they had to be built very precisely.

Etruscans advanced, civilised people who dominated early Rome from about 575 BCE to about 396 BCE



As the Roman Empire expanded, it became important to master the skills needed to build it, protect it and connect and service its various parts. Roads, walls and towns had to be built, and towns needed facilities such as water supply, toilets and **public baths**. Much of the work was done by the army. The Romans became so good at engineering and construction that many of their structures are still used today.

public baths public building complexes containing baths of varying temperatures, and sports and beauty facilities; a popular meeting place for Roman citizens

6.8.3 Activities

CHECK YOUR UNDERSTANDING

- 1 What facilities were needed in a Roman town?
- 2 What did the Romans do about the risk of fires?

USING HISTORICAL SOURCES AS EVIDENCE

- 3 Examine **SOURCE 3**.
 - a Describe a Roman public toilet.

- b Explain how aqueducts worked.
 - c Explain how public baths were heated.
 - d Draw and label a diagram to explain how Roman roads were built.
- 4 Use the internet to research the construction and features of one famous Roman structure. You could choose, for example, the Pantheon, the Colosseum, the buildings of the Roman Forum or the Baths of Diocletian.

E The Romans were also able to fire bricks, and to use building tools such as rulers, chisels, squares (to measure angles) and a surveying instrument called a groma. By lining up the two weighted strings on the end of each bar of the groma with landmarks, engineers were able to build roads that were straight and level.

F Domes were used on many public buildings, including some baths. The most spectacular example is the dome on the Pantheon, a temple built to all the gods in around 120 CE. Spanning 43 metres in diameter, it is still the second biggest in the world.

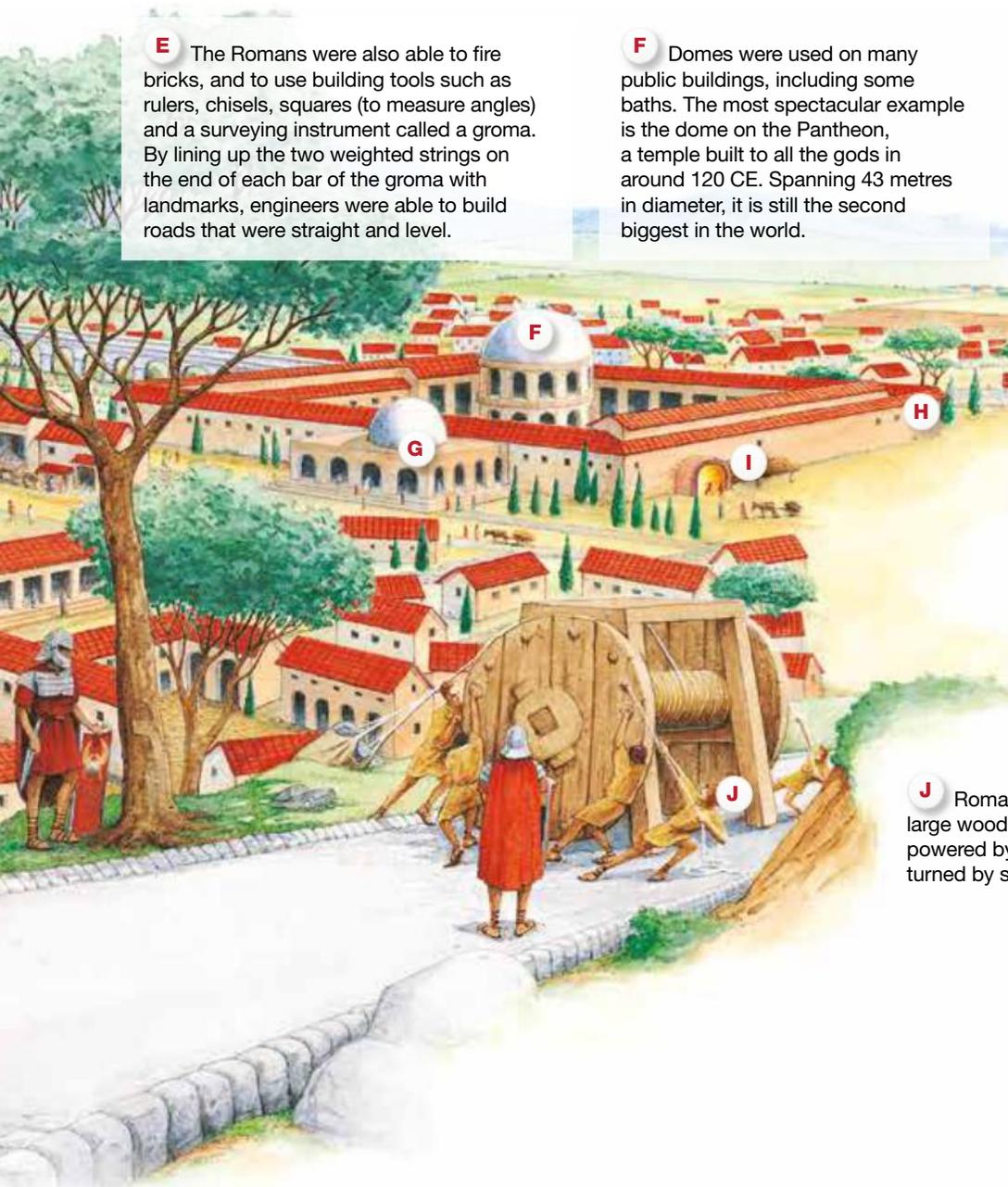
G Building was revolutionised when the Romans found out how to make concrete. It was discovered that when a volcanic dust called pozzolana was mixed with lime and water, it set into a hard material.

H People went to the public baths every day to wash and to socialise. The complexes contained hot and cold pools, saunas, reading rooms, hair salons, dressing rooms, exercise yards and shops. Some of them held thousands of people.

I The water in the public baths was heated by a **hypocaust**. Slaves kept large fires burning in the basements of buildings or outside them. The hot air was fed under the floors and up through a series of tunnels to heat some of the pools.

J Roman cranes were large wooden structures, powered by a big wheel turned by slaves.

hypocaust under-floor and water heating system used in Roman villas and public baths



DID YOU KNOW?

Roman engineering was so good that many Roman public buildings still stand. They supplied running water and sewerage to the homes of wealthy people who could afford pipes, taps and flushing toilets. Some blocks of flats for the poor, on the other hand, were so badly built that they fell down within a few years. Fires were such a problem in Rome that in AD 6 a fire-fighting force, called the Cohortes Vigiliam, was set up.

6.8 PUTTING IT ALL TOGETHER

USING HISTORICAL SOURCES AS EVIDENCE

- 1 How would you account for the housing of the poor being so inferior, as described in **SOURCE 1**, when the Romans had the excellent building skills shown in **SOURCES 2** and **3**?
- 2 Imagine you are one of the plebeians driven from the countryside to the city and with no choice but to live in a slum like those described in **SOURCE 1**.
 - a How would you feel about the social changes that had brought this about?
 - b How would you regard those who could live in a villa like that shown in **SOURCE 2**?

IDENTIFYING CONTINUITY AND CHANGE

- 3 Using the sources and information in this subtopic, explain how the growth of the Roman Empire changed Roman society.

6.9 Death and the Romans

6.9.1 Beliefs and funeral customs

Death and the customs associated with funerals provide an enormous amount of primary source evidence for ancient Roman society and its values and beliefs. Roman cemeteries were located outside the boundaries of cities and the inscriptions and sculptures on tombs and altars along with writings about death reveal a lot of what Romans believed about honouring the dead and about souls and an afterlife.

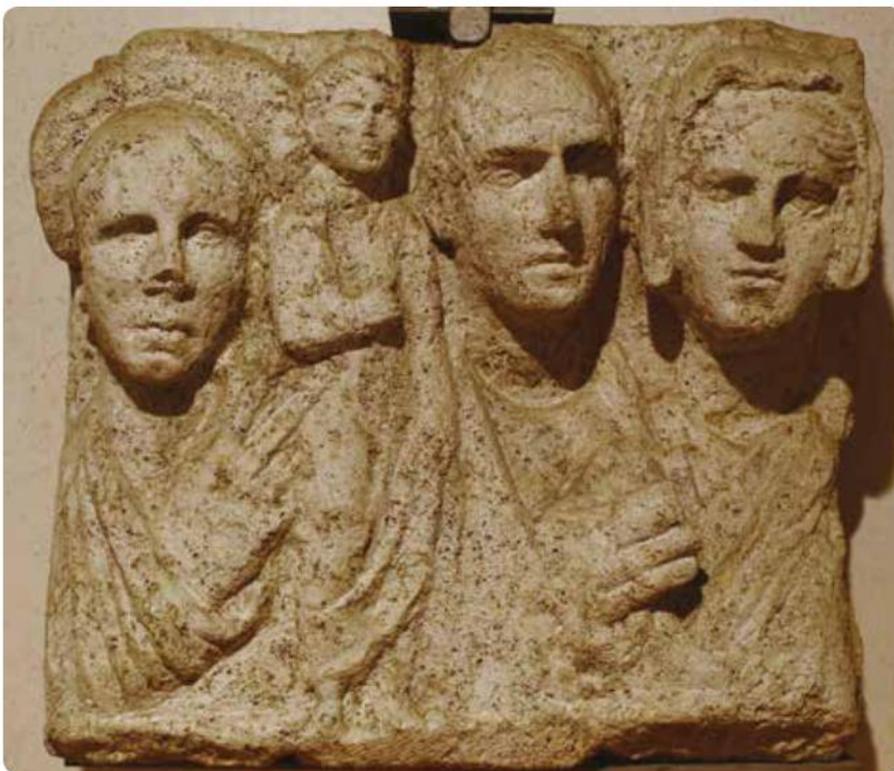
On Roman ideas about life after death, we have the writings of just a few highly educated Romans and they expressed various different beliefs. However, at least some and possibly many Romans appear to have believed that souls went on living after the death of a body and that they might be judged in the afterlife. Sometimes a coin was placed in or over the dead person's mouth. This custom appears to have been adopted from the Greeks, who believed a coin was

needed to pay the ferryman who transported souls of the newly dead across a river that separated the underworld from the world of the living.

Regardless of beliefs about an afterlife, Romans thought that they had a duty to care for their dead ancestors. When a family member died, their closest relative would close the eyes of the deceased and all family members would mourn, calling out the dead person's name. After the deceased person's body was washed and anointed it would be dressed in clothes that reflected their position in Roman society, for example, a deceased male citizen would be dressed in a toga.

Funeral processions took place between the deceased's home and the cemetery. Ceremonies were held at both places. They included chanting and a eulogy, which was a formal speech honouring the deceased. Families who could afford it would also sacrifice an animal in the presence of the dead body.

SOURCE 1 This stele (upright stone slab) served as the grave marker of a Roman family group of former slaves with a male child.



6.9.1 Activities

CHECK YOUR UNDERSTANDING

- 1 Describe what family members did at home and at the cemetery following a family member's death.
- 2 What does the custom of placing a coin on or in a dead person's mouth reveal about:
 - a the influence of Greek myths on Roman ideas
 - b the belief, held by at least some Romans, in an afterlife?

USING HISTORICAL SOURCES AS EVIDENCE

- 3 The child in **SOURCE 1** is wearing a toga, a symbol of Roman citizenship. Explain what this tells you about the possibility of moving up in Roman society.

6.9.2 Tombs and commemorations

Throughout most of the period of the Roman Empire, dead bodies were usually cremated and the ashes were kept in urns. But this was later mostly replaced by burial. If they could afford it, people would have the body of a dead family member placed in a sarcophagus (a stone coffin). Wealthy Romans often had very grand tombs that had several chambers for family visits. Poorer Romans had small, simple tombs. In the city of Rome, those who could not afford tombs used the Catacombs. These were large networks of tunnels cut into soft rock below the city.

Following funerals, the dead continued to be commemorated in several ways. An epitaph would be inscribed on the tomb, often recording the deceased's span of life and information about their family relationships, occupations and any public offices they held. Each year, the dead were honoured during the nine-day festival called the Parentalia. In addition, portrait busts of a dead family member were often made of bronze or stone to be displayed in homes of wealthy families.

SOURCE 2 An inscription on this sarcophagus reveals that it was donated by two Roman citizens to their friend. The figures on the sarcophagus are a cobbler (shoemaker) and a spinner (a maker of thread for cloth). It is probable that one of these occupations was that of the deceased and the other was that of the donors.



learn on

To access videos, interactivities, discussion widgets, image galleries, weblinks and more, go to www.jacplus.com.au

6.9.2 Activities

CHECK YOUR UNDERSTANDING

- 1 What was a sarcophagus?
- 2 How different were the tombs and burial places of the rich and the poor?

USING HISTORICAL SOURCES AS EVIDENCE

- 3 Form a hypothesis that might explain the gift of the sarcophagus in **SOURCE 2**.

6.9 PUTTING IT ALL TOGETHER

USING HISTORICAL SOURCES AS EVIDENCE

- 1 In a style that would appeal to their families, write a eulogy for any one of the figures in **SOURCE 1** or **SOURCE 2**.

IDENTIFYING CONTINUITY AND CHANGE

- 2 Use the sources and other information in this subtopic to explain some things about Roman society that we could discover from evidence about funeral customs. Use the following headings: attitudes to the dead, beliefs about an afterlife, occupations, social classes, changes enabling movement between social classes.

6.10 Roman law and religion

6.10.1 Roman law

In the period of over 1200 years between Rome's foundation in 753 BCE and the fall of the Western Roman Empire in 476 CE there were many changes that affected Roman society. None were more important than changes in law and religion.

It is probable that when Rome was ruled by Etruscan kings there were no laws other than a king's decisions. However, the system of government in the Roman Republic created the need for written laws to prevent the patrician class from always dominating matters of law and magistrates from interpreting the law unfairly. According to ancient Roman historians, in 451 BCE ten Roman citizens were given the job of recording the laws that were in practice. These laws were approved and adopted in 450 BCE as the Twelve Tables (see **SOURCE 1**). These dealt mostly with the rights of citizens because women, children and slaves came under the authority of the male head of the family.

As Rome's society and economy became more complicated, new laws were added as the need arose. Roman law came to cover a huge range of matters that affected everyday life. These included crime and punishment, property, trade, industries, sex, slavery and politics. Although all Roman citizens were supposed to have the same rights under the law, the rich could often use bribery to get an advantage (see **SOURCE 2**).

SOURCE 1 Three laws from the Twelve Tables

Table IV, law 2: If a father sell his son three times, the son shall be free from his father.

Table V, law 1: Females shall remain in guardianship [under the control of their fathers] even when they have attained their majority [became adults].

Table XI, law 1: Marriages should not take place between plebeians and patricians.

SOURCE 2 From the Roman writer Petronius, who lived in the first century CE

What use are laws when money calls the tunes and people without a gentleman's income have no real rights at all?

Changing laws

Over the many centuries of the Roman Empire, Roman law changed by many means. These included magistrates' decisions, decrees of the Senate, votes in the assembly, decisions of the jurists (a small group who were responsible for giving expert legal opinions) and edicts (orders) of emperors. Emperors increasingly assumed powers to create completely new laws. For example, in 212 CE, Emperor Caracalla issued an edict giving Roman citizenship to all free people within the Roman Empire. During the age of the emperors, Roman law even became less harsh. New laws gave some protection to women, children and the poor.

learn on

To access videos, interactivities, discussion widgets, image galleries, weblinks and more, go to www.jacplus.com.au

6.10.1 Activities

CHECK YOUR UNDERSTANDING

- 1 What were the Twelve Tables?
- 2 Why did the Roman Republic need written laws?
- 3 How did the nature of law-making change under the emperors?

USING HISTORICAL SOURCES AS EVIDENCE

- 4 In **SOURCE 1**, what do Table IV, law 2 and Table V, law 1 reveal about the powers of fathers over their children?

- 5 Why would the patricians have supported Table XI, law 1?
- 6 In 445 BCE, a new law allowed marriages between patricians and plebeians. What does this suggest about the growing influence of the plebeians and the ability of Roman law to change?
- 7 In **SOURCE 2**, what did Petronius think about the fairness of the Roman legal system?

divination the skill of reading omens

astrology interpreting the influence of the stars on human affairs

6.10.2 Roman religion

The Romans had hundreds of gods and goddesses. They usually tolerated the religions of people they conquered as long as those people were willing to pay homage to the Roman emperor. Romans believed that religion was closely related to government and that other religions were a danger only if they threatened Rome's authority. Roman religion did not tell people how to live better lives and there was no fixed belief about an afterlife. It was more concerned with performing rituals in return for protection from misfortune.

Roman state religion

The Roman authorities built temples to the gods, conducted regular rituals to please them, and organised religious festivals with processions, music and animal sacrifices. Roman homes also had shrines at which families sacrificed to their household gods.

Romans believed that it was important to know the will of the gods before political decisions were taken.

They believed that the gods sent signs, or omens; the skill of reading them was called **divination**. Methods of divination included studying the entrails of sacrificed animals, rolling dice, **astrology** and consulting oracles. Some oracles were inscriptions written on tablets.

SOURCE 3 Some Roman gods and goddesses and their Greek equivalents

Jupiter

(Greek equivalent: Zeus)
King of the gods
Symbols: eagle, thunderbolt



Juno

(Greek equivalent: Hera)
Wife of Jupiter
Goddess of women, marriage and childbirth

Mars

(Greek equivalent: Ares)
God of war



Vesta

(Greek equivalent: Hestia)
Goddess of the hearth or fireplace



Venus

(Greek equivalent: Aphrodite)
Goddess of love and beauty



Neptune

(Greek equivalent: Poseidon)
God of the sea



Mercury

(Greek equivalent: Hermes)
Jupiter's messenger
God of trade and thieves



These were shuffled like cards by a child, who then gave one to the person seeking to discover the will of the gods.

SOURCE 4 The Pantheon, the largest Roman temple. It was built between 118 and 128 CE.



Adopted gods

As the empire expanded, Romans adopted more gods from the people they conquered, especially the Greeks. The Greek sea god Poseidon was identified with Neptune, the Roman god of water. The Greek god Zeus was identified with Jupiter, the most important of all Roman gods. Several Egyptian and Persian gods were also adopted. Mithraism, the cult of Mithras, the Persian god of light, held that there was life after death. Mithras was especially popular among Roman soldiers. When the Romans decided to worship Sulis, a goddess of the Celts, they equated her with the Roman goddess Minerva and changed her name to Sulis Minerva.

6.10.2 Activities

CHECK YOUR UNDERSTANDING

- 1 What were the purposes of Roman religious rituals and festivals?
- 2 How did Roman religion change as the empire expanded?

USING HISTORICAL SOURCES AS EVIDENCE

- 3 Using **SOURCE 3**, list three Greek gods and/or goddesses and their Roman equivalents.
- 4 The Pantheon (**SOURCE 4**) is considered an architectural wonder. What does the construction of such a building suggest about the importance of religion to the Romans?

6.10.3 The spread of Christianity

Christianity arose in Roman Palestine (Judea) in the first century CE. It was based on the teachings of Jesus Christ, a Jew who preached that he was the son of God and that through faith people could receive forgiveness for their sins and gain eternal life. Jewish religious leaders saw Jesus as a threat, so they had him arrested and condemned to death. When Pontius Pilate, the Roman governor, approved the sentence, Jesus was executed by crucifixion.

SOURCE 5 Account by the Roman historian Tacitus (c. 56–117 CE) of the persecution of Christians by the Emperor Nero

Dressed in wild animals' skins [the Christians] were torn to pieces by dogs, or crucified, or made into torches to be ignited after dark. Nero provided his Gardens for the spectacle, and . . . mingled with the crowd . . . Despite their guilt as Christians, and the ruthless punishment it deserved, the victims were pitied. For it was felt that they were being sacrificed to one man's brutality rather than to the nation's interest.

SOURCE 6 From the Edict of Milan, in which Emperor Constantine granted religious freedom. An edict is a formal command.

. . . no one whatsoever should be denied freedom to devote himself either to the cult of the Christians or to such religion as he deems best suited for himself . . .

Jesus' followers continued to spread his teachings, which offered hope especially to slaves and the poor. Christianity did not encourage rebellion, but the Romans saw it as a threat because Christians refused to worship the emperor, recognising only the Christian god. Several emperors ordered persecutions of the Christians, including mass executions. This persecution ended when, in 313 CE, Emperor Constantine legalised Christianity. It became the state religion of the Roman Empire in 391 CE.

DID YOU KNOW?

Roman priests and priestesses were state officials who performed rituals to maintain the good will of the gods towards the Roman state. The most important priestesses were the Vestal Virgins, who kept the fire burning on the altar of the goddess Vesta. Vestal Virgins could be executed if they were found to have had sexual relationships.

6.10.3 Activities

CHECK YOUR UNDERSTANDING

- 1 Where and when did Christianity begin?
- 2 Why did Christianity have a special appeal for slaves and the poor?
- 3 The Romans were tolerant of other religions, so why did they persecute the Christians?

USING HISTORICAL SOURCES AS EVIDENCE

- 4 Using **SOURCE 5**, describe types of punishments that were dealt out to Christians.
- 5 How can you tell that Tacitus disapproved of these punishments but also disapproved of Christians?
- 6 Read the extract from the Edict of Milan in **SOURCE 6** and explain why it was a turning point in Roman history.

6.10 PUTTING IT ALL TOGETHER

IDENTIFYING CONTINUITY AND CHANGE

- 1 What would you identify as the most significant changes in Roman law and religion over the history of the Roman Empire?
- 2 How would key groups in Roman society (patricians, plebeians, slaves, Christians and non-Christians) have regarded these changes? For example, how would a Christian in 313 CE have felt upon reading the Edict of Milan?
- 3 When Roman law was changed to make Christianity the state religion of the Roman Empire, persecution of Christians ended but it was replaced by persecution by Christians of those who followed the old Roman religion. What conclusions about continuity and change in religion and law can you draw from this?

DETERMINING HISTORICAL SIGNIFICANCE

- 4 Use the internet and your library to find out how Emperor Constantine came to legalise Christianity and why he is considered to be a significant individual in Roman and religious history.

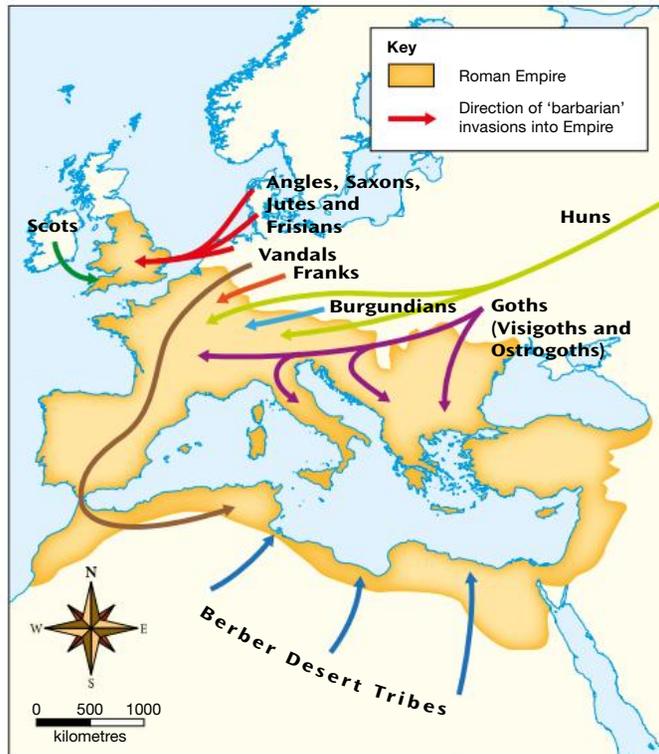
6.11 Decline and fall

6.11.1 A weakening empire

The Roman Empire began to weaken from about 180 CE as rival Roman army generals fought each other for power. Trade that had enriched the empire began to decline as transport over long distances became more dangerous and tribes of **barbarians** increased their raids into the empire's lands.

barbarians the Roman term for all peoples who lived beyond the borders of the empire

SOURCE 1 The weakening of the Western Roman Empire. The arrows show the directions from which different barbarian groups invaded the empire.



Source: Map drawn by Spatial Vision.

In 284 CE Emperor Diocletian, a Roman general who had won power through his soldiers, divided Rome into Eastern and Western empires under two separate emperors. Diocletian believed this would create stronger government, but the problems remained. From 307 to 310 CE civil war raged as six rival emperors competed for power. The victor, Constantine, ordered the building of a new capital, to be called New Rome, on the site of the old Greek city of Byzantium. The city was soon renamed Constantinople (Istanbul in modern Turkey).

In 378 CE the Visigoths defeated Rome's armies. Emperor Theodosius (379–395 CE) agreed to allow them to form a separate state within the Roman Empire, while the Visigoths pledged to defend the empire's frontiers. Theodosius was more successful in reuniting the empire in 394 CE after the Western Empire broke away under a rival emperor. However, following the death of Theodosius the split into Eastern and Western empires became permanent.

learn on

To access videos, interactivities, discussion widgets, image galleries, weblinks and more, go to www.jacplus.com.au

6.11.1 Activities

CHECK YOUR UNDERSTANDING

- 1 Why did Diocletian divide the Roman Empire?
- 2 What event in 378 CE showed Rome's weakness?

USING HISTORICAL SOURCES AS EVIDENCE

- 3 Study **SOURCE 1**.
 - a Who were the peoples who threatened the empire?
 - b Which part of the empire did each group threaten?

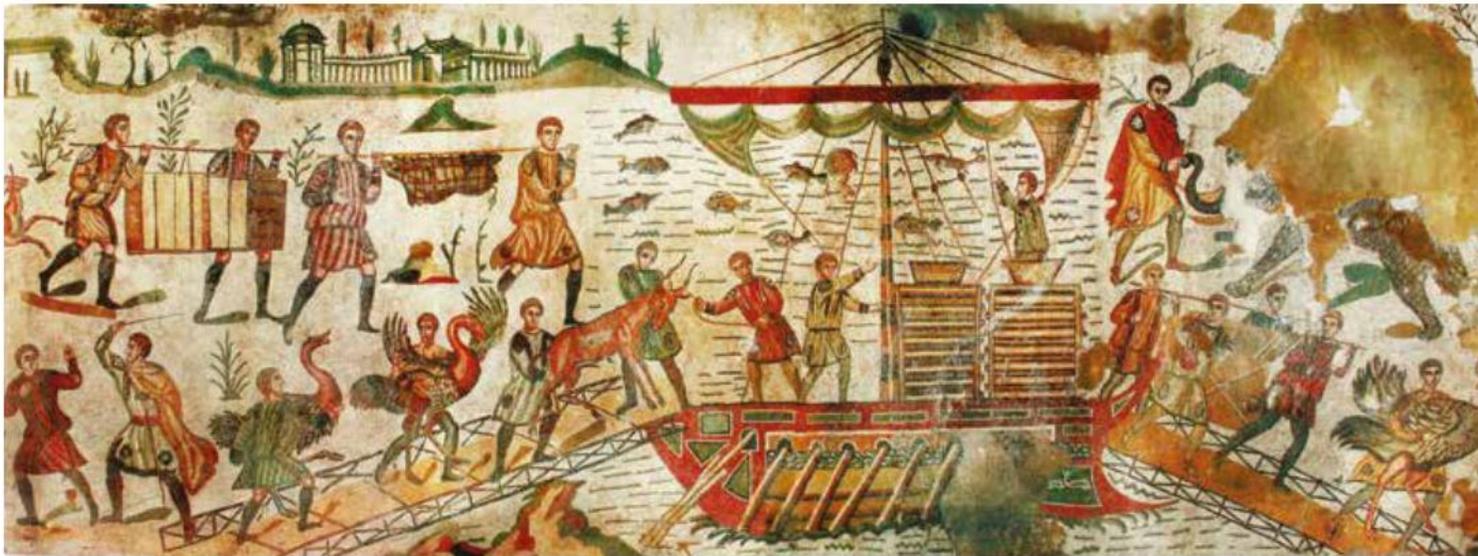
6.11.2 The empire falls

There were vast movements of peoples through Europe in the fifth century CE. Burgundians and other 'barbarian' tribes invaded Gaul, while Angles, Saxons and Jutes from Germany and Denmark attacked Britain and Vandals, another Germanic tribe, invaded Spain. The Roman armies left Britain in 410 to defend the city of Rome, which was sacked by the Visigoths that same year.

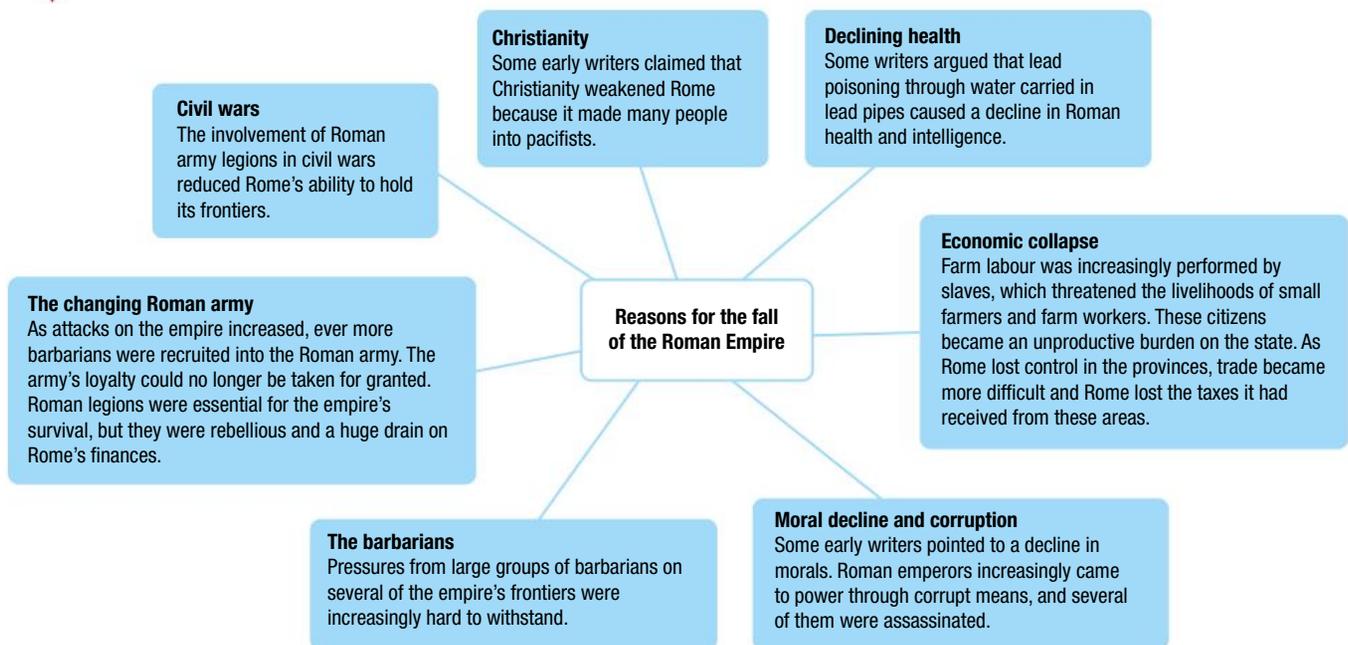
These invasions were not part of any general plan. Several barbarian groups who swept into the Roman Empire were fleeing other hostile tribes. For example, the Ostrogoths from eastern Europe were retreating before the Huns, who had overrun their homelands. This made it possible for Rome to form alliances with some groups against others. In 451 an alliance of Romans, Visigoths and Burgundians defeated the Huns. However, in 455 Rome was pillaged by the Vandals, and in 476 the last Western Roman emperor, Romulus Augustulus, was deposed by Odoacer, a German chief.

Historians past and present have suggested several reasons for the fall of the Roman Empire. The following mind map outlines some of them. War and economic collapse stand out as the key reasons.

SOURCE 2 Detail from The Big Game Hunt, a mosaic of the third to fourth century CE found at the Villa dei Casale, Piazza Armerina, Sicily



SOURCE 3 Reasons for the fall of the Roman Empire



6.11.2 Activities

CHECK YOUR UNDERSTANDING

- 1 Why did Rome abandon Britain in 410 CE?
- 2 What made it possible for Rome to form alliances with some barbarian groups against others?

SEQUENCING CHRONOLOGY

- 3 Create a timeline of developments that led to the fall of the Western Roman Empire.

USING HISTORICAL SOURCES AS EVIDENCE

- 4 **SOURCE 2** depicts traders loading ships. Explain why declining trade would have been both a cause and a result of the weakening of the Roman Empire.
- 5 Identify reasons in **SOURCE 3** that you think would have contributed most to the decline of the Roman Empire.

6.11 PUTTING IT ALL TOGETHER

USING HISTORICAL SOURCES AS EVIDENCE

- 1 Conduct research and present a report to the class on one of the barbarian groups that contributed to the fall of the Roman Empire.

ANALYSING CAUSE AND EFFECT

- 2 Examine **SOURCE 3**. What reasons do you think would have contributed the most to the fall of the Roman Empire?

6.12 Heritage of Rome

6.12.1 The Eastern Roman Empire and Christianity

As the Western Roman Empire collapsed, it broke up into kingdoms ruled by non-Romans, although many people in these states continued to see themselves as Roman. Europe was entering what have been called the Dark Ages. Wars were frequent, population levels fell and cities almost disappeared, along with long-distance trade and literacy. However, the Eastern Roman Empire lived on for almost another thousand years and Roman legacies survived to influence later ages.

When Odoacer deposed Romulus Augustulus, he had no wish to become emperor. Rather, he recognised the authority of the Eastern Roman emperor in Constantinople. The Eastern Roman Empire maintained Roman law along with its heritage of Greek and Roman culture. It kept Latin as the language of its court. In the sixth century the Eastern emperor Justinian tried to restore the Western Empire. He was successful, but only briefly. As the **medieval** Byzantine Empire, the Eastern Roman Empire lasted until 1453 CE, when Constantinople was overrun by the Ottoman Turks.

SOURCE 1 A mosaic in Haghia Sophia, in Istanbul. This church was built on the orders of the great Eastern Roman emperor Justinian I (527–565 CE). The mosaic shows Emperor Constantine presenting the Virgin Mary with the city of Constantinople and Justinian presenting her with the Church.



learn on

To access videos, interactivities, discussion widgets, image galleries, weblinks and more, go to www.jacplus.com.au

medieval of the Middle Ages

Roman Christianity

The adoption of Christianity as the Roman state religion changed the Christian Church more than it changed the Roman Empire. The power of Roman Christianity was now supported by the power of Christian Roman emperors. Until the late fourth century, many Romans continued to hold **pagan** beliefs, and there were several different sets of beliefs within the Christian Church. Church leaders used the support of emperors to suppress rival interpretations of the Christian gospels, which were declared to be **heresy**. The continuing power of the Roman Christian Church was secured when Clovis, king of the Germanic Franks, gained control of Gaul and converted to Roman Christianity in the 490s. As the Christian Church outlived the Roman Empire, it helped to conserve Roman culture, which continued to be an important influence on ideas in medieval Europe.

SOURCE 2 From Hugh Trevor-Roper, *The Rise of Christian Europe*, 1966

In ... some respects ... the barbarians preserved rather than destroyed the Empire ... The barbarian Christian kings who rule over Italy, France and Spain in the fifth and sixth centuries still regard themselves as Roman ... they still acknowledge themselves subject to the emperor in the East; they still respect Roman traditions, Roman methods.

6.12.1 Activities

CHECK YOUR UNDERSTANDING

- 1 How did the Eastern Roman Empire maintain Roman civilisation after the fall of the Western Roman Empire?
- 2 How was the power of the Roman Christian Church maintained?

USING HISTORICAL SOURCE AS EVIDENCE

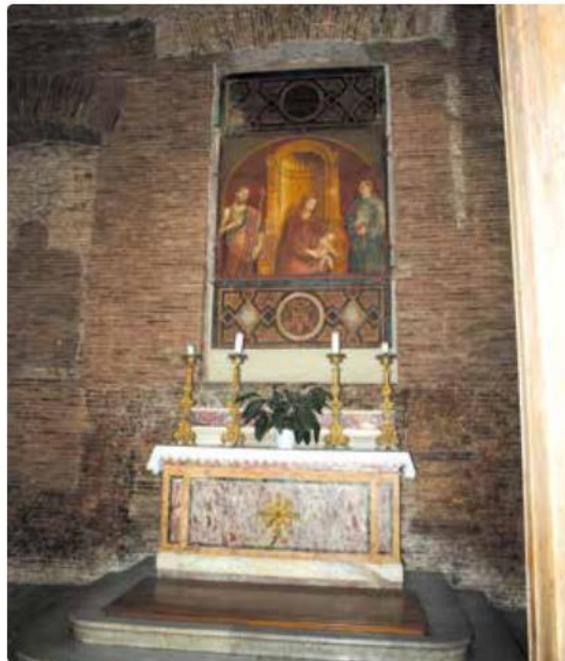
- 3 Describe ways in which **SOURCES 1** and **2** provide evidence of the continuation of Roman culture after the fall of Rome.

6.12.2 Passing on the culture

The classical books of ancient Roman writers influenced later writers. In the **Middle Ages**, Christian monks toiled at copying these books by hand. Many of these ancient writers are still widely read today. As Greek learning had been adopted by the Romans, the ideas of ancient Greece were also passed on. Latin, the language of the Roman Christian Church, became the language of the Church and of scholars in the Middle Ages. Despite the barriers caused by differing national languages, all educated writers and thinkers could communicate in Latin. Even today some sciences use Latin terms. For example, botany uses them to classify plants.

In the fifteenth century the Renaissance brought a revival of interest in Roman ideas, arts and architecture. Roman influences can be seen in many buildings constructed from that time until the twentieth century. In the eighteenth century, ideas and institutions from the ancient Roman republic influenced leaders who adopted new republican forms of government.

SOURCE 3 When the Pantheon was given to the Christians in 608, it was preserved with few changes apart from additions like this Christian altar.



pagan name used to refer to people who believed in non-Christian gods

heresy an opinion or belief that contradicts orthodox beliefs, especially in religion

DID YOU KNOW?

Roman law continued to form the basis of law codes in much of Europe in the Middle Ages and even in modern times. The Roman language, Latin, is the basis of modern Italian, French, Spanish and Portuguese. There are also many Latin words in English.

Middle Ages between ancient and modern historical periods (generally between the fifth and fifteenth centuries)

DID YOU KNOW?

In the Roman calendar, the year was divided into 12 months, named after gods, emperors and numbers. The names we use for the months are based on theirs. For example, August is named after the emperor Augustus.

European unity

The Roman Empire was replaced by many different states. However, the idea of some kind of European unity was a legacy of the Romans. Around 800 CE a powerful king called Charlemagne united much of Europe in a huge empire that he tried to base on the Roman model. This empire fell apart soon after his death but in the twentieth century Europe was again unified through the European Community (EC).

6.12.2 Activities

CHECK YOUR UNDERSTANDING

- 1 Describe the roles in preserving Rome's cultural heritage played by:
 - a Christian monks and scholars in the Middle Ages
 - b the fifteenth century Renaissance.

USING HISTORICAL SOURCES AS EVIDENCE

- 2 Look closely at **SOURCE 3** and explain how it provides an example of ways in which Rome's heritage has been preserved.

6.12 PUTTING IT ALL TOGETHER

USING HISTORICAL SOURCES AS EVIDENCE

- 1 Conduct research to prepare a report on Roman numerals, why they still have some uses and why they are no longer used in mathematics.

IDENTIFYING CONTINUITY AND CHANGE

- 2 Using the sources and information in this subtopic, create a mind map to show what big changes took place with the fall of Rome and what Roman influences continued.

6.13 SkillBuilder: Analysing and corroborating sources

online only

How do we analyse and corroborate ancient Roman sources?

Ancient Roman sources include temples, amphitheatres, houses, fortifications, roads, aqueducts, weapons, tools, coins and many written records. They also include artworks such as mosaics, paintings, statues and other sculptures in terracotta, stone and bronze. Almost all our knowledge of ancient Rome comes from such sources.



Go to your learnON course to access:

- An explanation of the skill (Tell me)
- A step-by-step process to develop the skill, with an example (Show me)
- An activity to allow you to practise the skill (Let me do it)
- Questions to test your application of the skill (Applying skills)

6.14 Review

online only

This final subtopic provides a range of opportunities for you to review and respond through:

- i revising and checking your historical knowledge
- ii demonstrating your ability to apply historical concepts and skills.

Go to your learnON course to access:

- A key chronology of events relevant to the topic
- A summary of the key knowledge presented in the topic
- A 'Big Questions' activity
- A multiple choice topic test
- Short answer or extended writing responses



on Resources

Interactivity

Ancient Roman timeline

Create a visual timeline of key events in ancient Rome.

int-2938

6.13 SkillBuilder: Analysing and corroborating sources

6.13.1 Tell me

What are the main ancient Roman sources?

Ancient Roman sources include temples, amphitheatres, houses, fortifications, roads, aqueducts, weapons, tools, coins and many written records. They also include artworks such as mosaics, paintings, statues and other sculptures in terracotta, stone and bronze.

Why is it important to analyse and corroborate ancient Roman sources?

Almost all our knowledge of ancient Rome comes from such sources. Works of art and writings tell us much about ancient Roman culture. Buildings and sculptures tell us about entertainment, technology, skills, religious ideas and values. Written records tell us about Roman ideas about politics, history, law and a vast range of other subjects. Not all ancient Roman sources are really primary sources as some were written long after the events they describe.

6.13.2 Show me

How do we analyse and corroborate ancient Roman sources?

When you study an ancient source you need to think carefully about the clues it provides and ask questions about its accuracy, usefulness and reliability. You need to ask questions such as:

1. What is it?
2. Who created it and when was it created?
3. Who or what was it created for?
4. For what aspect of ancient Roman history does it provide useful evidence?
5. Is the evidence it provides accurate and reliable and how can we tell this?
6. What conclusions can we draw from the source about ancient Roman society?

As you know, cruel public entertainments, including fights between gladiators, played a very big role in Roman life. **SOURCES 1** and **2** are both relevant to this issue. In the following example, the questions have been applied to **SOURCE 1**.

SOURCE 1 Written by the Roman Emperor Augustus (Octavian), who ruled from 27 BCE to 14 CE

Three times I gave shows of gladiators under my name . . . Twenty-six times, under my name or that of my sons and grandsons, I gave the people hunts of African wild beasts in the circus, in the open, or in the amphitheatre; in them about 3 500 beasts were killed.

These six questions have been applied to **SOURCES 1** and **2**.

1. *What is it?* It is a written account of the number of gladiatorial combats and staged animal hunts paid for by Augustus.
2. *Who created it and when was it created?* The writer was Augustus, who became emperor of Rome in 27 BCE.
3. *Who or what was it created for?* As Augustus founded a dynasty, he was probably boasting to win popularity with other influential Romans.
4. *For what aspect of ancient Roman history does it provide useful evidence?* It provides evidence about issues of public entertainment in Roman society, ways in which Roman politicians and rulers won favour and Rome's treatment of animals and slaves.
5. *Is the evidence it provides accurate and reliable and how can we tell this?* Other sources would be required to verify such details as the number of combats paid for by Augustus. Many other sources confirm that such entertainments were frequent.

6. *What conclusions can we draw from the source about ancient Roman society?* Cruel public entertainments were frequent and popular in ancient Rome and they were often provided by political leaders to win popular support.

SOURCE 2 A terracotta figurine of two gladiators. The figurine is from the first or second century CE. By this time there were several different categories of gladiators, including the *hoplomoch* (with a circular shield) and the *thraex* (with a small rectangular shield). Several gladiator figurines have been found.



In the next example, the questions have been applied to **SOURCE 2**.

1. *What is it?* It is a terracotta figurine of two gladiators.
2. *Who created it and when was it created?* We do not know who created this figurine. We only know that it was made in the first or second century CE.
3. *Who or what was it created for?* As quite a few gladiator figurines have been found they must have been made to meet a popular demand for decorative souvenirs of the games.
4. *For what aspect of ancient Roman history does it provide useful evidence?* It provides evidence about issues of public entertainment in Roman society and Roman attitudes towards gladiators. It also provides evidence of the different types of gladiators who took part in combats and of their popularity.

5. *Is the evidence it provides accurate and reliable and how can we tell this?* The accuracy and reliability of the source can be verified using similar sources (such as **SOURCES 3** and **4**).
6. *What conclusions can we draw from the source about ancient Roman society?* Cruel public entertainments were frequent and popular in ancient Rome but in a strange way gladiators also appear to have been admired in much the same way as modern football stars.

6.13.3 Let me do it

Use the six questions to analyse **SOURCES 3** and **4**.

SOURCE 3 A relief sculpture from Turkey, first century CE, depicting three gladiators fighting



SOURCE 4 A marble relief sculpture of two female gladiators named Amazon and Achilia. It was found in the ancient Roman city of Halikarnassos (in modern-day Turkey).



6.13 APPLYING SKILLS

USING HISTORICAL SOURCES AS EVIDENCE

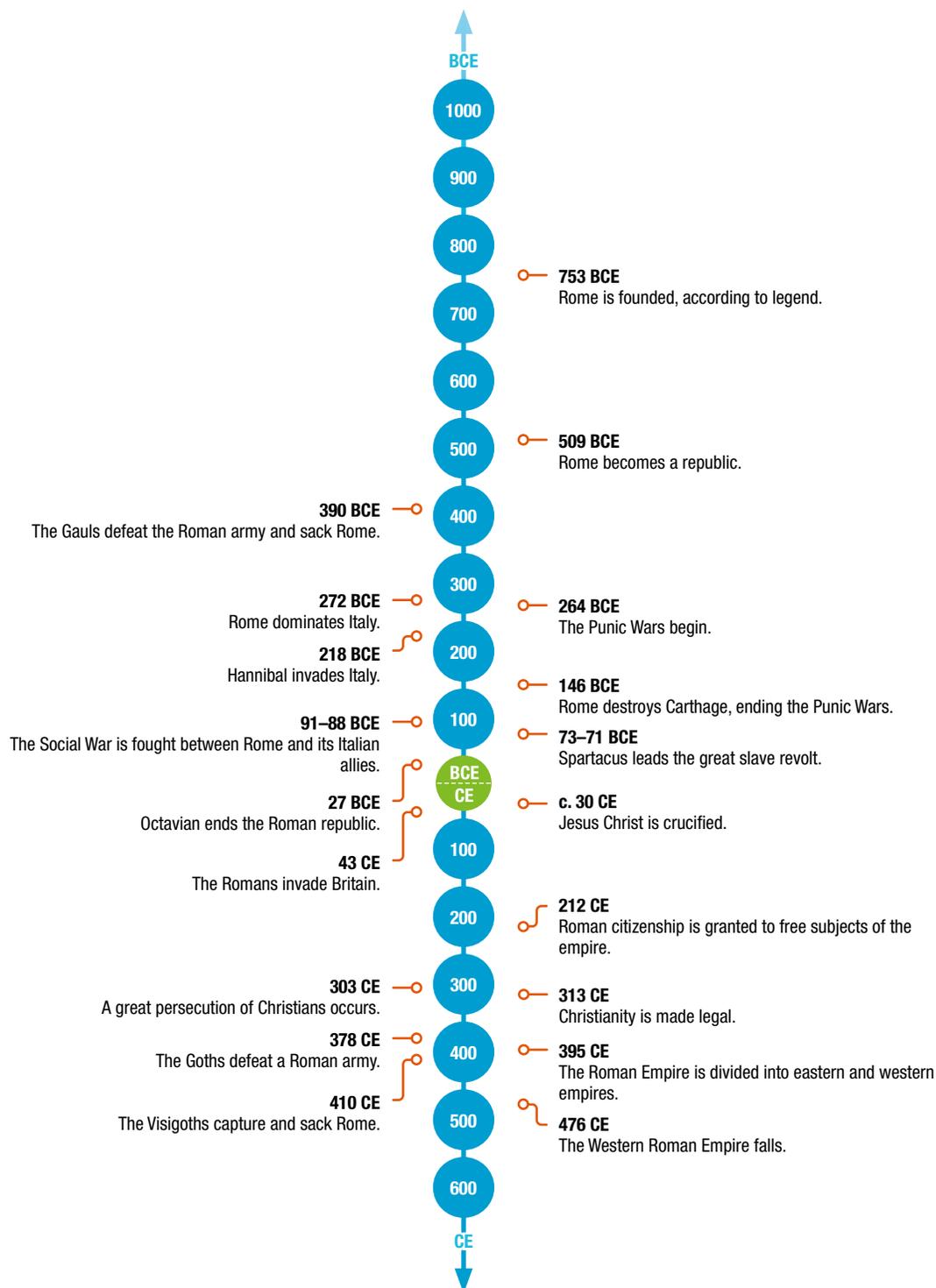
- 1 Explain how you would differentiate between ancient Roman primary sources and secondary sources.
- 2 Why is it sometimes difficult to judge the reliability of ancient Roman primary sources?
- 3 Why would **SOURCE 1**, the extract from the Roman Emperor Augustus (Octavian), need to be questioned very thoroughly to assess its reliability?
- 4 In this SkillBuilder you have worked with a written account by a Roman emperor, a figurine and two relief sculptures. Identify four other types of primary sources that a historian could use for a study of ancient Rome.

6.14 Review

In this topic we have explored the history of ancient Rome. We have discovered how Rome grew from a collection of villages to become a mighty empire that dominated the known world for centuries, before declining as a result of internal divisions and pressures from outside.

6.14.1 Review

Chronology: timeline of ancient Rome



on Resources

Interactivity

Ancient Roman timeline
Create a visual timeline of key events in ancient Rome.
int-2938

Key knowledge: summary

6.2 Examining the evidence

- Ancient Romans left vast amounts of written evidence.
- Rome is also rich in archaeological evidence, ranging from artworks to entire cities.

6.3 The rise of the Romans

- According to legend Rome was founded in 753 BCE.
- In 509 BCE, the Romans rebelled against their Etruscan kings and founded a republic.
- Over the next two centuries, Rome expanded its power through alliances, wars, exploiting those it defeated and colonising strategically important places.

6.4 The spreading empire

- Through the Punic Wars between 264 and 146 BCE, Rome eliminated a major rival and became the strongest power in the Mediterranean region.
- By 96 CE, Rome had extended its empire into northern Europe and to the Black Sea.

6.5 The Roman army

- From 396 BCE, the Roman army became a professional fighting force.
- Roman army discipline was harsh.
- Rewards given to legionaries helped to win support for military leaders who sought political power.

6.6 Citizens and rulers

- Roman citizens were divided into patricians and plebeians.
- Julius Caesar used his loyal troops to seize power in 49 BCE but he was assassinated by a group of Roman senators.
- Caesar's great-nephew, Octavian, took control of Rome, ending the republic in 27 BCE.

6.7 Spartacus and Nero: two significant individuals

- Spartacus, a gladiator, led a slave revolt in 73 BCE. The rebels defeated several Roman legions before they were defeated in a huge battle.
- Nero became Roman Emperor in 54 CE. His brutal rule ended with his suicide in 68 CE.

6.8 Living in the Roman Empire

- Widespread use of slave labour changed Roman society.
- There were vast differences between the lives of rich and poor Romans.
- Greek culture influenced the lives of the more privileged Romans.
- Roman technology created many impressive structures that are still standing today.

6.9 Death and the Romans

- Customs associated with funerals provide a huge amount of evidence for ancient Roman beliefs and values.
- Care for dead ancestors was considered a duty and the dead were honoured in many ways.

6.10 Roman law and religion

- Roman law dealt mainly with the rights of men as citizens.
- Women, children and slaves were considered to be under the authority of the male head of a family.
- After the republic ended, laws were increasingly made through decrees of emperors.
- Romans had hundreds of gods and goddesses.
- Christianity went from being the source of persecution to become the state religion of the empire in 391 CE.

6.11 Decline and fall

- From around 180 CE, the empire began to weaken.
- Civil wars and barbarian invasions eventually led to the collapse of the Western Roman Empire.
- Historians have suggested many different reasons for Rome's fall.

6.12 Heritage of Rome

- The Eastern Roman Empire lived on for almost another thousand years.
- The Roman Christian Church helped to preserve Roman culture.
- The idea of European unity is one of many legacies of ancient Rome.

Key knowledge: multiple-choice topic test

1. Who were Rome's enemies in the Punic Wars?
 - a. Etruscans
 - b. Gauls
 - c. Visigoths
 - d. Carthaginians
2. How was Pompeii destroyed in 79 CE?
 - a. Invasion
 - b. Volcanic eruption
 - c. Tsunami
 - d. Disease
3. Tactics employed by the Romans to control their empire included:
 - a. allowing conquered peoples to run the empire.
 - b. giving gifts to those they conquered.
 - c. using conquered peoples against one another.
 - d. killing everyone they defeated.
4. In Roman society, patricians were:
 - a. rich people.
 - b. the poor.
 - c. slaves.
 - d. aristocrats.
5. What was the period from 509 BCE to 27 BCE known as?
 - a. Roman Republic
 - b. Roman Kingdom
 - c. Roman Empire
 - d. People's Republic of Rome
6. The Roman invasion of Britain took place in which of these years?
 - a. 390 BCE
 - b. 146 BCE
 - c. 43CE
 - d. 378 CE
7. People in Roman towns were supplied with which of these?
 - a. Water, public toilets and public baths
 - b. Free housing
 - c. Banquets
 - d. Transport
8. Spartacus was which of the following?
 - a. A former Roman general
 - b. A gladiator
 - c. A Christian
 - d. A Visigoth
9. The main reason why the Romans persecuted Christians was:
 - a. Christians refused to worship the Roman emperors.
 - b. Romans were intolerant of other religions.
 - c. Romans already had too many gods.
 - d. Christians stirred up rebellions.
10. Christianity was made legal under which of these Roman emperors?
 - a. Augustus
 - b. Nero
 - c. Diocletian
 - d. Constantine

11. Roman funeral ceremonies often included:
 - a. eating and heavy drinking.
 - b. prayers and hymns.
 - c. chanting and a eulogy.
 - d. a singalong.
12. 'Barbarian' groups that invaded Roman Britain included which of these?
 - a. Huns
 - b. Saxons
 - c. Goths
 - d. Franks

6.14.2 Respond

Using historical sources as evidence

1. Describe the features of the building in **SOURCE 1**.
2. Why would such public facilities have been very important to the poor citizens of Rome?
3. What would have motivated Roman politicians and rulers to build such facilities?
4. Explain how this building is a useful source of evidence for Roman society.
5. Form a hypothesis about Roman building skills based on the fact that this building is still standing in Rome.

SOURCE 1 The Baths of Diocletian, in Rome



Identifying continuity and change

6. Working in small groups, use the internet and your library to research and write an illustrated guidebook for someone travelling from the outer reaches of the Roman Empire to Rome in the second century CE. You will also find information in modern travel guides for Rome, because Roman history is one of the main reasons that people visit the city. Your guidebook should include the following:
 - *A map* of the city centre as it was in ancient times
 - *History*: a one-page outline of Rome's history up to the second century CE
 - *What to see*: a short guide to interesting sights — for example the Forum, the baths and the Colosseum
 - *Entertainment*: where a visitor might go for an afternoon's spectacle
 - *Religion*: what a visitor would need to know to avoid causing offence
 - *Currency, language and accommodation*.
 Remember that your guidebook is for ancient, not modern, visitors to Rome.

Responding to the big questions

At the beginning of this topic several big questions were posed. Use the knowledge and understanding you have gained through your study of the subtopics to answer them:

1. What can primary sources tell us about life in ancient Rome?
2. What were the main beliefs, values and cultural achievements of the ancient Romans?
3. What were some of the most significant events in the history of ancient Rome?
4. How were ancient Rome and its empire organised and governed?
5. What were the effects of conflicts within Roman society and between Rome and other societies?
6. What have been the legacies of ancient Rome?

7 Ancient China

7.1 Overview

7.1.1 LINKS WITH OUR TIMES

China is the world's oldest continuous civilisation. For thousands of years it remained isolated from the western world. During the nineteenth and early twentieth centuries China suffered invasions, revolutions and civil wars in which many millions of people died. Now, in the early twenty-first century, China is emerging as the world's next great superpower.

China has the biggest population and the fastest growing economy in the world. In recent years, it has experienced a massive building boom, with skyscrapers pushing ever upwards into the already polluted skies over vast cities like Shanghai. Its amazing industrial growth has increased the world's awareness of environmental issues, especially global warming. We know that if each person in China were to cause as much pollution as the average Australian our planet would become uninhabitable.

BIG QUESTIONS

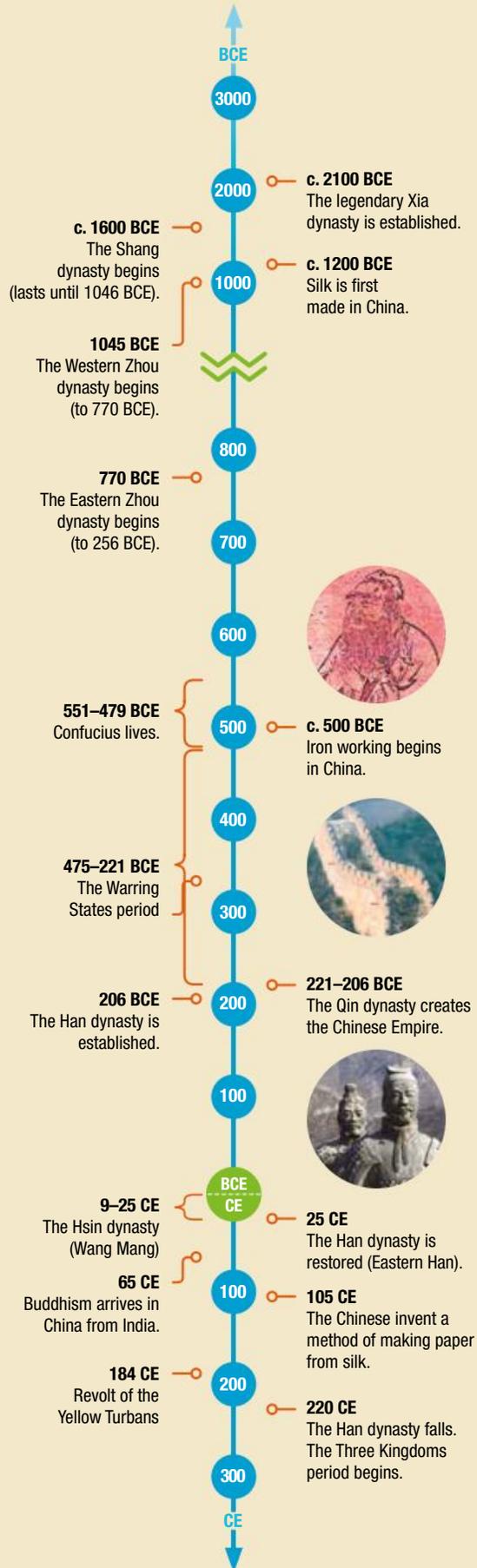
As you work through this topic, look for information that will help you to answer these questions:

- 1 How did ancient China's natural environment influence its civilisation?
- 2 How was ancient Chinese society organised and governed?
- 3 What were the main characteristics of ancient Chinese culture and religion?
- 4 How do written and archaeological sources help us understand ancient China?
- 5 Why did ancient Chinese dynasties rise and fall?
- 6 What is the significance of the heritage of ancient China?

STARTER QUESTIONS

- 1 What things do you own that were made in China?
- 2 What does Australia sell to China?
- 3 Can you think of other ways in which China has influenced life in modern Australia?

A TIMELINE OF ANCIENT CHINA





7.2 Examining the evidence

learn on

To access videos, interactivities, discussion widgets, image galleries, weblinks and more, go to www.jacplus.com.au

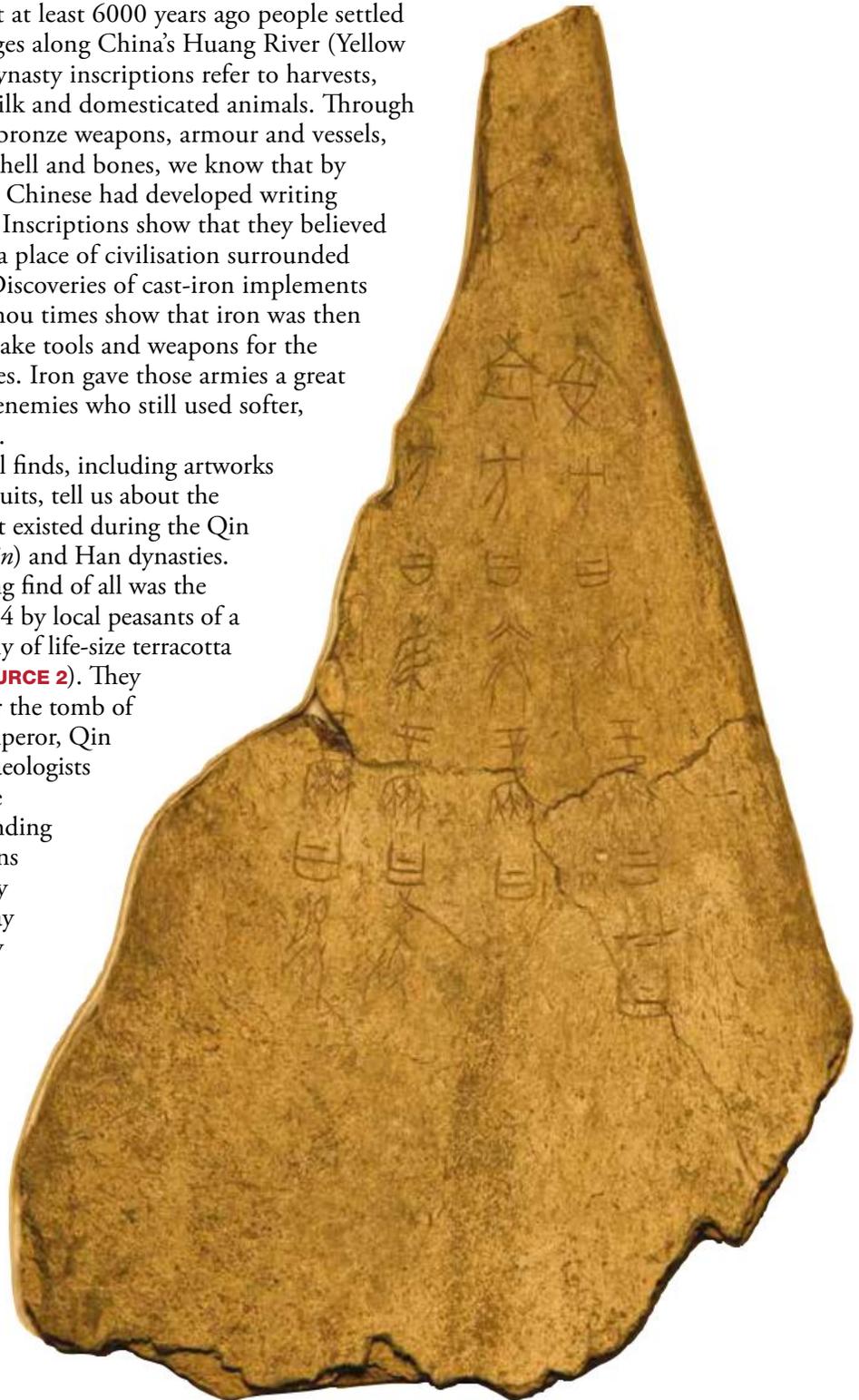
7.2.1 How do we know about ancient China?

From huge structures such as the Great Wall of China to the writings of ancient Chinese poets and historians, there are many primary sources that provide evidence of ancient China.

We know that at least 6000 years ago people settled in farming villages along China's Huang River (Yellow River). Shang dynasty inscriptions refer to harvests, rainfall, crops, silk and domesticated animals. Through inscriptions on bronze weapons, armour and vessels, and on tortoiseshell and bones, we know that by Shang times the Chinese had developed writing (see **SOURCE 1**). Inscriptions show that they believed that China was a place of civilisation surrounded by barbarians. Discoveries of cast-iron implements from Eastern Zhou times show that iron was then being used to make tools and weapons for the expanding armies. Iron gave those armies a great advantage over enemies who still used softer, bronze weapons.

Archaeological finds, including artworks and jade burial suits, tell us about the rich cultures that existed during the Qin (pronounced *chin*) and Han dynasties. The most exciting find of all was the discovery in 1974 by local peasants of a huge buried army of life-size terracotta warriors (see **SOURCE 2**). They stood guard over the tomb of China's First Emperor, Qin Shihuang. Archaeologists estimate that the complex surrounding the tomb contains at least 7000 clay warriors, 600 clay horses and many weapons. Two bronze chariots, each made up of more than 3000 pieces, were also found.

SOURCE 1 Shang dynasty inscriptions on bone. In 1928 nearly 100 000 engraved bones and turtle shells from the Shang dynasty were found near the modern city of Anyang. They were covered in early Chinese writing.



SOURCE 2 Some of the thousands of terracotta warriors that were buried around the tomb of China's first emperor



SOURCE 3 From Sima Qian's book *Shiji*. Sima Qian was a Chinese historian who lived from about 145 to 86 BCE (during the Han dynasty).

In the ninth moon the First Emperor was buried in Mount Li . . . he employed his soldiery, to the number of 700 000, to bore down . . . and there a foundation of bronze was laid and the sarcophagus placed thereon. Rare objects and costly jewels were collected . . . in vast quantities. **Artificers** were ordered to construct mechanical crossbows, which, if anyone were to enter, would immediately discharge their arrows . . . On the roof were delineated the **constellations** of the sky, on the floor the geographical divisions of the earth . . .

The Second Emperor said, 'It is not fitting that the **concubines** of my late father who are without children should leave him now'; and accordingly he ordered them to accompany the dead monarch to the next world . . . someone suggested that the workmen who had made the machinery and concealed the treasure knew the great value of the latter . . . Therefore, so soon as the ceremony was over . . . the **mausoleum** was closed, so that not one of the workmen escaped.

artificer craftsperson or inventor

constellations groups of stars

concubines women who lived with the emperor in a sexual relationship but were not married to him

mausoleum large tomb structure

7.2 PUTTING IT ALL TOGETHER

USING HISTORICAL SOURCES AS EVIDENCE

- 1 Examine **SOURCE 1**. What clues about ancient China's civilisation have been provided by inscriptions and implements?
- 2 Explain how **SOURCE 1** provides evidence of a writing system during the Shang dynasty.
- 3 Study **SOURCE 2**.
 - a Describe the terracotta warriors.
 - b How can you tell they were not mass-produced?
 - c What can you tell from them about the emperor's army, his wealth and his power?
- 4 Read **SOURCE 3**. Discuss the following questions in groups and report your findings to the class.
 - a Why were crossbows installed in the tomb?
 - b Why might the constellations of the sky have been represented on the roof of the tomb?
 - c Why were the concubines and workers buried with the emperor?
 - d What does the sacrifice of women and workers suggest about the rights of these two groups in ancient China?
 - e What do you think the Chinese thought about life after death?

7.3 China's civilisation begins

7.3.1 China's physical features and the beginning of civilisation

DID YOU KNOW?

The name 'China' comes from the name of the Chinese state Qin. People in India and Central Asia must have known of Qin's existence by about 300 BCE because by that time the word 'China' appeared in their languages. Modern Chinese call their country *Zhongguo*. In Eastern Zhou times, *Zhongguo* meant the central states of China.

learn on

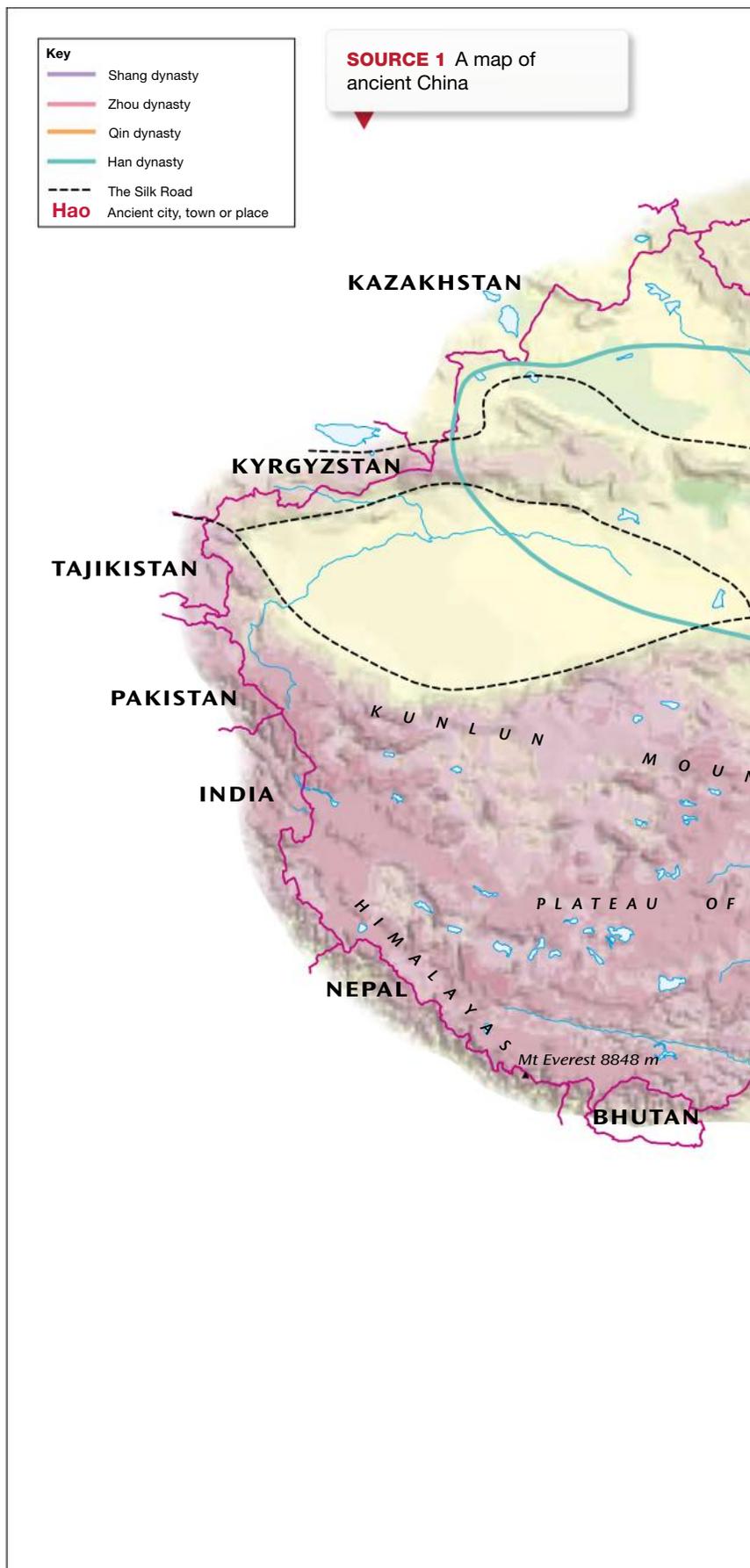
To access videos, interactivities, discussion widgets, image galleries, weblinks and more, go to www.jacplus.com.au

The ancient Chinese saw their country as the centre of the world. Until about 126 BCE they were unaware of the existence of other civilisations. According to legends in the ancient books of China, there was once a 'golden age' in which the arts of civilisation, morals and good government were established. The legends tell of a dynasty called the Xia (pronounced *shar*). It is possible that this dynasty ruled a state in China from about the twenty-first century BCE to the seventeenth century BCE, when its last king was overthrown. However, we have no primary evidence of its existence.

What we do know with certainty is that civilisation could not have developed where it did in China without its river valleys. They provided fertile land for farming. But farming along such river valleys could also be hazardous as the same floods that provided rich soil for crops could also devastate farms and villages. People looked to gods and rulers to protect them.

From earliest times, Chinese rulers based their authority on the **mandate of heaven**. This meant they had been chosen by the gods to rule. However, a ruler who failed to protect the people from floods, famine, wars or other disasters was considered to have lost the mandate of heaven and could be overthrown.

mandate of heaven Chinese expression meaning that a ruler had been chosen by the gods



Source: Map drawn by Spatial Vision.



China's earliest dynasties

The first dynasty for which we have evidence is the Shang dynasty (c. 1600–1046 BCE). The Shang rulers were often at war with neighbouring groups. Their dynasty fell when the Zhou (pronounced *jo*) defeated them and set up a new dynasty. Historians divide the Zhou dynasty into two periods: the Western Zhou dynasty (1045–771 BCE) and the Eastern Zhou dynasty (770–256 BCE), under which the capital was moved to the east.

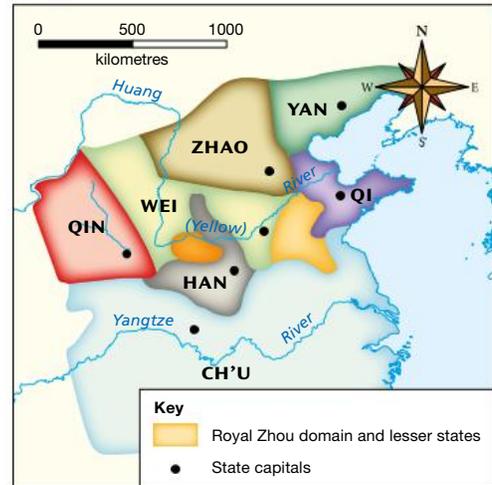
learn on

To access videos, interactivities, discussion widgets, image galleries, weblinks and more, go to www.jacplus.com.au

The Warring States period (475–221 BCE)

Under the Eastern Zhou rulers, royal authority was weak. There were many wars between local lords, who controlled their own states within the Zhou kingdom. The stronger states defeated and took over the weaker states. Finally seven states — Qin, Han, Zhao, Wei, Ch'u, Yan and Qi — remained to fight for control of northern China.

SOURCE 2 Zhou dynasty China during the Warring States period, about 300 BCE



Source: Map drawn by Spatial Vision.

myWorldHistoryAtlas

Deepen and check your understanding of the topic with the following resources and auto-marked questions:
Early Chinese kingdoms

7.3.1 Activities

CHECK YOUR UNDERSTANDING

- 1 Explain the idea of the mandate of heaven.
- 2 How could a ruler lose the mandate of heaven?
- 3 Why do you think the Xia dynasty is often referred to as the 'legendary' Xia dynasty?
- 4 Why do we know more about the Shang and Zhou dynasties?
- 5 What was the Warring States period?

USING HISTORICAL SOURCES AS EVIDENCE

- 6 Look closely at **SOURCE 1**.
 - a How big was China in Shang and Zhou times compared with modern China?

- b How many major rivers can you find in the area that was part of China under the Shang and Zhou dynasties?
 - c Find three natural features that would have helped to protect China from invaders.
- 7 Study **SOURCE 2**.
- a During the Warring States period, which states occupied land surrounding river valleys?
 - b Which states would appear to have had the most advantages in these wars?

7.3 PUTTING IT ALL TOGETHER

IDENTIFYING CONTINUITY AND CHANGE

- 1 Using the sources and information in this subtopic, make a list of ways in which the adoption of farming must have changed ancient Chinese society.

ANALYSING CAUSE AND EFFECT

- 2 Suggest how China's rivers would have contributed to the development of its civilisation.

7.4 The people of ancient China

7.4.1 The ruling classes

Chinese society was headed by rulers who were supported by lords, the landowning gentry (whose position was based on inherited status, wealth and education) and **bureaucrats**. These classes had authority over large populations of peasants, landless labourers, artisans and some slaves.

bureaucrats
government officials

- Ancient Chinese rulers had great power. This is shown by Shang dynasty tombs containing war chariots and the bodies of thousands of followers. These people must have been sacrificed to serve their rulers in the afterlife.
 - Below the supreme ruler were the powerful lords. They governed the states, such as Zhao, Qin and Wei, within the kingdom.
 - Next came the landowning gentry. The warrior gentry headed the lords' armies. Bureaucrats were also recruited from the gentry, but they had to be scholars to become government officials.
- The lords of ancient China were often at war with neighbouring nomadic tribes to China's north and west. They also made war on each other. Warriors fought at first in chariots and later on horseback. The lords and warrior gentry regarded war almost as a sporting contest. When not fighting they spent much of their time hunting, feasting or attending ceremonies and entertainments at court.

Upper-class women had servants and luxuries. However, as girls they were considered inferior to boys. When they married they were treated as the property of their wealthy husbands, who were allowed to have several wives.

SOURCE 1 A late Zhou dynasty bronze musical bell



SOURCE 2 An ox-shaped bronze zun (wine vessel) from the late Zhou dynasty



7.4.1 Activities

CHECK YOUR UNDERSTANDING

- 1 What were the functions of the lords and landowning gentry in ancient China?
- 2 What was the role of the bureaucrats?
- 3 How do we know that ancient Chinese rulers had great power?

USING HISTORICAL SOURCES AS EVIDENCE

- 4 Look closely at **SOURCES 1** and **2**. Describe each of these objects and explain why they would almost certainly have belonged to members of the ruling classes.

7.4.2 The common people

The struggling peasants

Most of the people were powerless peasants whose lives changed little over thousands of years. They reared sheep, pigs, poultry, buffalo and oxen, and grew grains such as wheat, millet and barley. Most peasants were tenants who worked fields owned by the lords or gentry. They had to give their landlords about half of everything they produced, as well as paying taxes to the government. Times could be so hard that they were forced to sell their children into slavery.

Peasants had to cope with natural disasters, such as floods and famine, and with the constant threat of war. Most of the **infantry** in the armies were **conscripted** peasants. In hand-to-hand fighting their main weapons were at first **halberds** with bronze blades. Later they used swords made from bronze or iron. Many foot soldiers died in battle. Those who were captured could expect to be executed or condemned to slavery.

The lowest classes

Below the peasants came artisans, merchants and slaves. Artisans were skilled craftsmen such as armourers, metalworkers and carpenters. They were a small class because their products were mostly for the ruling classes. Merchants, who conducted businesses and trade, were an even smaller and lower class. Although some merchants were wealthy, they were not considered to play a useful role and were ranked just above slaves. There were fewer slaves in China than in many other ancient societies. Many slaves had been taken as prisoners of war. Others suffered slavery as punishment for crimes (sometimes committed by their relatives rather than themselves). Still others were peasants who were sold as slaves to pay debts.

infantry foot soldiers

conscripted forced to become a soldier

halberds daggers mounted on axe handles

SOURCE 3 A bronze mao (spearhead) from the late Shang dynasty



SOURCE 4 A yue (battle-axe head) with a dragon design, from the late Shang dynasty



DID YOU KNOW?

In ancient China ornaments and jewellery were worn by women and men as a badge of their social rank. This made it easy to tell at a glance their position in society.

7.4.2 Activities

CHECK YOUR UNDERSTANDING

- 1 Why did peasants suffer in wars no matter which side won?
- 2 How could people become slaves in ancient China?
- 3 Why were merchants regarded as belonging to one of the lowest social classes, even though they might be wealthy?

USING HISTORICAL SOURCES AS EVIDENCE

- 4 Identify the objects in **SOURCES 3** and **4** and explain how they could provide evidence of the hardships faced by conscripted peasants.

7.4 PUTTING IT ALL TOGETHER

IDENTIFYING CONTINUITY AND CHANGE

- 1 Draw and label a social pyramid showing the position of the different social classes in ancient China and explain why it would have been very difficult for Chinese society to change.
- 2 In groups, write and perform a role-play of an imaginary discussion between peasants and members of the ruling classes on the topic of war. Suggest what feelings each would have about war and why their feelings would differ greatly.

7.5 Everyday life and death

7.5.1 Everyday life

How different were the everyday lives of people from different the social classes in ancient China and how differently were they treated in death? Life and death were marked by extreme inequality between rulers, lords, gentry and bureaucrats on the one hand and peasants, artisans and slaves on the other. In addition, within all classes there was extreme inequality between men and women.

The vast majority of the Chinese people were peasant farmers for whom life was a constant struggle to survive. Most spent their entire lives in villages of around a hundred families, toiling on small family farms. They worked long hours every day and most of their work was done by hand. The threat of floods and droughts meant that groups of families often worked together on such tasks as maintaining irrigation canals. In towns and cities crafts were usually hereditary, with sons learning from their fathers and taking their places when they died. The lives of craftsmen and merchants were also tough but often better than the lives of peasants. At least craftsmen and merchants got to travel about for work and trade.

Women's hard lives

Regardless of social class, women were considered inferior to men. Fathers ruled in ancient Chinese families. Women were expected to look after the household and children but in peasant families they often worked in the fields as well. Their fathers arranged their marriages and once married a woman had to live with her husband's family in a dwelling that might house three generations. Married women had to obey their husband's family members but they could gain some respect by producing sons. Baby girls were not valued and were sometimes put out to die or sold to be servants. If a woman failed to give birth to boys her husband might take other wives. In a society where people had to respect their elders, another way for a woman to gain respect was to outlive her husband.

Entertainment

The unending work of men and women in common families left almost no time or money for any kind of entertainment, apart from occasional festivals. In contrast, for the ruling classes, and some wealthy merchants, several forms of entertainment were available. During the Zhou dynasty acting, music and dance were combined into Chinese opera, in which famous legends were performed. There was a variety of board games from around 500 BCE. From the time of the Qin dynasty, acrobatics became another popular form of entertainment.

SOURCE 1 From Michael Lowe, *Everyday Life in Early Imperial China*

... evidence in the form of reliefs [sculptures] that decorated a tomb illustrates the type of entertainment that rich families could afford to stage, right at the end of the Han period. There was dancing and sword-play, juggling and acrobatic feats, accompanied by skilled players with their drums and bells, their wind and stringed instruments; and we know of other forms of amusements ... such as cock-fighting, dog or horse racing and bird hunting.

learn on

To access videos, interactivities, discussion widgets, image galleries, weblinks and more, go to www.jacplus.com.au

7.5.1 Activities

CHECK YOUR UNDERSTANDING

- 1 Describe ways in which women were disadvantaged in Chinese society.
- 2 Why did peasants have little entertainment?

USING HISTORICAL SOURCES AS EVIDENCE

- 3 Read **SOURCE 1**.
 - a How do we know about the entertainments of the ruling classes?
 - b What types of entertainments had the ruling classes?
 - c Why would it be more difficult to find evidence for the entertainments of the common people?

7.5.2 Death and burials

We know little about death among the poor but a lot about the funeral customs of rulers and the ruling classes because they could afford elaborate tombs. Chinese ideas about death preceded the organised religions so most people did not restrict funeral rituals to any one religion. A rich family might employ Daoist and Buddhist priests and Confucian scholars to play official roles at a funeral (see 7.7 Confucianism, religion and law).

It was believed that when someone died their soul left the body to dwell in a spirit world. It was also believed that an elaborate funeral would inform the spirit world of the deceased's high rank in society. Another belief was that the living had to help the deceased into the spirit world so that the dead would not become evil spirits that would return to worry them. From about 5000 BCE to the seventeenth century CE, it was the custom of the ruling classes to bury goods, including food and drink, with the dead so that they would have them in the afterlife. Until Han dynasty times it was also common for rulers to have people buried with them to serve them in the spirit world.

The rich had grand funeral feasts and ceremonies and there is evidence of puppets being buried with them that were clothed in fine silk that was worth more than a peasant might earn in a year. Their tombs were painted with scenes of joyful banquets and dances. The poor had no such finery. Most were probably buried in simple pits. In famines, floods and wars, most of the poor may have received no burial at all.

SOURCE 2 Some of the life-sized terracotta warriors that were buried to guard the tomb of China's first emperor Qin Shihuang



SOURCE 3 A jade burial suit of Princess Dou Wan, who lived before 100 BCE. The suit was made of 2150 pieces of jade held together with gold wire. It was believed that jade would stop the body from decaying and ensure immortality.



7.5.2 Activities

CHECK YOUR UNDERSTANDING

- 1 In ancient China, what beliefs were held about life after death?
- 2 What took place at the funeral of a member of the ruling classes?
- 3 How did this compare with the death and burial of a poor person?

USING HISTORICAL SOURCES AS EVIDENCE

- 4 Study **SOURCES 2** and **3**.
 - a Describe each source.
 - b Identify its purpose.
 - c Suggest what it can tell us about beliefs associated with death.

7.5 PUTTING IT ALL TOGETHER

USING HISTORICAL SOURCES AS EVIDENCE

- 1 Using the sources and other information in this subtopic, make a mind map to represent inequality in ancient China in life and death.

ANALYSING CAUSE AND EFFECT

- 2 Explain why the power and wealth of the ruling classes could be described as a cause of the poverty and hardships suffered by the common people of ancient China.

7.6 Ancient China and the natural environment

7.6.1 China's natural environments

In our time China faces enormous environmental problems. Since the late twentieth century China's rapid economic growth has produced thousands of new factories making goods that are exported around the world. This industrial growth has depended on vast numbers of new power stations. Air pollution in many Chinese cities is so bad that when the 2008 Olympics were held in Beijing, many factories had to stop production and thousands of cars had to be taken off the roads. These problems are now huge, but even in ancient times China's population had a serious impact on its environment.

China is a vast country with a wide range of climates and landscapes. It has plateaus and mountains in the west, deserts and grasslands in the north, forests in the north-east, hills and low mountains in the south and plains along the coast. China's climate also varies greatly. Beijing has freezing winters while coastal southern China is subtropical.

SOURCE 1 This section of the Great Wall of China straddles mountains north of Beijing. The wall extends over some 5000 kilometres through many different landscapes.



learn on

To access videos, interactivities, discussion widgets, image galleries, weblinks and more, go to www.jacplus.com.au

DID YOU KNOW?

Over many centuries the mud from soil erosion raised the bed of the Huang River so much that the river flowed above the level of the countryside and had to be contained by man-made dykes.

When these dykes broke, floods drowned many people. According to Chinese records more than a million people died in the river's worst flood in 1117 CE.

In ancient times China at first consisted mainly of the area around the fertile valleys of the Huang and Yangtze rivers. It was not until Han dynasty times that the outer areas were brought under Chinese control (see 7.3 China's civilisation begins). Then, as now, more than 90 per cent of China's people lived in the country's heartland in the east, where the rivers provided water for agriculture. But these rivers often flooded, causing massive damage and loss of life.

7.6.1 Activities

CHECK YOUR UNDERSTANDING

- 1 Name at least five different types of natural environments that exist in China.
- 2 Why have more than 90 per cent of Chinese people lived around the river valleys in the country's east?

USING HISTORICAL SOURCES AS EVIDENCE

- 3 Describe the landscape in **SOURCE 1**. Then use your library or the internet to find other images of landscapes along the Great Wall. Explain why few of those regions would have been able to support the levels of population that existed in China's east.

7.6.2 A big population

One in every four people in the modern world is Chinese. Researchers have found that even in ancient times China's population was huge but that it could rise and fall rapidly. They estimate:

- in Qin dynasty times (221–206 BCE) China had about 20 million people
- by 1 CE there were about 60 million people
- by 220 CE the population had fallen to about 40 million
- China's population took almost another thousand years to surpass 60 million.

SOURCE 2 A constant haze of air pollution hangs over modern China's cities. This is a view of Shanghai.



The rapid population growth during the first Han dynasty (206 BCE–9 CE) was made possible by peace, improved farming methods and irrigation. However, these advances involved clearing forests and cultivating grasslands. Farming along the upper reaches of the Huang River caused massive soil erosion, filling the river with the mud that gave it the name ‘Yellow River’. The falling population by 220 CE was probably caused mainly by deaths in rebellions and by soil erosion and famines.

Native animal populations fell as humans took ever more of their habitat. In our time China’s pandas have barely been saved from extinction. In ancient times, elephants and rhinoceroses roamed across much of China. The rhinoceros was driven to extinction and elephants now survive in only a few protected areas of the south-west.

learn on

To access videos, interactivities, discussion widgets, image galleries, weblinks and more, go to www.jacplus.com.au

7.6.2 Activities

CHECK YOUR UNDERSTANDING

- 1 What are the most likely reasons for:
 - a China’s population growth between around 221 BCE and 1 CE
 - b China’s population decline by around 220 CE?

- 2 How did rising populations and land clearance for farming affect China’s rivers and wildlife?

USING HISTORICAL SOURCES AS EVIDENCE

- 3 What are the signs of pollution in **SOURCE 2**?

7.6 PUTTING IT ALL TOGETHER

IDENTIFYING CONTINUITY AND CHANGE

- 1 Explain what has changed and what has remained the same in China from ancient to modern times with regard to:
 - a population levels
 - b environmental problems.

ANALYSING CAUSE AND EFFECT

- 2 Explain how population growth could have been both a cause and effect of the clearing of forests and cultivation of grasslands in ancient China.

7.7 Confucianism, religion and law

7.7.1 The ideas and influence of Confucianism

The oldest Chinese religious ideas involved worshipping gods of the sun, rivers and mountains. People worshipped ancestors and believed in good and evil spirits. Ancient China was also influenced by three great and lasting traditions — Daoism, Confucianism and Buddhism. China was tolerant of different beliefs partly because Confucianism, Daoism and Buddhism encouraged tolerance. Confucianism also had a strong and lasting influence on law in ancient China.

Confucius (551–479 BCE)

Amid the ongoing wars of the second half of the Zhou dynasty, **philosophers** taught ideas to solve the problems of their age. Confucius (K’ung Fu-tse) is regarded as the greatest of these thinkers. Born into a minor noble family, his education qualified him to become a high official. Instead he became a philosopher who taught about life and government. Some of his disciples gained high positions during the Warring States period, but Confucius himself never held anything more than a low post.

The philosophy of Confucius

What we know of Confucius comes from a book called *Lun-yu* (*The Analects*). It is a collection of his sayings recorded by his followers. Confucius was not concerned with religion, but rather with how personal and governmental good conduct could ensure a just and harmonious society. He taught the ideals of family duty and believed that superior people behaved humanely. He taught that government should exist for the people’s welfare and that people would follow a good ruler who led by example. He tried without success to convince the rulers of each of the states to restore good government.

philosopher one who studies the fundamental principles and causes of things

SOURCE 1 An ancient drawing of Confucius made many centuries after his death



By the time of his death Confucius had many followers. The best known of them was Mencius (372–289 BCE), who did succeed in influencing the rulers of his age. Confucius's ideas survived and influenced Chinese thought right up to modern times, as his ideal of the official as a scholar-gentleman replaced the earlier ideal of the warrior noble.

SOURCE 2 From *The Analects*

The princes of today are greedy in their search after material goods. They indulge themselves in pleasure and neglect their duties and carry themselves with a proud air. They take all they can from the people and invade the territory of good rulers against the will of the people, and they go out to get what they want without regard for what is right. That is the way of the modern rulers . . .

SOURCE 3 From *The Analects*

When the ruler himself does what is right, he will have influence over people without giving commands, and when the ruler does not do what is right, all his commands will be of no avail.

7.7.1 Activities

CHECK YOUR UNDERSTANDING

- 1 When did Confucius live?
- 2 When did the ideas of Confucius begin to influence Chinese thought?

4 Read **SOURCES 2** and **3**.

- a Why was Confucius critical of the rulers of his time?
- b What did Confucius regard as qualities of a good ruler?

USING HISTORICAL SOURCES AS EVIDENCE

- 3 Look closely at **SOURCE 1**. Identify aspects of this drawing which suggest that Confucius was highly regarded many centuries after his death.

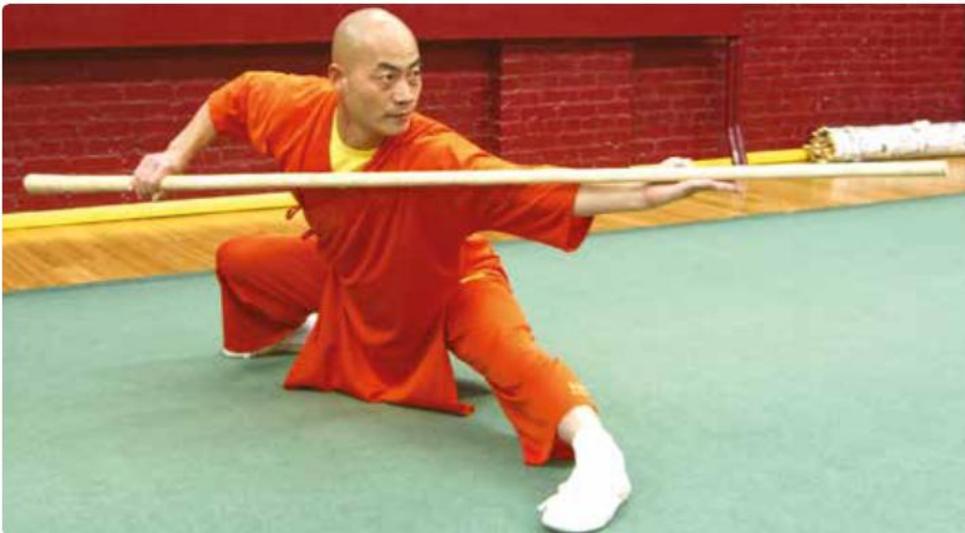
7.7.2 Religions in ancient China

Daoism

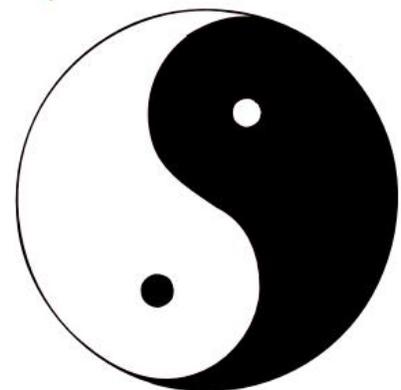
According to legend, **Daoist** ideas were first taught by a man call Laozi, who lived around the same time as Confucius. However, there is no evidence that Laozi existed. The main teaching in ancient Daoist texts is the need to retire from worldly concerns and follow the Dao ('the way'). Daoism holds that nature works in harmony and that people should see themselves as parts of nature in order to find happiness and health. Another Daoist belief was that it was possible to become immortal. Daoists developed the martial art of kung fu and the idea of the yin and yang, complementary opposing forces that together produce harmony and balance.

Daoist a follower of Daoism

SOURCE 4 Kung fu is a Daoist martial art that has been practised for thousands of years.



SOURCE 5 The Daoist symbol for yin and yang



Buddhism

Founded in India in the sixth century BCE, Buddhism expresses the teachings of the Buddha (born Siddhartha Gautama in what is now Nepal, in about 563 BCE), who gave up worldly pleasures and devoted his life to the search for enlightenment. Central ideas of Buddhism are that suffering is caused by desire and that people have many lives. In each of these lives, people should try to live better until they reach nirvana. Then it is unnecessary to be reborn, as nirvana is a state of bliss free from the cares of the world. Buddhism came into China via the Silk Road (see 7.9 The rise and fall of the Han) and became an important influence by the late first century CE.

SOURCE 6 Chinese Buddhism spread to neighbouring countries. This Buddhist statue in Korea reflects Chinese influence.



learn on

To access videos, interactivities, discussion widgets, image galleries, weblinks and more, go to www.jacplus.com.au

7.7.2 Activities

CHECK YOUR UNDERSTANDING

- 1 Describe the main ideas of Daoism.
- 2 How old is Daoism?
- 3 When did Buddhism become an important influence in China?
- 4 What are the central ideas of Buddhism?

USING HISTORICAL SOURCES AS EVIDENCE

- 5 Look at **SOURCES 4** and **5** and use the internet to find out what influence Daoist ideas have today.
- 6 Find images of the Buddha from South-East Asia and compare them with **SOURCE 6**. Explain why it is clear that the Buddha figure in **SOURCE 6** has been influenced by Chinese Buddhism.

7.7.3 Laws in ancient China

Confucianism has had an ongoing influence on Chinese traditions and that influence is especially evident in present-day Chinese beliefs about the need to respect elders and to revere ancestors. But Confucius had no real influence on Chinese government and laws during his lifetime. However, he was later to have an important and ongoing influence on both these. Confucius taught that a golden age of good government and good law had existed in early Zhou times. Long after his death, his teachings continued to have many followers. The best known of them was Mencius, who lived during about 372–298 BCE. Mencius taught that the Confucian ‘five relationships’, those between

father and son, husband and wife, elder brother and younger brother, friend and friend and between ruler and subject were the basis of any well-ordered society. He succeeded in presenting Confucian ideas in ways that influenced some rulers during the late Warring States period.

Laws of the First Qin Emperor

When the warring states were united under the rule of China's First Emperor, Qin Shihuang, in 221 BCE, the laws of the state of Qin were adopted throughout the newly created Chinese Empire. Confucianism had very little influence on these laws and Confucian scholars were suppressed by Qin Shihuang. Instead, the emperor's laws followed the tradition of Legalism, a school of thought that held that people were bad by nature. So the laws that prevailed throughout China under the Qin dynasty were very harsh, with cruel punishments (see **SOURCE 7**).

SOURCE 7 An extract from the laws of the state of Qin before 221 BCE. Under the Qin emperors such laws operated throughout China.

When five men jointly rob something worth one cash or more, they should have their left foot amputated, be tattooed, and be made convict labourers. If fewer than five men were involved but what they robbed was worth more than 660 cash, they should be tattooed, their noses cut off, and made convict labourers . . .

Suppose the holder of a low rank stole a sheep. Before the case was judged, he falsely accused someone else of stealing a pig . . . He should be left intact and made a convict labourer.

Anyone who kills a child without authorisation is to be made a convict labourer. This does not apply to killing a deformed or abnormal newborn.

Suppose A ran away from her husband and married B . . . After they are caught, what should the sentence be? They should be tattooed and made convict labourers . . . Convict labourers . . . are to be manacled and fettered.

Laws change after the fall of the Qin

The Han dynasty, which replaced the Qin in 206 BCE, employed Confucian scholars as its officials. These men used their positions to revise the laws, restoring Confucian ideas. Those ideas continued to influence Chinese thought and Chinese law under a succession of dynasties until the end of the last Chinese Empire in 1911 CE. China's laws in turn influenced the legal systems of countries where China had influence, especially Vietnam and Korea.

7.7.3 Activities

CHECK YOUR UNDERSTANDING

- 1 When did Confucian ideas first come to influence Chinese law?
- 2 What school of thought was the main influence on Chinese law under the Qin dynasty?
- 3 How was Confucianism restored as an influence on Chinese law under the Han dynasty?

USING HISTORICAL SOURCES AS EVIDENCE

- 4 Read **SOURCE 7**.
 - a According to the laws of Qin, a robber should have his left foot cut off and be made a convict labourer. How difficult would such a life be with only one foot?
 - b In this source, 'left intact' means not mutilated. Using this source as your evidence, explain which crimes were considered the most serious and punished the most severely under Qin law.
 - c Explain what conclusions you can draw from this source about the rights of women and children under Qin law.
 - d How do you think the ordinary people would have felt about Qin laws?

7.7 PUTTING IT ALL TOGETHER

IDENTIFYING CONTINUITY AND CHANGE

- 1 Using the sources and other information in this subtopic, describe ways in which Confucianism continued to influence Chinese culture over many centuries.

DETERMINING HISTORICAL SIGNIFICANCE

- 2 Discuss why Confucius deserves to be regarded as one of the most significant individuals in Chinese history.

7.8 Qin Shihuang, the First Emperor of China

7.8.1 Qin rule

Ying Zheng, the ruler of Qin, ended the Warring States period by completing his conquest of the other states of China. He founded the Qin dynasty (221–206 BCE) and gave himself the title Shihuangdi. In modern Chinese he is called Qin Shihuang (pronounced *chin shir hwang*), which means ‘First Emperor of the Qin’. The Qin dynasty was the shortest in Chinese history but it was also one of the most important. It was China’s first centralised empire and its legacies include the Great Wall.

From 221 BCE, the harsh laws of the Qin state were imposed throughout China. Qin Shihuang sent armies south, conquering much of what is now southern China. To remove threats to his power, the emperor confiscated all weapons held by his people. He banished many nobles of the conquered states and forced others to live in his capital, where they could be watched. In 213 BCE, to stamp out rebellious ideas, he ordered a public burning of books, including those of Confucian scholars (see **SOURCE 1**). He had scholars who kept their books executed by being buried alive.

Previously in China the nobles had held huge areas of the land in return for services to the king. Beneath them, millions of peasants toiled for the nobles in return for the right to use land. This is what we call a feudal system. The emperor changed this by dividing the country into local government areas administered by officials. He also allowed farming land to be bought and sold freely.

SOURCE 1 A Chinese painting illustrating Qin Shihuang’s burning of the books and the execution of scholars



learn on

To access videos, interactivities, discussion widgets, image galleries, weblinks and more, go to www.jacplus.com.au

7.8.1 Activities

CHECK YOUR UNDERSTANDING

- 1 How did the king of Qin become the ruler of China's first centralised empire?
- 2 What area did Qin Shihuang conquer?
- 3 How and why did Qin Shihuang weaken the power of the nobles?
- 4 How did he reduce the influence of Confucian scholars?

USING HISTORICAL SOURCES AS EVIDENCE

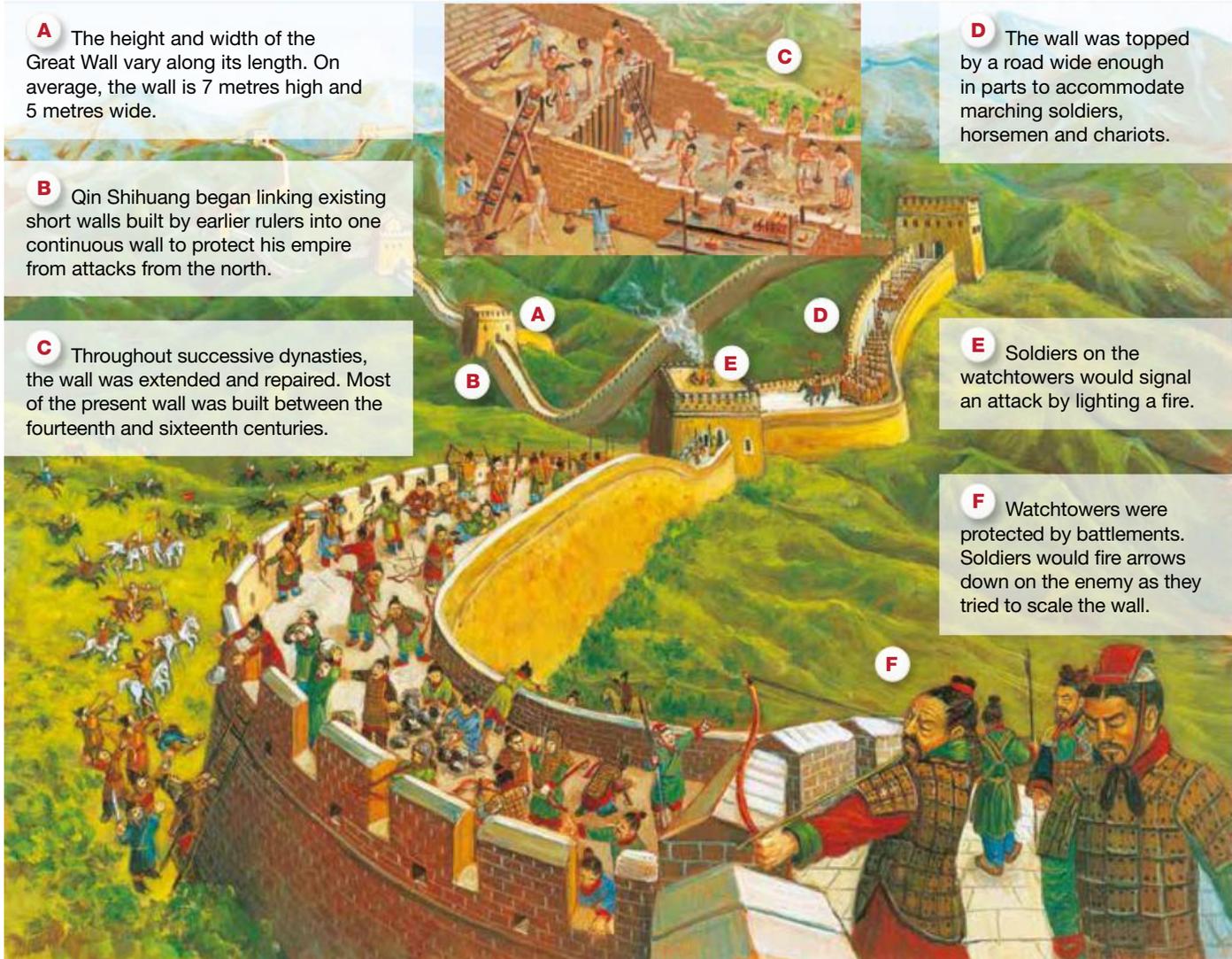
- 5 Describe what is happening in **SOURCE 1**.
- 6 Working in pairs, role-play a situation in which a Confucian scholar is appealing to the First Emperor to change his mind about burning Confucian books. One of you should represent the perspective of the scholar and the other that of the emperor.

7.8.2 The Great Wall and other achievements of Qin Shihuang

From as early as the seventh century BCE, the Chinese states had built walls to protect themselves from invasion by the northern nomadic **Xiongnu** tribes. During the Warring States period, states had also built walls between themselves and neighbouring states. To unify China, Qin Shihuang ordered the destruction of the walls between former states. To prevent invasion he ordered his people to link the walls that defended China from the Xiongnu. About half of the present length of the Great Wall was first linked into one continuous barrier under the Qin (see **SOURCES 2** and **3**).

Xiongnu the ancient Chinese name for the nomadic Turkic tribes of Central Asia

SOURCE 2 The Great Wall of China is the world's biggest single construction project. It is more than 5000 kilometres long and has 20 000 watchtowers and 10 000 beacon towers. The present wall is much longer and stronger than that completed under the Qin. It took many more centuries to complete, and over time its construction may have cost a million lives.



Reforms of the Qin

To strengthen central rule and make China more efficient, Qin Shihuang introduced many reforms.

- Separate states were replaced with central rule and one set of laws.
- The calendar and people's dress were made the same throughout the empire.
- A single form of writing, a single system of weights and measures and a single currency (money) were to be used throughout the empire. This made trade and taxation more efficient.
- His new capital was Xianyang. Highways were built from it to unite the country, and new trading cities were founded.
- He ordered that all carts were to have the same axle width. This made it possible for carts to move more easily along the dirt roads as the wheels of all carts could travel in the same wheel ruts.

DID YOU KNOW?

About 5800 kilometres of roads were built in China by the time the Qin dynasty fell — more than the Romans had built almost four centuries later.

SOURCE 3 A section of the Great Wall of China



myWorldHistoryAtlas

Deepen and check your understanding of the topic with the following resources and auto-marked questions:
Unification of China



7.8.2 Activities

CHECK YOUR UNDERSTANDING

- 1 Why had the Chinese states built walls before the time of the First Emperor?
- 2 What walls did Qin Shihuang have destroyed and which walls did he have linked? Why?
- 3 How would standard calendars, laws, weights and measures, standardised money and a standard system of writing have made trade, taxation and government more efficient?
- 4 Why would the emperor have wanted to also standardise people's dress and the width of axles on carts?

USING HISTORICAL SOURCES AS EVIDENCE

- 5 **SOURCE 2** is a secondary source and **SOURCE 3** is a primary source. Compare them to judge the accuracy of **SOURCE 2**.
- 6 Describe features of the Great Wall that could have made it an effective barrier to invasion.
- 7 Look at the landscape in **SOURCE 3** and read the **SOURCE 2** caption. Why do you think so many people could have died building the Great Wall?

DID YOU KNOW?

In ancient China dragons were sometimes depicted with their mouths open, roaring as if to frighten away evil spirits. The dragon is a symbol of wisdom, strength and goodness. It was under Qin Shihuang that the dragon was first used as a symbol for Chinese emperors.

learn on

To access videos, interactivities, discussion widgets, image galleries, weblinks and more, go to www.jacplus.com.au

7.8.3 The fall of the Qin

Qin Shihuang wanted to live forever. He sent hundreds of men and women to sea on rafts in search of the secret of everlasting life, but none ever returned. He surrounded himself with fortune-tellers and others who promised to find him immortality. Despite these efforts he died at the age of 49 in 210 BCE, while on a journey. His chief minister, Li Si (pronounced *lee shir*), and others pretended for a while that the emperor was still alive. This gave them time to forge a decree that would place their choice of successor on the throne. It was summer, however, and the body of the emperor soon began to smell, so Li Si ordered a cart filled with rotting fish to follow the imperial carriage to disguise the smell. Only later did they announce the emperor's death, which was possibly due to poisoning by mercury, commonly used in 'immortality' drugs.

His successor, the Second Emperor, lasted only a few years. Higher taxes and forced labour had made the lives of the peasants unbearable. Hundreds of thousands of peasants had been conscripted to build palaces, roads and the emperor's tomb and to link the Great Wall and serve in the army. A peasant rebellion from 209 to 206 BCE destroyed the Qin dynasty. Liu Bang, a leader of the rebellion, became the new emperor and founded the Han Dynasty. Qin Shihuang thought he had founded a dynasty that would last for thousands of emperors. He failed in this. He had, however, turned a group of rival states into an empire and created a central system of government that lasted until the twentieth century.

SOURCE 4 An extract from Thomas Bartlett, *Qin Dynasty: China's Ancient Revolution*

The overall image of the Qin state and its imperial phase [the period of the Qin dynasty], as transmitted through history by surviving records, is a grimly harsh one ... These charges [against the Qin rulers] reflect early Han writers' self-interested writing of Qin history ... Overall, the Qin reflects in concentrated form the inhumane aspects of the Warring States period ... But, from the perspective of nation building, some modern Chinese ... emphasise his achievements, typically saying that 'he sacrificed one generation to benefit 10,000 future generations'.

7.8.3 Activities

CHECK YOUR UNDERSTANDING

- 1 How might the First Emperor's attempts to live forever have contributed to his early death?
- 2 How did Li Si try to disguise the smell of the emperor's rotting body?
- 3 When did the Qin dynasty fall?
- 4 Why was the Second Emperor unable to hold onto power?

USING HISTORICAL SOURCES AS EVIDENCE

- 5 Read **SOURCE 4**.
 - a Why would writers in the early Han dynasty have wanted to portray the Qin dynasty as a harsh one?
 - b Why have some modern Chinese taken a more favourable view of the Qin dynasty?

7.8 PUTTING IT ALL TOGETHER

IDENTIFYING CONTINUITY AND CHANGE

- 1 Using the sources and information in this subtopic answer the following questions.
 - a How was Chinese society changed under the First Emperor?
 - b How would groups such as the nobles, the peasants and Confucian scholars have regarded these changes?

ANALYSING CAUSE AND EFFECT

- 2 Identify reasons why the Qin dynasty was able to rise and why it fell after such a short time.

DETERMINING HISTORICAL SIGNIFICANCE

- 3 Hold a debate on whether or not Qin Shihuang should be regarded as possibly the most significant ruler of ancient China. In your arguments, consider Qin Shihuang's achievements as well as his methods.

7.9 The rise and fall of the Han

7.9.1 Reforms, expansion and trade

The fall of the Qin dynasty was followed by four years of bloody civil war before Liu Bang defeated his rivals and became the first ruler of the Han dynasty. This dynasty lasted, except for a brief interruption, for four centuries and made important achievements in education, science and trade. The Han dynasty had such influence on later dynasties that Chinese people in our time call themselves 'Han' people.

Han reforms

Liu Bang did not want to share the same fate as the Qin dynasty so he took steps to restore prosperity. The size of the army was reduced. He also reduced taxes on the peasants and encouraged farming to ensure plentiful supplies of food. As a result, China's population reached 60 million by the end of the first century BCE. However, landlords continued to exploit the peasants.

SOURCE 1 Chinese life under the Han

A The marketplace

As in Xianyang, large and lively marketplaces were usually just inside the city gates. This allowed access by travelling merchants. Merchants were looked down on by society even if they were rich. They were not seen as contributing in the way farmers did. Goods from all over China and the known world were sold and traded in the market.

B People you might see

In the noisy markets, people bought and sold food and animals. There were musicians, acrobats, jugglers, letter writers, dentists and craftworkers.

C Livestock available

Owl, panther, deer, dog, pig, ant eggs, snails and turtles were mostly bought by the rich.

D City walls

Ancient Chinese cities were circled by two walls. City walls were built to protect the people. If you visit China today, you will still be able to see the remains of these walls in many cities. The inner wall was called *cheng* and the outer wall was called *guo*. Often moats, called *chi*, surrounded these walls. The inner city was called *geng*, and together they were known as *cheng chi*.

E Family values

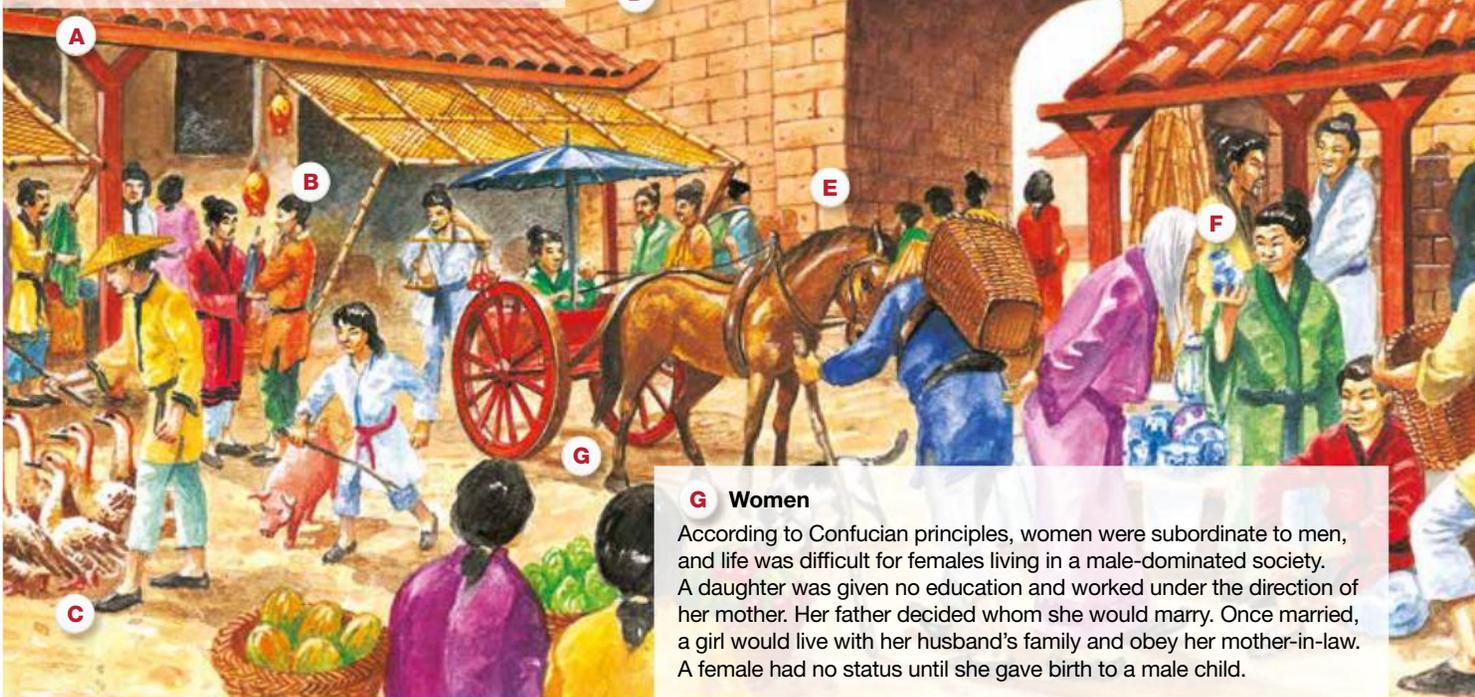
Rich and poor people lived in extended family groups. Their belief in Confucian values strengthened family ties. Ancestor worship and respect for elders were important values.

F Crafts and goods

Murals, jade jewellery and carvings, glazed pottery, silk goods, and objects made from cast iron such as ploughs were bought and sold.

G Women

According to Confucian principles, women were subordinate to men, and life was difficult for females living in a male-dominated society. A daughter was given no education and worked under the direction of her mother. Her father decided whom she would marry. Once married, a girl would live with her husband's family and obey her mother-in-law. A female had no status until she gave birth to a male child.



DID YOU KNOW?

The Han dynasty is usually regarded as more tolerant than the Qin dynasty. However, when the great historian Sima Qian dared to speak in defence of an officer who was unfairly blamed for a Chinese defeat by the Xiongnu, Emperor Wudi had Sima Qian **castrated** and thrown into prison.

castrated having the testicles cut off

learn on

To access videos, interactivities, discussion widgets, image galleries, weblinks and more, go to www.jacplus.com.au

A system of state education was founded. It included a Great Academy, in which boys studied the classic books of Confucianism. No girls were enrolled. The boys were expected to memorise what they studied and were not allowed to criticise or challenge ideas. Through examinations they were selected for positions as bureaucrats in the civil service.

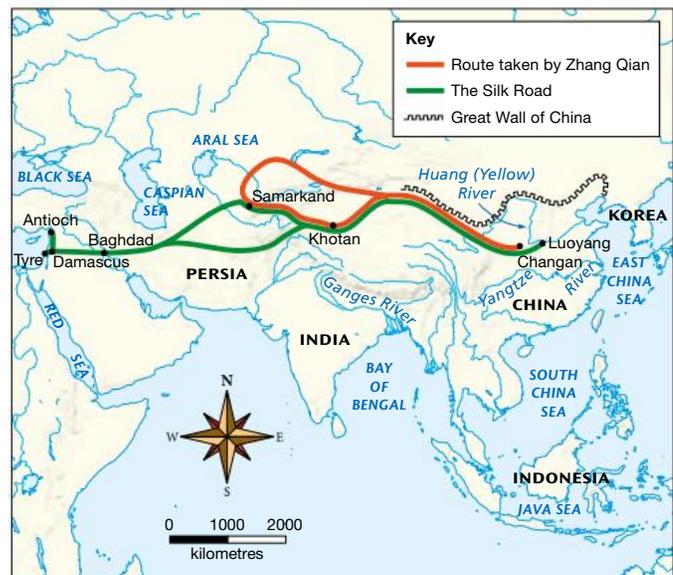
China expands

China expanded under the Han. In 138 BCE Emperor Wudi (140–87 BCE) sent Zhang Qian and 99 others on a mission to establish relations with people in the remote west. After twice being captured and enslaved by the Xiongnu and twice escaping, Zhang returned in 125 BCE with stories of civilisations that China had never heard of before. Zhang Qian was sent on two further missions to find a trade route to Central Asia and India. In the following years, Chinese rule was extended into the north of Korea in 109 BCE, and from Korea the influence of Chinese culture spread to Japan. Much of what is now south-eastern China and western China was brought under Han control by about 102 BCE.

The Silk Road

By the early first century BCE further Chinese missions led to the founding of the famous Silk Road. From this time onward, camel trains loaded with valuable silk were able to make the hazardous journey from China through the deserts and mountains of Central Asia to India, Persia and the Roman Empire. Traders from other lands used the Silk Road to bring products including jade, silver and Roman glassware to China.

SOURCE 2 The Silk Road, the world's longest trade route in continuous use



Source: Map drawn by Spatial Vision.

myWorldHistoryAtlas

Deepen and check your understanding of the topic with the following resources and auto-marked questions:
The Silk Roads

7.9.1 Activities

CHECK YOUR UNDERSTANDING

- 1 How did Liu Bang become the founder of the Han dynasty?
- 2 Why do modern Chinese people call themselves 'Han'?
- 3 How did the Han try to win support for their rule?
- 4 In what ways did the Chinese education system suppress critical thinking?
- 5 How were China's trade, territory and influence expanded under the Han?

USING HISTORICAL SOURCES AS EVIDENCE

- 6 Look at **SOURCE 1** and analyse it using these questions.
 - a Why were cities enclosed by walls?
 - b What role did marketplaces play in expanding trade?
 - c What can you discover from this source about activities, clothing and hairstyles in a Han era town?
- 7 Study **SOURCE 2**.
 - a Use the scale to work out approximately how far Zhang Qian travelled.
 - b Explain how China would have benefited from the contacts established through the Silk Road.

7.9.2 Growing discontent, rebellion and the fall of the Han

The rich get richer and the poor get poorer

To control newly conquered territories, the Han rulers **deported** many local people and settled their lands with Chinese. The ruling classes and merchants benefited from this growth of the empire, but the ordinary people of China paid a terrible price. The Han rulers paid for wars of conquest through increased taxes on the peasants. Many peasants had to sell their land to pay taxes. Others were so desperate that they were forced to sell their children or themselves into slavery.

deported forced to leave the country

SOURCE 3 Terracotta figures representing Han dynasty cavalry. Cavalry became a major part of the Han army because of the mobility it gave Chinese armies fighting mounted nomads.



Wang Mang

The peasants became more desperate while powerful landlords became richer. Even among the privileged there were people who saw this as unjust. Wang Mang was an official who had support from many Confucian scholars. In 9 CE he seized control of China from the infant Han emperor and set up the Hsin dynasty. In his first year as ruler, Wang Mang proclaimed many reforms.

- All land was to become the property of the emperor so that the estates of big landlords could be given to the peasants.
- The slave trade was to be banned.
- Government loans were to be given to peasants at low interest rates. This would have helped peasants who had to borrow from moneylenders at high interest to pay taxes but lost everything when their debts became too big to repay.

SOURCE 4 From a Chinese scholar of the early second century BCE, in the *Han-shu Han History*

These days a family of five peasants will have at least two persons who are liable for labour-services and conscription. What with their ploughing in the spring and hoeing in the summer, harvesting in the autumn and storing in the winter, with felling firewood, repairing government offices and rendering labour-service . . . in none of the four seasons will they have a day of rest. And, in spite of all this painful toil, they will still have to endure such natural disasters as flood and drought and also the cruelty of an impatient government which imposes taxes . . . those who own something sell it off at half its price; and those who own nothing borrow at doubled rates of interest. It is for this reason that some dispose of their lands and houses, and sell their children and grandchildren to redeem their debts.

SOURCE 5 From the statement of a Han dynasty official in 81 BCE

Those who live in . . . spreading mansions . . . know nothing of the discomforts of one-room huts and narrow hovels, of roofs that leak and floors that sweat.

Those with a hundred teams of horses . . . and wealth heaped in their storehouses . . . do not know the anxiety of facing days that have a beginning but no end . . .

The fall of the Hsin dynasty

The privileged classes forced Wang Mang to abandon these reforms and so peasant revolts began in 14 CE. Four years later, led by a secret society called the Red Eyebrows, the rebels attacked towns, killing officials and landlords. When powerful members of the old ruling family joined the fight against Wang Mang, his armies were defeated. Wang Mang was killed and beheaded in 23 CE. This was the end of the Hsin dynasty. The armies of the old ruling family crushed the Red Eyebrows and in 25 CE a new Han emperor took the throne.

The Eastern Han dynasty

The second period of Han rule is called the Eastern Han dynasty because the capital was moved to the east. So many people had died in the rebellion that there was now enough land for the peasants. Large areas of state land were given to them and taxes were reduced. But the big landowners benefited most from these reforms. They paid the lower taxes but continued to take at least half the harvest of their tenant farmers. Increasingly, the great landowning families were becoming more powerful than the Han government.

The Yellow Turbans and the fall of the Eastern Han

By the middle of the second century CE more local peasant uprisings had broken out. These were crushed, but in 184 CE a secret society called the Yellow Turbans led a countrywide revolt. As the central government collapsed, **warlords** became the absolute rulers of their own local areas. Their armies massacred many peasants during the years that it took to smash the revolt. When they finally defeated the Yellow Turbans, the warlords fought each other for the throne of China. By 220 CE the Han dynasty was finished and China began centuries of civil war, division and suffering.

learn on

To access videos, interactivities, discussion widgets, image galleries, weblinks and more, go to www.jacplus.com.au

warlords generals from powerful landowning families

7.9.2 Activities

CHECK YOUR UNDERSTANDING

- 1 Why did the Han rulers establish colonies of Chinese in newly conquered lands?
- 2 Which social class benefited and which suffered as a result of wars waged to expand the empire? How would members of those classes have regarded colonisation and war?
- 3 How did Wang Mang try to help the peasants and how did the ruling classes regain control?
- 4 What events brought about the end of the Eastern Han dynasty?

USING HISTORICAL SOURCES AS EVIDENCE

- 5 Study **SOURCE 3**. Why did the Han adopt cavalry as a major part of their army?
- 6 Read **SOURCES 4** and **5**.
 - a What social problems do the sources describe?
 - b What are the perspectives of the writers of each source?
 - c What evidence do the sources provide for the motives of peasants who rebelled against Han rule.

7.9 PUTTING IT ALL TOGETHER

IDENTIFYING CONTINUITY AND CHANGE

- 1 Working in small groups, discuss why you think peasant rebellions were able to overthrow dynasties but were unable to change the system that caused their problems.

ANALYSING CAUSE AND EFFECT

- 2 Using the sources and information in this subtopic, explain what caused rebellions such as that of the Red Eyebrows and the Yellow Turbans.
- 3 Imagine you are a leader of either of those rebel movements. Design a poster to encourage peasants to join your rebellion.

7.10 The heritage of China

7.10.1 Some great Chinese inventions

There are many legacies of ancient China. One of the most significant was the system of rule by emperors, which persisted until 1911. Even in modern times, Chinese leaders have continued to exercise powers that are not very different from those of the emperors. China's heritage also includes traces of the ancient past such as the Great Wall and the amazing discoveries from Qin and Han tombs. Perhaps the most remarkable part of China's heritage is the scale of discoveries and inventions that originated in ancient China, in many cases long before similar developments occurred in the western world.

Many things we take for granted today were invented by the people of ancient China. Here is a list of some of the more important ones:

- paper
- printing
- decimal system
- wheelbarrow
- seismograph
- matches
- gunpowder
- parachute
- kung fu/wushu
- cast iron
- ink
- helicopter rotor and propeller
- horse collar
- silk
- kite
- rocket
- compass
- umbrella
- printed book
- fan
- abacus
- origami
- cannon
- bomb
- acupuncture
- spinning wheel
- iron plowshare
- paper money
- chopsticks.

SOURCE 1 An ancient compass



Compass

The Chinese invented the magnetic compass. Compasses were first used to ensure houses were built facing a direction that was in harmony with nature.

Paper and printing

The inventions of paper and printing were to have an enormous impact on people's lives. The earliest paper was made by mixing rags, rope, bark and even fishing nets in a watery solution and crushing the material down to a wet pulp (see **SOURCE 2**).

The disintegrating fibres were used to create sheets of paper, which were used for many things including umbrellas, clothing, toilet paper, curtains, money and wallpaper. Paper revolutionised communication. Traditionally silk had been used for writing, but it was expensive. Paper was cheaper, so more people could afford to use it for writing.

Following the invention of block printing (see **SOURCE 3**) in 750 CE, every Chinese scholar and public servant bought copies of the most important books for their shelves. With paper, records could be kept and instructions sent more easily and more often. Today we still rely heavily on paper for communication.

SOURCE 2 Paper-making in ancient China



SOURCE 3 Printing in ancient China



learn on

To access videos, interactivities, discussion widgets, image galleries, weblinks and more, go to www.jacplus.com.au

7.10.1 Activities

CHECK YOUR UNDERSTANDING

- 1 For what purpose were compasses first used in China?
- 2 What material was traditionally used for writing in China and what was gained from the invention of paper?

USING HISTORICAL SOURCES AS EVIDENCE

- 3 Look at **SOURCE 1** and suggest how this early compass worked.
- 4 What can you tell from **SOURCES 2** and **3** about early Chinese methods of paper-making and printing?

7.10.2 Also made in China

Today we are used to buying all sorts of goods that are made in China. But how many people realise that long ago China led the world in inventions such as gunpowder and in developments in medicine, earthquake detection and even a favourite hobby of many people's childhoods, flying kites?

Gunpowder

From very early times the Chinese searched for a drug that would give the emperor eternal life. By accident they discovered gunpowder. At first, gunpowder was used in fireworks for entertainment and in religious ceremonies. Later it was used in making simple bombs. Lengths of heavy bamboo were loaded with gunpowder and a fuse set in the side. When cast iron was developed, pipes were loaded to create the first cannons. The Chinese then developed cannons that fired arrows with individual rockets attached — the first multi-stage rocket. Flame-throwers, mines and hand grenades were also used by Chinese armies.

Medicine

Acupuncture appears to have been used in China since the third century BCE. Needles were understood to block or stimulate the flow of yin and yang to certain areas of the body. The ancient Chinese were also the first to understand blood circulation and by 200 CE were using an **anaesthetic** based on hemp. Possibly the first human **dissection** was carried out on the body of a criminal in 16 CE by a doctor and a skilled butcher. Human dissection was soon banned, though, as it conflicted with the Confucian belief in the purity of the body.

Seismographs

Zhang Heng invented the world's first seismograph — an instrument for detecting earthquakes — in 132 BCE. An earth tremor caused a ball to be released from a dragon's mouth and fall into a toad's mouth farthest away from the earthquake epicentre. This showed the emperor the direction of the disaster.

SOURCE 4 Gunpowder was first used in fireworks.



SOURCE 5 Zhang Heng's seismograph



acupuncture a medical practice in which long, sharp needles are inserted under the skin as a means of diagnosing, relieving or curing illness

anaesthetic drug to deaden pain

dissection systematic cutting up of body for medical study

Kites

Kites were first made out of bamboo and silk, and later paper. They were used mostly during festivals, but they were also used in battle to frighten enemies (by creating unusual sounds through the strings) and to send signals to the troops. Kites were even used for fishing and for scaring birds away from crops.

SOURCE 6 Kites like this could also be seen in ancient China.



7.10.2 Activities

CHECK YOUR UNDERSTANDING

- 1 How did the Chinese discover gunpowder?
- 2 In what medical advances did China lead the world?

USING HISTORICAL SOURCES AS EVIDENCE

- 3 Look at **SOURCES 4, 5** and **6**. Choose one of these ancient Chinese inventions and conduct research on the internet to prepare a PowerPoint presentation that asks and answers the following questions:
 - a When was it first discovered?
 - b How was it made?
 - c How did it work?
 - d How was it used?
 - e What effect did it have on people's lives?
 - f Is the invention used today and, if so, how is it now used?

7.10.3 Conserving China's cultural heritage

The United Nations Educational, Social and Cultural Organization (UNESCO) is the world body responsible for identifying natural and cultural sites in all countries that are of such great value that they must be conserved. These sites include the remains and heritage of ancient civilisations. UNESCO maintains a list of these World Heritage Sites, which you can view on its website. You will not be surprised to find that China has more UNESCO-listed sites than almost any other country and that the Mausoleum of Qin Shihuang (see **SOURCE 7**) and the Great Wall of China are among the listed sites.

SOURCE 7 Terracotta soldiers and horses at the Mausoleum of Qin Shihuang



learn on

To access videos, interactivities, discussion widgets, image galleries, weblinks and more, go to www.jacplus.com.au

7.10.3 Activities

CHECK YOUR UNDERSTANDING

- 1 What is the role of UNESCO?
- 2 Name two UNESCO World Heritage listed sites in China.

USING HISTORICAL SOURCES AS EVIDENCE

- 3 In **SOURCE 7**, what evidence can you see of measures that have been taken to conserve the objects that were excavated from around the tomb of China's First Emperor?

7.10 PUTTING IT ALL TOGETHER

DETERMINING HISTORICAL SIGNIFICANCE

- 1 Compare the various ancient Chinese inventions described in this section and decide on one of them that you think had the biggest impact on people in its time and on future generations. Write an advertisement for it.
- 2 Visit the UNESCO World Heritage List. For either the Mausoleum of the First Qin Emperor or the Great Wall find out:
 - a what criteria were used to justify its World Heritage listing
 - b what concerns UNESCO has about developments that could reduce its value
 - c what UNESCO believes China is doing or must do to protect and conserve the site.

7.11 SkillBuilder: Analysing different perspectives

online only

How do we analyse the different perspectives of people in ancient China?

Primary sources often give different perspectives because not everyone will have seen an event or problem from the same point of view. It is important to analyse different perspectives, especially for bias and propaganda when trying to determine what happened in the past.



Go to your learnON course to access:

- An explanation of the skill (Tell me)
- A step-by-step process to develop the skill, with an example (Show me)
- An activity to allow you to practise the skill (Let me do it)
- Questions to test your application of the skill (Applying skills)

7.12 Review

online only

This final subtopic provides a range of opportunities for you to review and respond through:

- i revising and checking your historical knowledge
- ii demonstrating your ability to apply historical concepts and skills.

Go to your learnON course to access:

- A key chronology of events relevant to the topic
- A summary of the key knowledge presented in the topic
- A 'Big Questions' activity
- A multiple choice topic test
- Short answer or extended writing responses



on Resources

Interactivity

Ancient China timeline

Create a visual timeline of key events in ancient China.

int-2939

7.11 SkillBuilder: Analysing different perspectives

7.11.1 Tell me

What are different perspectives and why do they occur?

A perspective is a point of view, which is formed from someone's values and beliefs, attitudes and experiences. In a study of a period of history, perspectives on an event or a period can be gathered from primary sources, especially eyewitness accounts as might be found in a source such as a diary, as well as official sources such as records produced by those in power. Primary sources often give different perspectives because not everyone will have seen an event or problem from the same point of view. Some primary sources are biased (one-sided or prejudiced) or were created as propaganda (attempts to persuade people to accept a biased view). Each source will reflect the perspective of its creator and their target audience and purpose.

Why is it important to analyse different perspectives, especially bias and propaganda?

To find the truth on any matter, we have to be aware that what someone says or writes about it may be one-sided and an attempt to persuade and possibly to deceive. This is as important when trying to make up our minds on current issues as it is in trying to understand the past. For example, when buying a product you do not necessarily trust what advertisements say about it. An advertiser will wish to show a product in its best light, that is, present only positive aspects of it, so that a consumer will buy it. In the same way, a ruler may only want positive records of their rule to be made or displayed to ensure no dissent from those they rule or that their legacy is protected. Sometimes, the perspectives of those not part of the ruling group may be silenced — their absence from the public record also tells a historian something about that period. Historians must often research extensively to find perspectives of a range of people about events from the past in order to build up a balanced picture of the event or time period.

7.11.2 Show me

How to analyse different perspectives in primary sources

When you read an interpretation of a historical event or development you need to ask:

1. What is the subject or main idea of the source?
2. When was the source created?
3. Who created the source?
4. Why was it written?
5. Does it try to persuade and if so how does it do this?
6. Is the source supported or contradicted by the evidence of other sources?

An example: Qin Shihuang's achievements

Qin Shihuang wanted to be seen as a great and powerful ruler who brought peace and happiness to his people.

SOURCE 1 is an example of his propaganda. **SOURCES 2** and **3** provide other evidence. The six questions have been applied to **SOURCE 1**.

SOURCE 1 From an inscription ordered by Qin Shihuang. It was carved in 219 BCE.

... Great are the Emperor's achievements ...
All people under heaven
Work with a common purpose.
Tools and measures are the same ...
The written script is made the same ...
He defines the laws, leaving no one in doubt,
Making known what is forbidden ...
No evil is tolerated,
So all strive to be excellent people ...
None dare to be lazy ...
The ordinary people know peace ...
People help each other,
There are no robbers or thieves:
People delight in his rule ...
Wherever life is found,
All acknowledge his supreme rule ...

SOURCE 2 From a Qin imperial edict. When the First Emperor decided to standardise weights and measures, his order was published on bronze plates. Attached to the plates were wooden measures.

In the twenty-sixth year of his reign [221 BCE], the Emperor unified all the lands under heaven, brought peace to the people, and mounted the throne as Emperor. [He] ordered the prime minister to reform the measures and weights. For those who do not know the new system, this [object] is a standard model for making more copies.

SOURCE 3 Hsun-tzu, a Confucian scholar of the third century BCE, commenting on the methods of the rulers of the state of Qin in the last years of the Warring States period. These same methods were used throughout China under the Qin dynasty.

The Qin rulers employ their people harshly, terrorise them with authority, embitter them with hardship, bribe them with rewards, and destroy them with punishments.

1. *What is the subject or main idea of the source?* The main idea is that the First Emperor's reforms have unified China, given its people certainty about the laws, protected them from wrongdoers and made them hardworking, responsible, happy and grateful to their ruler.
2. *When was this source created?* It was written in 219 BCE.
3. *Who created the source?* Qin Shihuang ordered it to be written.
4. *Why was the source written?* It was written to tell people that the emperor acted for their benefit.
5. *Does it try to persuade and if so how does it do this?* It tries to persuade by giving a distorted account of what was happening. It makes no mention of forced labour, high taxes and the cruelty of the emperor's punishments.
6. *Is the source supported or contradicted by the evidence of other sources?* **SOURCE 2** supports the statement about measures. **SOURCE 3** contradicts most of the source by accusing the Qin rulers of causing misery and suffering rather than happiness.

7.11.3 Let me do it

In 213 BCE, Qin Shihuang ordered the burning of many books. He followed this up by executing hundreds of scholars who kept their books. **SOURCE 4** gives the official reasons for these harsh measures. Now use the six questions to see if you can recognise the bias in this source and analyse it. **SOURCE 5** provides other evidence.

SOURCE 4 Advice given by Prime Minister Li Si to Qin Shihuang

Your Majesty rules a unified Empire in which the difference between right and wrong is as clear as your own total authority. Yet there are people who unofficially spread teachings that are against official orders . . . they openly criticise your commands . . . The people are thus encouraged to be disrespectful. If this lying is not stopped the imperial authority will be weak . . . all people owning books . . . should destroy them.

SOURCE 5 From Sima Qian's book *Shiji* 91 BCE

But the First Emperor was greedy and short-sighted, confident in his own wisdom, never trusting his meritorious officials, never getting to know his people . . . outlawing books and writings, making the laws and penalties much harsher, putting deceit and force foremost and humanity and righteousness last, leading the whole world in violence and cruelty.

SOURCE 6 Qin Shihuang



7.11 APPLYING SKILLS

USING HISTORICAL SOURCES AS EVIDENCE

- 1 Sima Qian was Grand Historian of China during the Han dynasty. He did not live in the period when Qin Shihuang ruled. How does this fact affect your assessment of the usefulness of **SOURCE 5**?
- 2 Suggest sources or people from the time that might present other perspectives on Qin Shihuang's book-burning edict.
- 3 Explain why primary source evidence from ancient China often provides different perspectives.
- 4 Explain why, despite differing perspectives, primary source evidence from ancient China rarely gives the perspectives of the lower classes.
- 5 Why would **SOURCES 1** and **2** need to be questioned very thoroughly?
- 6 Explain why differing perspectives can sometimes make it difficult to judge the reliability of ancient Chinese primary sources?

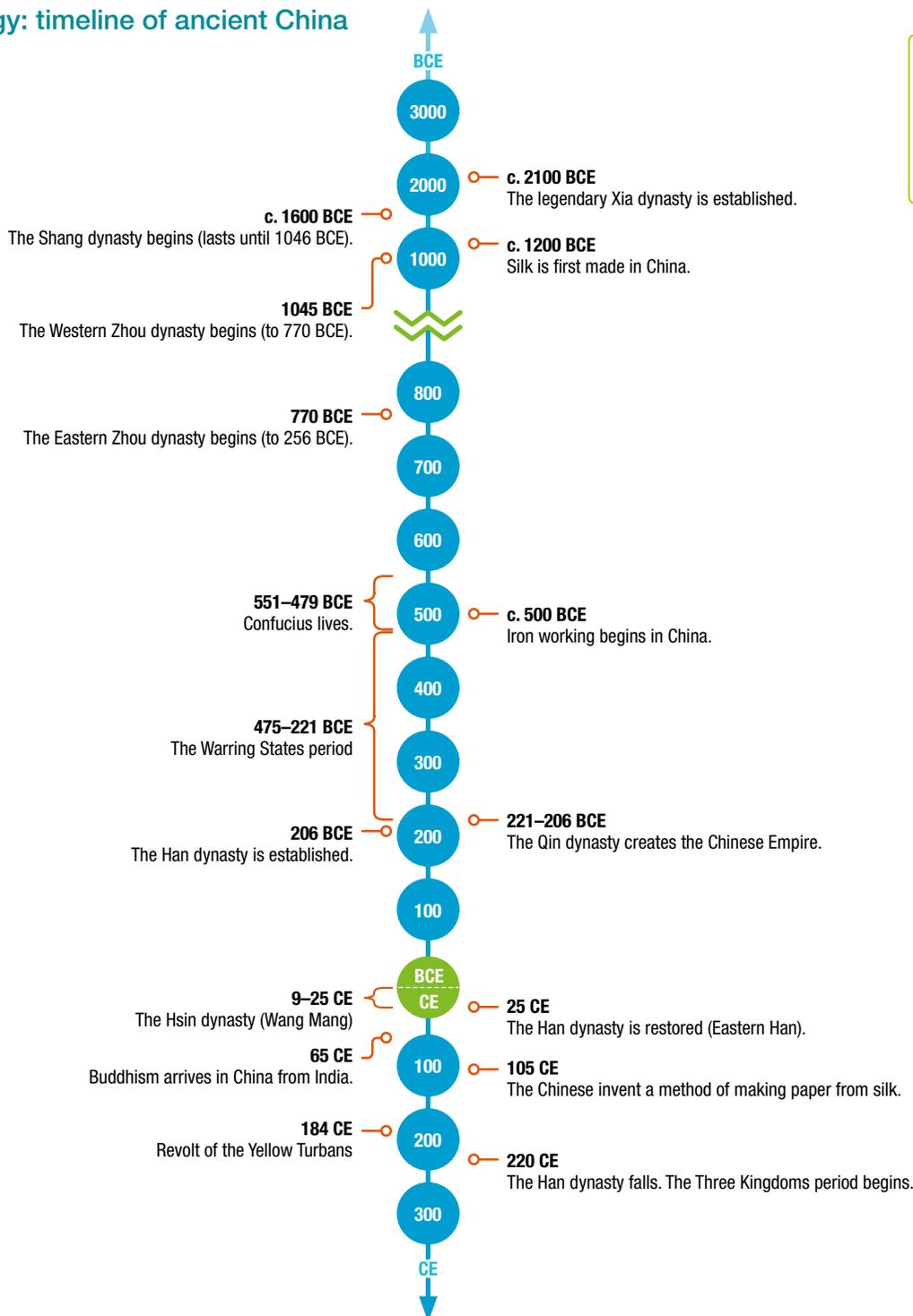
7.12 Review

In this topic we have learned about ancient China from the times of the Shang dynasty (1600–1046 BCE) to the fall of the Eastern Han dynasty in 220 CE. This period covers much of the time of the Egyptian New Kingdom, the Greek city-states and the Roman Empire. We studied some of ancient China's rulers, its people, and its ideas and achievements. We have also learned about:

1. ways in which China's physical features influenced the development of its civilisation
2. significant ancient Chinese beliefs such as Confucianism, Daoism and Buddhism
3. the importance of China's contacts with other societies
4. peasant rebellions and other conflicts within ancient Chinese society.

7.12.1 Review

Chronology: timeline of ancient China



on Resources

Interactivity
Ancient China timeline
Create a visual timeline of key events in ancient China.
int-2939

Key knowledge: summary

7.2 Examining the evidence

- Shang dynasty inscriptions are our earliest written evidence of ancient China.
- Archaeological finds provide evidence of rich cultures during Qin and Han times.
- The most exciting find was the discovery of the terracotta warriors guarding the tomb of Qin Shihuang.

7.3 China's civilisation begins

- There is no primary source evidence for the legendary Xia dynasty.
- Early Chinese rulers based their authority on the mandate of heaven.
- Early Chinese civilisation was based on farming in river valleys in eastern China.

7.4 The people of ancient China

- Rulers were supported by powerful lords and landowning gentry, who included warriors and bureaucrats.
- Women had an inferior status.
- Peasants formed the largest group and they suffered through natural disasters and wars.
- Merchants and slaves were at the bottom of Chinese society.

7.5 Everyday life and death

- Life for all classes of the common people was harsh, especially for women.
- We know much more about death and funeral customs of the ruling classes than of the common people.
- It was the custom of the ruling classes to bury goods with the dead to provide for them in the afterlife.
- Until Han times, people were also buried with rulers to serve them in the afterlife.

7.6 Ancient China and the natural environment

- China is vast country with a wide variety of climates and landscapes
- Ninety per cent of the large population lived in the east, where agriculture was based along river valleys.
- Intensive clearing of land for farming caused massive soil erosion and other environmental damage.

7.7 Confucianism, religion and law

- Confucianism is not a religion. It is concerned with how good conduct can create social harmony.
- Confucianism had no influence in its founder's lifetime but much influence in later periods.
- Daoism and Buddhism became major religious influences in ancient China.
- The laws of China's First Emperor were based on the harsh laws of the state of Qin.
- Confucianism regained influence under the Han and later dynasties.

7.8 Qin Shihuang, the First Emperor of China

- Qin Shihuang took control of China in 221 BCE after completing his conquest of the other Chinese states.
- He stamped out potential threats to his power through several measures, including confiscating weapons, controlling the nobles and burning books.
- He turned the system of defensive walls into the Great Wall of China.
- In 209 BCE, the Qin dynasty was destroyed in a peasant rebellion.

7.9 The rise and fall of the Han

- The Han dynasty carried out reforms to avoid the fate of the Qin.
- China expanded under the Han.
- Chinese missions led to the founding of the Silk Road, which opened trade between China and India, Persia and the Roman Empire.
- Inequality grew under the Han and rebellions led to its fall in 220 CE.

7.10 The heritage of China

- China's legacies include an amazing number of inventions, including printing and gunpowder.
- China's cultural heritage includes many UNESCO listed sites, among which is the Great Wall and the Mausoleum of the First Emperor.

Key knowledge: multiple-choice topic test

1. Shang dynasty inscriptions provide early evidence of ancient Chinese:
 - a. ironwork.
 - b. gunpowder.
 - c. farming.
 - d. manufacturing.
2. The mandate of heaven meant which of the following for Chinese emperors?
 - a. They were believed to be gods.
 - b. They were supposedly chosen by the gods to rule.
 - c. They lived like gods.
 - d. They said there were no gods.
3. During the Warring States period there were wars between which of the following?
 - a. Local lords who controlled their own states within the Zhou kingdom
 - b. Local lords who controlled their own states outside the Zhou kingdom
 - c. Nomads who wanted to invade China
 - d. Nobles and peasants
4. Merchants occupied which of these positions in Chinese society?
 - a. At the top, along with nobles
 - b. Between nobles and peasants
 - c. Almost at the bottom
 - d. Between peasants and artisans
5. Environmental problems in ancient China were caused mainly by which of the following?
 - a. Polluting the air
 - b. Burning coal
 - c. Polluting the ocean
 - d. Clearing forests for farming
6. The main ideas of Confucius were concerned with:
 - a. worshipping gods.
 - b. conduct that ensured a harmonious society.
 - c. obedience to kings.
 - d. rebelling against authority.
7. The martial art of Kung Fu was developed by which of these groups?
 - a. Daoists
 - b. Buddhists
 - c. Followers of Confucius
 - d. Qin Shihuang's army
8. Qin Shihuang changed the feudal system by which of these means?
 - a. Burning books
 - b. Executing scholars
 - c. Confiscating weapons
 - d. Allowing farming land to be bought and sold
9. Around how many people might have died constructing the Great Wall of China?
 - a. Five hundred
 - b. A million
 - c. Two thousand
 - d. Five million
10. Under Qin Shihuang's orders, scholars who refused to burn their books were:
 - a. beheaded.
 - b. fined.
 - c. imprisoned.
 - d. buried alive.

11. Yellow Turbans and Red Eyebrows were which of these?
 - a. Ancient Chinese fashions
 - b. Games played by the landowning gentry
 - c. Secret societies that organised rebellions
 - d. Distinguishing features of the Xiongnu nomads
12. The Silk Road was the land route for trade between China and which places?
 - a. India, Persia and the Roman Empire
 - b. South-East Asia
 - c. Japan and Korea
 - d. Mongolia

7.12.2 Respond

Using historical sources as evidence

1. Analyse **SOURCE 1** using the following questions.
 - a. Describe the details of the painting.
 - b. Identify ways in which the appearance of the students and the room differ from a modern examination room.
 - c. Describe the kinds of questions that examiners would be likely to ask.
 - d. Describe the types of answers that students would be expected to give.
 - e. To fully analyse this source, you would need information that is not provided here. Give examples of such types of information.

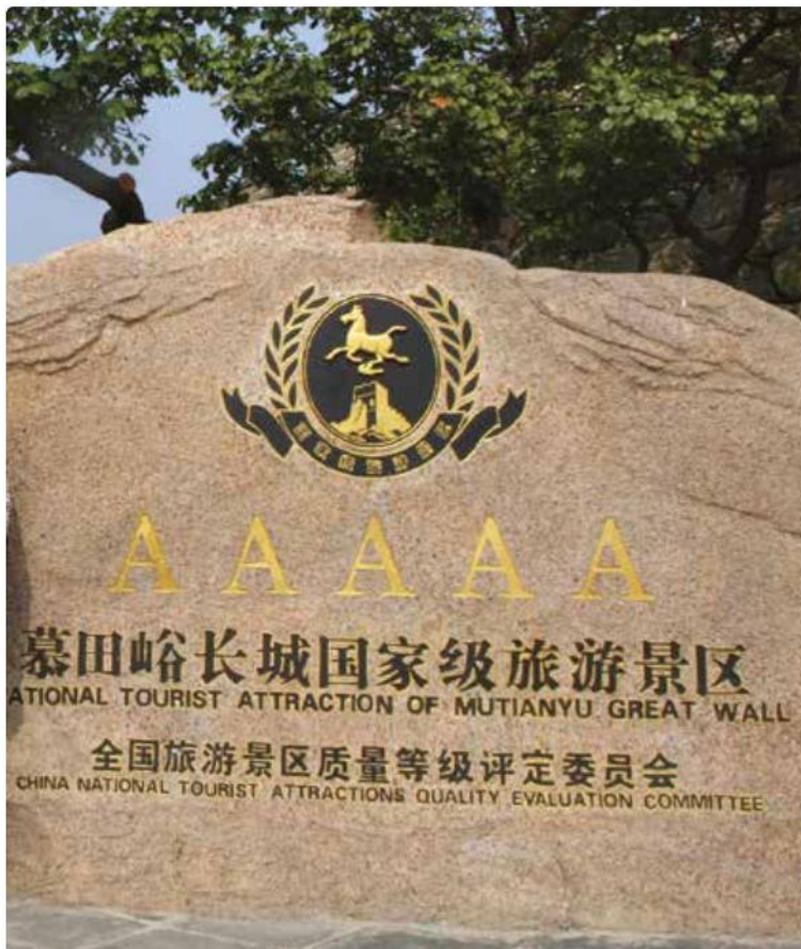
SOURCE 1 This painting depicts a Chinese emperor assessing the performance of students in exams for the civil service.



Identifying continuity and change

2. Imagine that you have been hired by the Chinese tourism authorities who erected the stone marker in **SOURCE 2**. Your job is to prepare a guide to this site for Australian and other English-speaking tourists visiting the site. You will need to use what you have learned in this topic as well as information you can gather using the internet, including the UNESCO World Heritage List. Your guide should include:
 - a. the history of this section of the wall from the time when the various walls were joined under Qin Shihuang up to the time when this section was rebuilt during the early Ming dynasty
 - b. an explanation of what was involved in building the wall
 - c. information about what the wall would have meant to Chinese people in Qin times and later.

SOURCE 2 The stone marking the modern entrance to the Mutianyu section of the Great Wall of China, about 70 kilometres north of Beijing



Responding to the big questions

At the beginning of this topic several big questions were posed. Use the knowledge and understanding you have gained through your study of the subtopics to answer them:

1. How did ancient China's natural environment influence its civilisation?
2. How was ancient Chinese society organised and governed?
3. What were the main characteristics of ancient Chinese culture and religion?
4. How do written and archaeological sources help us understand ancient China?
5. Why did ancient Chinese dynasties rise and fall?
6. What is the significance of the heritage of ancient China?

8

Ancient India

8.1 Overview

8.1.1 LINKS WITH OUR TIMES

With more than a billion people, India has the world's second largest population. India's economy is growing rapidly and will soon become the world's third largest. Yet while some Indians have become wealthy, there is still terrible poverty. Around half of Indian children do not have enough to eat.

India has also become an important trading partner for Australia. Large numbers of Indians have migrated to Australia, and many Indian students study at Australian colleges and universities.

When we speak of ancient India, we refer to the Indian subcontinent. Along with modern India, the subcontinent includes Pakistan, Bangladesh, Sri Lanka, Nepal and Bhutan. In ancient times these modern states did not exist. Great civilisations emerged on the Indian subcontinent, and some of their customs have survived to the present day.

BIG QUESTIONS

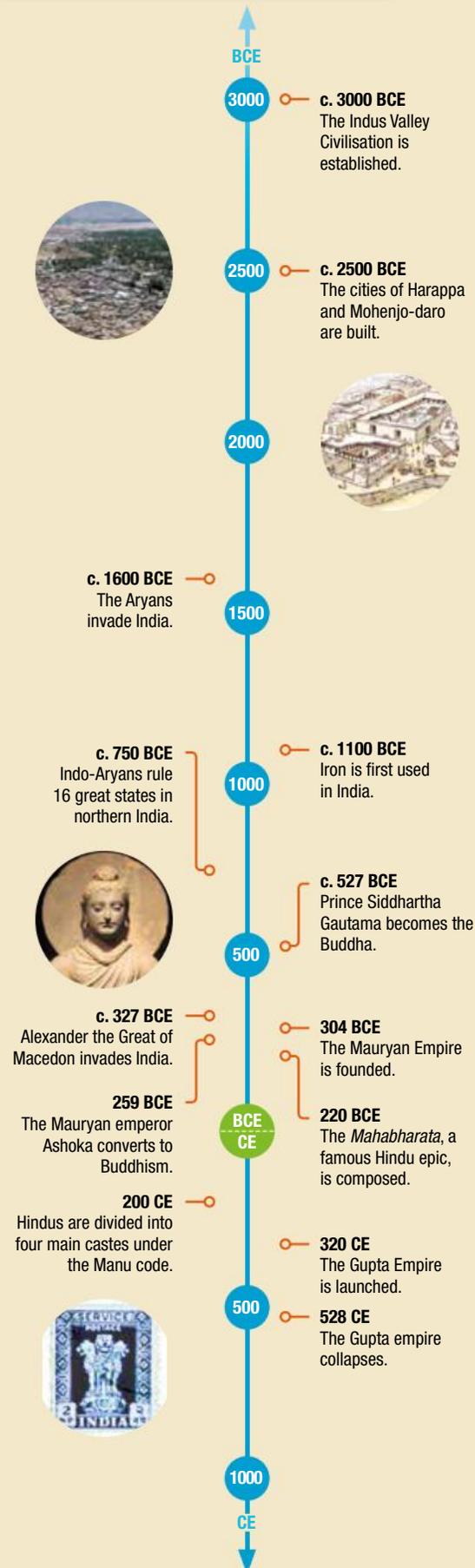
As you work through this topic, look for information that will help you to answer these questions:

- 1 Who were some of the most significant people in ancient India?
- 2 How did the geography of ancient India influence its civilisations?
- 3 How were ancient Indian societies organised and governed?
- 4 What were the main characteristics of Indian culture and religion?
- 5 How do written and archaeological sources help us understand ancient India?
- 6 Why did ancient Indian civilisations rise and fall?
- 7 What is the significance of the heritage of ancient India?

STARTER QUESTIONS

- 1 Why is India considered a land of contrasts?
- 2 How big is India compared to Australia?
- 3 Do you think all parts of India are the same?
- 4 What aspect of Indian culture would you like to learn about?
- 5 Why is modern India important to Australia?

A TIMELINE OF ANCIENT INDIA





Evidence from other civilisations

We also have evidence of connections between ancient India and other civilisations. King Darius I of Persia is believed to have sent Greek explorer Scylax of Caryanda on a voyage to the East. On this voyage, Scylax travelled down the Ganges until it emptied into the Indian Ocean. Later, Alexander the Great conquered the Persian Empire in 334 BCE and then set his sights on India. Although his conquests were short-lived, they were significant enough to influence Buddhist art in northern India. Before Greek exploration, the Buddha was never depicted in human form. It is thought that the Greek focus on natural and realistic art influenced Indian artists to create **anthropomorphic** depictions of Buddha (see **SOURCE 3**).

SOURCE 2 From *The Histories* by the Greek historian Herodotus, written about 440 BCE

[The Indians of the north-west] go out to fetch gold — for in this region there is a sandy desert . . . the sand has a rich content of gold . . . There is found in this desert a kind of ant of great size — bigger than a fox, but not so big as a dog . . . [These] Indians plan their timetable so as to actually get their hands on the gold during the hottest part of the day, when the heat will have driven the ants underground . . . When the Indians [on their camels] reach the place where the gold is, they fill the bags they have brought with them with sand, and start for home again as fast as they can go; for the ants (if we may believe the Persians' story) smell them and at once give chase; nothing in the world can touch these ants for speed, so not one of the Indians would get home alive if they did not make sure of a good start while the ants were mustering their forces.

SOURCE 3 Humanesque depiction of Buddha from Gandhara



anthropomorphic
describing or representing something as having human traits, despite its original lack of these characteristics

8.2 PUTTING IT ALL TOGETHER

USING HISTORICAL SOURCES AS EVIDENCE

- 1 Engravings from religious buildings provide much of the archaeological evidence we have from ancient India. List three strengths and three weaknesses of this form of evidence.
- 2 Read **SOURCE 2**.
 - a List the observations Herodotus makes about India and its culture.
 - b Evaluate the accuracy of these observations.
- 3 Describe the depiction of the Buddha as shown in **SOURCE 3**. Explain how this depiction differs from those seen in India before contact with the Greeks.

IDENTIFYING CONTINUITY AND CHANGE

- 4 Compare **SOURCE 1** to a modern map of India. Identify and describe the key differences.
- 5 Identify one reason why the differences between Ptolemy's map and a modern map might exist.
- 6 Name three key cities of the Indus Valley Civilisation. Suggest reasons why these cities are no longer as important to India as they once were.

DETERMINING HISTORICAL SIGNIFICANCE

- 7 It is easier for archaeologists to learn more about ancient Egypt than ancient India. Do you agree or disagree with this statement? Justify your response.

8.3 The geography of India

learn on

To access videos, interactivities, discussion widgets, image galleries, weblinks and more, go to www.jacplus.com.au

continent one of seven very large, continuous bodies of land; they are Europe, Asia, Africa, Antarctica, Australia, North America and South America

monsoon rainy season accompanied by south-westerly summer winds in South Asia

8.3.1 Region and climate

The modern nation of India is the seventh largest country in the world. This in itself is impressive. However, if you add other modern nations that were once a part of greater India — Pakistan, Bangladesh and the island state of Sri Lanka — then the Indian land mass is bigger still. It is so big that the region is often called the Indian subcontinent. A subcontinent is a very large land mass attached to a **continent**. In the case of the Indian subcontinent, the land mass is attached to Asia.

The Indian subcontinent is made up of three geographical regions: the Indian Himalayan Region, the Indo-Gangetic Plain and the Deccan Plateau.

The Indian Himalayan Region is part of the Himalayan mountain range. These mountains are the highest in the world and provide the snow that feeds into three of the subcontinent's major rivers — the Ganges, the Brahmaputra and the Indus. As it reaches the Bay of Bengal, the Ganges forms a delta that is 350 kilometres wide.

The Indo-Gangetic Plain is a flat, well-watered area. It is the most fertile and densely populated region of the subcontinent. Its western section is drier, merging into the Thar Desert.

The Deccan Plateau in the south is rocky and barren. Farmers here use the rivers to water their crops. Unlike the rivers of northern India, these southern rivers depend on **monsoon** rains to fill their banks.

Given its vast size and varied terrain, the Indian subcontinent has a wide range of weather patterns. The seasonal monsoons also influence its climate. There are six seasons each year: summer, autumn, winter, spring, summer monsoon and winter monsoon. In the Himalayan north, winters may be freezing and, in some areas, summers are cool. In the central and southern areas of the subcontinent, the tropical climate produces temperatures ranging from warm to hot, with some inland areas reaching as much as 50 °C in summer.

India's geographical features had a strong influence on the location of its ancient civilisations. They developed mainly along river valleys that provided reliable water supplies, fertile soils for growing crops and access to the sea for trading. Such conditions were also seen in some of the world's great early civilisations, including ancient Iraq and Egypt.



Source: Spatial Vision



8.3.1 Activities

CHECK YOUR UNDERSTANDING

- 1 What is a subcontinent?
- 2 List the nations that make up the Indian subcontinent.
- 3 Name the three regions of the Indian subcontinent.
- 4 Name the three main rivers of the Indian subcontinent.
- 5 Which region tends to be cool to cold, and which regions tend to be warm to hot?

- 6 Explain how the rivers of the Indian subcontinent might have helped to develop a civilisation based on farming.

USING HISTORICAL SOURCES AS EVIDENCE

- 7 Look closely at **SOURCE 1**. Calculate the distance of the Indian subcontinent from east to west and from north to south.
- 8 Given the size of the Indian subcontinent and the variety in terrain and climate, do you think it possible that its population could share the same language and culture? Explain.

8.3 PUTTING IT ALL TOGETHER

IDENTIFYING CONTINUITY AND CHANGE

- 1 Add the following features to a blank map of India (you may need to do some additional research to locate the areas mentioned):
 - a major geographical features (rivers, mountain ranges, plateaus, deserts)
 - b main areas of food production
 - c major cities

- d two areas of high population density and two areas of low population density.

DETERMINING HISTORICAL SIGNIFICANCE

- 2 Describe the role that rivers have played in India's early history.
- 3 What other geographic features have influenced the development of ancient India civilisations?

learn on

To access videos, interactivities, discussion widgets, image galleries, weblinks and more, go to www.jacplus.com.au

8.4 Lost cities of the Indus Valley

8.4.1 The Indus Valley Civilisation

People have lived in the Indian subcontinent since the Old Stone Age. Some rock paintings found there date as far back as 50 000 BCE. The Neolithic Revolution, when people began to settle in farming communities, began about 7000 BCE. The first towns and cities in the

SOURCE 1 The main archaeological sites of the Indus Valley Civilisation



Source: Spatial Vision

SOURCE 2 An Indus Valley stamp-seal, excavated at Mohenjo-daro (see **SOURCE 1**). Seals were designed to leave an impression when pressed into wet clay. The imprint would be fixed to bundles of merchandise as merchants' marks.

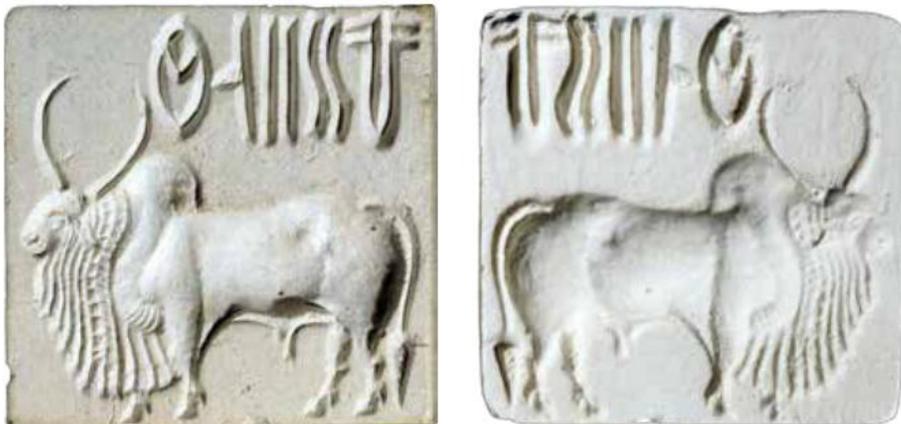


subcontinent arose around 3000 BCE. They flourished for around 1400 years before their mysterious decline. For thousands of years all that was known was that people had once lived in the cities, but only the brick ruins remained. What sort of buildings they had been, who built them and what became of them — all of this was unknown.

As in Egypt and Mesopotamia, the first Indian cities were built in a fertile river valley, with good soils and a reliable water supply for growing crops. This was the valley of the Indus River and its tributaries. So this first civilisation, arising at much the same time as those in Egypt and Sumer (in Mesopotamia), has become known as the Indus Valley Civilisation. It is also sometimes called the Harappan Civilisation because Harappa was the first of its cities to be excavated.

The cities of the Indus Valley thrived. Farmers worked the fields surrounding the cities and officials organised the sale and distribution of agricultural produce. They had governments and used writing. Artisans created ornaments and tools, while traders plied their goods in boats up and down the river and its tributaries and even across the sea to Mesopotamia. Artefacts from Mesopotamia have been found in the Indus Valley. This means there were probably trade links between these civilisations.

SOURCE 3 An Indus Valley seal and its impression. Seals such as these have been found at the Mesopotamian city of Ur and other sites in that region. Similarly, seals from Mesopotamian cities have been found at Indus Valley locations such as the port city of Lothal. Animals found on the seals include rhinoceros, elephants, unicorns and bulls.



SOURCE 4 The Indus Valley Civilisation and Mesopotamia



Source: Spatial Vision

8.4.1 Activities

CHECK YOUR UNDERSTANDING

- 1 About how long ago did cities first emerge in the Indus Valley?
- 2 What geographical feature did the Indus Valley Civilisation share with ancient Egypt and Sumer (in Mesopotamia)?

USING HISTORICAL SOURCES AS EVIDENCE

- 3 Look at **SOURCE 1**.
 - a Why do you think the cities and other settlements (shown by dots) are mostly located along the Indus River and its tributaries?
 - b Why would Lothal be a suitable place for a port to serve these cities?
- 4 Consider **SOURCES 2** and **3**.
 - a Describe the similarities and differences between these two seals.
 - b Give two reasons for including both animals and writing on the seals.
 - c What conclusions can you draw about contacts between the civilisations of Mesopotamia and the Indus Valley?
- 5 Using the scale in **SOURCE 4**, calculate how far people would have had to travel by sea and river to trade goods between the Indus Valley and Sumer.

8.4.2 Living in the lost cities

Our knowledge of the structure and function of cities during the Indus Valley Civilisation comes from several important archaeological sites. These cities have been well preserved and contain the remains of buildings and other pieces of important infrastructure. The largest Indus Valley sites that have been excavated are the cities of Harappa and Mohenjo-daro. Four hundred kilometres apart, both cities were based on a **grid system**, much like many modern cities. Each city was divided into 12 main blocks and had strong outer walls.

Many buildings were made of kiln-fired bricks similar, even in size, to the kinds of bricks used in many modern houses. Historians assume they used kiln-fired bricks because the Indus Valley had a wetter climate in those times. Such bricks were harder to make than mud bricks, dried only by the sun, but they were more durable in a wet environment. There is evidence that mud bricks were also used, but only the kiln-fired bricks have survived.

Most of the people of the Indus Valley would have been farmers. Cities could grow only where agriculture could produce a surplus to feed people who were not engaged in farming. So we know the farmers must have produced such a surplus. Excavations have given us some ideas about other kinds of work. Finds include seals, gold jewellery, combs, bronze statues and pottery. Such items would have been made by artisans in the cities and transported and traded by merchants.

Features of Mohenjo-daro

The grid system is clearly visible in the modern artist's impression of Mohenjo-daro shown in **SOURCE 5**. There are two levels to the city. The first level is called the Higher Town or the 'citadel'. Although it looks like a citadel, or fortress, the Higher Town is actually a mound topped by a huge **granary** and communal baths.

The granary was positioned high above the floodplain and was immense. The inhabitants of Mohenjo-daro depended on this building and its vast stores of grain such as wheat and barley. The granary needed to be on high ground, beyond the reach of floodwaters. Ox-carts laden with produce would have been stationed in the recesses as workers raised produce to the platforms above. The surviving walls reveal a row of ventilation ducts. These allowed air to circulate inside to prevent the produce from going mouldy. The roof of the granary was probably constructed of timber and has long since rotted away.

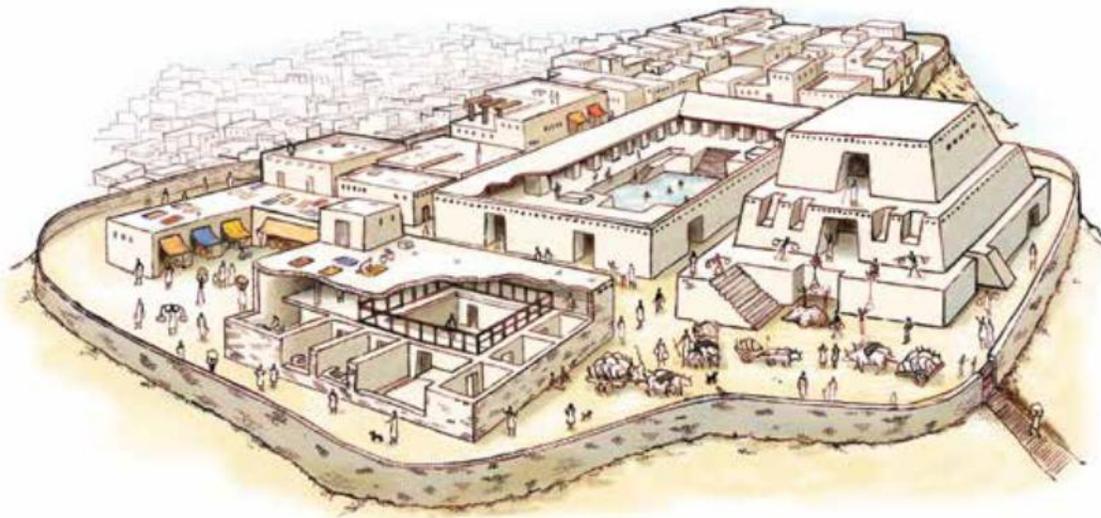
A brick-lined, sunken structure is thought to have been an enormous bath. Traces of bitumen have been found in the bath, suggesting that it was sealed to prevent leakage. While we cannot know the purpose of the bath for certain, we can use contemporary knowledge of Indian customs to make an informed assumption. Ritual bathing is a common aspect of several Indian religions. We can also infer that as the bath has stairs and ledges the Great Bath was used for similar purposes.

grid system a street network that creates square and rectangular blocks

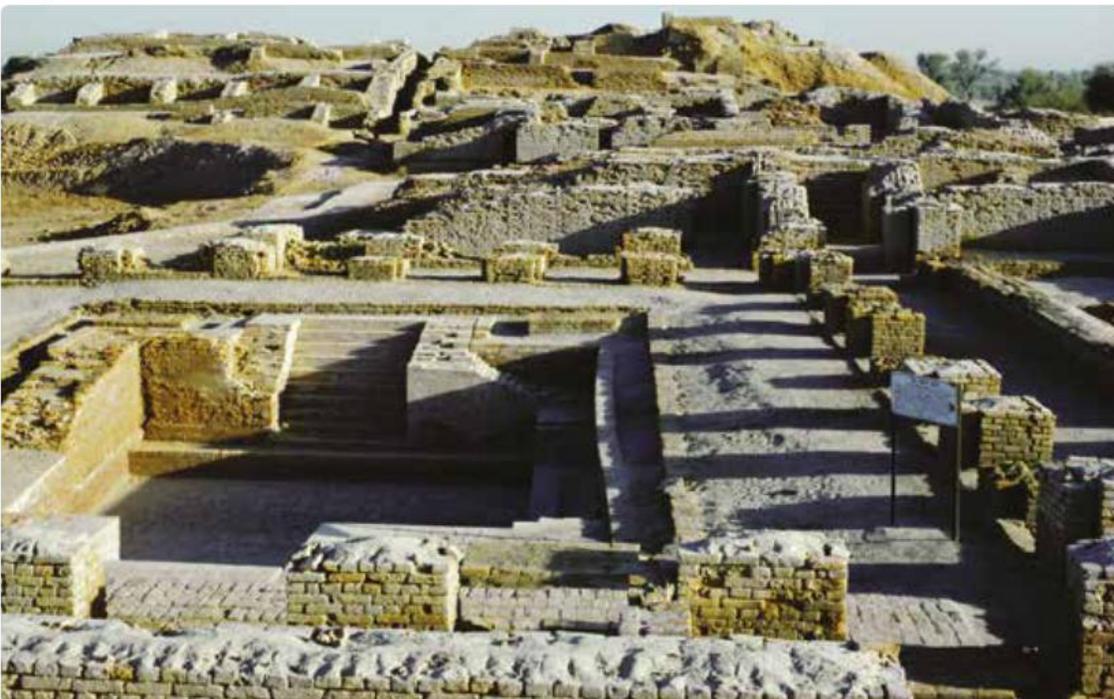
granary place for storing grain

The second level of Mohenjo-daro is the Lower Town. Here were the houses of the citizens. Like the buildings of the Higher Town, they are made of kiln-fired bricks. Larger houses often had courtyards. The windows faced inward and were high above ground level, ensuring privacy. A broad street, up to 10 metres wide, runs through the Lower Town, with narrower streets running off it.

SOURCE 5 A modern artist's impression of Mohenjo-daro. In the centre is the Great Bath and granary in the Higher Town.



SOURCE 6 The Great Bath of Mohenjo-daro



Harappa

Harappa has similar features to Mohenjo-daro. Their populations were also similar: Harappa's is estimated at 35 000 people and Mohenjo-daro's at 30 000. There is no evidence that a central government ruled the whole valley and used one of the cities as its capital.

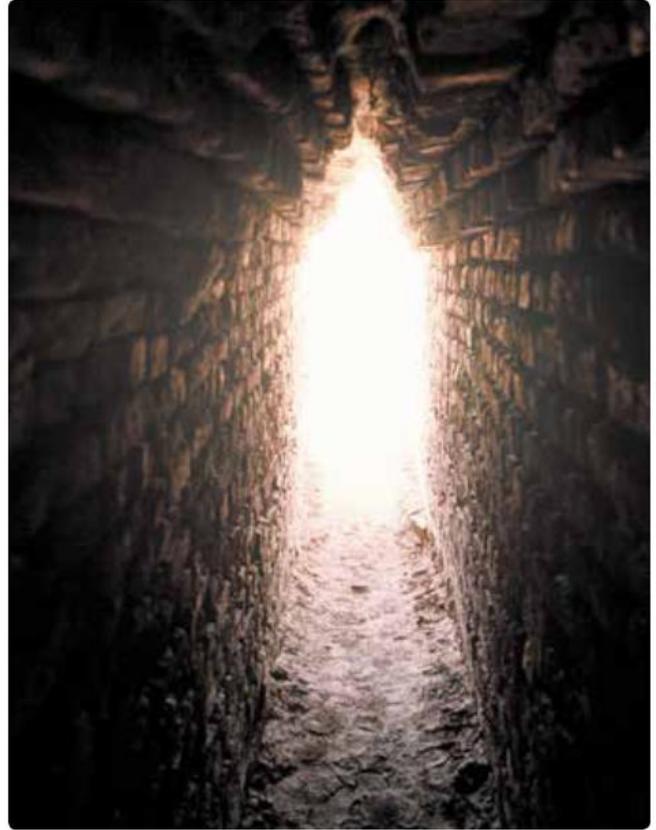
learn on

To access videos, interactivities, discussion widgets, image galleries, weblinks and more, go to www.jacplus.com.au

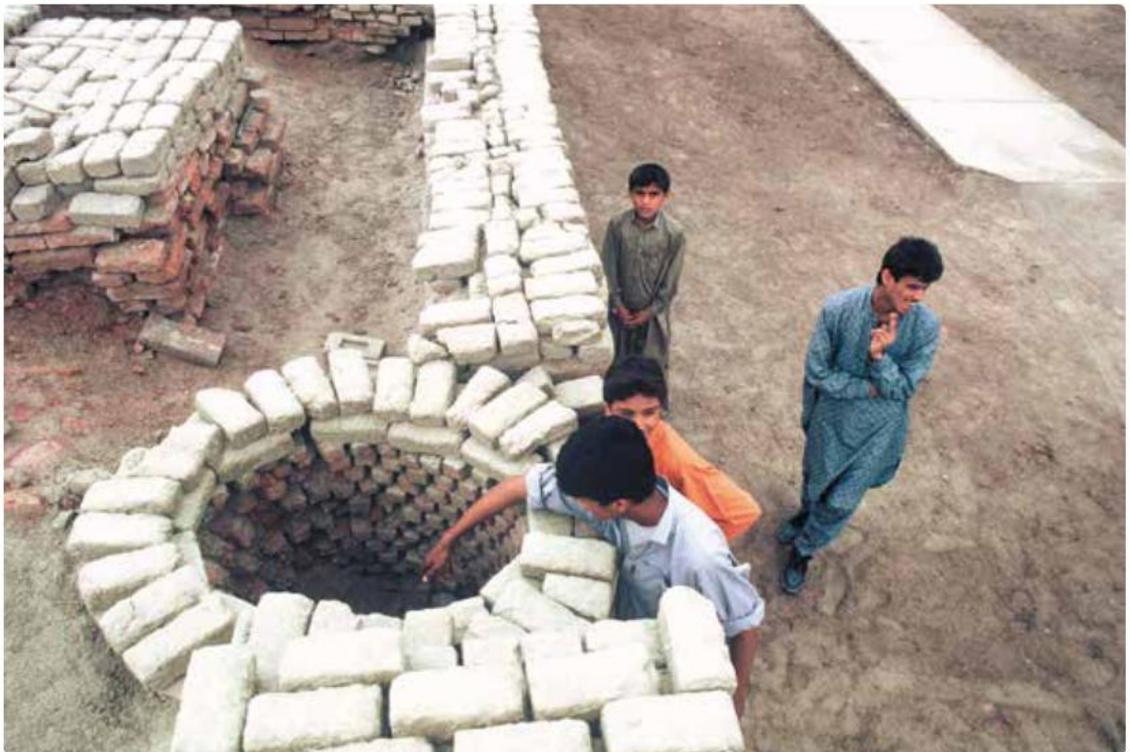
SOURCE 7 Structure believed to be a toilet at Mohenjo-daro



SOURCE 8 Large covered drain at Mohenjo-daro — tall enough for a person to walk through



SOURCE 9 A well at Mohenjo-daro



There were many wells in Mohenjo-daro. These provided the population with fresh water for drinking and washing. They were constructed of special wedge-shaped bricks. Some bricks had a groove in them to make it easier to send down a bucket on a rope: the groove prevented the rope from slipping sideways and spilling the water. Mud brick often covered the walls of the wells. Most wells were built inside dwellings. However, wells have also been found adjoining the city streets.

For one of the world's first cities, Mohenjo-daro was remarkably **hygienic**. Many of the houses unearthed in the city had baths. Structures resembling toilets have also been unearthed. Many houses had drainage outlets onto the street, where gutters carried away waste water. Sometimes terracotta pipes were used. Chute systems were also used to expel water. Often a notched brick was placed at the end of the chute so solid waste could be trapped, preventing rubbish from accumulating in the street. Drains below the city streets were enclosed channels big enough for a person to walk through. This made it possible for workers to unblock the drainage system if the need arose.

8.4.2 Activities

CHECK YOUR UNDERSTANDING

- 1 What two structures dominate the Higher Town at Mohenjo-daro?
- 2 What substance was used to prevent water leaking out of the Great Bath?
- 3 What sort of buildings were in the Lower Town of Mohenjo-daro?
- 4 Explain why the drains under the city streets were so big.
- 5 What was the purpose of wells at Mohenjo-daro?

USING HISTORICAL SOURCES AS EVIDENCE

- 6 Look at **SOURCE 5**.
 - a In a short paragraph, describe the layout of Mohenjo-daro as seen in this source.
 - b Why do you think the people of Mohenjo-daro would have needed such a huge granary for their produce?
 - c What does such a large single granary tell us about the way society would have been organised at Mohenjo-daro?
 - d From where would they have brought the produce to store in the granary?
- 7 Why do some historians suggest that the Great Bath shown in **SOURCE 6** was intended for bathing as part of some religious ritual?
- 8 Describe the features of the structures shown in **SOURCES 7, 8** and **9** that could have led archaeologists to conclude that these are toilets, drains and wells.

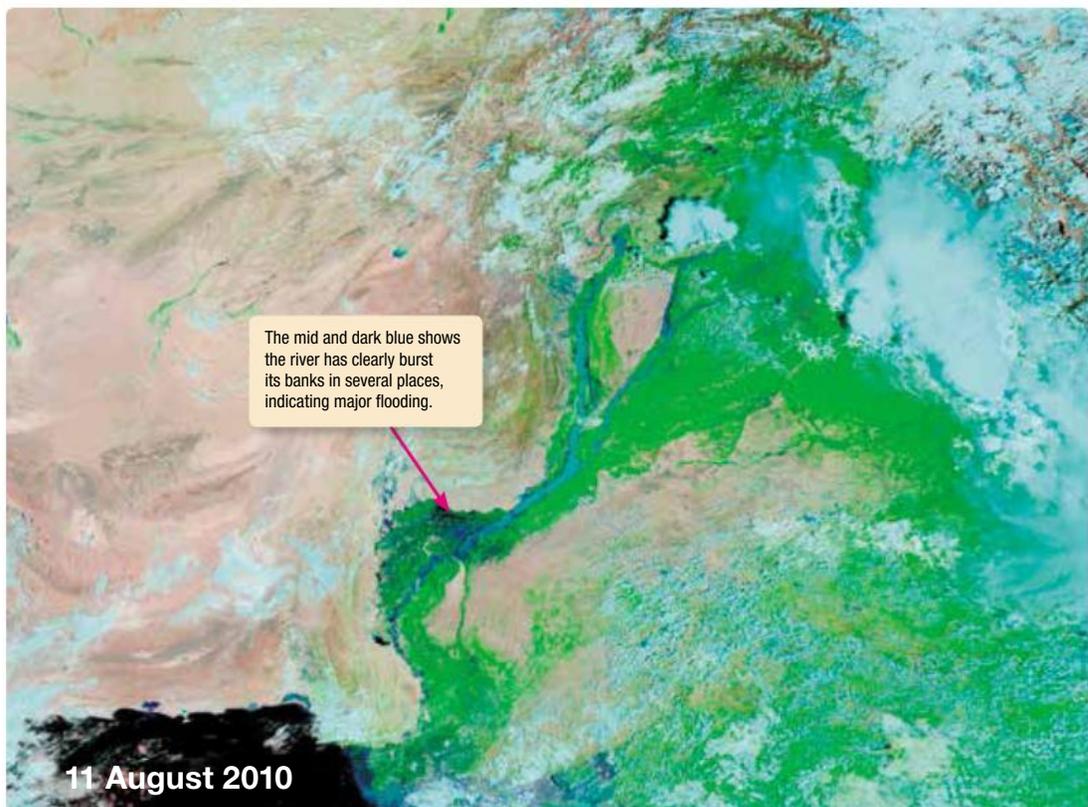
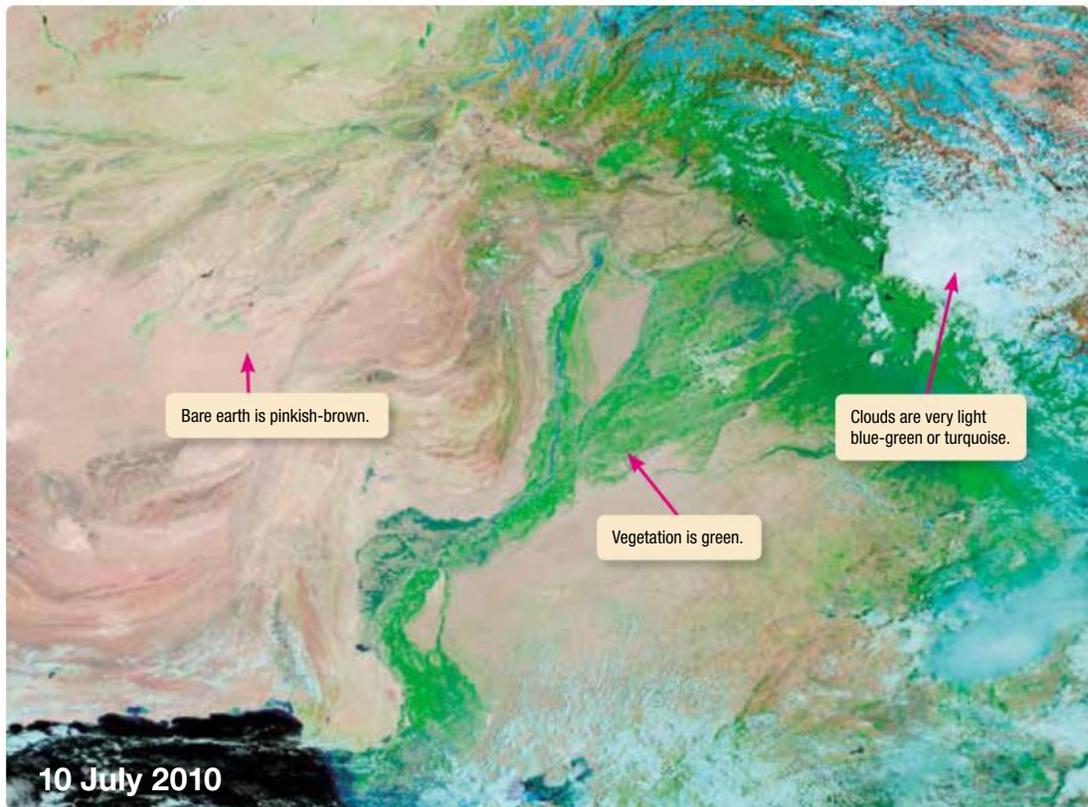
8.4.3 The end of a civilisation

The end of the Indus Valley Civilisation is another mystery. However, historians and archaeologists have at least formed some solid hypotheses about the last days of Harappa and Mohenjo-daro.

Originally it was thought that the Aryan invasion (see 8.5 Contacts and conflicts: India and the ancient world) led to the fall of the Indus Valley Civilisation. Few scholars now accept this theory. Firstly, the Indus cities had already been abandoned by the time of the Aryan invasion. Secondly, there is no evidence of warfare in or around the cities. There are none of the weapons, chariots, armour or remains of men and horses that would have been scattered across battlefields. Some skeletons found in Harappa that show signs of violent death were once thought to be the victims of Aryan invaders. The problems with this theory are that these victims do not occupy strata levels that coincide with the last days of the city itself.

The Indus River flows through an earthquake-prone region and has changed its course many times. Excavations reveal that in the last years of Mohenjo-daro there was a series of floods and that repairs were carried out in their wake. One earthquake blocked the Indus River downstream from Mohenjo-daro, resulting in the creation of a huge lake. This increased the flooding problems for the city. There is evidence that Mohenjo-daro was rebuilt at least seven times as a result of heavy flooding in the Indus River basin. Most recently, the disastrous floods of 2010 (see **SOURCE 10**) threatened the site, although fortunately the floodwaters did not reach it. (These floods affected 20 million people; at one point as much as one-fifth of the modern country of Pakistan was underwater.)

SOURCE 10 NASA images from space showing the flooding of the Indus River in 2010. The top image shows the Indus River Valley on 10 July, just before the floods. The bottom image shows the valley on 11 August, at the height of the floods. These images combine infra-red and visible light to give us a clearer picture of the difference between water and dry land.



learn on

To access videos, interactivities, discussion widgets, image galleries, weblinks and more, go to www.jacplus.com.au

SOURCE 11 From Robert R. Raikes, 'The End of the Ancient Cities of the Indus', *American Anthropologist*, 1964

Uplift, almost certainly accompanied by more or less violent earthquake shocks, would not only have caused destruction of cities and settlements but would have disrupted the system of river and coastwise communications on which the commercial life of the culture must have largely depended. Damage to the cities and settlements in the Indus Valley would have been due rather to flooding than to the shocks . . . a point would have been reached when it would no longer have been considered worth the trouble and expense of rebuilding . . .

A gradual end?

Most historians now believe that the cities *were* gradually abandoned when it ceased to be practical to live in them, but that their culture lived on. Even today there are pottery styles in the Indus Valley similar to those of the ancient Indus Valley Civilisation. The ox-carts still in use, and the mud brick platforms around houses, would have been familiar to anyone from those ancient communities. So the Indus Valley Civilisation may not have come to an end after all. Perhaps its culture simply blended into, and became a part of, the rich array of cultures that now span the Indian subcontinent.

SOURCE 12 From Chris J. D. Kostman, 'The **Demise of Utopia**', *Journal of the Association of Graduates in Near Eastern Studies*, 1995

A careful review of the literature suggests that although the Harappans did experience great natural disasters and a dramatic [shift] in their urban process, they never declined or fell at all: the Harappan **legacy** continues to this day.

demise death

utopia a perfect social and political system

legacy something handed down from the past

8.4.3 Activities

CHECK YOUR UNDERSTANDING

- 1 List two reasons why it is unlikely that the Aryans destroyed the Indus Valley Civilisation.
- 2 What two natural disasters affected the cities of the Indus Valley Civilisation?
- 3 What may have finally led to the cities being abandoned?
- 4 Where might the people have gone after abandoning their cities?
- 5 Outline the evidence that suggests the Indus Valley Civilisation was not warlike.

USING HISTORICAL SOURCES AS EVIDENCE

- 6 How does the evidence of **SOURCE 10** support the idea that the Indus River can cause problems with flooding?
- 7 Why does the author of **SOURCE 11** say 'it would no longer have been considered worth the trouble and expense of rebuilding'?
- 8 The author in **SOURCE 12** mentions 'Harappans'. Who were the Harappans? (You will find out by revisiting earlier parts of the topic.)
- 9 According to **SOURCE 12**, what became of the Harappans?

8.4 PUTTING IT ALL TOGETHER

USING HISTORICAL SOURCES AS EVIDENCE

- 1 Compare the photo of the excavated Great Bath at Mohenjo-daro in **SOURCE 6** to the artist's impression of the same location in **SOURCE 5**. Compile a list of the similarities and differences.
- 2 Review all images of archaeological sites in this learning module. Explain why it is difficult for archaeologists to determine the exact purposes of particular structures and buildings?
- 3 Compare the satellite images in **SOURCE 10** to the map in **SOURCE 1**.
 - a Which ancient Indian city was flooded in August 2010?
 - b What could modern Indian governments do to protect this and other important archaeological sites from the dangers of flooding?

IDENTIFYING CONTINUITY AND CHANGE

- 4 Explain how the cities of Harappa, Mohenjo-daro and Lothal was so well preserved?

ANALYSING CAUSE AND EFFECT

- 5 Identify the reasons for the flourishing of human civilisation in the Indus Valley.
- 6 Compile a table that summarises the factors which contributed to the end of the Indus Valley Civilisation.

DETERMINING HISTORICAL SIGNIFICANCE

- 7 Rank the factors identified in question 6 in terms of their importance. Which factor was the most significant contribution to the decline of the Indus Valley Civilisation?

8.5 Contacts and conflicts: India and the ancient world

8.5.1 Trade during the Indus Valley Civilisation

From as early as 3000 BCE, members of the Indus Valley Civilisation had begun trading with the outside world. Home to unique and exotics items such as precious stones, hardwoods and spices, international trade developed quickly in the Indus Valley. Once word of India's riches had spread the region soon attracted explorers and traders from around the ancient world. However, India's abundance of resources also caught the attention of individuals with less peaceful intentions, such as Alexander the Great. Evidence of this contact and conflict has been uncovered in several locations around Europe and Asia. In ancient Mesopotamia **Indus seals**

Indus seals imprints of stamps found on pottery made during the Indus Valley Civilisation

have been discovered, at the city Lothal we see one of the world's earliest ports and India features prominently in early Roman maps. In this subtopic, we will learn about ancient Indian civilisations and their contact and conflict with the outside world.

The lost cities of Harappa and Mohenjo-daro have provided us with incredible insight into the Indus Valley Civilisation. As we have seen previously, the archaeological remains of these sites reveal much about the social, religious and political features of the Indus Valley. Countless examples of Indus Valley Civilisation jewellery, pottery, everyday items and seals have been discovered at Harappa and Mohenjo-daro. These highly sought-after goods would have been traded with other civilisations across Asia and Europe. This begs the question of how this trade actually occurred. The answer can be found in the ancient port city of Lothal (see **SOURCES 1** and **2**).

Excavated from 1955 to 1960, Lothal is one of the oldest docks in the world. Goods from Harappa and other Indus cities were transported to the port at Lothal. Small compared to modern examples, the port was large enough to house boats capable of international journeys. Exiting the port via the ancient Sabarmati River, these boats then made their way down the Gulf of Khambhat and across the Arabian Sea. The Indus Valley traders may have then met with their Mesopotamia counterparts in what we now call Iran. The strongest evidence of this activity comes in the form of seals. A small block

SOURCE 1 A map showing the location of important cities of the Indus Valley Civilisation



Source: Spatial Vision

SOURCE 2 A photograph of the ancient dock at Lothal



learn on

To access videos, interactivities, discussion widgets, image galleries, weblinks and more, go to www.jacplus.com.au

engraved with pictures and writing, seals were used to stamp pottery and other items. The fact that Harappan seals (see **SOURCE 3**) have been found in places previously occupied by the Mesopotamians strongly suggests that trade occurred between these two civilisations. It is also interesting to note that activity at Lothal continued many years after the decline of Harappa and Mohenjo-daro.

SOURCE 3 Harappan pottery stamp seal (left) and modern impression (right): unicorn and incense burner



8.5.1 Activities

CHECK YOUR UNDERSTANDING

- 1 Describe the route taken by traders leaving Lothal.
- 2 Explain what types of goods were traded from India?
- 3 Seals can be found on artefacts from many different civilisations across the ancient world. Explain the purpose of this practice?

USING HISTORICAL SOURCES AS EVIDENCE

- 4 What evidence is there to suggest that trade occurred between the Indus Valley Civilisation and Mesopotamia?
- 5 Describe the seal shown in **SOURCE 3**. Explain what you think is represented on the seal.
- 6 Look closely at the location of Lothal on the map in **SOURCE 1**.
 - a Considering that it was a port town, what is strange about its location?
 - b Given the nature of the location of Lothal, suggest why this may not have been a problem during the time the port was in operation.

8.5.2 The Vedic Civilisation

The next civilisation to develop in India was named after a collection of sacred writings — mostly hymns, prayers and poems. These writings, called the *Vedas*, form the oldest books of the Hindu religion. They were written in **Sanskrit**, the language of this civilisation. The most important of these books, the *Rig-Veda*, was composed around 1000 BCE. The Vedic (sometimes called Aryan) culture came from western Asia. Some groups of Aryans moved westward into Europe. Others entered the Indian subcontinent around 1600 BCE.

The Aryans were warlike **nomads**. With horses and chariots they stormed across the Indus River Valley and the floodplain of the Ganges River. They had no interest in building cities such as those of the Indus Valley Civilisation before them. They were not united as a nation but rather were made up of numerous tribes, each ruled by a chief or *raja*. Often they fought among themselves.

With civil conflict common, the Aryans eventually divided their territory into 16 *mahajanapadas* or 'city-states'. Soon after this, a series of Persian leaders including Cyrus the Great and Darius I, invaded Northern India and the Indus Valley. With its strong and well-organised armies, the Persian occupation of India continued until that empire was defeated by the famed Macedonian ruler, Alexander the Great. Believing the Greek theory that the known world ended in India, Alexander invaded northern India and then swept through the subcontinent towards the Middle East. Although Alexander's Indian campaign was swift and ultimately successful, it also included one of his most costly battles: the Battle of Hydaspes.

Sanskrit ancient Indian language used in classical Hindu literature

nomads tribal groups who wander from place to place, generally in search of food or pasture

SOURCE 4 Alexander's Macedonian and Greek army encountering an Indian army under the Hindu king Porus at the battle of the Hydaspes River



8.5.2 Activities

CHECK YOUR UNDERSTANDING

- 1 What is another name for the Vedic Civilisation?
- 2 List ways in which the Vedic Civilisation was different from the Indus Valley Civilisation.

USING HISTORICAL SOURCES AS EVIDENCE

- 3 Look closely at **SOURCE 4**.
 - a Describe some of the weapons and the means of battle engagement.
 - b Why may the battle of Hydaspes have been so costly for Alexander the Great?

8.5.3 The Mauryan Empire

The Mauryan Empire is believed to have created the first unified Indian state. In 321 BCE a leader called Chandragupta Maurya set out to create an empire across the subcontinent. It is believed that he was inspired by the exploits of the **Macedonian** conqueror Alexander the Great. Alexander had tried to conquer India only a few years before. When he withdrew from western India, Alexander left a **power vacuum** in the region. Chandragupta took advantage of it.

Ashoka and Buddhism

The Mauryan Empire offered India stable government and a regulated economy. It was also during the time of the Mauryans that a system of writing was reintroduced. However, the texts that were popular in Mauryan times were not the traditional Hindu religious writings normally associated with this group. Instead, they were Buddhist. It was the ambitious and highly successful ruler Ashoka who was responsible for this change.

Macedonian native of Macedon, an ancient kingdom north of Greece

power vacuum a situation in which there is a lack of political leadership

learn on

To access videos, interactivities, discussion widgets, image galleries, weblinks and more, go to www.jacplus.com.au

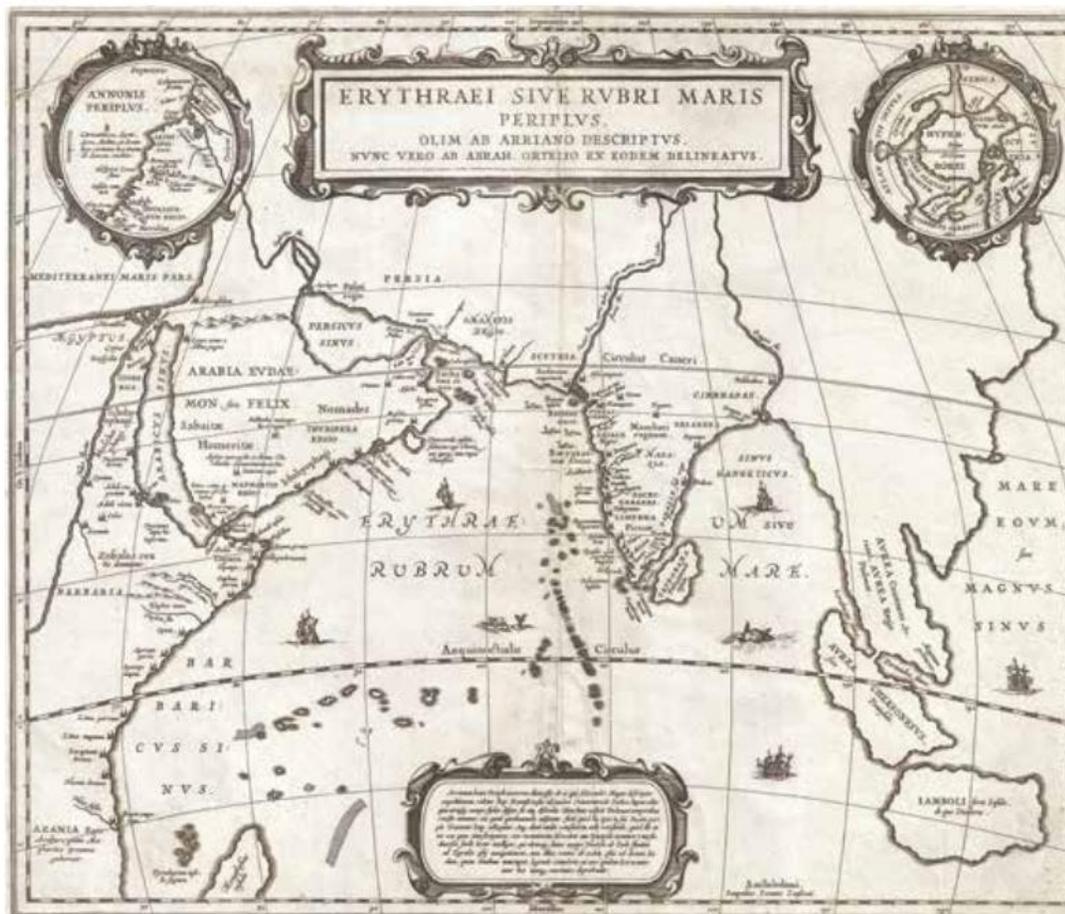
Ashoka was the grandson of the founder of the Mauryan Empire, Chandragupta Maurya, and he ruled when the Empire was at its peak. With a reputation as a fierce warrior, Ashoka expanded his family's empire until it covered most of the Indian subcontinent including modern-day Afghanistan and Bangladesh. However, the years of bloodshed took their toll on Ashoka and as a result he began to see the world differently. In 259 BCE, Ashoka converted to Buddhism, which was a relatively unknown religion at the time. He gave up his violent and warlike ways, embracing peace in accord with his new-found beliefs. He even sent Buddhist missionaries to other regions and assisted the spread of Buddhism in Asia. So the first known writings since the fall of the Indus Valley Civilisation were Buddhist religious texts.

The Mauryan Empire declined after Ashoka, and finally fell apart when its last ruler was assassinated. A turbulent period directly followed the fall of the Mauryan Empire. The ancient Greek and then Roman empires attempted to assert their control over the subcontinent.

First, it was the Indo-Greek rulers who invaded India. In nearly 200 years of rule, over 30 kings struggled to keep control over the region. Despite the tumultuous political events, Greek culture had significant affects on Indian life. In fact, as previously mentioned, it was the influence of Greek art that was responsible for the first representation of Buddha in human form.

The Roman Empire also had a strong connection to ancient India, particularly in the last stages of its rule. Trade between Rome and India was frequent and strong evidence of this relationship exists today. The Greco-Roman document the *Periplus of the Erythraean Sea* is a record of trade routes and partnerships that existed between Rome, North Africa and the Indian subcontinent (see **SOURCE 5**). Archaeological evidence also exists at the southern India site of Arikamedu. Excavations at this site have revealed many Roman artefacts including unique Roman pottery, coinage, wine jugs, glass and stone beads, and other pieces of jewellery. Evidence suggests these important relationships continued well into the reign of the Guptas — the so-called 'Golden Age' of India.

SOURCE 5 Seventeenth century representation of the Periplus of the Erythraean Sea



SOURCE 6 An Indian silver coin (c. first century BCE) depicting the local ruler wearing Roman-type helmet with bristles



SOURCE 7 Buddhist bas-relief in the Ajanta Caves, created during the Gupta dynasty



8.5.3 Activities

CHECK YOUR UNDERSTANDING

- 1 Who was the first ruler of the Mauryan Empire?
- 2 What elements of society did the Mauryans offer the Indian people which they had not yet experienced?
- 3 Explain why Ashoka adopted the Buddhist faith.
- 4 Identify the foreign forces that attempted to control India after the fall of the Mauryan Empire.

USING HISTORICAL SOURCES AS EVIDENCE

- 5 Create a timeline of the Mauryan Empire using the dates and events mentioned in this section.
- 6 What do **SOURCES 5** and **6** suggested about Indian contact with the Roman Empire?
- 7 Using the library and the internet, research the Ajanta Caves (see **SOURCE 7**). Explain what you have learned about them in your research.

8.5 PUTTING IT ALL TOGETHER

USING HISTORICAL SOURCES AS EVIDENCE

- 1 Using the library and the internet, explore the battle shown in **SOURCE 4** and its outcome. This was the first time the Macedonian and Greek army had encountered elephants in battle. Find out how useful elephants were in situations like this. Also find out whether Alexander's army was impressed enough by the Indians' use of elephants to include them in their own armed forces.
- 2 Use Google Maps to locate the cities of Lothal and Arikamedu.
 - a Identify which port city would have been the most active.
 - b Explain your answer in part (a).

IDENTIFYING CONTINUITY AND CHANGE

- 3 Create a table that summarises the accomplishments of the Vedic and Mauryan empires.

ANALYSING CAUSE AND EFFECT

- 4 Explain the relationship (cause and effect) between the following events, people and/or beliefs.
 - a The writing of the Vedas
 - b The defeat of Alexander the Great
 - c Ashoka's brutal experiences of war
 - d The assassination of the last Mauryan ruler

DETERMINING HISTORICAL SIGNIFICANCE

- 5 Using the table created in question 3, evaluate the accomplishments of the Vedic and Mauryan empires. Which empire do you believe had the most significant impact on the development of Indian culture and beliefs? Provide historical evidence to support your arguments.
- 6 Evaluate the impact of foreign countries on ancient Indian society. Which other empire(s) had the greatest influence on the development of Indian culture, beliefs and traditions? Provide historical evidence to support your arguments.

8.6 The Mauryan Empire: India's first unified state

8.6.1 Chandragupta Maurya and Kautilya

The Mauryan Empire, sometimes called the Mauryan dynasty, ruled over the Indian subcontinent from about 323 BCE to 185 BCE. The Mauryan emperors conquered a region reaching from Bangladesh in the east to Afghanistan in the west. This was the first state to stretch over most of the Indian subcontinent.

The dynasty was founded by Chandragupta Maurya. Little is known of his early life. However, we do know that he overthrew the last ruler of the preceding dynasty, the Nanda, with the aid of a former Nanda minister, Kautilya. It appears Kautilya helped Chandragupta raise an army against his former leader.

learn on

To access videos, interactivities, discussion widgets, image galleries, weblinks and more, go to www.jacplus.com.au

medallion a coin-shaped, usually metal decorative disk

stadia the plural form of **stadium**, which is a measure of about 200 metres

cubit an ancient measure of length, based on an adult's forearm

bas-relief a carving or relief sculpture that projects from a flat background

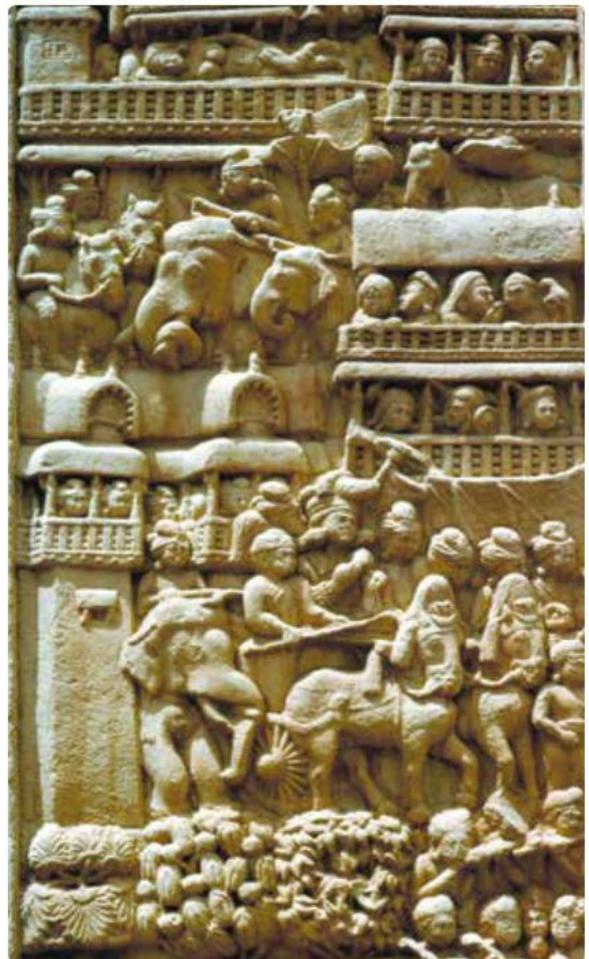
SOURCE 1 Mauryan silver **medallion** from the second century BCE. It shows riders on an elephant, under a decorative umbrella. It is likely that they are part of a royal procession. Elephants have been used in India for both transport and heavy labour for thousands of years up to the present day. However, Mauryan emperors employed elephants in their armed forces as well. Ashoka is reputed to have had several thousand war elephants. They were used to destroy enemy fortifications and villages, as well as to trample infantry. **SOURCE 1** in '8.5 Contacts and conflicts: India and the ancient world' shows war elephants in action against Alexander the Great's army.



SOURCE 2 From an ancient Greek account of a report by a Greek ambassador, Megasthenes, who had visited the Mauryan capital, Pataliputra, on a mission from the Seleucid Empire

Megasthenes informs us that this city [Pataliputra] stretched in the inhabited quarters to an extreme length on each side of eighty **stadia**, and that its breadth was fifteen stadia, and that a ditch encompassed it all round, which was six hundred feet in breadth and thirty **cubits** in depth, and that the wall was crowned with 570 towers and had four-and-sixty gates. The same writer tells us further this remarkable fact about India, that all the Indians are free, and not one of them is a slave.

SOURCE 3 **Bas-relief** from the Great Stupa of Sanchi. It shows what appears to be a festive scene from a Mauryan city.



Kautilya is also credited with compiling a set of rules on running a government, called *The Arthashastra*. Some of these rules appear ruthless and cruel. For example, the punishment for murder was not just death but torture too. If you injured someone in a drunken brawl you would have your hand cut off. However, *The Arthashastra* also laid the basis for responsible administration. For example, Kautilya advised the ruler to meet every petitioner who entered his court, and not leave them to talk only to his officials. This, Kautilya said, would avoid confusion and discontent that might lead to rebellion, and would ensure satisfaction with the ruler's government.

Kautilya's rules laid the basis for a powerful unified government across the subcontinent. The Mauryan Empire was divided into districts run by administrators whose duty it was to report to the emperor. It was their job to ensure law and order,

provide troops for the army and collect taxes. The central government kept a network of spies to ensure that these district officers followed directions properly. In this way India became a single state under central rule. The state regulated the economy and introduced a standardised system of weights and measures.

The observations of Megasthenes

The efficiency of the Mauryan Empire under Chandragupta is described in the only written primary source apart from *The Arthashastra*. This is an account by a Greek ambassador, Megasthenes, from the Seleucid Empire. We know that Megasthenes visited the court of Chandragupta as a representative of the first Seleucid emperor, Seleucus Nikator, one of Alexander the Great's generals. The empire founded by Seleucus ruled over much of the old Persian Empire from 313 to 65 BCE. In **SOURCE 2**, Megasthenes describes the wonders of Chandragupta's capital city, Pataliputra. According to Megasthenes, it was a vast and splendid city ringed with a high wooden wall and 570 towers.

The account Megasthenes wrote about India, called Indika, has been lost. What has survived are small infrequent references to it in the works of other Greek writers. Added together, these have helped us to build up a picture of India under Chandragupta Maurya.

Chandragupta extended the Mauryan Empire across the northern half of the subcontinent, expanding westwards into lands held by the Seleucid Empire. In 324 BCE he pushed Seleucid garrisons out of the Indus Valley. Seleucus Nikator tried to regain this region but was defeated in battle in 305 BCE. After Chandragupta's death his son Bindusara continued to extend Mauryan power. He conquered 16 kingdoms. But the ruler under whom the empire would grow to its furthest extent was the next emperor, Ashoka.

myWorldHistoryAtlas

Deepen and check your understanding of the topic with the following resources and auto-marked questions:
Mauryan Empire

8.6.1 Activities

CHECK YOUR UNDERSTANDING

- 1 Create a timeline and insert on it the events mentioned in this subtopic.
- 2 Who was the leader credited with creating the first unified Indian state?

USING HISTORICAL SOURCES AS EVIDENCE

- 3 Describe what you believe is happening in **SOURCE 3**. How does this source help us understand what life was like in the Mauryan Empire?
- 4 To what extent does **SOURCE 3** support Megasthenes' description of a Mauryan city in **SOURCE 2**?

8.6 PUTTING IT ALL TOGETHER

USING HISTORICAL SOURCES AS EVIDENCE

- 1 How do we know from **SOURCES 1** and **3** that during the Mauryan Empire Indians relied heavily on the elephant? How was the elephant helpful to them?

IDENTIFYING CONTINUITY AND CHANGE

- 2 Which empire did Chandragupta drive out of the Indus Valley, thus expanding the Mauryan Empire?
- 3 Identify and explain the administrative changes undertaken by Kautilya.

ANALYSING CAUSE AND EFFECT

- 4 How do you believe the changes identified in question 3 allowed the Mauryans to control India?

DETERMINING HISTORICAL SIGNIFICANCE

- 5 It was Kautilya not Chandragupta who was responsible for the success of the early Mauryan Empire. Do you agree or disagree with this statement? Justify your response.

8.7 Ashoka the Great

8.7.1 The warrior repents

learn on

To access videos, interactivities, discussion widgets, image galleries, weblinks and more, go to www.jacplus.com.au

Chandragupta's grandson Ashoka was remarkable not only by the standards of ancient India. The famous and respected English writer H. G. Wells, in his book *A Short History of the World*, claimed that Ashoka was 'the greatest ruler in world history'! Often referred to as 'Ashoka the Great', in this subtopic we will see exactly why this ruler was so 'great' and why he was seen as such an important individual.

Like his predecessors Chandragupta and Bindusara, Ashoka was a warrior king. He was already a successful general under his father, putting down several rebellions. After their father's death Ashoka vied with his brothers for the throne, a struggle that Ashoka eventually won. Legend claims that Ashoka may have even killed his brothers during this conflict.

Over the next eight years Ashoka conducted wars of conquest that extended the Mauryan Empire to its furthest limits. His final military campaign was in Kalinga, a kingdom on the north-east coast of India. During this bitter campaign tens of thousands were slaughtered and the cities of Kalinga sacked.

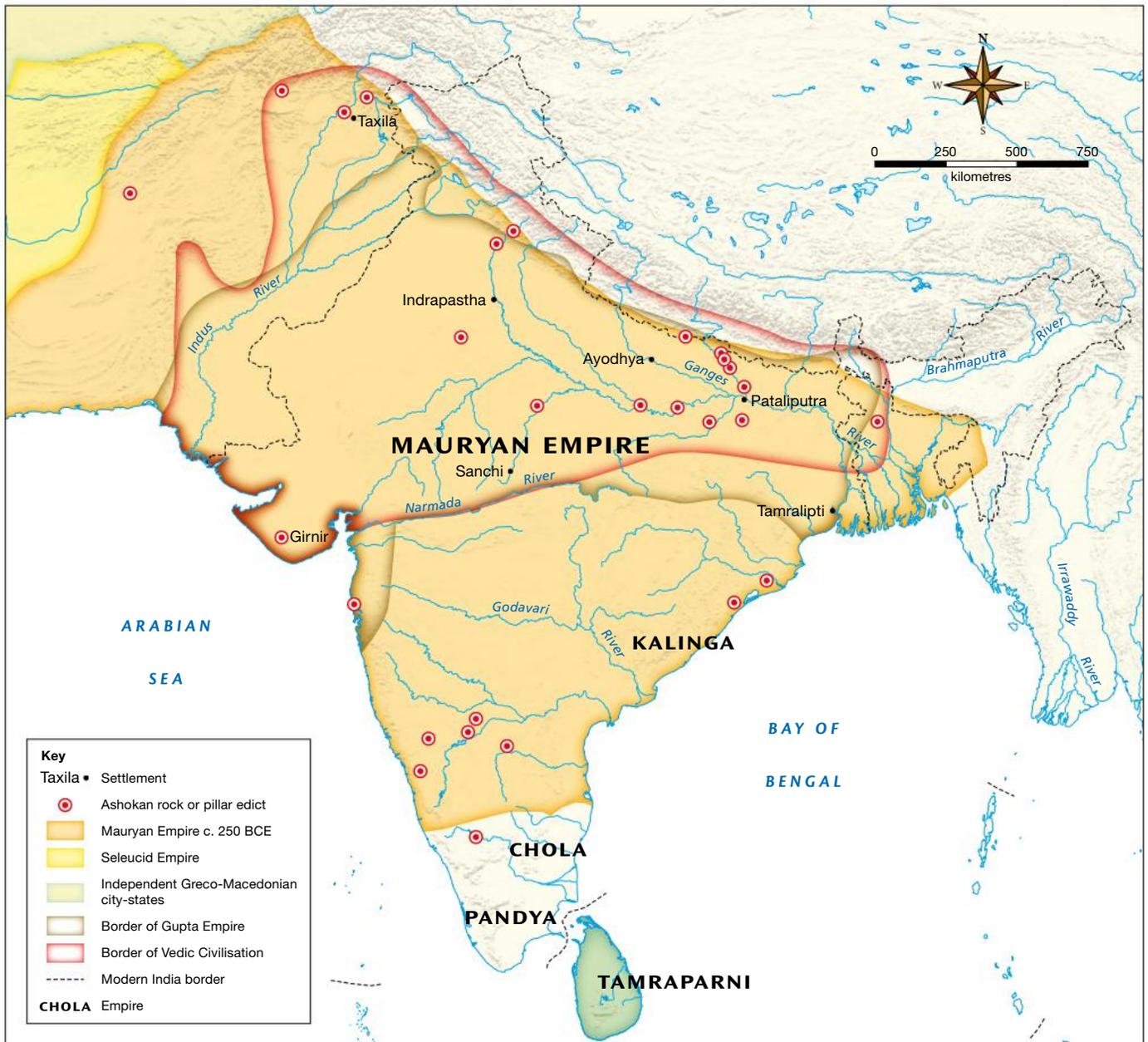
SOURCE 1 A stamp issued on 15 August 1949, the second anniversary of modern India's independence. It shows lions on top of a pillar erected by Ashoka at Sarnath in northern India.



SOURCE 2 Another of Ashoka's pillars, this one with a single lion on top, at Kolhua. Behind it is a Buddhist stupa.



SOURCE 3 Map of India showing the furthest extent of the Mauryan Empire, as achieved by Ashoka. Also shown are the sites where Ashoka erected his rock or pillar edicts.



Then something truly amazing and profound happened to Ashoka. It is said that when Ashoka visited the battlefields and ruined homes of the Kalingans, the sight of so much death and suffering sickened him, and he vowed never to wage war again. Although he had probably already regarded himself as a Buddhist, he now underwent a complete transformation and devoted his life to Buddhist principles. Ashoka vowed to look after his people in the same way that a father looks after his children. To this end, he promised he would extend his empire no further through war. Instead, Ashoka sent missionaries to persuade people to live according to the moral principles of the Buddhist faith.

The edicts of Ashoka

Much of what we know about Ashoka's rule we learn from **edicts** inscribed on pillars and rocks that were erected throughout the empire. According to the edicts, Ashoka provided medical care for people and animals alike, and planted shade and fruit trees to be enjoyed by all. Sacrifices

edict order issued by a sovereign to his or her subjects

learn on

To access videos, interactivities, discussion widgets, image galleries, weblinks and more, go to www.jacplus.com.au

were banned, as was hunting, a sport that Ashoka himself had loved in his youth. The burning of forests for agriculture was banned, because this could harm animals that sheltered there. Ashoka also promoted a vegetarian diet to reflect his care and regard for the animal world. Many of the harsh punishments decreed by Chandragupta's chief minister, Kautilya, such as torture and the death penalty, were abolished. Parents, teachers, priests, servants and those practising religions other than Buddhism — all were to be equally respected.

The edicts of Ashoka can be seen as demonstrations of *dharma* (or *dhamma*) — the moral teachings upon which Buddhism is based. Essentially, dharma recognised the individual's duties and obligations to both other people and animals, and to nature.

Following Ashoka's death in 232 BCE, his son succeeded in bringing Buddhism to Sri Lanka, but such achievements failed to halt the rapid decline of the Mauryan Empire. Nonetheless, the Mauryan Empire had provided India with a model for a unified state and represented a high point in its history.

SOURCE 4 From the pillar edicts of Ashoka

Dhamma is good, but what constitutes Dhamma? [It includes] little evil, much good, kindness, generosity, truthfulness and purity. I have given the gift of sight in various ways. To two-footed and four-footed beings, to birds and aquatic animals, I have given various things including the gift of life. And many other good deeds have been done by me.

People see only their good deeds saying, 'I have done this good deed.' But they do not see their evil deeds saying, 'I have done this evil deed' or 'This is called evil.' But this [tendency] is difficult to see. One should think like this: 'It is these things that lead to evil, to violence, to cruelty, anger, pride and jealousy. Let me not ruin myself with these things.' And further, one should think: 'This leads to happiness in this world and the next.'

8.7.1 Activities

CHECK YOUR UNDERSTANDING

- 1 What was Ashoka's relationship to Chandragupta?
- 2 How did Ashoka change after witnessing the appalling suffering brought about by war with Kalinga?
- 3 Where were the edicts of Ashoka inscribed?
- 4 What is dhamma?

USING HISTORICAL SOURCES AS EVIDENCE

- 5 Examine **SOURCE 1**. Why do you think modern India's government, on the second anniversary after independence, issued a stamp with one of Ashoka's pillars on it?
- 6 Why do you think Ashoka inscribed his edicts on monuments, as seen in **SOURCES 1** and **2**?

8.7 PUTTING IT ALL TOGETHER

USING HISTORICAL SOURCES AS EVIDENCE

- 1 Explain how **SOURCE 3** supports the idea that Ashoka was trying to get his message across to all Indians through his edicts?
- 2 Discuss how Ashoka's edicts, as shown in **SOURCE 4**, differ from the ideas of Chandragupta's chief minister, Kautilya, described in 8.6 The Mauryan Empire: India's first unified state? How do you think Ashoka's subjects would have felt about these changes?

IDENTIFYING CONTINUITY AND CHANGE

- 3 Describe how the Mauryan Empire grew under Ashoka's rule.

ANALYSING CAUSE AND EFFECT

- 4 Describe the effects a life of battle had on Ashoka.
- 5 How did Ashoka's reign influence religious observance in ancient India?

DETERMINING HISTORICAL SIGNIFICANCE

- 6 Now you have read about Ashoka, what do you think inspired H. G. Wells to describe him as 'the greatest ruler in world history'?

8.8 The religions of Ancient India

8.8.1 Hinduism and the natural world

As we have learned earlier, India's unique geographic characteristics enabled the expansion of human civilisations in the area. The plentiful waters of the Ganges, Brahmaputra and Indus rivers became the life-blood of the Indian people. Enriching the surrounding lands, these rivers allowed people to farm and cities to grow. The importance of the natural world can be seen in the evolution of Indian religions, with environmental themes particularly apparent in Hinduism, Buddhism and Jainism. In the following sections, we will investigate some of India's oldest religions and discover the ways in which they represent, symbolise and seek to protect the natural world.

The oldest of the world's major religions, Hinduism is followed by almost 80 per cent of modern Indians. Hinduism is full of symbols, references and customs that relate to the natural world. In fact, the very name India is derived from the word Hindu, which comes from the Sanskrit word *sindh*, meaning 'river'. Ancient Hindu texts, including the Vedas and the Mahabharata, frequently mention the divine presence in nature. They describe how Hindu gods such as Krishna often took the form of features in the natural world. As such, animals and the environments in which they lived had to be worshipped and protected. These texts also taught that humans had a duty to live in harmony with the natural world. This duty is often referred to as dharma. A word used across many different Indian religions, dharma can be described as a person's responsibility to follow religious and cultural teachings and laws.

SOURCE 1 An excerpt from the Sanskrit verse *Srimad Bhagavata Mahapurana (2.2.41)*

Ether, air, fire, water, earth, planets, all creatures, directions, trees and plants, rivers and seas—they all are organs of God's body. Remembering this, a devotee respects all species.

Hinduism explained

Hinduism is both a pantheistic and polytheistic religion. The first term describes religions that see the entire universe as being divine. Pantheists do not believe in a single god-like being but rather see god in all aspects of the natural world. This means that Hindus are also polytheists as they worship the natural world through a variety of divine beings. Another key Hindu belief is reincarnation, through which a person's spirit or soul is reborn in another body after death. Hindus believe that after many cycles of death and rebirth the individual may achieve joy and freedom through eventual unity with a universal spirit, called Brahman.

Hindus also believe that a person's current life will determine what form the next life will take. If you perform religious duties and live a moral life, you may be born to a higher class in the next life. But a sinful life would mean being born into some lower life, perhaps as a poor person, a slave or an animal. Hinduism holds that every living thing contains a part of the universal spirit and is therefore sacred. For this reason, vegetarianism is widely practised. Cows are particularly honoured and protected.

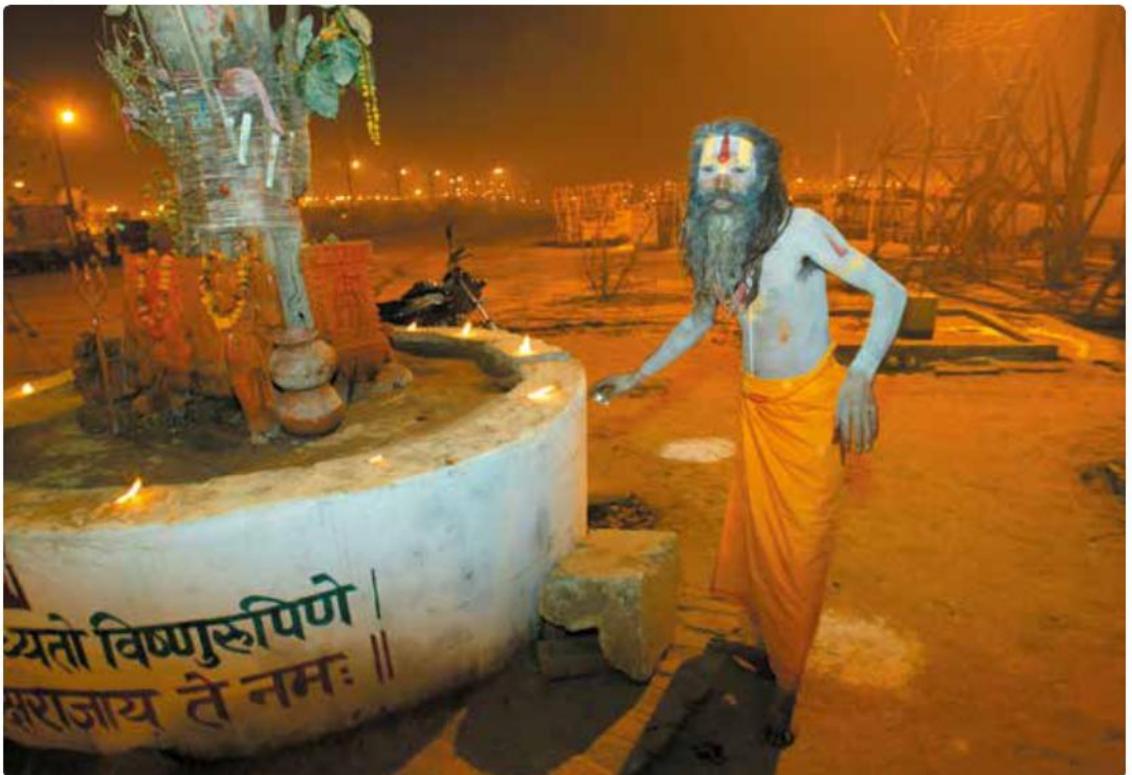
SOURCE 2 During the Ganesha Festival in August, Hindus place statues of the elephant god, Ganesha, in their homes and in decorated tents to receive his blessing. On the eleventh day, the statues are taken to a river or the sea and immersed in water.



SOURCE 3 Hindus bathing in the Ganges River during a major religious festival in northern India. They believe that the water of the Ganges purifies the soul and washes away sin.



SOURCE 4 A *sadhu*, or Hindu holy man, at the Ardh Kumbh Mela, the world's largest religious festival. Millions of Hindus attend this festival, held twice a year at the meeting place of the Ganges and two other rivers.



8.8.1 Activities

CHECK YOUR UNDERSTANDING

- 1 What percentage of modern Indians identify as Hindus?
- 2 Explain dharma and how it relates to the natural world?
- 3 Explain what is meant by a 'divine presence in nature'.
- 4 List examples of three monotheistic and three polytheistic religions.
- 5 Explain the concept of reincarnation.

USING HISTORICAL SOURCES AS EVIDENCE

- 6 Consider the sources included in this section. From what you have learned in this topic, why do you think water plays a key role in these Hindu festivals?
- 7 What do you believe the phrase 'they are all organs of God's body' refers to?

8.8.2 The caste system

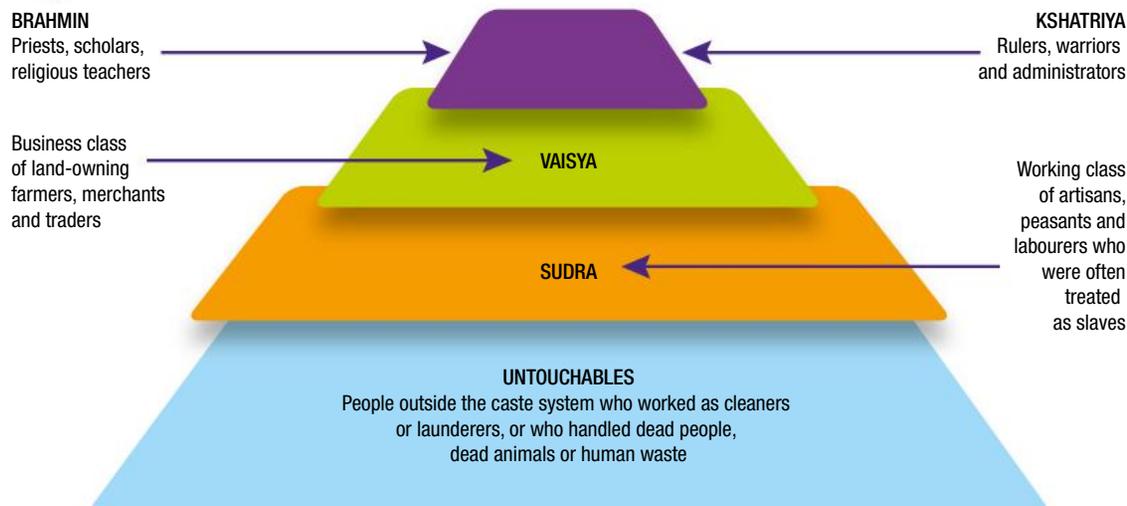
As in all ancient societies, civilisation brought increased inequality with privileged classes oppressing less privileged classes. In India, class differences were reinforced by religious ideas as the Indo-Aryan conquerors set about creating oppressed classes out of the peoples they conquered.

From *Vedic* times, Hinduism divided society into classes called castes. The caste system (see **SOURCE 4**) was a means of social control — of keeping people in the social classes into which they were born. From around 200 CE, four main castes were described under the *Manu* code. These castes were the Brahman or priestly class, warriors and landowners, farmers and craftsmen, and Untouchables or outcasts. These main castes developed further into a complex system of hundreds of castes, each with its own rules, occupations and restrictions. A contested verse of the *Purusha Sukta* states that the castes originated from different parts of giant deity, Purusha. It claims that the Brahmin came from its mouth, the kshatriya from its arms, the vaisya from its thighs and sudra from its feet. The dalit or untouchables were not mentioned in the verse. However, in recent years, historians and commentators have doubted whether the verse was actually written during the Vedic period. In modern times there have been attempts to change this social system.

learn on

To access videos, interactivities, discussion widgets, image galleries, weblinks and more, go to www.jacplus.com.au

SOURCE 5 This social pyramid represents the main castes and social classes of ancient India by about the time of the Mauryan Empire. Children were born into a caste. It was almost impossible to move between castes, especially as Sudra and Untouchable children were denied any formal education. Buddhism rejected the caste system.



8.8.2 Activities

CHECK YOUR UNDERSTANDING

- 1 During which period of ancient Indian history was the caste system introduced?
- 2 Identify and explain the key reason for the introduction of the caste system?
- 3 Which two groups occupied the top caste of the system?
- 4 Why was the lowest ranked group known as the Untouchables?

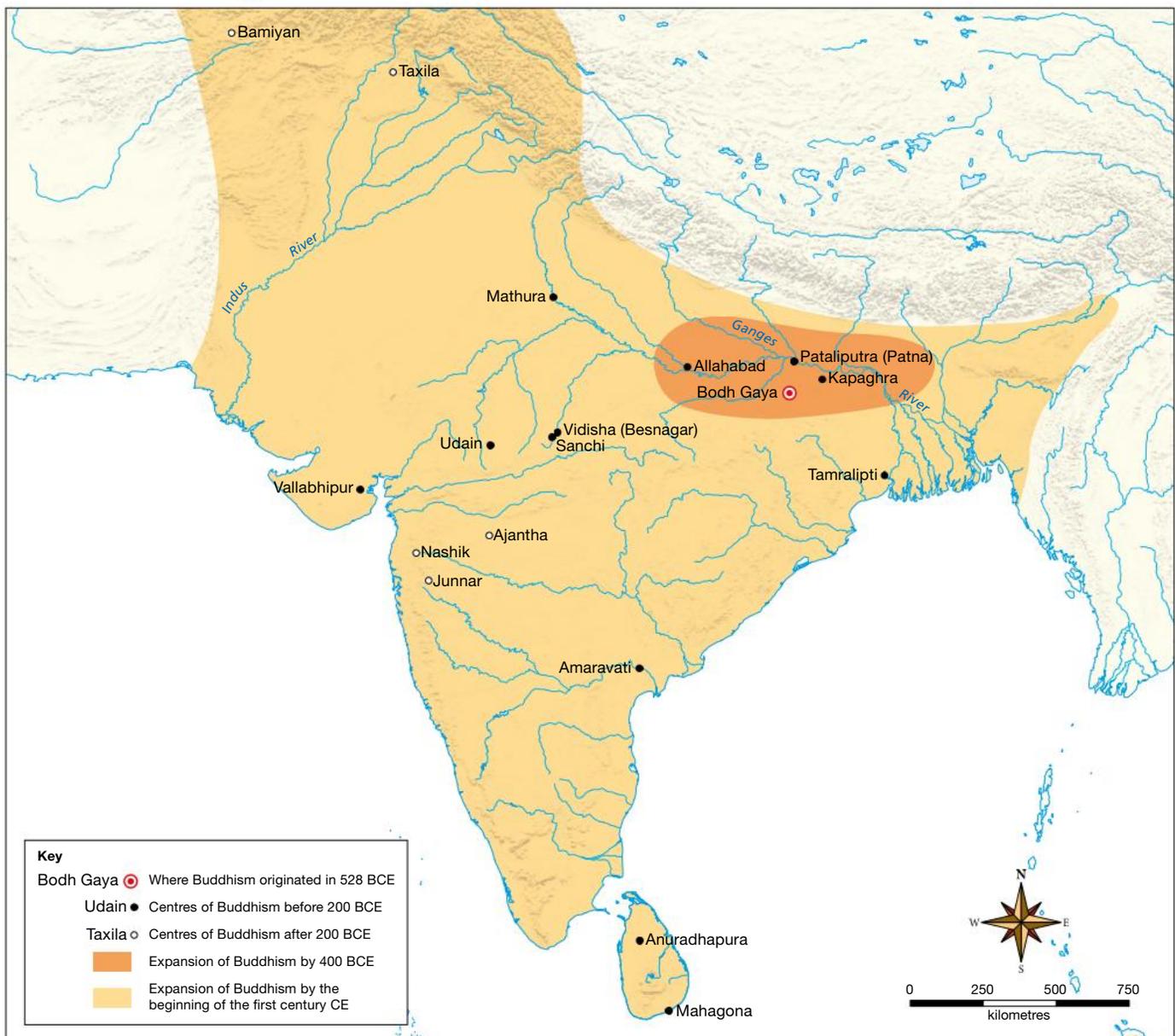
USING HISTORICAL SOURCES AS EVIDENCE

- 5 Create a visual representation of the caste system (as shown in **SOURCE 5**). You can either copy the format shown in this source or create a new image.
- 6 Why would someone have written the *Purusha Sukta* after the Vedic period? What purpose might the author have had?

8.8.3 Buddhism and the natural world

A deeply spiritual religion, Buddhism originated in India and then spread throughout Asia and beyond (see **SOURCE 6**). Buddhism also sees humankind as part of a sacred natural world. Buddhism advocates contentment. The Buddha taught that humans must understand nature

SOURCE 6 Map showing the spread of Buddhism within India up to the first century CE



Source: Spatial Vision

in order to satisfy their needs without harming the natural world. Whenever humans became corrupted by unrestricted greed, both humanity and the natural world suffered. Buddhists see the natural world as being filled with interconnections. Buddhism also teaches that humans must achieve a balance between themselves and the environments in which they live. An important element of Buddhism has always been the belief that people can be reincarnated as animals. In Buddhist thought, this provided another reason for a gentle relationship with nature, and sympathy and respect for all living creatures.

Buddhism explained

Buddhism was founded by a Hindu prince named Siddhartha Gautama in the sixth century BCE. After observing the suffering of people in his kingdom, Siddhartha decided to give up his worldly riches and seek deeper truths about life. It is said he lived as a hermit for seven years, and then set out to teach people what he called the Four Noble Truths. It is at this time that people began calling him the Buddha, which means 'the Enlightened One'.

The Four Noble truths are:

- All people, regardless of wealth, suffer pain.
- People suffer pain so long as they remain locked in the cycle of the soul's reincarnation — through birth, death and rebirth.
- Pain is caused by the desire, or craving, for things.
- To overcome desire, a person must follow the Eightfold Path.

The Eightfold Path is concerned with the seeking of wisdom, resisting and freeing the mind from wrongdoing, serving one's neighbours, and 'right concentration' or meditation. The goal is to rid oneself of desire. By following this path, the Buddha taught, one could achieve *nirvana*, a state of spiritual peace and joy, free from worldly desires and attachments, suffering and individual consciousness. The soul ceases to exist as it comes into harmony with the universe.

Buddhism spread throughout ancient India, but by the twelfth century CE it had lost much of its influence. Today there are about five million Buddhists in India. But Buddhism also spread throughout much of Asia, including China, Japan, Tibet, Korea and South-East Asia. Today its influence is more marked in these countries than in India.

SOURCE 7 Statue of the Buddha from Gandhara region in northern Pakistan, first century CE



8.8.3 Activities

CHECK YOUR UNDERSTANDING

- 1 Who was Siddhartha Gautama?
- 2 According to Buddhist belief, what happens to the soul when it reaches nirvana?
- 3 Name three modern countries where Buddhism is one of the major religions?
- 4 Explain what is meant by the Eightfold Path?

USING HISTORICAL SOURCES AS EVIDENCE

- 5 According to **SOURCE 1**, in which part of India were most centres of Buddhism by about 200 BCE?
- 6 What do you notice about the representation of the Buddha shown in **SOURCE 2**?

8.8.4 Jainism and the natural world

Another of ancient India's three religions, Jainism is often mistakenly seen as a branch of Hinduism and Buddhism. Although the three religions do share common values and ideas, Jainism should be viewed as a separate belief system. One of the most important principles in Jainism is *ahimsa*, or non-violence. Jains believe that violence against any living thing is wrong and must be avoided at all costs. They believe that living a non-violent life will bring you closer to holiness. For this reason, Jains commonly practice vegetarianism and adopt lifestyles that reduce their environmental impact. Strict Jains will even sweep the ground in front of them to avoid killing insects. This custom demonstrates just how important the natural world is in Jainism.

learn on

To access videos, interactivities, discussion widgets, image galleries, weblinks and more, go to www.jacplus.com.au

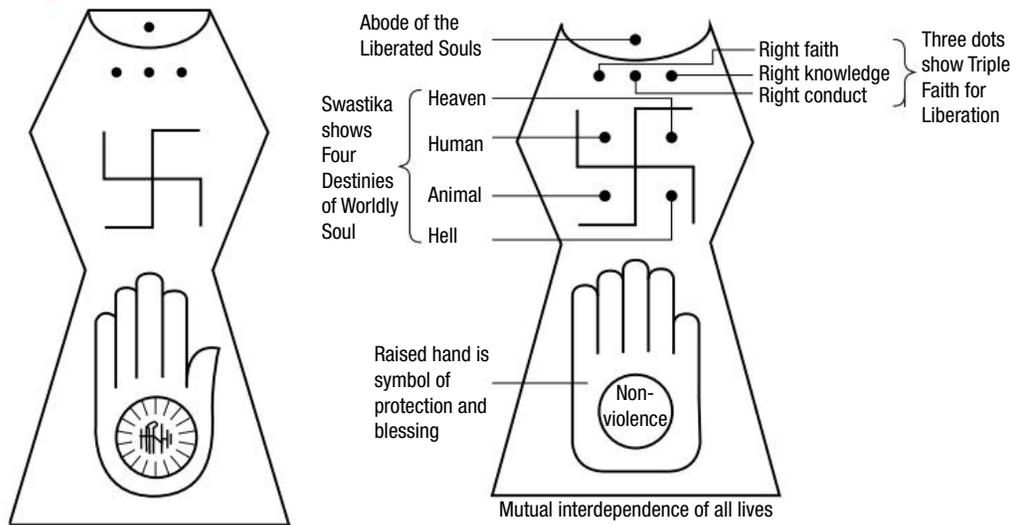
Jainism explained

Ahimsa is not the only important aspect of Jainism. In fact, it is only one of the five major vows that all Jains must take. By fulfilling these vows, Jains believe that all people have the opportunity to become gods. The Five Vows of Jainism are:

- ahimsa — non-violence
- satya — truthfulness
- asteya — non-stealing
- brahmacharya — celibacy/chastity
- aparigraha — non-attachment.

By living their lives according to these vows, Jains attempt to seek liberation from the cycle of reincarnation in which they also believe. Once a person attains liberation, their soul becomes immortal and stays in an ever-lasting state of bliss. In modern times, Jainism remains a relatively minor religion in India. It was popularised in the Western world by the famous Indian political leader, Mahatma Gandhi. Though not a Jain by birth, Gandhi's non-violent methods of protest closely follow the teachings of Jainism.

SOURCE 8 An explanation of Jainism symbols



8.8.4 Activities

CHECK YOUR UNDERSTANDING

- 1 Explain the concept of ahimsa.
- 2 Why do many Jains practice vegetarianism?
- 3 What are the Five Vows of Jainism?
- 4 Choose one of Five Vows of Jainism and explain it in further detail (you may need to conduct further research to answer this question).
- 5 What do Jains believe happens to the soul after a person attains liberation from the cycle of reincarnation?

USING HISTORICAL SOURCES AS EVIDENCE

- 6 Use **SOURCE 8** to complete the following table.

Symbol	Element of Jainism	Meaning

8.8.5 Rites of passage in Ancient India

Life-cycle events are a large part of many religions. In Catholicism, a new-born baby's baptism is a significant religious event, as is a *bar* or *bat-mitzvah* to a young Jewish boy or girl. In ancient India, life-cycle events were known as *samskara*. A term with different meanings, in this instance *samskara* refers to the moment in the lives of Hindus, Buddhists and Jains. **SOURCE 9** outlines the most important *samskara* in Hinduism.

SOURCE 9 The most important samskara in Hinduism

Samskara	Description
Garbhadhana	A ritual that signified the intent to conceive a child
Pumsavana	A ritual to increase the chances of conception
Simanatonayana	'Parting of the hair' ceremony; completed to ensure the safe delivery of a baby
Jatakarman	A ritual to celebrate the birth of a baby
Namakarana	A baby-naming ceremony usually performed on the tenth to twelfth day after its birth
Nishkramana	A ritual during which a baby is formally introduced to the world for the first time; the timing usually corresponds to sunrise or sunset
Annaprashana	A ritual during which a baby will eat solid food for the first time
Chudakarana	The ritual of a child's first haircut (usually involves shaving the head, especially for boys)
Karnavedha	An ear-piercing ceremony that in modern times is more common for girls than boys
Vidyarambha	A ritual to celebrate the beginning of a child's education
Upanayana	A rite of passage during which a child receives a sacred thread, usually from a teacher
Praishartha	A ritual that marks the beginning of the study of sacred texts including the Hindu Vedas
Keshanta and Ritusuddhi	Rituals that mark a young man's first shave (the former) and a young woman's first menstruation cycle (the latter)
Samavartana	A ritual to celebrate graduation from the education system
Vivaha	The range of rituals in a marriage ceremony
Antyeshti	Funeral rites often including cremation

SOURCE 10 A modern example of the upanayana ritual



learn on

To access videos, interactivities, discussion widgets, image galleries, weblinks and more, go to www.jacplus.com.au

There are many reasons why ancient Indians took part in these rituals, and continue to do so today. The most simple of these reasons is that the various samskara allowed people to demonstrate their commitment to what they believe. Take the ritual of *upanayana*, for example. Conducted between a *guru* (teacher) and a student, this ritual is conducted by only the upper

three castes of Indian society. The ceremony marks the beginning of a student's educational journey. Yet more importantly, it also signifies a young person's acceptance as a full member of their community. During the ceremony, a sacred thread is tied across the student's chest. While it may need to be replaced over the years, this thread is worn for the remainder of the bearer's life — a constant reminder of their connection to their beliefs.

Death and funerary customs

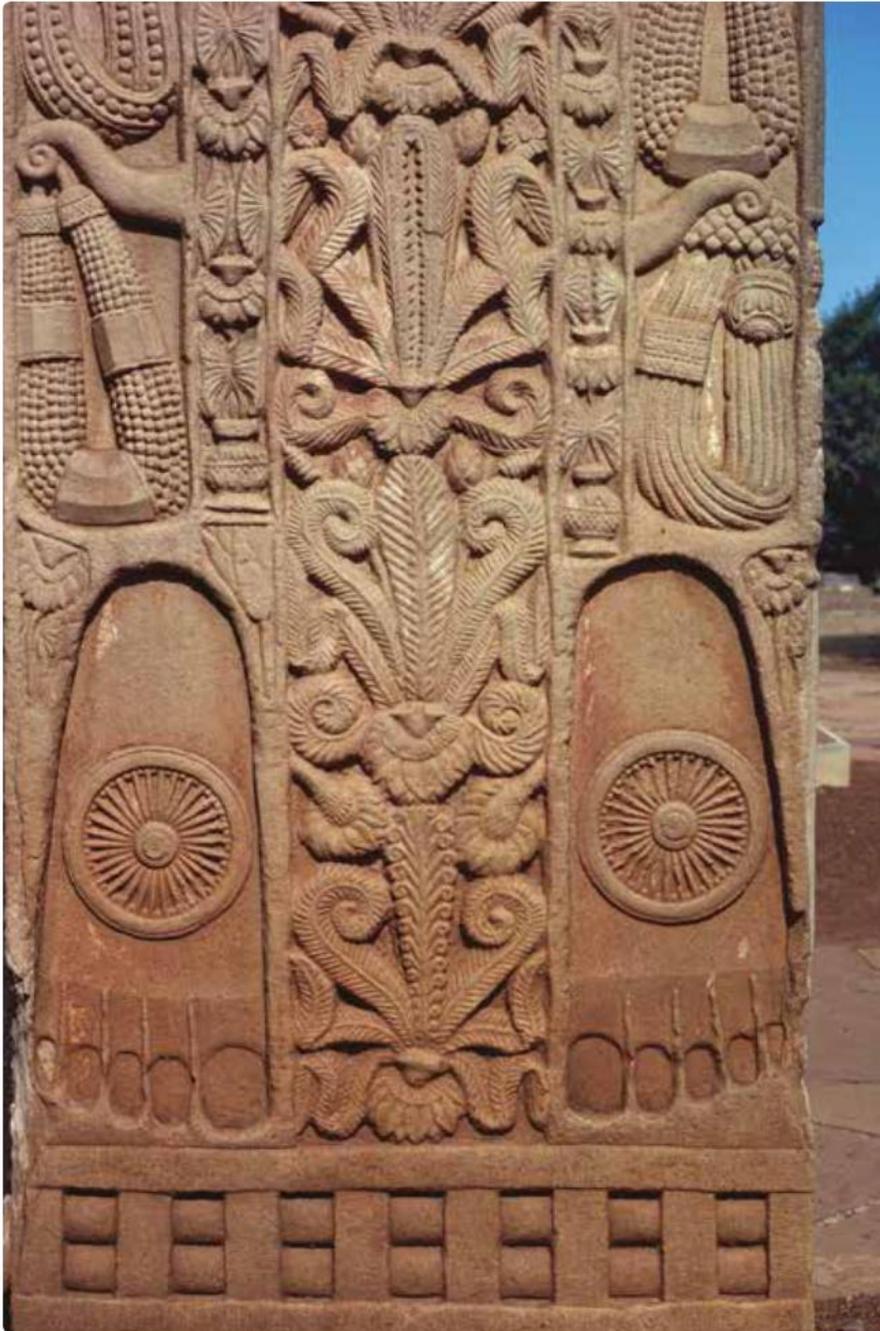
The concept of death in ancient Indian belief systems is extremely interesting. With the belief in incarnation strong in many Indian religions, death is seen as a transition from one life into another. For Hindus, the funerary ceremony, or *antyeshti*, signifies the separation of the soul from the body. For this reason, adults are usually cremated with their ashes scattered either in a sacred river such as the Ganges or a place of importance to the deceased. The funeral occurs in that days that follow the death and is usually presided over by the oldest son of the grieving family. An interesting, but rare, custom in Indian funerals is the use of professional mourners. People referred to as *rudaali* are employed by the grieving family to attend the funeral. Rudaali are only employed by members of the upper castes who, because of their status, are not allowed to publically show their emotions. Due to this social restriction, the role of the rudaali is to mourn on their behalf.

Cremation was also practiced by Buddhists in ancient India. Buddhist monks would chant with the grieving family while the body was set alight. Their prayers were thought to help the soul of the deceased leave the body and transition into its next incarnation. Another Buddhist funerary custom was the construction of *stupa*. Found at monasteries and religious centres, stupas usually took the form of a hemispherical structure. The shape of the stupa represents the original burial mounds of the Buddha. While the central mound was usually left plain and undecorated, the surrounding walls and arches were covered with elaborate engravings. On early Indian stupas, the Buddha himself was never depicted in human form. Instead, the Buddha was represented through symbols such as the footprints shown in **SOURCE 12**. Within the structure, the relics of great Buddhist scholars and monks were stored. Small ceramic, stone or metal stupas were also used to house the ashes of the deceased. It was (and still is) common for these smaller stupas to become the focus of family shrines.

SOURCE 11 The Great Stupa at Sanchi and a small personal stupa



SOURCE 12 Engraved stupa walls at the Great Stupa of Sanchi, showing footprints of the Buddha with a wheel — the Ashoka Chakra — embedded in them



learn on

To access videos, interactivities, discussion widgets, image galleries, weblinks and more, go to www.jacplus.com.au

8.8.5 Activities

CHECK YOUR UNDERSTANDING

- 1 Provide a broad definition of samskara.
- 2 Why do people participate in the various rituals explained in this section?
- 3 Explain why death is such an important event in Indian society?
- 4 Who were rudaali and what was their role?
- 5 What does the shape of a stupa represent?

USING HISTORICAL SOURCES AS EVIDENCE

- 6 After reading the table in **SOURCE 9**, list the three rituals that you found most interesting. Explain your choices.
- 7 Examine **SOURCE 12**. What object is located within the Buddha's footprints? What is the significance of this object? (You made need to do some research to answer the last part of this question.)

8.8 PUTTING IT ALL TOGETHER

USING HISTORICAL SOURCES AS EVIDENCE

- 1 Compare representations of Hindu gods (such as Ganesha in **SOURCE 2**) with representations of the Buddha (shown in **SOURCE 7**). What are the major differences between these two religious figures?

IDENTIFYING CONTINUITY AND CHANGE

- 2 To what extent is the caste system still functioning in India today?
- 3 The customs of ancient India share nothing in common with modern Indian society. Discuss this statement, using examples to support your arguments.

ANALYSING CAUSE AND EFFECT

- 4 Death is an important event in Indian society. Explain what each of India's three major religions believe happens to the soul after death.

DETERMINING HISTORICAL SIGNIFICANCE

- 5 The major religions of India are closely linked through shared beliefs and customs. Evaluate the accuracy of this statement with examples.
- 6 Discuss the ways in which connections to the natural world are present within Indian religions.

8.9 SkillBuilder: Analysing different perspectives

online only

How do we analyse the different perspectives of people in ancient India?

Primary sources often give different perspectives because not everyone will have seen an event or problem from the same point of view. It is important to analyse different perspectives, especially for bias and propaganda when trying to determine what happened in the past.



Go to your learnON course to access:

- An explanation of the skill (Tell me)
- A step-by-step process to develop the skill, with an example (Show me)
- An activity to allow you to practise the skill (Let me do it)
- Questions to test your application of the skill (Applying skills)

8.10 Review

online only

This final subtopic provides a range of opportunities for you to review and respond through:

- i revising and checking your historical knowledge
- ii demonstrating your ability to apply historical concepts and skills.

Go to your learnON course to access:

- A key chronology of events relevant to the topic
- A summary of the key knowledge presented in the topic
- A 'Big Questions' activity
- A multiple choice topic test
- Short answer or extended writing responses



on Resources

Interactivity
Ancient India timeline
Create a visual timeline of key events in ancient India.
int-2940

8.9 SkillBuilder: Analysing different perspectives

8.9.1 Tell me

What are different perspectives and why do they occur?

A perspective is a point of view, which is formed from someone's values, beliefs, attitudes and experiences. In a study of a period of history, perspectives on the period or an event can be gathered from primary sources, especially eyewitness accounts such as those found in a diary, as well as official sources such as records produced by those in power. Sources give different perspectives because not everyone sees an event or problem from the same point of view. Some sources are biased (one-sided or prejudiced) or are based on insufficient understanding or information to be reliable. Each source will reflect the perspective of its creator and their target audience and purpose.

To uncover the truth on any issue we have to be aware that what someone says or writes about it may be one-sided or incorrect. It may even be an attempt to deceive. This is as important when trying to make up our mind on current issues as it is when trying to understand the past. For example, when buying a product, you don't necessarily believe what advertisements say about it. An advertiser will wish to show a product in its best light, that is, present only positive aspects of it so that a consumer will buy it. In the same way, a ruler may only want positive records of their rule to be made or displayed to ensure there is no dissent from those they rule or that their legacy is protected. Sometimes, the perspectives of those not part of the ruling group may be silenced — their absence from the public record also tells a historian something about that period. Historians must often research extensively to find perspectives of a range of people about events from the past in order to build up a balanced picture of the event or time period. Since secondary sources rely on interpretations of primary sources these are based on the perspectives or bias of the creator of the secondary source. This may add another layer of perspective on top of the perspective of the creator of the primary source.

8.9.2 Show me

How to analyse different perspectives in primary and secondary sources

When you read an interpretation of a historical event or development, you need to ask:

1. What is the subject or main idea of the source?
2. When was the source created?
3. Who created the source?
4. Why was it written?
5. Is the source based on reliable information?
6. Is the source supported or contradicted by the evidence of other sources?

The six questions have been applied to **SOURCE 1**, an ancient Greek account of the Indus Valley Civilisation.

SOURCE 1 From *Geography*, a book by the Greek historian and geographer Strabo (c. 63 BCE–24 CE). Strabo's book was an encyclopaedia of geographical knowledge of his time. Here he was recounting observations made by an earlier historian, Aristobulus, who accompanied Alexander the Great to India around 327 BCE. Aristobulus's book has been lost.

[Aristobulus] says that when he was sent upon a certain mission he saw a country of more than a thousand cities, together with villages, that had been deserted because the Indus had abandoned its proper bed, and had turned aside into the other bed on the left that was much deeper, and flowed with precipitous descent like a **cataract**, so that the Indus no longer watered by its overflows the abandoned country on the right, since that country was now above the level, not only of the new stream, but also of its overflows.

cataract series
of waterfalls

1. *What is the subject or main idea of the source?* The subject is the abandoned cities of the Indus River Valley. According to the writer, the cities were abandoned because the river changed its course so that it no longer provided water at a level suitable for use by the people of those cities.
2. *When was the source created?* The source was created between c. 63 BCE and 24 BCE.
3. *Who created the source?* Strabo is using information he obtained by reading Aristobulus, who was in India around 327 BC.
4. *Why was the source written?* Aristobulus wrote an account of what he observed during his journey to India. Strabo used Aristobulus as a source for his own book.
5. *Is the source based on reliable information?* We know that Aristobulus could not have seen 'more than a thousand cities' because there is archaeological evidence of only a few cities. If he exaggerated this, he may be wrong about other things.
6. *Is the source supported or contradicted by the evidence of other sources?* Aristobulus's statements about the river changing course are supported by archaeological evidence (see 8.4.3 The end of a civilisation). This change had a different effect in Mohenjo-daro from that described by Aristobulus, but his description could be accurate for other Indus Valley towns and cities.

8.9.3 Let me do it

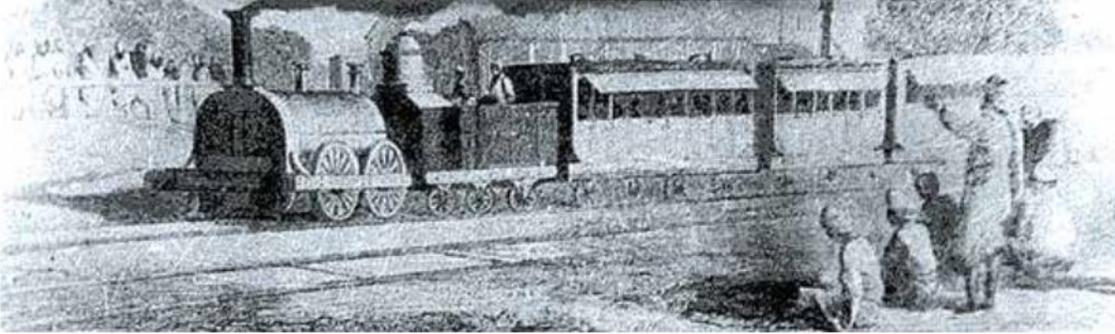
SOURCES 2 and **3** will help you understand some of the difficulties people faced in interpreting the ruins of Indus Valley cities. Now use the six questions to see if you can recognise and analyse the different perspectives in **SOURCES 4** and **5**.

monastery residence of a community of monks

SOURCE 2 A Buddhist stupa on top of the Higher Town of the city of Mohenjo-daro. The stupa and the nearby **monastery** were constructed around 200 CE from bricks taken from the surrounding abandoned buildings. The stupa is itself now a ruin. Anyone who was untrained in archaeology might have had difficulty in recognising that the stupa belonged to a different age from the earlier ruins.



SOURCE 3 The first locomotive on the East India Railway. In the 1850s the British began to use crushed bricks taken from the ruins of Harappa as ballast under the tracks and sleepers for the rail line.



SOURCE 4 From the account of Charles Masson, a British army deserter who in 1826 stumbled on the ruins of what later would be called the Indus River Valley city of Harappa

I found . . . in front of the village [of Harappa] a ruinous brick castle. Behind us was a large circular mound . . . and to the west was an irregular rocky height, crowned with the remains of buildings, in fragments of walls, with **niches**, after the eastern manner . . . The walls and towers of the castle are remarkably high, though, from having been long deserted, they exhibit in some parts the ravages of time and decay. Between it and our camp extended a deep trench . . . overgrown with grasses and plants . . . Tradition affirms the existence here of a city . . . [It] was destroyed by a particular visitation of **Providence**, brought down by the **lust** and crimes of the **sovereign**.

niche shallow recess in a wall

Providence act of God

lust sexual desire, strong appetites

sovereign a king, queen or emperor

SOURCE 5 Archaeologist John Marshall, recollecting his colleague R. D. Banerji's discovery of Mohenjo-daro in 1922, from John Marshall, *Mohenjo-daro and the Indus River Civilization*, [1931] 2004

. . . [I]t was not until 1922, when Mr R. D. Banerji started to dig there [in Mohenjo-daro], that the prehistoric character of its remains was revealed. This was not greatly to be wondered at; for the only structures then visible were the Buddhist Stupa and Monastery . . . and these were built exclusively of brick taken from the older ruins, so that it was not unnatural to infer that the rest of the site was referable to approximately the same age as the Buddhist monuments [around 200 CE]. Indeed . . . Mr Banerji himself . . . had no idea of finding anything prehistoric. His primary object was to lay bare the Buddhist remains, and it was while engaged on this task that he came by chance on several seals which he recognized at once as belonging to the same class as the remarkable seals inscribed with legends in an undecipherable script which had long been known to us from the ruin of Harappa . . . The few structural remains of that civilization which he had unearthed were built of bricks identical with those used in the Buddhist Stupa and Monastery, and bore so close a resemblance to the latter that even now it is not always easy to discriminate between them. Nevertheless, Mr Banerji **divined**, and rightly divined, that these earlier remains must have **antedated** the Buddhist structures, which were only a foot or two [30–60 cm] above them, by some two or three thousand years. That was no small achievement!

divine to guess or predict

antedate to come before, to be earlier in time

8.9 APPLYING SKILLS

USING HISTORICAL SOURCES AS EVIDENCE

- 1 Explain why primary source evidence from ancient India often provides different perspectives.
- 2 Why would **SOURCE 4**, the extract from the account of Charles Masson, need to be questioned very thoroughly?
- 3 Explain how multiple primary sources can be used to increase the accuracy of a historical investigation.
- 4 How do historians decide which is the most reliable source of evidence when choosing between two very different perspectives?
- 5 Suggest which kind of primary sources from the Indus Valley Civilisation provide the most information about ancient culture and traditions.

8.10 Review

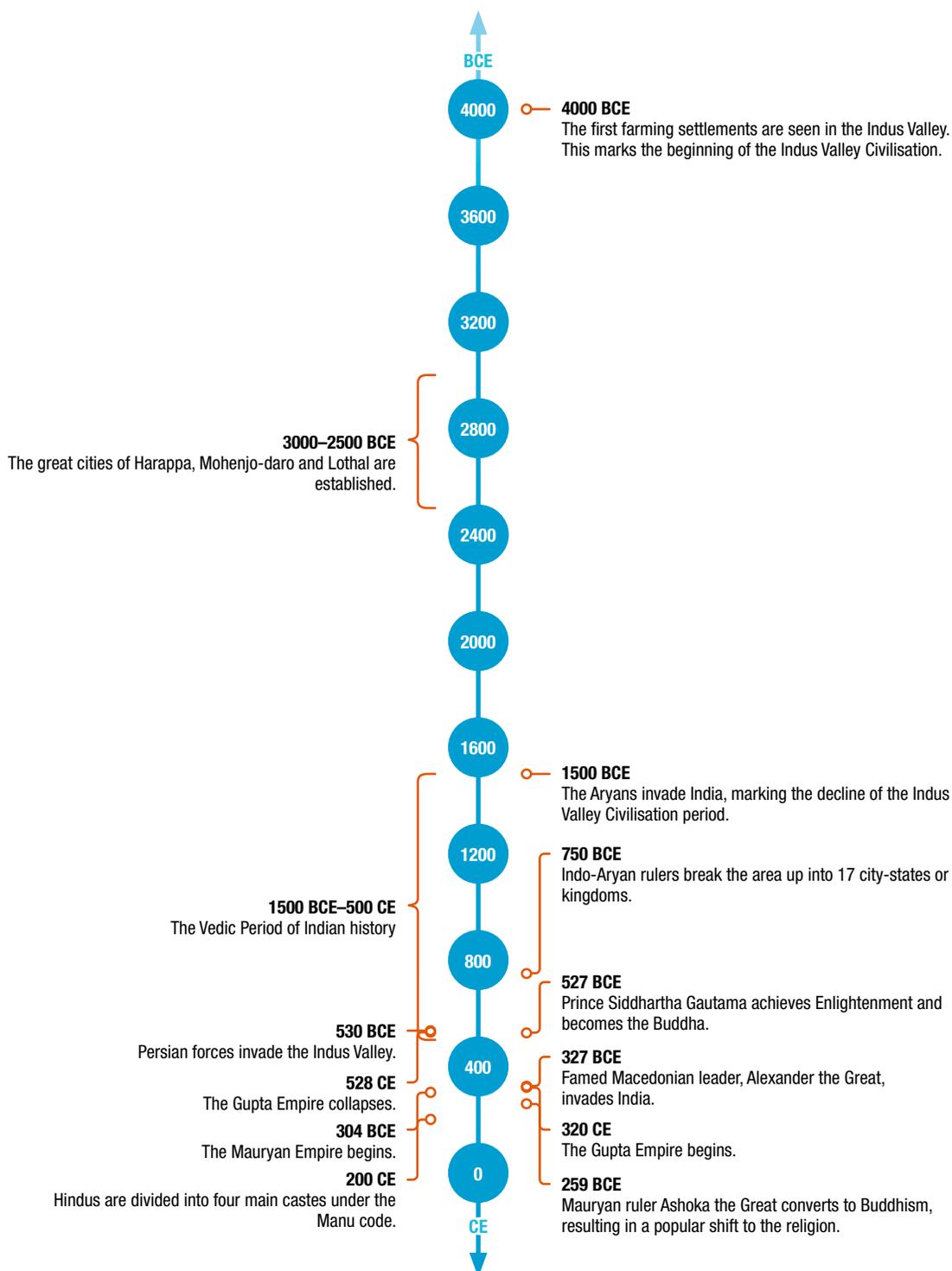
In this topic we have focused on the earliest and most mysterious of ancient India's civilisations: the Indus Valley Civilisation. We have also seen how several other civilisations emerged in India in ancient times and have looked at the way religious traditions that developed in India have had a lasting influence in the world today.

8.10.1 Review

Chronology: timeline of ancient India

on Resources

Interactivity
Ancient India timeline
Create a visual timeline of key events in ancient India.
int-2940



Key knowledge: summary

8.2 Examining the evidence

- To discover information about ancient India, archaeologists and historians must use a range of techniques and methods.
- Primary sources provide historians with information directly from a period of history. As such, they remain the most valued of historical sources.
- Secondary sources or interpretations of direct evidence can also be used to provide a more complete understanding of past events, beliefs and individuals.

8.3 The geography of India

- The unique physical factors found within the Indus Valley were crucial to the development of early Indian civilisations.
- The great Himalayan rivers of the Ganges, Brahmaputra and the Indus, provided the area with a reliable supply of fresh water.
- The rivers also left the surrounding soil rich with sediment eroded from the famous mountain ranges that lay to India's north.
- The supply of fresh water from the rivers and the rich sediment allowed early Indian farmers to establish permanent settlements in the Indus Valley. From these settlements, the Indus Valley civilisation arose.

8.4 Lost cities of the Indus Valley

- Archaeological excavations and important sites have revealed much about India's past. In particular, the sites of Harappa, Mohenjo-daro and Lothal have yielded pottery, jewellery, engraved walls and religious structures, ports and even entire street plans.
- Given the importance of early Indian archaeological sites, it is crucial that the relevant authorities strive to conserve and protect them.
- Increased urban development, increased numbers of tourist visitors and even global climate change are all real threats to the survival of Harappa, Mohenjo-daro, Lothal and other key archaeological sites.

8.5 Contacts and conflicts: India and the ancient world

- Early Indian society was significantly influenced by its frequent battles against invaders from a range of other nations.
- Trade between Europe and the East became more common and knowledge of the unique goods and resources India had been blessed with became more widely known.
- Increased knowledge of India's unique resources made the area a target for the powerful armies of Greece, Persia and Macedonia.
- Contact and conflicts with left cultural and religious impacts on ancient Indian society.

8.6 The Mauryan Empire: India's first unified state

- Before the Mauryan Empire, Ancient India was ruled by separate tribal families and civil conflict was common and fierce.
- The Mauryan Empire was the first dynastic power in India and brought relative peace to the area through their unified government.
- This period of history witnessed significant developments in law-making and other government regulations.

8.7 Ashoka the Great

- Several key individuals influenced the developed ancient Indian society. One of those individuals was Ashoka the Great, a ruler from the Mauryan Empire.
- Ashoka was a famed warrior who led his forces fiercely, extending the boundaries of his empire. However, years of bloody battles took a spiritual toll on Ashoka and he began to see the error of his previous strategies.
- Ashoka's inner turmoil eventually led him to convert to Buddhism; this change significantly increased the practice of Buddhism and is one reason why the religion is so popular in India today.

8.8 The religions of Ancient India

- Indian society became highly controlled and regulated with the introduction of the caste system.
- A rigid social hierarchy, the caste system made it virtually impossible for people to move between the castes in which they were born into.
- Introduced by Hindus, the caste system was rejected by followers of Buddhism.
- The caste system is still in place in modern India to some extent.
- Indian society was and still is steeped in religion and tradition.
- Several key belief systems developed in Ancient India.
- Each of these belief systems participated in similar, yet varied, daily customs and rituals. In particular, death funerary customs were of importance to all Indian religions. With belief in reincarnation and an afterlife common in Indian religions, it was crucial that death was handled in the right way.
- Elements of these funerary practices can still be seen in Indian society today.

Key knowledge: multiple-choice topic test

1. When did the first permanent settlements of the Indus Valley Civilisation arise?
 - a. About 4000 BCE
 - b. About 3000 BCE
 - c. About 2000 BCE
 - d. About 1000 BCE
2. What natural resource was crucial to the development of the Indus Valley Civilisation?
 - a. Gold
 - b. Silver
 - c. Water
 - d. Trees
3. Why don't we know the names of any of the Indus Valley rulers?
 - a. Because written language was not used at the time.
 - b. Because there were too many different leaders.
 - c. Because there were no leaders of the Indus Valley Civilisation.
 - d. Because we do not have enough archaeological evidence of these leaders.
4. Which ancient Indian city housed a port that enabled international trade?
 - a. Harappa
 - b. Mohenjo-daro
 - c. Lothal
 - d. Sanchi
5. What is the greatest threat to the archaeological sites from ancient India?
 - a. Rapid urbanisation
 - b. Increased tourist numbers
 - c. Increased flooding events
 - d. All of the above
6. What was unique about the rule of Ashoka the Great?
 - a. He abandoned his reign at the peak of its powers.
 - b. He converted India from Hinduism to Buddhism.
 - c. He united the warring states of India.
 - d. He was assassinated by his own brother.
7. What were the Vedas?
 - a. A group of religious texts
 - b. A group of foreign invaders
 - c. A group of Hindu rituals
 - d. A group of young Buddhist scholars

8. Which group is at the bottom of the caste system?
 - a. Brahmin
 - b. Vaishya
 - c. Sudra
 - d. Dalit (Untouchables)
9. One method Jains take to achieve liberation is which of the following?
 - a. The Eightfold Path
 - b. Enlightenment
 - c. Nirvana
 - d. The Five Vows

8.10.2 Respond

Using historical sources as evidence

1. Identify the symbol shown in the middle of the modern Indian flag. What does it represent and from which religion did it originate?
2. Using the sources shown throughout this topic, create a map that shows the establishment and expansion of ancient Indian civilisations. Include the invasion launched by other countries.

Analysing cause and effect

3. Explain the ways in which religion influenced early Indian civilisations.
4. How did trade with the outside world affect the development of early Indian civilisations?
5. Why is it difficult to make conclusive statements about much of ancient Indian history?

Determining historical significance

6. Throughout ancient Indian history, civilisations were rigid and resisted outside influences. Evaluate this statement, using specific examples to support your view.

Responding to the big questions

At the beginning of this topic several big questions were posed. Use the knowledge and understanding you have gained through your study of the subtopics to answer them:

1. Who were some of the most significant people in ancient India?
2. How did the geography of ancient India influence its civilisations?
3. How were ancient Indian societies organised and governed?
4. What were the main characteristics of Indian culture and religion?
5. How do written and archaeological sources help us understand ancient India?
6. Why did ancient Indian civilisations rise and fall?
7. What is the significance of the heritage of ancient India?

SOURCE 1 The flag of modern India



GLOSSARY

- absolute dating techniques** methods used to assess the age of something (e.g. radiocarbon dating, tree-ring dating)
- acropolis** stronghold on high ground in an ancient Greek city-state
- acupuncture** a medical practice in which long, sharp needles are inserted under the skin as a means of diagnosing, relieving or curing illness
- afterlife** life after death
- agora** large open space in the centre of a Greek city that served as a public meeting area and marketplace
- agriculture** farming and herding animals
- amphora** large clay vase used to store and carry liquids such as water, wine and olive oil
- amulet** charm believed to protect against evil
- anaesthetic** drug to deaden pain
- ancestral beings** gods or deities who taught people how to live and the rules of society and who are regarded as the direct ancestors of Aboriginal peoples living today
- ancient history** the period from the beginning of civilisation to the fall of the Roman Empire
- anno Domini** Latin for 'in the year of our Lord'
- anthropoid** human-like
- anthropologist** someone who researches the appearance and features of the life of prehistoric people and the connections they had with other human populations
- anthropomorphic** describing or representing something as having human traits, despite its original lack of these characteristics
- aqueduct** structure built to carry water long distances
- artefact** an object made or changed by humans
- artificer** craftsperson or inventor
- artisans** skilled craftspeople
- Asiatic** peoples of Asia, in this case western Asia, including the Middle East
- astrology** interpreting the influence of the stars on human affairs
- astronomy** study of the stars and planets
- auxiliaries** soldiers in the Roman army drawn from areas conquered by Rome and made part of its empire
- barbarians** the Roman term for all peoples who lived beyond the borders of the empire
- bas-relief** a carving or relief sculpture that projects from a flat background
- biased** one-sided or prejudiced, seeing something from just one point of view
- bitumen** tar, as used on modern road surfaces
- BP (Before the Present)** a term used by archaeologists instead of BCE (Before the Common Era) for when time periods are vast. See subtopic 1.2 for more information.
- bull-roarer** a sacred object used in Aboriginal religious ceremonies whirled around to produce a roaring noise
- bureaucrats** government officials
- canopic jars** jars used to store the liver, lungs, intestines and stomach of the person being mummified
- cassowary** a large flightless bird related to the emu with a bare head and neck
- castrated** having the testicles cut off
- cay** a small island found on coral reefs
- circumcision** the surgical removal of the foreskin from a male penis
- civil war** war between rival factions within one state or country
- civilisation** term used to describe societies that have towns and features such as complex forms of government and religion
- clan** a group of people of common descent or ancestry
- colonies** countries or regions taken over and controlled by another state
- concubines** women who lived with the emperor in a sexual relationship but were not married to him
- conscripted** forced to become a soldier
- constellations** groups of stars
- contestability** when particular interpretations of the past are open to debate
- continent** one of seven very large, continuous bodies of land; they are Europe, Asia, Africa, Antarctica, Australia, North America and South America
- crucified** killed by crucifixion, an ancient form of execution in which the victim was tied or nailed to a pole or (as was Jesus) a cross and left to die slowly in agony
- crucifixion** slow, painful execution by being nailed or bound to a cross or pole
- cubit** an ancient measure of length, based on an adult's forearm
- cuneiform** writing system in which lines were drawn as wedge-shaped marks
- Daoist** a follower of Daoism
- deities** gods or goddesses
- delta** low, triangular area where a river fans out as it nears the sea
- demise** death
- democracy** a political system according to which citizens choose the way in which they are governed
- demotic script** the simplest of the ancient Egyptian scripts, which was almost like handwriting
- deported** forced to leave the country
- dialects** different forms of a language
- dissection** systematic cutting up of body for medical study
- divination** the skill of reading omens
- Dorians** tribes from the north of Greece who moved into the south during the Dark Age
- dugong** a sea animal, sometimes called a sea cow, found mainly on the coasts bordering the Indian Ocean
- dynasty** a line of rulers from the same family, and the period during which they ruled
- ecosystem** a community of organisms, plants or animals and the environment they exist in
- edict** order issued by a sovereign to his or her subjects
- Ensi** ruler of any Sumerian city-state
- entrails** internal organs of an animal
- Ephorate** five-man ruling body in Sparta that advised the kings
- eternal life** living forever
- Etruscans** advanced, civilised people who dominated early Rome from about 575 BCE to about 396 BCE
- evolve** to develop and change by natural processes
- extinct** died out
- fallow** land that is being farmed but left uncultivated and seeded for a season to allow soil recovery

- fauna** animals
- Fertile Crescent** the area now roughly covered by Israel/Palestine, Lebanon, Jordan, Syria, south-east Turkey and Iraq
- flint** a very hard stone, useful for tools and for making sparks to start fires
- forage** the search for provisions or food
- forum** open meeting place of a town or city
- fossils** remains of plants or animals found in rocks
- genealogy** an account of the descent or ancestry of a person or group
- genetic** relating to origin or heredity
- genetics** study of heredity
- geologist** someone who studies the sediments and landforms associated with ancient campsites
- granary** place for storing grain
- Great Pyramid** the oldest and largest pyramid in Egypt; one of the Seven Wonders of the Ancient World
- Great Sphinx** monument with the body of a lion and the face of a man; located in Giza near the Great Pyramid
- grid system** a street network that creates square and rectangular blocks
- halberds** daggers mounted on axe handles
- helot** slave of the Spartan state
- heresy** an opinion or belief that contradicts orthodox beliefs, especially in religion
- heritage** everything that has come down to us from the past
- hieratic script** Egyptian script that was less decorative and complex than hieroglyphs
- Holocene Epoch** the past 10 000 years
- hoplites** Greek foot soldiers
- hunter-gatherers** people who live by hunting animals and gathering plants
- hygienic** healthy, sanitary
- hypocaust** under-floor and water heating system used in Roman villas and public baths
- hypothesis** (plural: **hypotheses**) a theory or possible explanation
- Ice Ages** long periods during which glaciers covered much of the northern hemisphere
- immortals** gods who lived forever
- Indus seals** imprints of stamps found on pottery made during the Indus Valley Civilisation
- infantry** foot soldiers
- Inundation** the seasonal flooding of the Nile
- Iron Age** period in which people learned to use iron to make tools and weapons
- Latin** the language of ancient Rome
- legacy** something handed down from the past
- loot** goods or property taken from a defeated enemy after a battle
- lore** the customs and stories that came from the Dreaming and continued to govern all aspects of traditional life
- Macedonian** native of Macedon, an ancient kingdom north of Greece
- magistrates** men elected by the citizens to run Rome for a year
- mallee** a low growing bushy Australian eucalypt plant
- mammoth** a large extinct mammal like a modern elephant but with larger tusks and woolly fur to keep it warm
- mandate of heaven** Chinese expression meaning that a ruler had been chosen by the gods
- mangrove** area in a tropical or subtropical climate where vegetation grows in salty or brackish water
- marshlands** low-lying land that is usually boggy and often flooded
- mausoleum** large tomb structure
- medallion** a coin-shaped, usually metal decorative disk
- medieval** of the Middle Ages
- meditation** exercising the mind through contemplation
- megalithic** made of large stones
- Melanesian** belonging to the island groups of the South Pacific, north-east of Australia
- mercenaries** people who fight for a foreign country for money or other rewards
- metic** free man living in Athens but not born there; could not vote or own property but served in the army and paid taxes
- metope** part of the pattern of alternating motifs under the pediment (the triangular part crowning the front) of a Greek building
- microliths** small stone artefacts
- Middle Ages** between ancient and modern historical periods (generally between the fifth and fifteenth centuries)
- monsoon** rainy season accompanied by south-westerly summer winds in South Asia
- mummy** body that has been embalmed
- mythology** a body of myths
- natron** a mineral salt used to dry out dead bodies
- Neolithic Revolution** the beginning of the New Stone Age
- nomadic** moving about from place to place
- nomads** tribal groups who wander from place to place, generally in search of food or pasture
- ochre** a natural pigment found in soil ranging in colour from pale yellow to orange and red
- oligarchy** governing council of rich aristocrats
- Olympiad** a staging of the Olympic Games
- omens** signs that predict good or evil
- ostracism** the punishment of being banished from Athens
- pagan** name used to refer to people who believed in non-Christian gods
- palaeontologist** a scientist who studies fossils
- Paleolithic** of the Old Stone Age
- pan-Hellenic** for all the Greeks
- papyrus** paper made from crushing reeds
- Parthenon** Athenian temple dedicated to the goddess Athena
- patricians** members of the aristocratic families that founded the Republic
- patronage** supporting and encouraging authors and artists
- Peloponnese peninsula** the southern part of mainland Greece, joined to the north by the narrow Isthmus of Corinth
- perioeci** peoples of Laconian towns around Sparta who could be required to fight for Sparta but were not citizens
- perspective** point of view or attitude
- philosopher** one who studies the fundamental principles and causes of things
- philosophy** study of the causes and meanings of things
- plateau** a high, flat topped landform
- plebeians** all non-patrician citizens of Rome
- Pleistocene Epoch** the glacial period before the Holocene Epoch
- polis** (plural **poleis**) ancient Greek city-state
- portico** a roof supported by columns, usually attached as a porch to a building
- power vacuum** a situation in which there is a lack of political leadership
- prehistory** the period before writing was invented
- prophet** a revealer or interpreter of God's will

- public baths** public building complexes containing baths of varying temperatures, and sports and beauty facilities; a popular meeting place for Roman citizens
- pumice** lava ejected from a volcano that solidifies into a light, porous rock
- quarry** an excavation or pit from which stone or building material is cut
- radiocarbon dating** a way of dating objects of plant or animal origin according to the amount of carbon left within them
- reincarnation** the process of being reborn over and over again in another human or animal body
- relative dating techniques** methods used to assess whether something is older than something else (e.g. stratigraphy, fluorine dating)
- republic** system of government in which the head of state is not a monarch
- rhetoric** the art of public speaking
- rites of passage** a ceremony or event marking an important stage in someone's life
- sago** a starch food obtained from palm used to produce a flour
- Samnites** a mountain tribe of central Italy
- Sanskrit** ancient Indian language used in classical Hindu literature
- sarcophagus** stone or wooden coffin (often inscribed or decorated) in Egypt
- scribe** citizen who could read and write and was trained to keep records
- seagrass** a grass-like plant living in or close to the sea
- sediment** the material that settles at the bottom of a liquid
- Senate** governing body in ancient Rome, (in theory) an advisory body of ex-magistrates
- shadoof** irrigation device used to lift water from the river
- shell midden** a mound of shells and other waste material marking the site of an ancient community
- silt** fine sand or earth particles carried and deposited by running water
- slash and burn** a method of clearing land for farming where the vegetation is cut down and burned off before new seeds are sown
- species** a group or classification of living things
- stadia** the plural form of **stadium**, which is a measure of about 200 metres
- stalemate** a situation in a contest or conflict in which neither side can defeat the other
- strata** (singular: **stratum**) distinct layers of material beneath the ground, built up over time, that provide information for archaeologists and geologists
- subcontinent** large section of a continent (e.g. the Indian subcontinent)
- taboo** something strictly forbidden
- taro** a plant with broad edible leaves and root vegetable, grown in the tropical regions, especially the Pacific Islands
- tenant farmers** poor farmers who rented small plots of land
- the Dreaming** a common belief system of Australia's Aboriginal peoples that explains creation and the nature of the world, the place that every person had in that world and the importance of ritual and tradition
- Thracian** a native of the Roman province of Thracia
- tribute** riches given by a state to acknowledge submission to another state or ruler
- utopia** a perfect social and political system
- Valley of the Kings** gorge on the Nile in Upper Egypt that contains many royal tombs
- vassal state** a state whose ruler recognises another, more powerful ruler as his overlord
- villein** a poor farmer who worked the land of a big landowner and had fewer rights
- virtue** moral standard or value
- warlords** generals from powerful landowning families
- Xiongnu** the ancient Chinese name for the nomadic Turkic tribes of Central Asia

INDEX

A

- Aboriginal peoples
arrival and spread across Australian continent 33–4, 62–3
ceremonies 72–3
clan gatherings 76–7
death and funerary customs 84–5
Dreaming tracks 74
eel farming 76
firestick farming 67–8
heritage protection 91–2
initiation ceremonies 80–1
kinship 78–9
Kulin people 86–9
languages 71–2
resource and land management 67
songlines 74
the Dreaming 60, 64–5, 78, 80
totems 80
trade networks 75–6
trade practices 76–7
war and weapons 82–3
- absolute dating techniques 15
- Abu Simbel temple 125
- Acropolis 130
- acupuncture 226
- AD (dates) 6
- Aeneid* (Virgil) 185
- Aesop 163
- afterlife 102, 107–8
- ages (time) 6
- agora 146, 149
- agriculture
beginning in America 50
development in Fertile Crescent 35, 38
- ahimsa 259
- Ahmose, *Pharaoh* 122
- Akhenaten, *Pharaoh*, Egypt 104, 119
- Akkadian Empire 45
- Alexander the Great
conquest of Persia 159–61, 233
crushing of revolt in Thebes 159
death 61
invasion of India 233, 244, 245, 261
legacy 261
- Amenhotep IV, *Pharaoh* 119
- Americas
civilisations 50–1
human migration to and within 49–50
- anaesthetics 226
- Analects* (*Lun-yu*) 213, 214
- Anaxagoras 162
- ancestral beings 65
- ancient Australia
Aboriginal peoples 62–3
conserving the past 86–92
death and funerary customs 84–5
economy 74–8
evidence 60–1
human occupation 33–4, 60, 62–4
Kulin people 86–9
Lake Mungo archaeological site 89–91
land and resource management 67–70
language and ceremony 71–3
society, custom and culture 78–81
timeline 58
Torres Strait Islander peoples 63–4
war and weapons 82–4
- ancient China
civil wars 221, 224
common people 208
Confucianism 51, 53, 213–14, 215
death and burials 210
development of civilisation 46
early dynasties 46–7
entertainment 209
everyday life 209
evidence about 202–3
farming 46
Great Wall 218, 219, 227
heritage 225–7
Hsin dynasty 223–4
inventions 225–7
laws 215–16
mandate of heaven 204
medicine 226
natural environments 211–12
origins of civilisation 204, 206
paper and printing 225
peasant rebellions 220, 223, 224
population 212–13
Red Eyebrows 224
religion 214–15
ruling classes 206–7
Shang dynasty 46, 202, 204–5, 206
Silk Road 204–5, 222
slaves 208
social structure 206–8
timeline 200
trade 47
Warring States period 47, 206, 216, 218
women's lives 209
writing 46, 202
Xia dynasty 46, 204
Yellow Turbans 224
see also Han dynasty; Qin dynasty;
Zhou dynasty
- ancient Egypt
afterlife 102, 107–8
decline and fall 122
demotic script 112, 114
duration of civilisation 45
everyday life 102–4
evidence about 96–7
floods and irrigation 98–9
geographical features and key sites 99
gods 106, 107, 109–10, 119
Greco-Roman period 126
hieratic script 114, 115
hieroglyphs 96, 112–15
Inundation 98
kingdoms 104
legacies 125–6
Lower Egypt 104, 105, 122
Middle Kingdom 105, 120–1
mummies 108, 110–11, 118
New Kingdom 45, 105, 122
Old Kingdom 105, 120
pharaohs 104–7
pyramids 116–17
Rameses II (the Great) 123–5
religion and festivals 102
social structure 100–1
timeline 94
trade 120, 121
Upper Egypt 104, 105, 122
Valley of the Kings 116
wars and expansion 120–2, 123–4
women's role and status 103–4
- ancient Greece
Archaic Period 138
architecture 163
astronomy 162
city-states (poleis) 138, 139, 150, 161
Classical Period 138
colonies 138
conquered by Macedonians 159
conquered by Romans 161
Dark Age 136, 138
democracy 139–40
drama 130, 163
evidence for 130–1
geography 136–7
gods 148, 152
Golden Age 147
government 139–41
heritage 161–3
invasion of Persia 159–61
laws 150–1
mathematics 162
medicine 162
Minoans 132
Mycenaeans 45, 132, 133–5, 136, 138
myths 151
Olympic Games 128, 130, 138, 154–5
oracles 153
origins of civilisation 132
pan-Hellenic institutions 138
Peloponnesian Wars 159
Persian Wars 156–8
philosophy 162
poetry 163
religious festivals 154
rise and fall 45
slaves 143–4
timeline 128
trade 132, 137

- ancient Greece (*continued*)
 women 143
 writing 132, 133, 138
see also Athens; Sparta
- ancient history 6
- ancient India
 Aryan invasion 48, 241
 Buddhism 246–8, 253, 258–9
 caste system 256–7
 death and funerary customs 262–3
 evidence for 232–3
 first civilisation 47–8
 geography 234–5
 Golden Age 248
 Greek influence 233, 247
 Hinduism 51–2, 246, 255–6
 Indus Valley civilisation 48
 invasion by Alexander the Great 161, 233, 244, 245, 261
 Jainism 259–60
 Manu code 256–7
 Nanda dynasty 249
 Persian invasions and occupation 245
 religions 48, 255–63
 rites of passage 260–2
 Roman links 247
 timeline 230
 trade 48, 247
 Vedic Civilisation 245
 writing 48, 245
see also Indus Valley Civilisation;
 Mauryan Empire
- ancient Rome
 Christianity 192–3, 197
 citizenship 176–7, 179, 191
 civil wars 80, 179, 194
 culture 185
 death and funerary customs 188–9
 decline and fall 193–5
 duration of Empire 45
 early wars and expansion 170–4
 Eastern Roman Empire 195, 196
 engineering 186–8
 evidence about 168–9
 forums 184
 gods 191, 192
 government of Republic 177–8, 190
 Greek influence 185
 heritage 196–8
 Julius Caesar 179–80
 law 190–1, 197
 Nero 181, 193
 origins 170
 Punic Wars 172
 religion 191–3
 Roman army 174–6
 Roman Empire 170, 180
 Roman Republic 176, 177–8, 179
 slaves 181–2, 184
 social structure 176–7
 Social War 173
 society 184
 Spartacus and slave uprising 181–2
 spread of empire 172–3
- technology 186–7
 timeline 166
 trade 247
 Vestal Virgins 193
 Western Roman Empire 194, 196
 women 186
- ancient world
 evidence 24–5
 Ptolemy's map 232
 timeline 22
- Angles 194
- anthropoids 34
- anthropologists 12, 60
- aqueducts 176, 186
- archaeological evidence
 for ancient Australia 60
 deciding where to dig 12
 excavations 13
 pottery 13–14
 survival 13
 use by historians 11
- archaeological sources 7, 8
- archaeologists 86
- Archimedes 162
- archival research 9–10
- Arikamedu 247–8
- Aristarchus 162
- Aristophanes 163
- Aristotle 131, 162
- art, prehistoric art 29
- artefacts 7, 61
- Arthashastra*, *The* 250, 251
- artificers 203
- artisans 100
- Aryans 48, 241, 245
- Ashoka the Great 246–8, 252–4
- Assyrian Empire 42, 45, 122
- astrology 191
- astronomy 162
- Athens
 Acropolis 148
 Agora 149
 Attica 149
 death and burial practices 148
 education 146
 everyday life 145–9
 government 139–40
 housing 146–7
 laws 150
 men's role and status 145–6
 Parthenon 131, 148–9
 in Persian Wars 157, 158
 public life 147
 women's role and status 145–6
- Augustus, *Emperor*, Rome 180
- Australia *see* ancient Australia
- B**
- Babylon 45
- barbarians 193, 194–5
- bas-relief 250
- Battle of Hydaspes 245–6
- Battle of Kadesh 124
- Battle of Marathon 156
- Battle of Megiddo 122
- Battle of Thermopylae 157
- BC (dates) 6
- BCE (before Common Era) 6
- bias, in sources 8
- Bindusara 251
- Birdsell, Joseph 63
- bitumen 40
- Bogong moths 77
- bone tools 61
- Boodie Cave, Barrow Island 60
- bora grounds 80–1
- Bowdler, Sandra 63
- BP (Before the Present) 6–7, 62
- Buddha, anthropomorphic
 depictions 233, 247
- Buddhism
 in China 215
 death and funerary customs 262
 in India 246–8, 253, 258–9
 origin 52, 259
 principles 52–3, 259
- bull-roarers 81
- bureaucrats 206
- Burgundians 194, 195
- Burra Charter 92
- Byzantine Empire 196
- C**
- Caesar, Julius 179–80
- Cambyses 156
- Caracalla, *Emperor*, Rome 191
- Carter, Howard 118
- cassowaries 78
- caste system 256–7
- castration 222
- Catacombs 189
- Cathage 172
- cays 63
- Champollion, Jean François 112
- Chandragupta 246, 247, 249
- Charlemagne 198
- Chavin civilisation, Peru 50
- Childe, Vere Gordon 13
- China *see* ancient China
- Chinese medicine 226
- Chinese opera 209
- Christians, persecution in Rome 54, 193
- Christianity
 in ancient Rome 54, 193, 197
 features shared with Islam and
 Judaism 53
 foundation 53
 origins 192
 power of Roman Christian Church 197
 spread 192–3
 teachings 53
- chronology 6–7
- circumcision 81
- cities, earliest 40
- city-states
 Greece 41, 138, 139, 150, 161
 India 245
- civilisation, definition 7, 38

clans 65
 Claudius, *Emperor*, Rome 182, 183
 climate change 29
 Clovis, *King* 197
 colonies 40
 compasses 225
 concubines 203
 Confucianism 51, 53, 213–14, 215–16
 Confucius 213–14
 conscripted forces 208
 Constantine, *Emperor*, Rome 193, 194
 constellations 203
 contestability 10
 Crete 45, 132
 crucifixion 53, 181
 cryptographers 12
 cubits 250
 cuneiform 41
 Cyrus the Great 156, 245

D

Daoism 214
 Darius I, *King*, Persia 156, 157, 233, 245
 Darius III, *King*, Persia 159
 dating techniques 15–17
 death and funerary customs
 Athens 148
 China 210
 Egypt 102, 107–8, 108, 110–11, 118
 India 262–3
 Indigenous Australians 84–5
 Rome 188–9
 Deccan Plateau 234
 deities 107
 Delphi 153
 deltas 98
 democracy
 in ancient Athens 139–40
 in Australia 140, 179
 direct democracy 140
 and history 5
 representative democracy 140, 179
 demotic script 114
 dendrochronology 17
 dialects 72
 Diocletian, *Emperor*, Rome 194
 direct democracy 140
 divination 191
 DNA evidence 17, 26
 Dorians 138, 143
 Draco 150
 drama, ancient Greece 130, 163
 dugong 70

E

Eastern Han dynasty 224
 Egypt *see* ancient Egypt
 Elamites 45
 empathy 18–19
 empires, rise and fall of 44–5
 entrail 153
 environment, human impact on 31
 ephorate 140
 Eratosthenes 162

Eretria 156
 eternal life 53
 Etruscans 170, 186
 European Community (EC) 198
 European unity 198
 Evans, Arthur 132
 evidence, interpreting 9–10
 evolution, theory of 26
 extinction of species 31

F

Fertile Crescent 35, 37
 Festival of Opet 102
 Fiorelli, Giuseppe 168
 firestick farming 67–8
 flint 26
 fluorine dating 15
 foraging 68
 fossils 26

G

Gandhi, Mahatma 260
 Gautama, Siddhartha 215, 259
 genealogy 78
 genetics 28
 geologists 60
 gods
 Egypt 106, 107, 109–10, 119
 Greece 148, 152
 Rome 191, 192
 government, ancient Greece 139–41
 Great Pyramid, Giza 116, 117, 126
 Great Sphinx, Giza 117
 Great Wall of China 218, 219, 227
 Greece *see* ancient Greece
 gunpowder 226

H

halberds 208
 Han dynasty 221–4
 Confucianism 216
 cost of expansion 223
 duration of 47
 Eastern Han dynasty 224
 education 222
 evidence for 202
 extent of territory 204–5, 222
 foundation 220
 legacy 220, 221
 overthrow by Wang Mang 223
 population growth 213, 221
 reforms 221–2
 second period 224
 trade 222
 Hannibal 172
 Harappa 239, 241, 244, 245
 Harappan Civilisation 237
 Harappan pottery seals 245
 Hatshepsut, *Queen/Pharaoh*, Egypt 104, 123
 helots 140, 143–4
 Heracles 152
 Herculaneum 168
 heresy 197
 heritage 4

heritage protection 91–2
 Herodotus 96, 131, 144, 233
 hieratic script 114, 115
 hieroglyphs 96, 112–15
 Hinduism
 beliefs 51–2, 255–6
 and caste system 256–7
 death and funerary customs 262
 and nature 255–6
 origins 51
 samskara 260–1
 Hippocrates 162
 historians 4
 historical debates 10
 history
 study of 4
 value of 4–5
 Hittite Empire 45, 122, 123, 124
 Holocene Epoch 31
 Homer 131, 133, 151
Homo erectus 26, 29
Homo ergaster 26
Homo heidelbergensis 26
Homo neanderthalensis 26, 29
Homo sapiens 26, 29
 Horace 185
 Horton, David 63
 Howick, England 36
 Hsin dynasty 223–4
 Huang River 211, 212, 213
 human dissection 226
 human evolution 26
 human migrations
 early humans 26–8
 to Australia 33–4
 within Americas 49–50
 Huns 195
 hunter-gatherers 24, 26
 Hydaspes, Battle of 245–6
 hygiene 241
 hypocaust 187
 hypotheses, forming 9

I

Ice Ages
 last Ice Age 30, 31
 sea levels 33, 49, 62
Iliad (Homer) 133–4, 151
 immortals 152
 India
 geography 234–5
 see also ancient India
 Indian Himalayan Region 234
 Indigenous Australians *see* Aboriginal peoples;
 Torres Strait Islander peoples
 Indo-Gangetic Plain 234
 Indus pottery seals 244
 Indus River 237, 241, 242
 Indus Valley Civilisation
 cities 238–41
 end of 241–3
 evidence of 232, 238
 floods 241
 Harappa 239, 241, 244, 245

Indus Valley Civilisations (*continued*)

- hygiene 241
 - Lothal 244–5
 - Mohenjo-daro 238–9, 240, 241, 244
 - mystery surrounding 237, 241
 - origins 236–7
 - trade 236, 237, 244–5
- infantry 208
- initiation ceremonies 80–1
- Inundation 98
- Iron Age 138
- irrigation, Egypt 98–9
- Islam 53, 55

J

- Jainism 259–60
- Judaism 53
- Justinian, *Emperor*, Eastern Roman Empire 196
- Jutes 194

K

- Kadesh, Battle of 124
- Kalinga 252
- Kautilya 249–50
- Khufu, *Pharaoh*, Egypt 116, 117, 123
- kinship 78–9
- kites 227
- Knossos 132
- Kulin people 86–9

L

- Lake Mungo archaeological site 89–91
- Laozi 214
- Latin (language) 197
- Latins 170
- Latium 170
- laws
- Athens 150
 - China 215–16
 - Greece 150–1
 - Rome 190–1, 197
 - Sparta 151
 - Sumer 41
- Leonidas, *King*, Sparta 157
- Li Si 220
- Linear A (Minoan written language) 132
- Linear B (Mycenaean written language) 133
- Liu Bang 220, 221
- lore 60
- Lothal 244–5
- Lycurgus 151

M

- Macedonians 156, 159
- magistrates 177, 178
- mammoths 30, 31
- mandate of heaven 204
- mangrove mud flats 63
- Manu code 256–7
- Marathon, Battle of 156
- marine ecosystems 69
- marshlands 35

Mask of Agamemnon 134–5

Mauryan Empire

- Arthashastra*, *The* 250, 251
- Ashoka the Great 246–8, 252–4
- Bindusara 251, 252, 253–4
- Buddhism 246–8, 253
- Chandragupta Maurya 246, 247, 249, 252
- duration 248
- edicts of Ashoka 253–4
- expansion and extent of 247, 249, 251, 252, 253
- fall 247
- foundation 48, 246, 249
- government 250–1, 253–4
- Kalinga campaign 252–3
- Kautilya 249–50, 254
- legacy 254
- Pataliputra city 251
- unification of India 246, 249–50

Mausoleum of Qin Shihuang 202, 203, 227

mausoleums 203

Mayan civilisation 51

medieval 196

medieval history 6

meditation 53

megalithic 9

Megasthenes 250, 251

Megido, Battle of 122

Melanesia 63

Mencius 214, 215–16

Mesolithic Age 35–6

Mesopotamia 38, 237, 244–5

metics 139

metopes 152

microliths 35

Middle Ages 197

Middle Stone Age 35

Minoan civilisation 45, 132

Minos, *King* 132

modern history 6

Mohenjo-daro 238–9, 240, 241, 244

Monte Verde people 50

Mungo I 89, 90

Mungo III 90

museums 60–1

musical instruments, earliest 28

Mycenaean civilisation 45, 132, 133–5, 136, 138

mythology 152

N

Nanda dynasty 249

Narmer, *King*, Egypt 104, 105, 123

Neanderthals 26, 29

Nefertiti, *Queen*, Egypt 104, 119

Neolithic Revolution 24, 37–8, 40, 235

Nero, *Emperor*, Rome 181, 183

New Stone Age 31, 37–9

Nile River 98–9

nomadic peoples 24, 245

Nubia 120, 122, 123

O

ochre trade 75

Octavian (Augustus), *Emperor*, Rome 180

Odoacer 195, 196

Odyssey (Homer) 151

Old Stone Age 24, 236

oligarchies 139

Olmec civilisation, Mexico 50

Olympiads 154

Olympic Games 128, 130, 138, 154–5

omens 153

oracles 153

oral tradition 60

ostracism 139

Ostrogoths 195

P

pagan beliefs 197

palaeontologists 12, 26, 60

Paleolithic times 29

papyrus 98

Parentalia 189

Parthenon, Athens 131, 148–9

Parthenon Marbles 130, 148–9

patricians 177, 178

patronage 185

Pax Romana 179

pearl-shell trade 75–6

Peloponnese peninsula 143

Peloponnesian Wars 159

perioeci 143

Periplus of the Erythraean Sea 247

Persian Empire 45

invasion by Alexander the Great 159–61, 233

invasion and occupation of Indus Valley and Northern India 245

invasions of Greece 156–8

perspectives 18

Philip of Macedon 159

philosophy 51, 163

Phoenicians 45

Piltown Man 15

pitjuri trade 75

plateaus 63, 162

Plato 131

plebians 177, 178

Pleistocene Epoch 30, 33, 63

poetry 163

polis/pleis 138

Pompeii 168–9

Pompey 179

porticos 163

Porus, *King*, India 161

pottery, as archaeological source 13–14

power vacuums 246

prehistoric art 29

prehistoric social organisation 28

prehistory 6

primary sources 7–8

printing 225

prophets 55

Ptolemy, map of the world 232

public baths 187

pumice 168
Punic Wars 172
Pushkari, Ukraine 31, 32
pyramids 116–17
Pythagoras 162

Q

Qin dynasty
 burning of books 217
 entertainment 209
 evidence for 202
 extent of territory 204–5
 fall of 220
 foundation of 217
 Great Wall of China 217–18, 227
 land reform 217
 laws and Legalism 216
 population of China 212
 unification of China 47
Qin Shihuang (Ying Zheng, First Emperor of Qin)
 achievements 218–19
 conquest and rule over China 217
 death 220
 dragon symbol 220
 legalism 216, 217
 reforms 219
 tomb of 202, 203, 227
quarries 60

R

radiocarbon dating 15–16, 63
Rameses II, *Pharaoh* 123–5
Rameses III, *Pharaoh* 107, 122
Red Eyebrows 224
reincarnation 51
relative dating techniques 15
Renaissance 197
representative democracy 140, 179
rhetoric 185
Rig-Veda 245
rites of passage 81
Roman army
 auxiliaries 176
 soldier's life 176
 weapons and tactics 174–5
Roman calendar 197
Roman Christian Church 197
Roman Empire *see* ancient Rome
Roman law 190–1, 197
Romulus Augustus, *Emperor*, Western Roman Empire 195, 196
Rosetta Stone 96, 112–13

S

sago 78
Samnites 170
samskara 260–1
Sanskrit 246
Sappo 163
sarcophagus 118
Saxons 194
Schliemann, Heinrich 134–5
scribes 43

Scylax of Caryanda 233
sea levels, during last Ice Age 33, 49, 62
seagrass 69
secondary sources
 about ancient Egypt 96
 as historical evidence 9
sediment 60
seismographs 226
Seleucus Nikator 251
Seleucid Empire 161, 250, 251
Senate 177, 178
Seneca 168
Seti I, *King*, Egypt 123
Seutonius 168
shadoofs 98
Shang dynasty
 defeat by Zhou 46, 206
 evidence for 46, 202
 extent of territory 204–5
shell middens 60
Shroud of Turin 16
Silk Road 204–5, 222
Sima Qian 203, 222
slashing and burning 69
slaves
 China 208
 Greece 143–4
 Rome 181–2, 184
social classes, in Sumer 42–3
social organisation
 ancient Australia 78–9
 in prehistoric societies 29
social structure
 China 206–8
 Egypt 100–1
 India 256–7
 Rome 176–7
Socrates 162
Solon 150
songlines 74
Sophocles 131
Soter, Ptolemy 161
Sparta 138
 everyday life 141–4
 government 140–1
 helots 143–4
 laws 151
 as military state 141–3
 in Persian Wars 157, 158
 women 143
Spartacus 181–2
species 26
stadia 250
stalemates 124
Star Carr, England 36
stone tools 28, 61
strata/stratum 15
stratigraphy 15
stupas 262–3
subcontinents 47
Sumer, Mesopotamia
 artefacts 25
 emergence 45
 Ensi 41, 42

everyday life 43
gods and religion 43
legacy 45
literature 24, 25
location 37, 38
rediscovery 42
rulers and laws 41
slaves 43
social classes 42–3
spread of civilisation 40
writing 24, 40, 41

T

taboos 81
Tacitus 168
taro plants 69
tenant farmers 184
Thales 162
the Dreaming 60, 64–5, 78, 80
Thebes 159
Theodosius I, *Emperor*, Rome 154, 194
Thermopylae, Battle of 157
Thracians 181
Thucydides 131, 144
Thutmose II, *Pharaoh* 104
Thutmose III, *Pharaoh* 104
time, counting systems 6–7
time periods 6–7
timelines 6, 7
Tiwi people 85
Toltec civilisation, Mexico 51
tools, earliest 28
Torres Strait Islander peoples
 ceremonies 72
 creation stories 66
 death and funerary customs 84–5
 farming practices 69
 fishing practices 69–70
 kinship 78–9
 languages 71, 72
 settlement of islands 63–4
 trade 77–8
 war and weapons 83–4
totems 80
towns, earliest 40
trade
 Aboriginal peoples 75–7
 China 47
 Egypt 120, 121
 Greece 132, 137
 India 236, 237, 244–5, 247
 Rome 247
 Silk Road 204–5, 222
 in Torres Strait 77–8
tree rings 17
tribunes 177, 178
tributes 47
Trojan War 133–5
Tutankhamen, *Pharaoh* 116, 117–18, 119, 123

U

United Nations Educational, Social and Cultural Organization (UNESCO) 227
utopias 243

V

Valley of the Kings 116
Vandals 194, 195
vassal states 124
Vedic Civilisation 245
Vestal Virgins 193
villeins 41
Virgil 185
virtue 185
Visigoths 194, 195

W

Wang Mang 223–4
warlords 224
Welcome to Country ceremonies 72, 73
Wells, H. G. 252
women
 in Athens 145–6
 in China 209
 in Egypt 103–4
 in Rome 186, 193
 in Sparta 143

Wooley, Sir Leonard 42
World Heritage sites 227
writing
 in China 46, 202
 demotic script 114
 earliest 41
 in Egypt 96
 in Greece 132, 133
 hieratic script 114, 115
 hieroglyphs 96, 112–15
 in India 48, 245
 Linear A, Minoan 132
 Linear B, Mycenaean 133
 in Sumer 24, 40, 41
written sources
 as evidence about the past 7, 8
 from ancient Egypt 96
 from ancient Greece 131
Wudi, *Emperor*, China 222

X

Xerxes, *King*, Persia 157–8
Xia dynasty 46, 204
Xiongnu tribes 218, 222

Y

Yangtze River 212
Yellow Turbans 224
Young, Thomas 112

Z

Zhang Heng 226
Zhang Qian 222
Zhou dynasty
 Chinese opera 209
 defeat of Shang dynasty 206
 Eastern Zhou dynasty 206
 evidence for 202
 extent of territory 204–5
 Western Zhou dynasty 206